

# OPERATION MANUAL

---

---

---

## MINI-CRAWLER CRANE

# MC285C-2

Serial No. P01043 and up

### WARNING

Unsafe use of this machine may cause serious injury or death. Operators must read this manual before operating this machine. This manual should be kept near the machine for reference and periodically reviewed by all personnel who will come into contact with it.

### NOTICE

MAEDA has Operation Manual written in some other languages. If a foreign language manual is necessary, contact your local distributor for availability.

# M A E D A



# CONTENTS

ITEM	Page
<b>INTRODUCTION</b>	1- 1
1. INTRODUCTION	1- 2
2.FOR SAFE USE OF MACHINE	1- 3
3. MACHINE OVERVIEW	1- 4
3.1 SPECIFIED OPERATIONS	1- 4
3.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION	1- 4
3.3 MACHINE FUNCTIONS	1- 5
4. QUALIFICATION FOR OPERATION	1- 6
4.1 QUALIFICATION FOR CRANE OPERATION	1- 6
5. TERMINOLOGY	1- 7
5.1 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS	1- 7
5.2 DIAGRAM OF WORKING RADIUS AND LIFTING HEIGHT	1- 8
5.3 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART	1- 9
5.4 ANGLE INDICATOR	1-13
<b>SAFETY</b>	2- 1
1. BASIC PRECAUTIONS	2- 2
2. DRIVING RELATED PRECAUTIONS	2- 7
2.1 BEFORE STARTING ENGINE	2- 7
2.2 AFTER STARTING ENGINE	2- 8
2.3 WORKING WITH CRANE	2-12
3. TRANSPORT PRECAUTIONS	2-21
4. BATTERY HANDLING PRECAUTIONS	2-23
5. MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS	2-25
5.1 PRECAUTIONS BEFORE MAINTENANCE	2-25
5.2 PRECAUTIONS DURING MAINTENANCE	2-27
6. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS	2-32
<b>OPERATION</b>	3- 1
1. MACHINE EACH SECTION	3- 2
1.1 MACHINE EACH UNIT	3- 2
1.2 TRAVELLING AND CRANE OPERATION UNITS	3- 3
1.2.1 DESCRIPTION OF EACH LEVER	3- 4
1.2.2 DESCRIPTION OF EACH SWITCH	3- 6
1.2.3 DESCRIPTION OF EACH METER AND LAMP	3- 7
1.3 CRANE OPERATION UNIT	3- 9
1.3.1 DESCRIPTION OF EACH LEVER	3-10
1.3.2 DESCRIPTION OF EACH SWITCH	3-11
1.4 OUTRIGGER SAFETY DEVICES	3-14
1.4.1 FUNCTIONS OF OUTRIGGER SAFETY DEVICES	3-14
1.4.2 NAMES AND DESCRIPTIONS OF OUTRIGGER DISPLAY	3-15
1.4.3 OUTRIGGER UN-SET WARNING LAMP	3-16
1.5 MOMENT LIMITER (OVERLOAD DETECTOR)	3-17
1.5.1 MOMENT LIMITER CONFIGURATION	3-17
1.5.2 FUNCTION OF MOMENT LIMITER	3-18

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
1.5.3 MOMENT LIMITER OPERATIONS	3-19
1.5.4 NAMES OF MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	3-21
1.5.5 MOMENT LIMITER FUNCTIONS	3-28
1.5.6 MOMENT LIMITER STARTING STATUS	3-31
1.5.7 MOMENT LIMITER WORKING ENVELOPE SETTING	3-31
1.5.8 EMERGENCY STOP CANCEL SWITCH	3-32
1.5.9 MOMENT LIMITER ERROR CAUSES AND ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN	3-33
1.6 MACHINERY COVER	3-34
1.7 OVER HOIST DETECTOR	3-35
2. OPERATIONS	3-36
2.1 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATIONS	3-36
2.1.1 VISIBLE CHECKS	3-36
2.1.2 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE	3-39
2.1.3 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE	3-50
2.2 STARTING ENGINE	3-58
2.2.1 NORMAL ENGINE START	3-58
2.2.2 STARTING ENGINE IN COLD WEATHER	3-59
2.2.3 STARTING THE ENGINE WITH AUXILIARY STARTER SWITCH	3-60
2.3 OPERATIONS AND CHECKS AFTER STARTING ENGINE	3-61
2.4 BREAKING-IN MACHINE	3-63
2.5 MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE	3-63
2.6 STARTING MOVING MACHINE	3-64
2.7 CHANGING DIRECTION OF THE MACHINE	3-65
2.8 STOPPING/PARKING THE MACHINE	3-66
2.9 STOPPING ENGINE	3-67
2.10 INSPECTION AFTER STOPPING ENGINE	3-67
2.11 CAUTIONS IN DRIVING	3-68
2.12 OUTRIGGER SETUP OPERATION	3-70
2.12.1 NAME OF OUTRIGGER COMPONENTS	3-72
2.12.2 OUTRIGGER SETTING OPERATION	3-72
2.13 CAUTIONS BEFORE CRANE OPERATION	3-76
2.14 OPERATIONS BEFORE CRANE OPERATIONS	3-77
2.15 CRANE OPERATION POSTURE	3-78
2.16 HOOK RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION	3-79
2.17 BOOM DERRICKING OPERATION	3-79
2.18 BOOM TELESCOPING OPERATION	3-80
2.19 SLEWING OPERATION	3-81
2.20 ACCELERATION OPERATION	3-81
2.21 CRANE STOWING OPERATION	3-82
2.22 OUTRIGGER STOWING OPERATION	3-84
2.23 DOS AND DON'TS DURING CRANE OPERATIONS	3-87
3. HANDLING RUBBER TRACKS	3-89
3.1 GOOD USE	3-89
3.2 WARRANTY	3-89
3.3 DOS AND DON'TS	3-90
3.4 CAUTIONS IN USING RUBBER TRACKS	3-91

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
4. HANDLING WIRE ROPES	3-93
4.1 BENCH MARK FOR REPLACING WIRE ROPES	3-93
4.2 What TO DO WITH TWISTED WINCH WIRE ROPE	3-94
5. TRANSPORTATION	3-95
5.1 LOADING/UNLOADING	3-95
5.2 HOISTING MACHINE	3-96
5.3 CAUTIONS IN LOADING MACHINE	3-97
5.4 CAUTIONS DURING TRANSPORTATION	3-97
6. HANDLING IN COLD WEATHER	3-98
6.1 PREPARING FOR LOW TEMPERATURE	3-98
7. LONG-TERM STORAGE	3-100
7.1 BEFORE STORING MACHINE	3-100
7.2 DURING STORAGE	3-100
7.3 AFTER STORAGE	3-100
8. HANDLING BATTERY	3-101
8.1 CAUTIONS IN HANDLING BATTERY	3-101
8.2 REMOVING/INSTALLING BATTERY	3-102
8.3 CAUTIONS IN CHARGING BATTERY	3-103
8.4 STARTING ENGINE WITH BOOSTER CABLE	3-104
9. TROUBLESHOOTING	3-106
9.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS	3-106
9.2 MACHINE BODY	3-106
9.3 ENGINE	3-107
<b>INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE</b>	4- 1
1. PRECAUTIONS FOR MAINTENANCE	4- 2
2. BASIC MAINTENANCE	4- 4
3. LEGAL INSPECTION	4- 6
4. CONSUMABLES	4- 6
5. LUBRICATING OIL	4- 7
5.1 USE OF LUBRICATING OIL ACCORDING TO TEMPERATURES	4- 7
6. ACCESSORY TOOLS AND STANDARD TIGHTENING TORQUE	4- 8
6.1 ACCESSORY TOOLS	4- 8
6.2 STANDARD TIGHTENING TORQUE LIST	4- 8
7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST	4-10
8. MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-12
8.1 INITIAL 10 HOUR MAINTENANCE	4-12
8.2 INITIAL 50 HOUR MAINTENANCE	4-12
8.3 INITIAL 250 HOUR MAINTENANCE	4-12
8.4 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION	4-12
8.5 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE	4-13
8.6 MAINTENANCE EVERY 30 HOURS	4-22
8.7 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS	4-24
8.8 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS	4-27
8.9 MAINTENANCE EVERY 250 HOURS	4-28
8.10 MAINTENANCE EVERY 500 HOURS	4-30
8.11 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS	4-35
8.12 MAINTENANCE EVERY 2000 HOURS	4-46

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>SPECIFICATIONS</b>	5- 1
1. SPECIFICATIONS	5- 2
2. SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING	5- 3
3. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH	5- 4
4. RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART	5- 5
3.1 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR 4 FALLS	5- 5
3.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR 2 FALLS	5- 6
3.3 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SINGLE FALL	5- 7
5. WORKING RADIUS AND LIFTING HEIGHT	5- 8
<b>REMOTE CONTROL</b>	6- 1
1. OUTLINE OF REMOTE CONTROLLER	6- 2
1.1 FEATURE	6- 2
1.2 CONFIGURATION	6- 2
1.3 FUNCTIONS OF REMOTE CONTROL SYSTEM	6- 3
2. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS	6- 4
2.1 FOR SAFETY OPERATIONS	6- 4
2.2 PRECAUTIONS FOR CRANE OPERATION	6- 6
2.2.1 PRIOR TO STARTING ENGINE	6- 6
2.2.2 SUBSEQUENT TO STARTING ENGINE	6- 7
2.2.3 TERMINATING THE OPERATION	6- 7
3. LOCATIONS OF SAFETY LABELS	6- 8
4. COMPONENTS OF THE TRANSMITTER	6-10
5. COMPONENTS OF THE RECEIVER	6-15
5.1 COMPONENTS OF THE RECEIVER	6-15
5.2 FUSE IN THE RECEIVER	6-17
6. MODE SETTING OF THE TRANSMITTER	6-19
6.1 A MODE	6-19
6.1.1 OPENING A MODE SCREEN	6-19
6.1.2 MESSAGES IN THE A MODE SCREEN	6-19
6.1.3 AN EXAMPLE FOR SETTING IN THE A MODE	6-23
6.2 PROCEDURE IN THE OPERATION MODE	6-24
6.2.1 CALL OUT CRANE MODE	6-24
6.2.2 CALL OUT OUTRIGGER MODE	6-25
7. CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION	6-27
7.1 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE	6-27
7.1.1 CHECKING BEFORE TURNING ON THE TRANSMITTER	6-27
7.1.2 CHECKING AFTER TURNING ON THE TRANSMITTER	6-28
7.1.3 CHECKING RECEIVER	6-32
7.2 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE	6-33
7.2.1 VERIFICATION FOR THE ENGINE START AND STOP	6-33
7.2.2 CHECKING "OUTRIGGER MODE" OPERATION	6-34
7.2.3 CHECKING "CRANE MODE" OPERATION	6-36

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
8. OPERATION	6-38
8.1 CAUTIONS BEFORE OPERATION	6-38
8.2 OPERATION IN OUTRIGGER MODE	6-39
8.2.1 OUTRIGGER SETTING	6-40
8.2.2 OUTRIGGER STOWING	6-41
8.3 OPERATION IN CRANE MODE	6-42
8.3.1 SLEWING OPERATION	6-43
8.3.2 BOOM TELESCOPING	6-43
8.3.3 HOOK RAISING AND LOWERING	6-44
8.3.4 BOOM DERRICKING	6-44
8.3.5 SET-UP AND CANCEL MICRO SPEED	6-45
8.3.6 ENGINE STOP AND EMERGENCY STOP PROCEDURE	6-47
8.3.7 ENGINE START AND RESET PROCEDURE	6-47
8.4 CHECKING AFTER CRANE OPERATION	6-48
9. TROUBLE SHOOTING	6-49
9.1 BEFORE TROUBLE SHOOTING	6-49
9.2 ERRORS IN THE REMOTE CONTROL DEVICES	6-50
10.SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS	6-52
<b>ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SPECIFICATIONS</b>	7- 1
1. PRECAUTIONS (FOR ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SPECIFICATION)	7- 2
2. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS	7- 3
3. MACHINE EACH SECTION	7- 5
3.1 TRAVELLING UNIT	7- 5
3.2 POWER UNIT	7- 8
3.3 POWER SUPPLY BOX	7- 8
3.4 INVERTER UNIT	7- 9
4. OPERATION	7-12
4.1 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION	7-12
4.1.1 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR (VISIBLE CHECKS)	7-12
4.1.2 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR	7-12
4.1.3 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR	7-12
4.2 POWER SUPPLY CONNECTION	7-13
4.3 OPERATION AND CHECKING AFTER POWER CONNECTION	7-15
4.4 MACHINE OPERATION	7-17
4.5 MACHINE STOP AND CHECKS AFTER STOPPING MACHINE	7-17
4.6 POWER SUPPLY SEPARATION	7-18
5. LONG-TERM STORAGE	7-19
6. ELECTRIC MOTOR TROUBLESHOOTING	7-20
7. PRINCIPLE SPECIFICATION LIST	7-21
8. SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING	7-22
9. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH	7-23

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>SEARCHER HOOK</b>	8- 1
1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	8- 2
2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION	8- 4
3. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	8- 5
4. OPERATION	8- 7
5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	8-9
5.1 LEGAL INSPECTION	8-9
5.2 CONSUMABLES	8-9
5.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST	8-9
5.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	8-10
5.4.1 INSPECTION OF BEFORE OPERATION	8-10
6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD	8-12
6.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR SEARCHER HOOK	8-12
6.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SEARCHER HOOK	8-13
<b>850kg SEARCHER HOOK</b>	9- 1
1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	9- 2
2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION	9- 6
3. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	9- 7
3.1 DESCRIPTIONS OF SWITCHES MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	9- 8
3.1.1 WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED (BLUE)	9- 8
3.1.2 CANCEL SWITCH	9- 9
4. OPERATION	9-11
5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	9-15
5.1 LEGAL INSPECTION	9-15
5.2 CONSUMABLES	9-15
5.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST	9-16
5.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	9-17
5.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION	9-17
6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD	9-19
6.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR SEARCHER HOOK	9-19
6.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SEARCHER HOOK	9-22

<b>ITEM</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>AUXILIARY WINCH</b>	10- 1
1. SAFETY OF AUXILIARY WINCH	10- 2
1.1 CAUTIONS BEFORE OPERATION	10- 2
1.2 CAUTIONS DURING OPERATION	10- 2
2. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	10- 4
3. EACH SECTION	10- 6
4. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	10- 7
4.1 SETTING CHANGE OF SWITCHES MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	10- 8
4.1.1 WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED	10- 8
5. HOW TO INSTAL AND DETACH BOOM HEAD	10- 9
5.1 INSTALLING BOOM HEAD	10-10
5.2 DETACHING BOOM HEAD	10-15
6. MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE AND HOISTING METHOD	10-16
6.1 MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE(AUXILIARY WINCH)	10-16
6.2 HOISTING MACHINE(AUXILIARY WINCH)	10-17
7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	10-19
7.1 LEGAL INSPECTION	10-19
7.2 CONSUMABLES	10-19
7.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST	10-20
7.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	10-21
7.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION	10-21
7.4.2 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE	10-24
7.4.3 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS	10-28
7.4.4 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS	10-29
7.4.5 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS	10-30
8. SPECIFICATIONS	10-32
8.1 SPECIFICATIONS	10-32
8.2 SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING	10-34
8.3 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM AND RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART	10-35
8.3.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR AUXILIARY WINCH	10-36
8.3.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR AUXILIARY WINCH	10-37



# INTRODUCTION

1. INTRODUCTION	1- 2
2. FOR SAFE USE OF MACHINE	1- 3
3. MACHINE OVERVIEW	1- 4
4. QUALIFICATION FOR OPERATION	1- 6
5. TERMINOLOGY	1- 7

# 1. INTRODUCTION

Thank you for purchasing our Mini Crawler Crane “MC285C-2”.

This manual is a guidebook for safe and effective use of this machine.

This manual describes the procedures for proper operation and maintenance of the machine.

Warnings and precautions defined in this manual shall be observed for safety.

Many accidents are caused when safety precautions for the operation, inspection, and maintenance are not observed.

Be sure to read this manual and understand the procedures for machine operation, inspection, and maintenance thoroughly before performing operation of this machine.

Failure to observe the basic precautions defined in this manual may lead to accidents.

## **WARNING**

**Failure to use this machine properly can lead to serious personal injury or death. Operators and maintenance personnel must always read this manual prior to operation or maintenance of this machine.**

**Save this manual at a designated place for reference when necessary. All personnel who work on this machine are to carry out periodic reference.**

- **Only those who have thorough understanding of the fundamental procedures provided in this manual are qualified to perform machine operation.**
- **Keep this manual handy for reference when necessary.**
- **Should you lose or damage this manual, contact Maeda or our sales service agency immediately to order a replacement.**
- **This manual should always accompany this machine upon transfer of the machine to the next owner.**
- **This manual has adopted data that was available at the time of the creation of the manual.**

**The contents of this manual, including maintenance specifications, tightening torque, pressure, measuring method, adjustment value, and illustrations, are subject to change upon unremitting refinement of the machine, without notice.**

**Machine maintenance may be susceptible to revisions. Always obtain the latest information from Maeda or our sales service agency before performing maintenance of this machine.**

**For safety instructions, see “2. For Safe Use of Machine” on page 1-3 and “Safety” on page 2-1.**

## 2. FOR SAFE USE OF MACHINE

This manual classifies the risks into the following three categories to present the details of the safety labels in an easy-to-understand manner.



This denotes that there is an imminent hazard which will cause serious personal injury or death.

The method of hazard circumvention is stated.



This denotes that there is a hazard which can cause serious personal injury or death.

The method of hazard circumvention is stated.



This denotes that there is a potential hazard which may cause minor or moderate personal injury or serious damage to this machine.

The method of hazard circumvention is stated.

This manual also provides the following to indicate what must be observed for the sake of the machine and what will be of help.



This denotes that failure to handle the machine properly may damage the machine or shorten its life.



This denotes helpful information.

The operations, inspections, maintenance and safety precautions for this machine that are outlined in this manual are relevant for specified tasks.

Every circumstance incidental to use of this machine is unforeseeable, and therefore, cautions given in this manual and on this machine do not necessarily cover every safety-related issue.

Necessary safety actions should be taken under your responsibility, if operation, inspection, and maintenance in a situation that is not described in this manual are performed.

Even in the above case, never attempt work and operations that this manual prohibits you to do.

### 3. MACHINE OVERVIEW

#### 3.1 SPECIFIED OPERATIONS

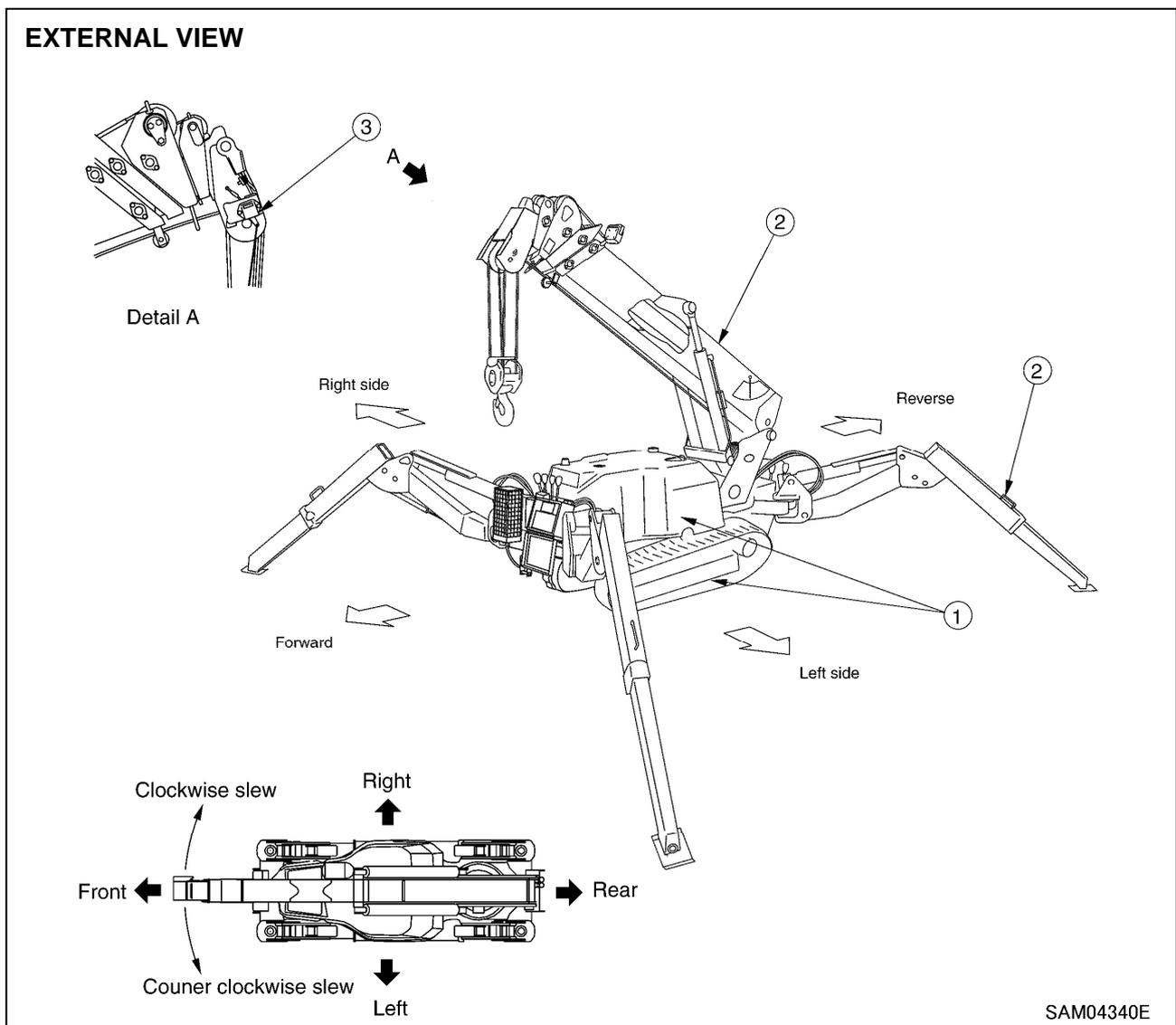
This machine is to be used for operation listed below.

- Crane operation

This machine is a mobile crane with a rubber track travelling dolly (carrier) mounted with a boom crane. This self-propelled crane is capable of moving (travelling) in the worksite and craning an object weighing within the rated total load.

This is also a remote-controlled crane.

#### 3.2 MACHINE CONFIGURATION



- (1) Travelling dolly
- (2) Crane
- (3) Safety device

Viewed from the operation seat, the front, back, left, and right of the machine are determined in this manual, viewing in the travelling direction (front) of the machine.

Boom slewing motion is determined with the machine viewed from immediately above; slew clockwise denotes right-handed motion and slew counterclockwise denotes left-handed motion.

This machine is composed of the units listed below.

### **[1] TRAVELLING DOLLY**

This is composed of a travelling gear, engine, travelling operation unit, and crane operation unit.

### **[2] CRANE**

This is composed of a telescoping system, derrick system, hook block, winch system, and outrigger system.

### **[3] SAFETY DEVICE**

This is composed of the following parts and devices: Over hoist detector / automatic stop device, three-winding stop alarm / automatic stop device, load indicator, hydraulic safety valve, hydraulic automatic locking device, slinging rope detachment protector, alarm buzzer, audio alarm, level, crane tip-over alarm (an alarm issued in the event of the crane operation at 3-degree inclination and travelling at 15-degree inclination), travelling lever lock, travelling/crane/outrigger selector switch (designed to prevent the machine from craning at travelling), outrigger safety device (outrigger interlock and crane interlock), moment limiter (working envelope limited), working status lamp, outrigger non-installation warning lamp.

## **3.3 MACHINE FUNCTIONS**

### **[1] TRAVELLING DOLLY**

- This is a compact machine designed to keep the overall width between the crane and outrigger minimized with them housed (in travelling position).  
This compact design is ideal for work in confined areas.
- Two-travelling lever operation enables not only direction changes among forward, backward, right, and left, but also pivot turn and spin turn.

### **[2] CRANE**

- An automatic slide outrigger is embedded in the crane to permit outrigger extension and grounding from the operation seat.
- Through the combined use of telescoping, derricking, and slewing besides winch system operation, the crane is capable of raising or lowering the hook block and moving an object weighing within the rated total load to a designated position within the confines of the working envelope.
- Remote-control units allow remote outrigger setting and remote crane operation.

## 4. QUALIFICATION FOR OPERATION

### **WARNING**

- **A high incidence of occupational accidents in crane operation has been reported. Be aware that experienced engineers are also no exception.**
- **Warnings and precautions defined in this manual shall be observed for safety assurance during operation of the machine.**

### 4.1 QUALIFICATION FOR CRANE OPERATION

Only personnel that have obtained the license stipulated by laws and regulations applicable to the place of use are qualified to operate this machine.

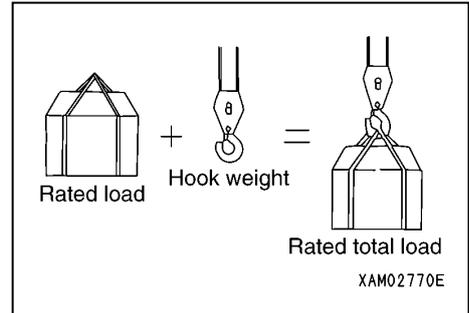
Contact the relevant government office or our sales service agency for further information.

## 5. TERMINOLOGY

### 5.1 DEFINITIONS OF TERMS

#### [1] RATED TOTAL LOAD

The maximum load that can be applied according to the boom length and angle. The load includes the mass (weight) of hoisting accessories (hooks) and slinging ropes.

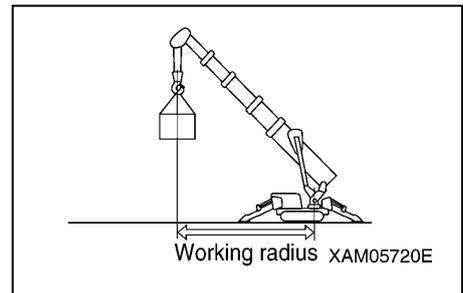


#### [2] RATED LOAD

A load derived by subtracting the mass (weight) of hoisting accessories (hooks) and slinging ropes from the rated total load.

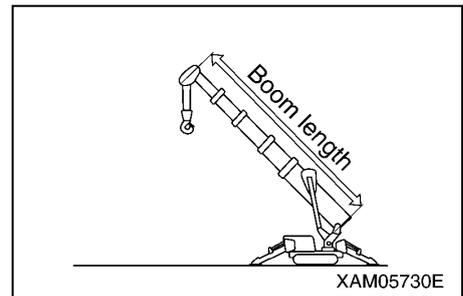
#### [3] WORKING RADIUS

A horizontal distance between the axis of slewing and the hook centre.



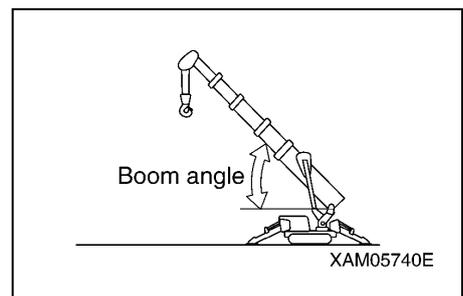
#### [4] BOOM LENGTH

A distance between the boom primary pin and the sheave pin of the end boom.



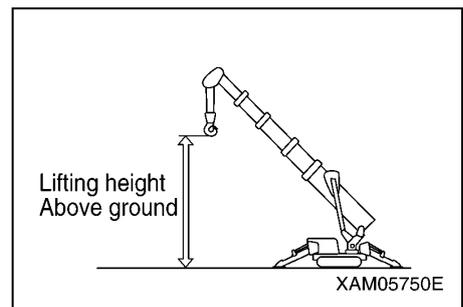
#### [5] BOOM ANGLE

An angle which the boom forms with the horizon.



#### [6] LIFTING HEIGHT ABOVE GROUND

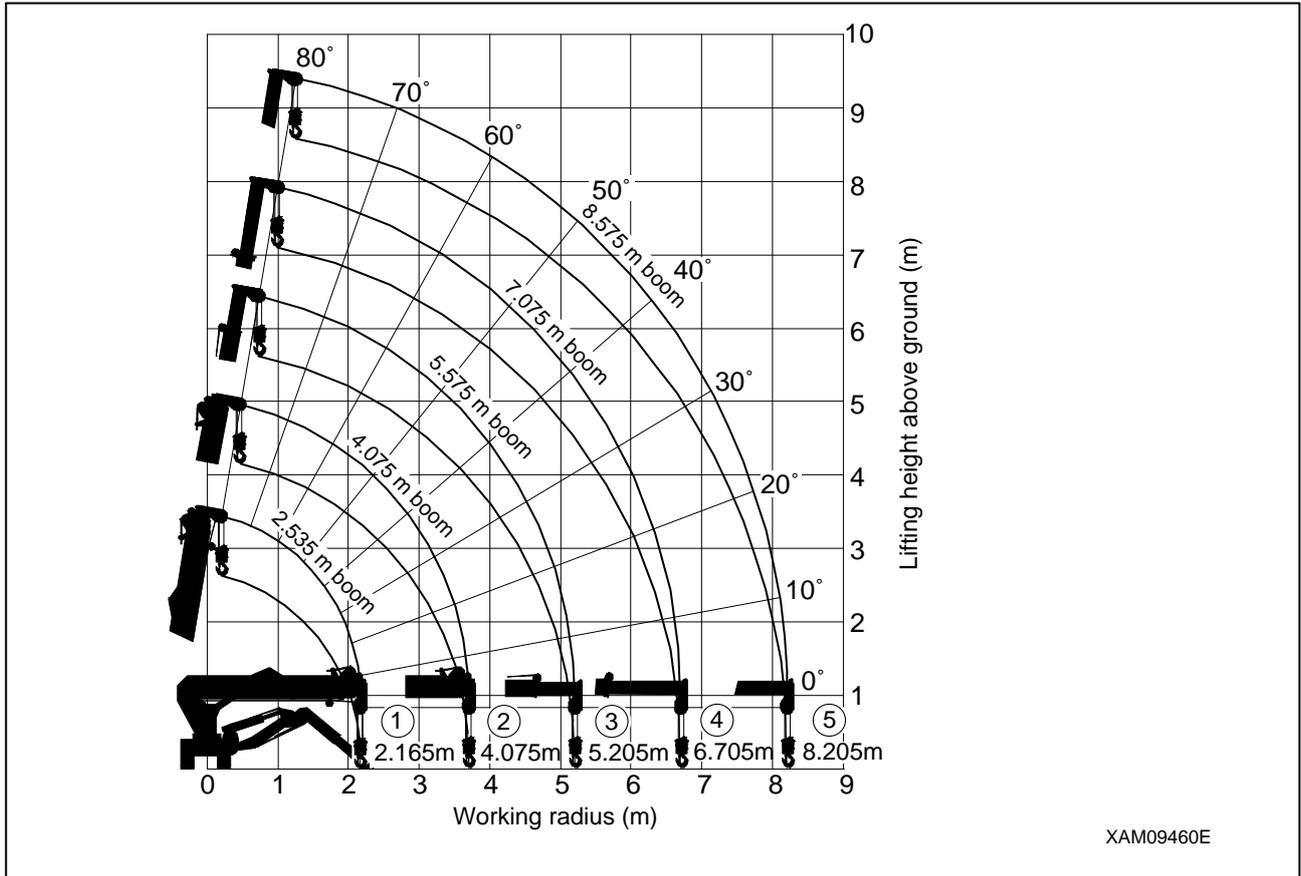
This is a vertical distance between the hook bottom and the ground with the hook raised to the upper limit.



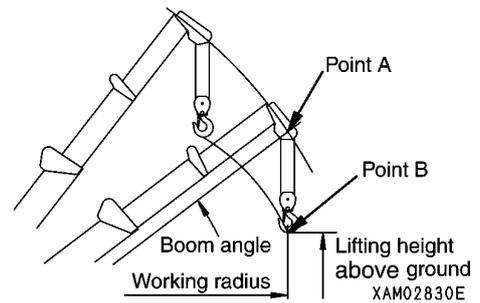
## 5.2 DIAGRAM OF WORKING RADIUS AND LIFTING HEIGHT

### ⚠ WARNING

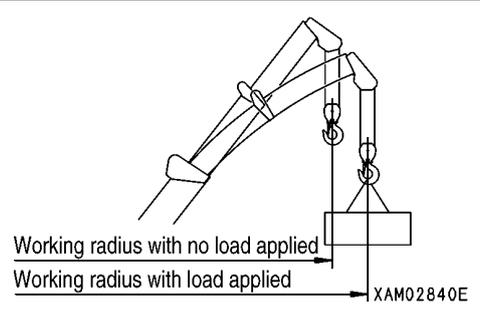
- The diagram of working radius and lifting height shows the relationships the working radius of this machine, boom angle, and lifting height above the ground with no object hoisted. The diagram has been made allowing for no deflection in the boom.
- “5.575m Boom” in the working radius/lifting height diagram shows the status where one half of first  mark is extended from the second stage boom.
- “7.075m Boom” in the working radius/lifting height diagram shows the status where one half of second  mark is extended from the second stage boom.



1. Point A denotes a boom angle and point B denotes a lifting height above ground in the figure at right. The same working radius is applied to points A and B.



2. The “diagram of working radius and lifting height” shows the relationships the working radius, boom angle, and lifting height at no load, allowing for no deflection in the boom. A deflection occurs in the boom when an object is hoisted, which causes the working radius to widen slightly. The rated total load decreases with increase in the working radius. Actual crane operation requires the planning of work, allowing for sufficient clearance more than that provided in the diagram.



## 5.3 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART

### ⚠ CAUTION

Rated total load chart is based on level, hard ground. Depending on the outrigger setting or bad ground conditions the machine may tip over.

Rated total load chart is based on working radius with boom deflection and raised load taken into consideration.

If boom (3) is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for "5.575m Boom".

When more than one half of the first  mark is exposed from the boom (2), work should be carried out within the performance for the "7.075m Boom".

When more than one half of the second  mark is exposed from boom (2), work should be carried out within the performance for the "8.575m Boom".

If working radius exceeds the value of Working Radius column in the chart by any extent, work should be performed within the rated total load in the next column of Working Radius.

Rated total load is shown with the mass of hook (30kg) included.

Unless outriggers are extended to maximum, work should be performed in accordance with the "Rated Total Load Chart without extending outriggers to maximum".

### MC285C-2 Rated Total Load Chart

Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to maximum								Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum							
2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom		2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom	
Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)
1.4orless	2.82	3.0orless	1.22	3.6orless	0.82	4.0orless	0.55	1.5orless	1.72	3.0orless	0.51	3.6orless	0.40	4.0orless	0.33
1.5	2.52	3.5	0.97	4.0	0.74	4.5	0.40	2.0	1.07	3.5	0.41	4.0	0.33	4.5	0.28
2.0	1.92	4.0	0.78	4.5	0.58	5.0	0.34	2.5	0.63	4.0	0.33	4.5	0.28	5.0	0.23
2.5	1.57	4.5	0.63	5.0	0.48	5.5	0.30	3.0	0.52	4.5	0.28	5.0	0.23	5.5	0.18
3.0	1.22	5.0	0.53	5.5	0.43	6.0	0.27	3.5	0.39	5.0	0.20	5.5	0.18	6.0	0.16
3.5	0.97	5.205	0.53	6.0	0.38	6.5	0.23	3.705	0.35	5.205	0.20	6.0	0.16	6.5	0.13
3.705	0.92			6.5	0.35	7.0	0.20					6.5	0.13	7.0	0.10
				6.705	0.33	7.5	0.18					6.705	0.12	7.5	0.08
						8.0	0.15							8.0	0.07
						8.205	0.15							8.205	0.06

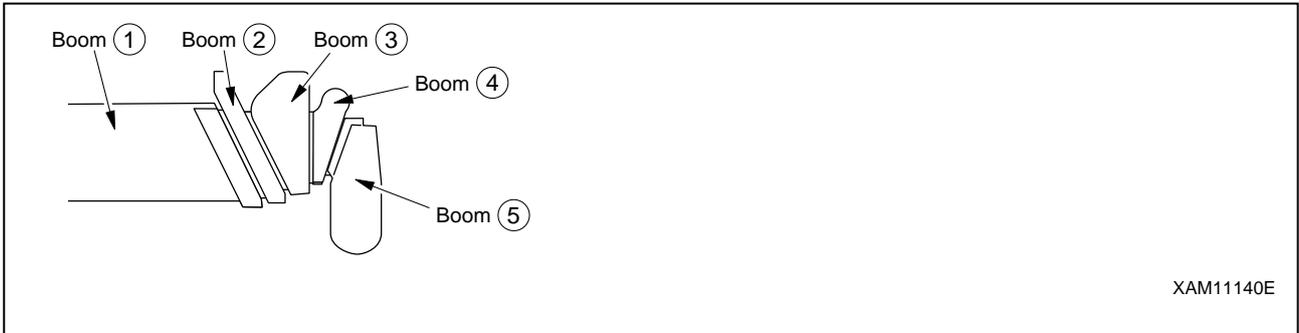
- ⚠ 1. The Rated Total Load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook (30kg) included when.
2. If third stage boom is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 5.575m".
3. If one half or more of the mark  is exposed from second boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 7.075m".
4. If one half or more of the second mark  is exposed from second stage boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 8.575m".
5. Rough operation of crane is extremely dangerous, Stick to safe operation.

The rated total load chart provides the maximum loads that the crane is capable of hoisting objects in parallel with the length of the boom. The loads are specified by working radius.

### [1] BOOM LENGTH

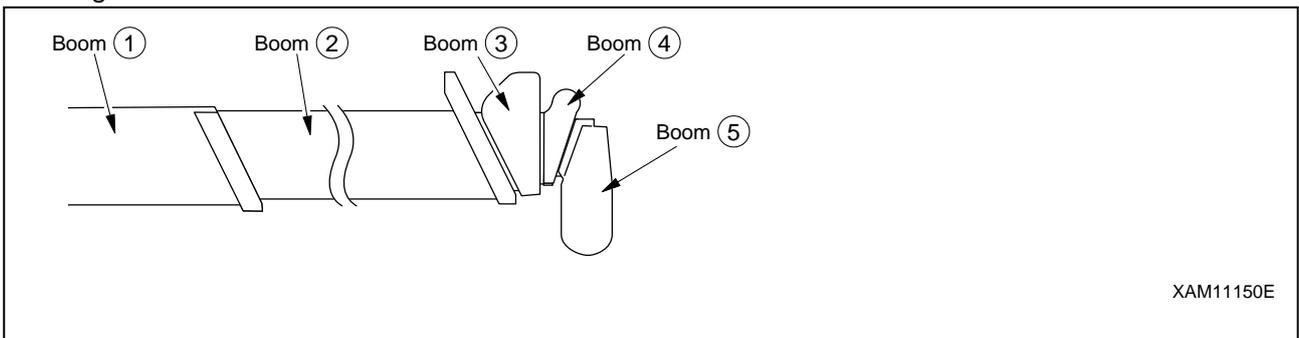
“2.535m Boom”, “4.075m Boom”, “5.575m Boom”, “7.075m Boom” and “8.575m Boom” as shown on the top horizontal column of the Rated Total Load Chart representing the following cases:

1. “2.535m Boom”: All the booms retracted.

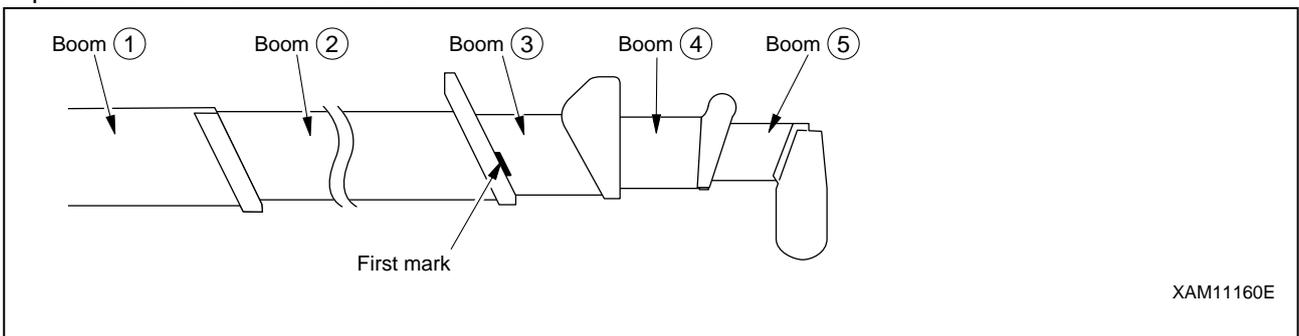


2. “4.075m Boom”: With boom (2) extended fully, remainder of booms are all retracted.

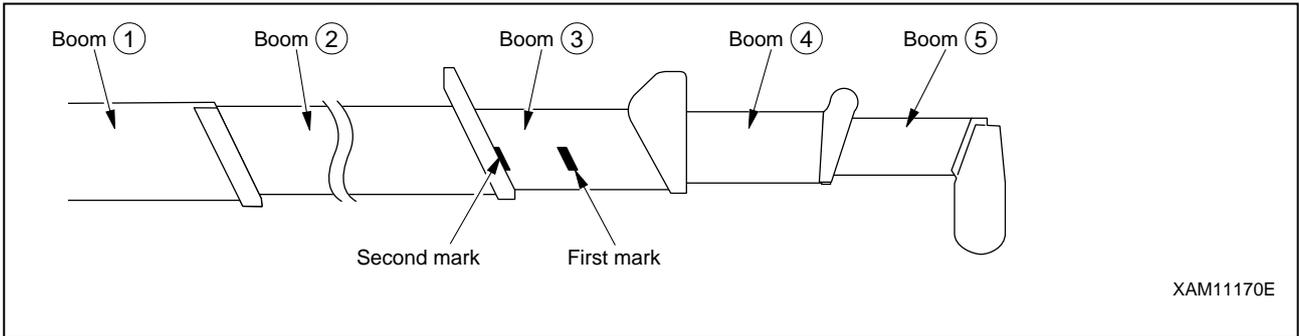
If boom (2) is extended to any extent, work should be carried out on the basis of performance for this configuration.



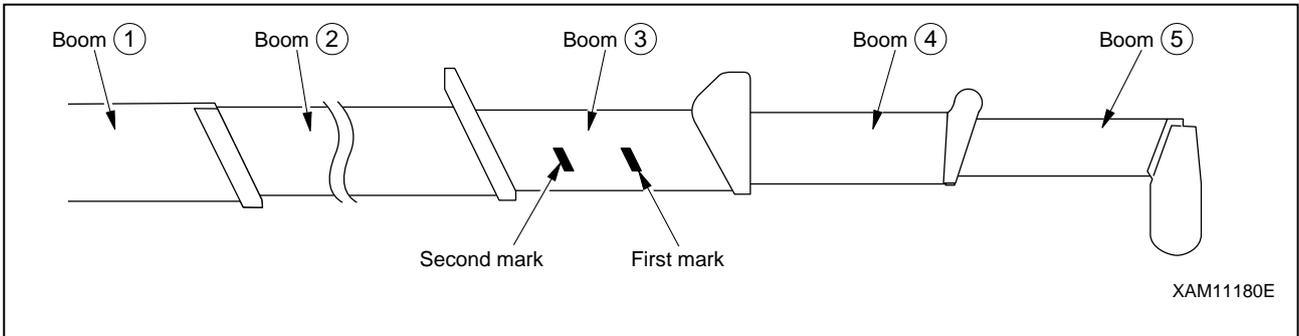
3. “5.575m Boom”: Boom extended to such extent that the first mark of the boom (3) is exposed. When the boom (3) is extended by any amount, however, work should be carried out according to the performance shown in this column.



4. "7.075m Boom": Boom extended to such extent that the second  mark of the boom (3) is exposed. When more than one-half of the first  mark of the boom (3) is exposed, your work should be carried out in accordance with the performance of this column.



5. "8.575m Boom": All the booms extended fully. When more than one-half of the second  mark of the boom (3) is exposed, your work should be carried out in accordance with the performance of this column.



## [2] OUTRIGGER MAXIMUM EXTENSION

### ⚠ WARNING

For crane work, be sure to extend all the outriggers. Never perform any crane work without setting up the outriggers. Otherwise the machine may tip over causing serious injury. Outriggers should be extended while watching levelling instrument so that the machine is set horizontally.

Tilting the machine more than three degrees activates alarm buzzer. To stop buzzer, place the machine horizontally.

For working without extending outriggers to maximum, see the values in "Rated Total Load Chart without extending outriggers to maximum" Working under improper value may cause the machine to tip over.

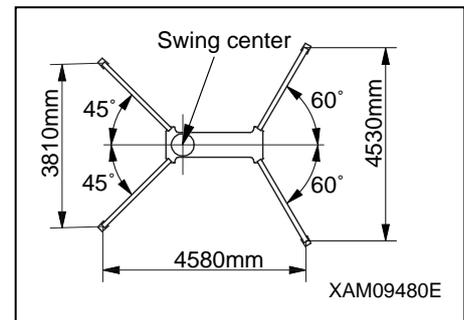
If you have retracted any positioning pin of outrigger inner box or outrigger base by even one hole, your work should be performed in accordance with the value of "Rated Total Load with Outrigger Extended to other than Maximum"

Swinging 360 degrees with a load lifted may expose the machine to an unstable position. Reduce the working radius and use sufficient care.

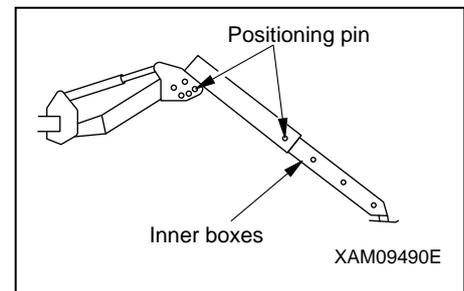
The figure shown at right represents the condition "When the crane is used with the outriggers extended to maximum" in the rated total load chart.

#### NOTES

With the Outriggers extended to maximum" means that, with the outriggers set to the standard extension (60 degrees front and 45 degrees rear), inner boxes of all the outriggers pulled out fully and linkage bracket positioning pins set at the maximum position, the outriggers are placed on level ground.

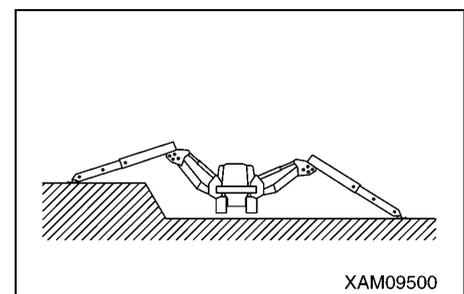


Any status other than that in the sketch to the right represents "Outrigger Extended to other than Maximum". See "OPERATION, 2.12 Setting up the outrigger" for proper placement.



#### NOTES

Even with all the outriggers extended to maximum, so long as the grounding surface of any one of them is not flush with bottom surface of track due to uneven terrain etc, the status will have to be defined as "Outriggers Extended to other than Maximum".



## 5.4 ANGLE INDICATOR

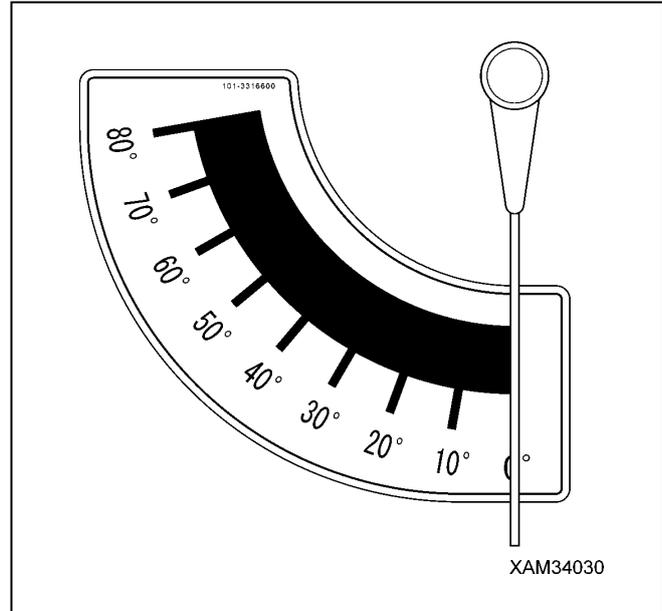
### **⚠ WARNING**

- Use the Boom angle indicator to check the angle of the boom in operation when the crane is operated from a distance; using a remote-controller, for instance.
- Before hoisting a load, always see the Rated total load Chart to determine the correct boom length (i.e. number of boom sections used) and angle, then check the actual weight of the load with the applicable rated total load and ensure that weight of both of the load itself and sling etc, never exceeds the rated total load. The Boom angle indicator is helpful to confirm the boom angle.

The Boom angle indicators are attached to both left and right sides of the No.1 Boom. The indicator consists of a scale plate and a pointer as shown in the figure on the right.

Use boom angle indicators as follows:

- Read the figure which the pointer indicates. The figure shows the "Boom angle" of the moment.





# SAFETY

1. BASIC PRECAUTIONS	2- 2
2. DRIVING RELATED PRECAUTIONS	2- 7
3. TRANSPORT PRECAUTIONS	2-21
4. BATTERY HANDLING PRECAUTIONS	2-23
5. MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS	2-25
6. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS	2-32

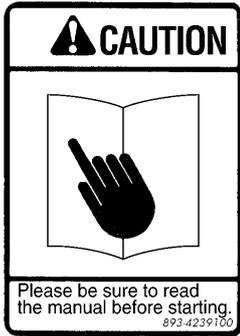
## **WARNING**

All the safety precautions defined in this manual should always be read and observed.  
Failure to follow the safety precautions can cause serious personal injury or death.

# 1. BASIC PRECAUTIONS

## OBSERVE THE MANUAL AND SAFETY LABELS

- Read well and understand this manual as well as the safety labels labelled on various part of this Machine. Attempt to drive/operate without understanding fully may result in wrong operation that may cause personal or equipment accidents.
- Fully understand the proper use and inspection/maintenance procedures, and exercise safe works.
- Make sure this manual and the safety labels labelled on various part of this Machine are legible all the time. Whenever illegibility or loss occurs, order us or our sales service agency and put the safety label back to the original location.

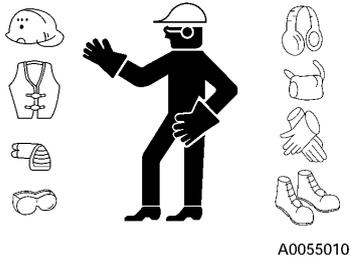


## DRIVING LICENSE

- Licenses are necessary to drive this Machine. Always obtain licenses before driving. ★See “Introduction 4. Qualification for Operation” for details
- The drivers are requested to receive educations and training of the handling methods and other subjects in the applicable office, and obtain sufficient driving operation skills before work.

## WEAR PROTECTIVE EQUIPMENT AND CLOTHES SUITABLE FOR WORK

- Always put on a helmet, safety shoes and safety belt. Make sure to wear, goggles, mask, gloves, hearing protectors, and safety belt suitable for the relevant working condition.
- Wear the necessary protective equipment suitable for the relevant working condition.
- Do not wear loose garments or accessory items that may catch an operation lever, starter switch, emergency stop switch or any protrusions that could cause unexpected movement of the Machine



## COMMIT TO SAFE OPERATION

- Obey the instructions and signs given by the manager and work supervisor, and observe safety first during the work.
- Obey the crane work basics during work.
- Always make sure to carry out inspections before using this machine.
- Do not work under bad weather for instance strong wind, thunder or mist.
- Do not drive under any condition when you are overtired, under the influence of alcohol or after taking a somnific drug.
- Obey all of the workplace rules, safety regulations and operation method sequences during driving operations and inspection/maintenance.
- Pay attention to surrounding conditions and pedestrians all the time when driving or working. Whenever pedestrian approaches unwarily, abort working once, and take a measure such as issuing a warning.
- When driving, be mentally prepared for unexpected situation and so that you can take measures immediately.
- Do not attempt any use out of the capabilities and purposes described in this manual under any circumstance.
- Observe the designated rated total load and work range when driving.
- Do not attempt inattentive driving, harsh driving or awkward operation under any circumstance.
- Pull out the key when leaving operation seat.

## USE OF MACHINE THAT WAS RENTED OR PREVIOUSLY USED BY SOMEONE ELSE

Check the following subjects in writing before using any Machine that was rented or previously used by someone else.

In addition, check the inspection record table for the maintenance conditions such as the periodic inspections.

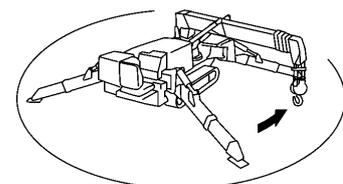
- (1) Crane capacity
- (2) Crane maintenance condition
- (3) Behaviour and disadvantage unique to the crane
- (4) Other subjects that require attention when driving
  - (a) operating condition of the brakes, crutches and others
  - (b) Presence/absence and lighting condition check-up of lightings and rotating lamps
  - (c) Operation condition of hook, winches, boom, outriggers and related

## PROVIDE SAFETY DEVICES FOR SURE

- Check that all guards and covers are attached properly. Repair immediately if damaged.
- Understand how to use the safety devices well and use properly.
- Do not detach any safety device under any circumstance. Keep control to achieve proper function all the time.
- Improper use of safety device may lead to serious accidents.
- Do not rely too much on the safety devices whilst operating.

## FOLLOW INSTRUCTIONS AND SIGNS WHEN WORKING

- When working with the crane, appoint a work supervisor and mutual signs beforehand, and follow the work supervisor and signs during work.
- When working at a location where many parts are unsealed from the driver, be especially careful to follow the instructions and signs of the work supervisor and pay attention when driving.
- When working with the crane, the clearance between the boom and the travelling dolly and also the gaps between the movable parts of the derrick cylinder may catch body parts such as an arm or finger. The driver is requested to make sure no one is within the working radius of the crane before operating crane.



XAM05500



A0055130

## PREPARE FOR ABNORMALITY

- Carry out secure inspections and services, and be careful to prevent accident before happening.
- Whenever you feel abnormality of the Machine, abort working immediately, ensure safety and report to the manager.
- Assign in advance who takes which solution to prevent secondary accident.
- Do not drive the Machine when fuel or hydraulic oil is leaking from the Machine. Report the manager what is the abnormality, and fully repair the fuel/hydraulic oil before use.  
The fuel for this Machine is light petroleum. Be especially careful for presence of fuel leak.
- Before leaving the Machine, lower the hoisted load to the ground, stop the engine and pull out the engine key.



A0055020

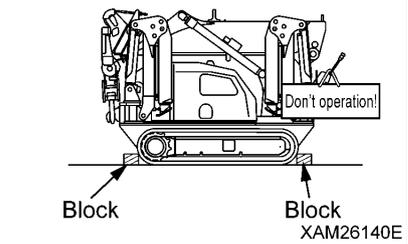
## TEMPORARY STORAGE WHEN ABNORMALITY IS FOUND WITH MACHINE

In case the Machine is found with an abnormality and is therefore stored temporarily waiting for service, apply following measures to notify all persons in the office that the use is prohibited due to failure.

- Indicate warning tags on the crane operation lever and other applicable parts.

Write clearly the information such as abnormality contents, name and contact of the storage manager, and the term of storage.

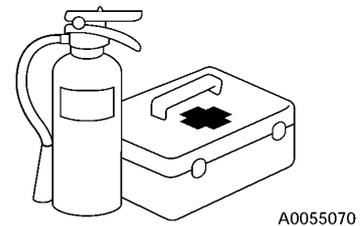
- Keep immovable when parking by for instance putting the blocks on the rubber tracks as pawls.
- Pull out the engine key and keep with you.



## PROVISION OF FIRE EXTINGUISHER AND FIRST AID BOX

Always observe followings to prepare for injuries and fires.

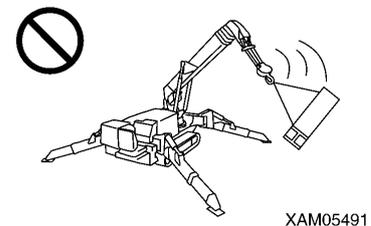
- To prepare in the case of a fire, decide on a location and install a fire extinguisher, and make sure to read the label for terms of usage.
- Decide the location to store the first aid box. In addition, inspect the first aid box periodically and replenish the contents as necessary.
- Decide the measures to take upon an injury or fire accident.
- Decide how to contact the emergency address (for instance the emergency physician, ambulance or fire department), and show the contact address at designated position so any person can make the contact.



## DO NOT RUSH AND BE CAREFUL WHEN WORKING

- Do not attempt sudden lever operation or harsh driving.
- When two or more cranes are within close proximity to each other, drive with care. If in doubt, appoint a guide to prevent machine contact.
- When abnormality or danger occurs during work, abort working immediately to avoid hazard.
- Abort the work under bad weather (heavy rain, strong wind, thunder, thick fog).

Decide whether to abort working by referring to the "work abort decision standard" in the work schedule and by discretion of the work supervisor of the site.



## DO NOT MODIFY

Do not modify the Machine without our written consent under any circumstance.

The modification raises a safety issue, so consult us or our sales service agency beforehand.

We cannot be held responsible for any bodily accident or failure caused by modification that was performed without consulting us.

## SAFETY WHEN REFILLING FUEL

- Light petroleum is used as the fuel of this Machine.  
Do not refill wrong kind of fuel.  
Refilling with the wrong kind of fuel as this may damage the engine.
- Always stop the engine before refilling fuel.  
Refilling the oil when engine is running may cause leaked fuel to draw fire from hot muffler or other substance.
- Overfilling the oil results in spillages and is dangerous. Refill slightly lower than the specified level.  
Always wipe away cleanly whenever the fuel spills.
- Securely close the tank cap after replenishing fuel.



A0055020



A0055040

## KEEP FIRE AWAY FROM OIL

Attempt to let a fire approach the fuel, hydraulic oil or engine oil may result in catching fire. Strictly observe the following.

- Do not allow any flames such as cigarettes or matches near flammable components.
- Securely close all of the fuel and oil container caps.
- Keep the fuel and oils in well-ventilated location.
- Store the fuel and oils in a secure location and prohibit public access.
- Do not leave the site when replenishing the fuel or oil.  
Be especially careful to observe "Safety when refilling fuel" (described earlier in this manual), when replenishing oil.
- Cleanly wipe away fuel and oil that is spilled during replenishment.



A0055020

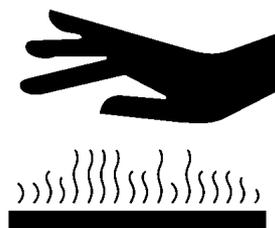


A0055040

## HANDLING HIGH TEMPERATURE

After stopping machine operations, the engine and engine oil, cooling water and hydraulic oil are hot for a short duration. There can also be a small accumulation of pressure from within the hydraulic oil tank. Attempts to inspect the engine, remove the radiator cap, drain oil, drain water or replace the filter at this time, will result in burns. Wait until the temperature drops, then follow the following sequences.

- To prevent emission of the high temperature oil, stop the engine and wait until the oil temperature drops, and when loosening the cap, turn slowly and relieve the pressure before detaching the cap. (To gauge the drop in oil temperature, place a hand near the surface of the hydraulic oil tank or similar location (making sure of no contact.)

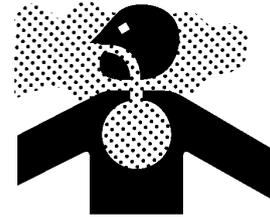


A0055050

## BEWARE OF ASBESTOS DUST

Inhalation of asbestos may result in lung cancer. This Machine does not contain asbestos, but asbestos may be found in the wall, ceiling or other construction locations within the worksite of this Machine. In addition, be careful of the followings when working with a material that may contain asbestos.

- Put on designated dust free mask and/or other protection equipment where necessary.
- Do not use compressed air for cleaning.
- Spray water when cleaning to prevent airborne asbestos dust.
- Always work at windward location when driving the Machine at a site that may contain asbestos dusts.
- Strictly observe the assigned rules related to the working site and environmental standard.



A0055060

## CRANE INJURY PREVENTION

Do not allow any part of your body to be caught:

- Between the boom and the travelling dolly.
- Between the outrigger support and the ground contact surface.
- Between the boom/post and the derrick cylinder.
- Between the winch drum and the wire ropes.
- Between sheaves and wire rope.
- Between the crawlers and the ground.

Such occurrences may cause serious harm to your person.



A0055130

## BEWARE OF EXHAUST GAS

To prevent the risk of gas-poisoning from starting the engine/handling fuel/cleaning oil/painting indoors or at a location with bad ventilation, open the windows and exit doors.

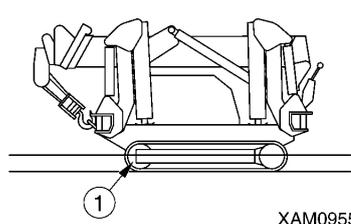
If the ventilation is insufficient even after opening the windows and exits, set up a ventilation fan.



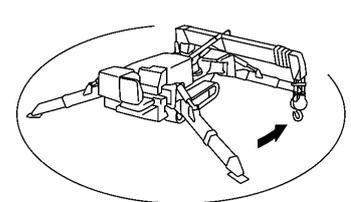
A0055060

## 2. DRIVING RELATED PRECAUTIONS

### 2.1 BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

<b>ESTABLISH SAFETY OF WORKING SITE</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Confirm that no danger is present at the working site before starting work.</li> <li>• Investigate the ground and road surface condition of the working site and decide the best working method.</li> <li>• Flatten the inclination of the working site as much as possible before starting work. Also, if sands and gravels are excessive, spray water before work.</li> <li>• When working over the roadway, enforce keep out by for instance placing guides or surrounding by barriers, and ensure the safety of the traffic vehicles and pedestrians.</li> <li>• Enforce keep out to prevent people from entering the working site and apply measures to prevent people from approaching. Attempt to approach moving Machine may result in hard collision by contact or pinching, and may result in serious bodily accidents and deaths.</li> <li>• When travelling in the water or crossing over shallow water, check the ground condition, depth and water velocity beforehand and make sure not to exceed the allowable water depth (no higher than centre of idler (1)).</li> </ul> <p>★ See “Operation 2.12 [2] Allowable Water Depth” for details</p>	 <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">XAM09550</p>

<b>INSPECTION BEFORE STARTING ENGINE</b>	
<p>Execute following inspections before the first engine start-up of the day.</p> <p>Omitting these inspections may result in serious bodily accidents.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect for the fuel/oil leak, accumulation of combustibles around the engine and battery systems, and similar potential problems.</li> </ul> <p>★ See “Operation 2.1.1 Visible checks” for details.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect the fuel quantity, cooling water quantity, hydraulic oil tank quantity, air cleaner blockage, electrical wiring damage, and check operations of safety devices and instruments.</li> </ul> <p>★ See “Operation 2.1.2 Checking Before starting engine” for details.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the operation levers are at neutral position. Check that the operation linkages operate adequately. Always repair if any result of the above is faulty.</li> </ul>	 <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">A0055020</p>

<b>CAUTIONS WHEN STARTING ENGINE</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure no person or object is within the boom swing radius area before starting engine.</li> <li>• Blow the horn for warning before starting the engine.</li> <li>• Do not start the engine by short-circuiting the starter circuit. This may cause a fire.</li> </ul>	 <p style="text-align: right; font-size: small;">XAM05500</p>

## 2.2 AFTER STARTING ENGINE

### INSPECTION AFTER STARTING ENGINE

Omitting the inspections after starting the engine results in delay to discover the Machine abnormalities, and may result in bodily accidents and Machine damages.

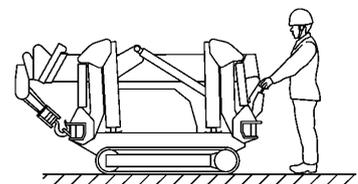
Inspection should be carried out in a clear area. No unauthorized persons should be able to approach the machine.

- Inspect the equipment operation conditions, Machine travelling conditions, outrigger operation conditions, winch winding up and down, boom derricking, and crane operation conditions such as extension, retraction and swinging.
- Inspect the sound, vibration, heat and odour of the Machine, and check for instrument errors, air leaks, oil leaks, fuel leaks, water leaks and other bad factors. Be extra careful with fuel leaks.
- Always repair broken part whenever an abnormality is found.  
Attempt to use without servicing may result in unexpected bodily accidents and/or Machine failures.

### CAUTIONS WHEN STARTING TO MOVE MACHINE

To prevent serious injuries and accidental deaths, implement the following actions before moving the machine.

- Set the Machine to the travelling posture in the right diagram.  
Do not travel when the hook block is not contained.
- Make sure the boom is fully lowered and retracted.
- Fix the hook block to the containment position.
- Make the outrigger contained.
- ★ See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travel Posture" for details.
- Make sure again that no one or object is in the vicinity before starting to move.
- Blow the horn for warning before starting to move.
- Always remain seated in the cab seat during travelling operation of the Machine.
- The Machine is prohibited to travel when a person or load is on the travelling dolly or the boom.
- When travelling, stow hook and outrigger, and make sure the surrounding area is safe.
- When stowing outriggers, insert each position pins completely to lock.

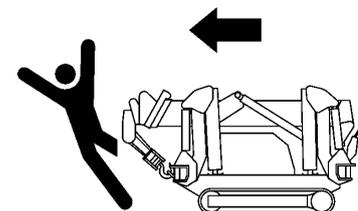


XAM09560

### CAUTIONS WHEN MOVING FORWARD/BACKWARD OR CHANGING DIRECTION

Always observe following to prevent serious injuries and accidental death when moving the Machine.

- Drop the speed early and wait until the Machine stops before changing from forward to backward, or backward to forward.
- Blow the horn and alert to the people nearby before changing between forward/backward movements or changing direction.
- Check that no one is around the Machine.  
The front of the Machine frame requires special attention because certain part of vision is blocked, so stop the Machine as necessary and make sure no one is in front or around.
- Place a guide if the location is hazardous or with bad view.
- Make sure to prevent people from encroaching on the machine pathway.

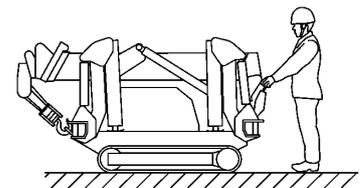


XAM09570

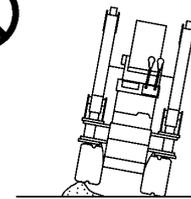
## CAUTIONS WHEN TRAVELLING

Always observe the following to prevent serious injuries and accidental deaths when the Machine is travelling.

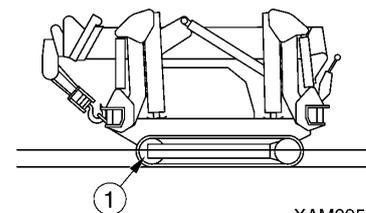
- Do not attempt looking sideways or other dangerous act when driving.
- Do not over speed, start moving sudden, stop sudden, swing sudden or meander since such acts are dangerous.
- ALWAYS remain seated in the cab seat when operating during drive.
- Whenever you find a machine abnormality (sound, vibration, odour, instrument error, fuel leak, water leak or oil leak), immediately park the Machine in a safe location and inspect the cause.
- Do not operate to suddenly change the direction. Such may cause the Machine to lose the balance or to damage the Machine or nearby object.
- When travelling over uneven terrain, travel as slow as possible to prevent tripping, and avoid acute operation when changing the direction.
- Avoid moving over obstacles as much as possible.  
Travel as slowly as possible when moving over an obstacle for unavoidable reason. Also, do not move diagonally over obstacles that cause the Machine to tilt excessively (10 degrees or more).
- When travelling, ensure extra clearance to prevent accident of contacting other machinery or object.
- When travelling in the water or crossing over shallow water, check the ground condition, depth and water velocity beforehand and make sure not to exceed the allowable water depth (no higher than centre of idler (1)).
- Check the withstand ability against the Machine mass before crossing over a bridge or construction that is a private property. In case of highway, ask the applicable road management administration and follow the given advice.
- Do Not travel with load hoisted.



XAM09560



XAM09581

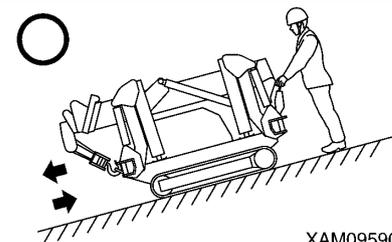


XAM09550

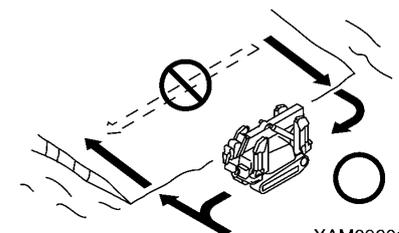
## BE CAREFUL WHEN TRAVELLING OVER SLOPE

ALWAYS observe followings to prevent serious injuries and death accidents when travelling over a slope for unavoidable reason.

- Be careful of tripping and skids when travelling over slope.
- Do not change orientation on or horizontally when travelling over slope. Practice safe travelling by for instance lowering to the plain land and divert.
- ★ See "Operation 2.11 [3] Cautions on Upward/downward slope" for details.
- Beware of skidding on grass, fallen leaves, and on wet steel plates.  
Avoid the Machine from being horizontal over the slope as much as possible, and decrease the speed sufficiently.
- Travel slowly at low speeds when travelling downhill. In addition, brake (by setting the travel lever to neutral) when necessary.



XAM09590



XAM09601

## BE CAREFUL OF TRIPPING ON UNSTABLE GROUND

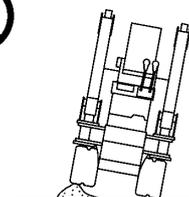
Always observe the following to prevent serious injuries and death accidents when travelling over an unstable ground for unavoidable reasons.

- Do not enter soft ground area. The machine may get stuck.
- The ground near cliff, roadside and deep gully is unstable, so avoid going near such ground as much as possible.

The Machine may trip or fall when the ground loosens due to mass and/or vibration of the Machine. Be especially careful after rain, use of dynamite, or earthquakes, as the ground will be unstable.

- Avoid going near the earth fills or vicinity of dug gutter that are instable.

Crumbles caused by mass and/or vibration of the Machine may cause the Machine to tilt.

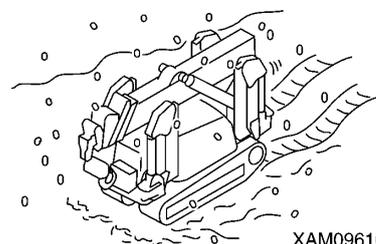


XAM09581

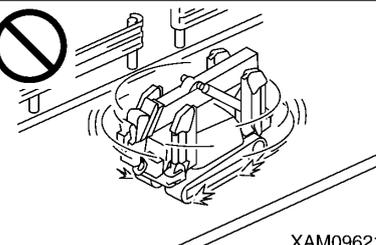
## CAUTIONS WHEN SNOW COVERED OR FROZEN

Always observe the following to prevent serious injuries and death accidents when travelling over snow covered ground or frozen road for unavoidable reason.

- The snow covered grounds and frozen roads cause slips even when the inclination is small, so decrease the speed when travelling and avoid starting sudden, stopping sudden stop and swinging sudden. Uphill and downhill are especially likely to cause slips and thus dangerous.
- Ground of the frozen road becomes soft when the air temperature rises and causes the Machine travels and other operations to be unstable. Be very careful.
- In cold weather conditions, check that the hoist load is not frozen to the ground or other substance. Attempt to hoist without knowing the load is frozen stuck to the ground or other substance is dangerous.
- Refrain from touching metal surface in cold and harsh weather conditions, as it may result in the skin freezing to the metal surface.
- Remove snow and/or ice laid on the Machine that causes the safety nameplates to be hard to read. Be especially careful to securely remove those that are on the boom and thus may fall.



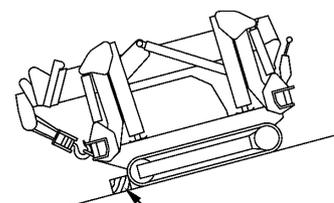
XAM09610



XAM09621

## CAUTIONS WHEN PARKING

- Park at a location where the ground is level; rock falls, landslides, and flooding does not occur.
- To park on a slope for unavoidable reason, use blocks as pawls to immobilize the Machine.
- When parking on the street, place the flags, protection barriers, lighting and similar objects, and caution notices without interfering the traffic, so that other travelling machines can notice clearly.
- Stop the engine before leaving the Machine.  
Always bring back the starter key with you and store in a fixed location.
- Stop the engine before leaving the Machine.
- When parking, the lock lever must be placed to "Lock".



Block

XAM09630E

## CAUTIONS UNDER COLD WEATHER

- Remove snow and defrost the swing gear, boom and winch related parts, and check the movements before starting work.

- Warm up enough.

Operating levers and switches with a cold engine causes the machine to be lethargic, and may result in unexpected accidents.

- Avoid sharp acceleration for a short time after initial engine ignition.
- Increase the oil temperature of the hydraulic circuit by relieving the oil pressure (let the pneumatic oil to escape to the hydraulic oil tank by raising to above the hydraulic circuit set pressure) by using operation lever. Doing so improves the Machine reactions and prevents improper operations.

- If the battery fluid is frozen, do not charge battery or start the engine using other power source.

Such act may cause the battery to catch fire.

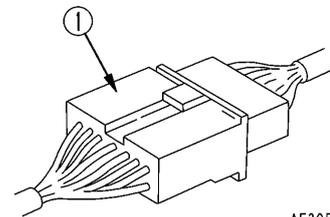
Defreeze the battery fluid and check for battery fluid leak before re-charging or starting the engine.

- After end of the work, wipe off and apply wraps if substances such as condensation, snow or mud are stuck to the wire harness, connector (1), switches, sensors or similar part.

If the infiltrated condensation and/or similar substance freeze, the Machine may operate improperly upon the next use and cause unexpected accidents.



A0055170



AE305820

## 2.3 WORKING WITH CRANE

### INSPECTION BEFORE STARTING WORK

Check that the safety devices and crane operate properly.

- Operate each of the operation levers and switches under no load, and check that operations take place without abnormality.

Repair immediately if any abnormality exists.

- Check that the safety devices such as the moment limiter, outrigger safety device, and over hoist detector / automatic stop device activate properly.

### CAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING MOMENT LIMITER

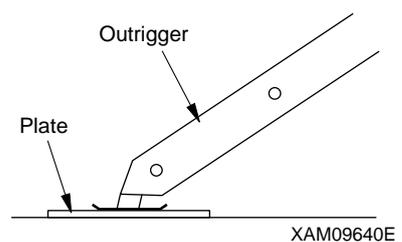
- Use/store the moment limiter under the following ranges of ambient temperature.  
★ Temperature of use: 10 to 50 °C Storage temperature: -20 to 60 °C
- Avoid direct sunlight so that the temperature of the moment limiter body does not exceed the above range.
- Avoid locations with strong acid or alkaline atmosphere as much as possible. Otherwise, unexpected failures may occur.
- Do not apply impact to the moment limiter body for instance by colliding with an object. Such attempt may damage the case and may result in failures and improper operations.
- Do not push the panel sheet of the moment limiter body by a force more than necessary or push with sharp object such as a tip of a screwdriver. Such act may damage the panel sheet and may result in failures and improper operations.
- Do not remove the case cover or panel sheet from, or disassemble the moment limiter body. Such act may damage case and/or panel sheet and may result in failures and improper operations.

### CAUTIONS WHEN SETTING UP MOMENT LIMITER

- The moment limiter calculates the moments assuming the Machine is level.  
If you work with the crane when the Machine is not level, warnings and alarms are not issued even when the rated total load is near.  
Always set the outrigger horizontally to the ground while looking at the level gauge.
- Before using the crane, check that the boom angle display, boom length display and real load display of the moment limiter are displayed correctly following the crane movements. Attempt to use without correct display results in failure to obtain correct measurement result and may result in serious bodily accidents caused by reasons such as an improper operation and/or breakage of nearby equipment.
- Always make sure the wire strand setting of the moment limiter matches with the wire strand of the crane. If the wire strands do not match, always let the wire strands match by changing the wire strand setting of the moment limiter or by changing the wire strand of the crane. Attempt to use with unmatched wire strands results in failure to obtain correct measurement result and may result in serious bodily accidents caused by reasons such as an improper operation and/or breakage of nearby equipment.
- Do not carelessly change the setting when measuring with the moment limiter. Such attempt results in failure to obtain correct measurement result and may result in serious bodily accidents caused by reasons such as an improper operation and/or breakage of nearby equipment.

### PLACE CRANE ON LEVEL AND HARD SOIL

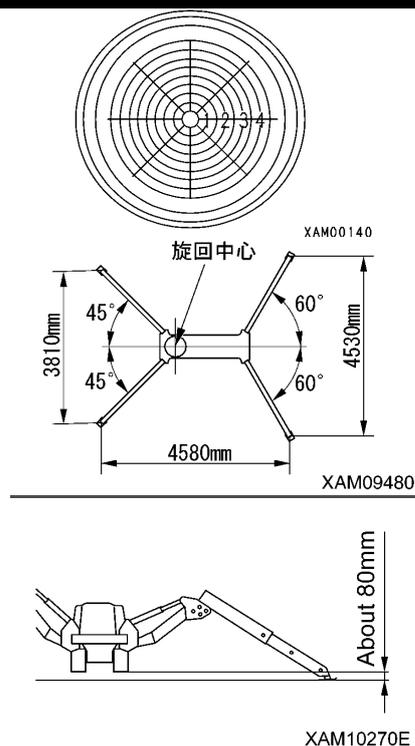
- Always place the outriggers on a level, stable and solid ground.  
Attempt to work with crane without outriggers firmly contacting the ground may cause the Machine to fall.
- Always place all outriggers before working with crane.
- Do not set any outrigger near an unsteady location such as soft ground, verge or drilled hole.  
In case the outriggers need to be placed on soft ground for an unavoidable reason, always reinforce the ground by laying a sufficiently large and strong base plate below each outrigger supports.



## CHECK OUTRIGGER PLACEMENT CONDITION

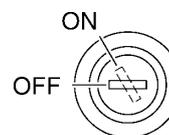
Always observe followings to prevent serious injuries and death accidents when placing the outriggers.

- When placing the outriggers, always keep the Machine sternly level while looking at the level gauge. Occasionally view the level gauge and make sure to keep the Machine level during the crane works as well.
- Always place the outriggers at maximum extension  
In case of placing in a non-maximum extension condition for unavoidable reason, always find the values outrigger middle extension or outrigger minimum extension values in the rated total load chart before work.
- Place the outriggers so that the rubber tracks are approximately 80 mm above the ground.
- Make sure all of the outrigger position pins are securely fixed.



## CAUTIONS WHEN PLACING OUTRIGGER

- Do not let people approach the machine when placing the outriggers.  
Otherwise, serious accidents such as feet being trapped may occur.
- Always set the emergency stop cancel switch at side of the instrument panel to OFF (auto) position before outrigger operation. Do not attempt any outrigger operation with the emergency stop cancel switch at ON (cancel) position.  
Inspections and maintenance works are the only occasions where the emergency stop cancel switch is set to ON (cancel) position.

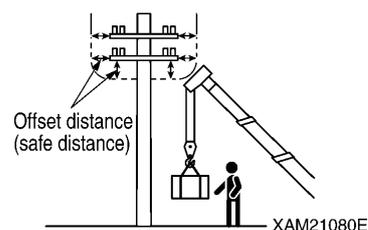
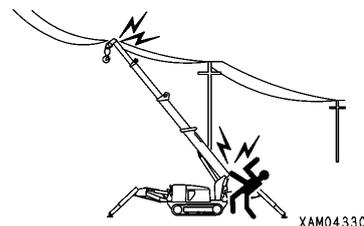


XAM19641

## BEWARE OF ELECTRICAL CABLE ABOVE

- Do not let the Machine touch electrical cables above. High voltage cables may also inflict electrical shock by close proximity.
- Persons who sling are likely to suffer electrical shocks. Always observe the following to prevent accidents.
  - If the boom or the wire ropes may contact an electrical cable in the workplace, consult the electricity company and make sure that the measures (measures for instance placement of a guard personnel or application of wrap tubes and warning tags to the electrical cable) stipulated by the related regulations are taken before starting work.
  - Put on rubber soled shoes and rubber gloves, and be careful that the body parts unprotected by rubber or other insulation do not contact the wire rope or the Machine frame.
  - Place a guide and let him/her watch so that the boom, wire rope or Machine frame does not go near the electrical cable too much. Before doing so, decide the emergency signs and other necessities.
  - Ask the electricity company for the voltage in the electrical cables in the working site.
  - Ensure the offset distances (safe distance) shown in the following table between the boom/Machine frame and electrical cables.

	Voltage of Electrical Cable	Minimum Safe Distance
Low voltage (Distribution line)	100·200V	2m
	6,600V	2m
Special (Transmission line)	22,000V	3m
	66,000V	4m
	154,000V	5m
	187,000V	6m
	275,000V	7m
	500,000V	11m



## MEASURES WHEN CHARGE ACCIDENT OCCURS

If an electric surge occurs, react calmly and apply these solutions in sequence.

### 1. Report

Immediately report to the electricity company or related management company, and receive instructions for the power transmission stop, emergency procedures and related.

### 2. Evacuation of related personnel from vicinity of Machine

Remove all personnel, including workers, from the vicinity of the machine to prevent secondary disasters.

Personnel who suffered electrical shock by holding a sling rope, guide rope or other conductor when the Machine was charged should evacuate by his/her own effort.

Do not try to help personnel affected by electric shock. Otherwise, secondary electrical shock accident occurs.

### 3. Emergency procedure

In the case of personnel receiving an electric shock due to the machine being electrically charged, do the following:

(1) If the machine is operational, immediately move it to a safe location away from the cause of the electrical charge. Take care not to break or disrupt the distribution power cable.

(2) Move the machine to a safe location, after making sure the machine is not electrically charged, and then carry any affected personnel to hospital.

### 4. Measure after accident

After accident, do not reuse as is. Such attempt may cause unexpected accidents and enhances failures.

Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.

## CAUTIONS WHEN WORKING WITH CRANE IN LOCATION WITH HIGH OUTPUT MICROWAVE EMISSION

Working with crane near high output microwave emission equipment such as a radar or TV/radio broadcast antenna causes the crane construction to be exposed to the microwave and generates induced current, therefore is very dangerous. In addition, the mechatronics may become haywire.

Establish grounding between the Machine frame and the ground when working in such location. In addition, slingers are requested to wear rubber boots and rubber gloves since risk of electrical shock by contacting parts such as the hook or wire exists.

## PAY ATTENTION TO WEATHER INFORMATION

- In case of thunderstorm, risk of lightning exists, so abort working with crane, immediately lower the load and contain the boom.
  - Winds can cause the hoisted load to move to and fro, which could cause the machine to become unstable. If the hoisted load is affected, immediately lower the load and contain the boom.
  - If the maximum instantaneous wind speed is 10 m/s or greater, abort working with crane, immediately lower the load and contain the boom.
  - Even when the maximum instantaneous wind speed is below 10 m/s, a bigger hoist load, or a higher hoist load position, or even an extended boom length can increase the effect from the wind. Be fully careful during work.
  - When a load such as a steel plate that has a large area exposed to wind is being hoisted, the wind arriving from front/rear/side of the boom may cause the Machine to trip or damage the boom. Take necessary precautions.
  - When an earthquake occurs, abort working and wait until the earthquake is over.
- ★The following table indicates approximate relation between the wind speed and wind effect. The wind speed mentioned in the weathercast is mean wind velocity (m/s) during 10 minutes at 10 m above the ground.

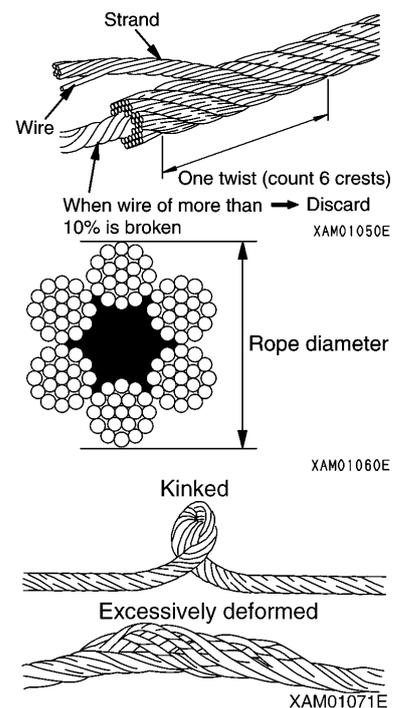
Force	Wind Speed (m/s)	Effect On Land
0	Less than 0.3	Smoke rises vertically.
1	0.3 - below 1.6	Wind motion visible in smoke.
2	1.6 - below 3.4	Wind felt on exposed skin.
3	3.4 - below 5.5	Leaves and smaller twigs in constant motion.
4	5.5 - below 8.0	Dust and loose paper raised. Small branches begin to move.
5	8.0 - below 10.8	Smaller trees sway. Some foam and spray.
6	10.8 - below 13.9	Large branches in motion. Whistling heard in overhead wires. Umbrella use becomes difficult.
7	13.9 - below 17.2	Whole trees in motion. Effort needed to walk against the wind.
8	17.2 - below 20.8	Twigs broken from trees. Progress impeded.
9	20.8 - below 24.5	Light structure damage. Slates blown off.
10	24.5 - below 28.5	Trees uprooted. Considerable structural damage.
11	28.5 - below 32.7	Widespread structural damage.

## CAUTIONS WHEN SLINGING

- Check the following before hoisting a load.  
Attempt to hoist the load without checking may result in serious bodily accidents by a drop of the load or tripping.
- Observe the values in the rated total load chart.
- Hoist from the centre of gravity of the load.
- Check that the wire ropes of the hook block are perpendicular to the ground.
- When the load leaves the ground, stop winding up the load once and check whether the load is stable.
- Before hoisting a slung load, always check whether the sling wire rope "retainer device" of the hook block is hung correctly. If the "retainer device" is not hung, the wire rope may leave the hook block and cause the load to fall resulting in a serious accident.
- Larger wire rope angle when hoisting the load increases force that applies to the wire rope even when the load weight is unchanged, thus may cause the wire rope to snip. Pay enough consideration well when slinging to prevent excessive force from applying to the wire rope.
- Only hoist one load at a time.  
Attempts to hoist more than one load may cause the hoist bracket to hit and damage the other hoisted load, the loads to move and lose balance and cause trip, or other cause of serious accidents.  
Do not hoist more than one load even if the total combined weight is within the rated total load.
- Hoisting of lengthy load causes the load to lose balance and is dangerous.  
In case such load, hoist vertically by using a clamp, or achieve balance of the hoisted load by applying a rope to both ends of the load.

## CAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING WIRE ROPE

- Wire ropes can wear out from constant use or old age, so be sure to inspect every time before work, and replace immediately if at or beyond the replacement standard.  
At the same time, inspect the sheave at the tip of the boom and the sheave of the hook block. Damaged sheaves accelerate the damage of the wire ropes.
- Use the wire ropes specified by us.
- Always put on leather gloves when handling the wire rope.
- Handling worn and damaged wire may cause injury from wire splinter.
- Do not use any wire rope of which any of the following applies:
  - 10% or more of the wires (except the filler wires) in one twist of the wire rope are snapped.
  - The wire rope diameter abrasion is beyond 7% of the nominal diameter.
  - Wire rope is kinked.
  - Wire rope is excessively deformed or corroded.
  - Affected by heat or sparks.



## CAUTIONS WHEN WORKING WITH CRANE

- Be sure to verify that the emergency stop cancel switch is at the OFF (auto) position before operating the crane.

Do not attempt the crane operation when the emergency stop cancel switch is at the ON (cancel) position. The emergency stop cancel switch is permitted to be at the ON (cancel) position only during inspection or maintenance works.

- Crane works are not possible when the outriggers are placed in extension condition. Also, the crane work is halted when an outrigger support leaves the ground during the crane work. Securely place the crane in the extension condition, and avoid operations and works that may cause the machine to vibrate when working with the crane.
- Attempt to work beyond the capacity of the Machine may cause serious accidents and failures caused by for instance tripping or fluctuation. Observe the rated total load chart when working with the crane.
- Do not travel with a load being hoisted under any circumstances.

This may cause the crane to fall over resulting in serious accidents.

- Be slow when operating the crane.

Sudden lever or accelerator use may cause risks such as shaking, dropping of the load or collision with the surrounding. Be especially careful to be slow during the swing operations.

- Do not allow unauthorized personnel to approach the working area because of falling load risks which may cause serious accidents. Also consider that the working radius increases when the load is hoisted and the boom is deflected.

• Bad weather can impair vision. Work lamps or other lighting devices should be used for crane safety in dark places.

When the view is bad because of bad weather (rain, fog, snow), stop working and wait until the weather recovers.

- Do not use for purpose, for instance raising a person using a crane, other than the true purpose.
- If the overwinding detector alarm buzzer is heard, immediately remove your hand from the winch lever. The hook block winding stops. Then, operate the winch lever to Down (push forward) to wind down the hook block. In addition, the hook block is wound up when the boom is extended, so be sure to ensure extra clearance between the boom and the hook block during work.
- When the boom extends, the hook block is wound up.

Operate the winch lever to Down (push forward) to wind down the hook block while you extend the boom.

- Whenever an overload occurs during work, lower the load by winding down the winch by setting the winch lever to Down (push forward).

Do not raise or lower the boom acutely. Such attempt may cause serious accidents by tripping.

- The volume of the hydraulic oil in each of the cylinders changes depending on the temperature. By leaving idle with a load being hoisted, as the time passes by the oil temperature drops and the hydraulic oil volume decreases, and changes such as the boom derrick angle decrease and boom length decrease may occur.

In that case, execute boom derricking operations and boom extension operations appropriately to correct.

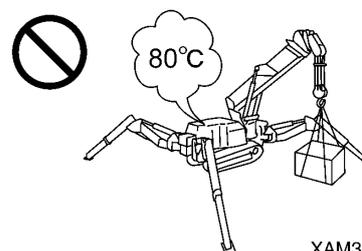
- Do not leave the driving operation position when a load is hoisted.  
Lower the load before leaving the Machine.
- Keep the hook block wound up when not in use.  
This is to prevent persons colliding with the unloaded hook block.
- Operator must not leave operation seat during operation.

## CAUTIONS HIGH TEMPERATURE OIL WHEN WORKING WITH CRANE

When hydraulic oil temperature exceeds 80 degrees, high pressure hoses and seals can be damaged by heat, and it may cause burning to skin from oil spray.

If temperature of hydraulic oil exceeds 80 degrees, stop operation and wait until the oil cools down.

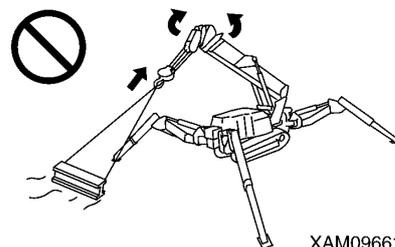
Continuous operation of hook raising and lowering at high engine speeds especially with long rope falls will raise the oil temperature. Take special care during these operations.



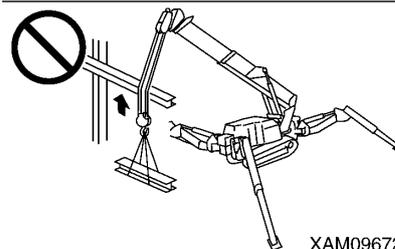
XAM35680

## CAUTIONS WHEN OPERATING WINCH

- Do not allow persons to enter the area below the hoisted load.
  - When hoisting a load, always stop once at the "takeoff" position where the hoisted load leaves the ground. Check subjects such as load stability and load force, then hoist up the load.
  - Do not pull laterally, pull toward you or hoist diagonally. Such attempt may cause the crane to trip or suffer damage.
  - Overwinding of the hook block may result in collision with the boom, snipping the wire ropes and causing the hook block and load to fall and cause serious accidents. Take care to prevent overwinding the hook block.
  - Be careful to prevent the wire rope and/or hoisted load from contacting an obstacle such as a tree or steel when hoisting a load. If caught by an obstacle, do not forcibly wind up the hoist load, but untangle the caught part before winding up.
  - Do not use the winch drum wire rope in random condition. If random, not only the wire rope suffers damage and shortens the lifetime, but the wire rope may snip and causes serious accidents. Observe following precautions to avoid wire rope from becoming random.
    - Do not let the hook block hit the ground.
    - Before leaving the hook block lowered for a long time for instance when working below ground, leave at least three loops of wire rope on the winch drum.
    - If the wire rope is twisted and causes the hook block to turn, fully eliminate the twist before work.
- ★ See "Operation 4.2 What to do with Twisted Winch Wire Rope" for details.



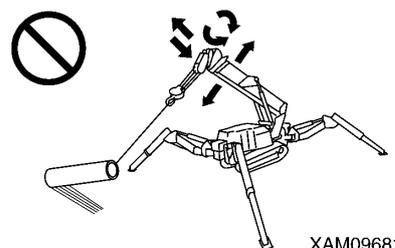
XAM09661



XAM09672

## CAUTIONS WHEN OPERATING BOOM

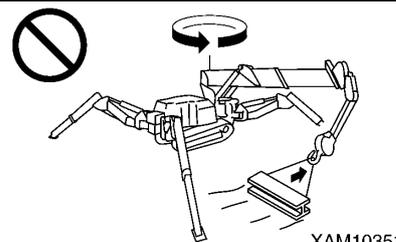
- Work at slow speeds as much as possible when operating the boom operation lever. Especially avoid sudden lever operations when the load is hoisted, which may cause the load to wobble and give large impact to the Machine, and thus may damage the crane or trip the Machine.
- When the boom is lowered, the working radius increases, and the rated total load that can be hoisted decreases. When working while raising/lowering the boom, pay extra attention so that the mass (weight) of the load at the time the boom is most lowered does not cause overloading.
- Do not attempt, under any circumstances, to pull the load laterally by raising/lowering, and/or extracting/retracting the boom.
- Be aware of the hook block windup condition and exercise caution when extending or retracting the boom.
- When the boom is extended, the working radius increases, and the rated total load that can be hoisted decreases. When working with extending/retracting the boom, pay extra attention so that the mass (weight) of the load at the time the boom is most lowered does not cause overloading.



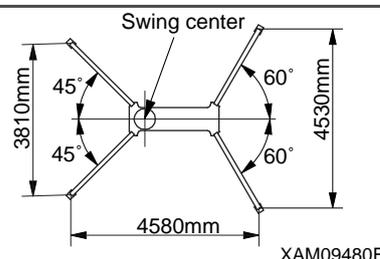
XAM09681

## CAUTIONS DURING SWING OPERATION

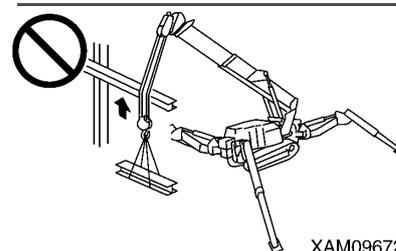
- Check the safety in the vicinity and blow the horn before swinging.
- If the boom derrick angle is small, be careful to prevent the boom from hitting the driver or the Machine.
- Be slow as much as possible when operating the swing lever. Make sure to start smoothly, swing slow, and stop quietly. Especially avoid sudden lever operations when the load is hoisted, which may cause the load to waggle and cause the Machine to lose balance, and thus may damage the crane or trip the Machine.
- Attempts to pull the load towards the machine or let the load stand up by swinging operation are strictly prohibited. Do not attempt under any circumstance.
- Be careful to prevent the wire rope and/or hoisted load from contacting an obstacle such as a tree or steel when hoisting a load or when swinging. If caught by an obstacle, do not forcibly wind up the hoist load, but untangle the caught part before winding up.
- Certain outrigger extension condition may cause the boom to hit an outrigger and cause the crane to be damaged or the Machine to trip. Be careful to prevent the boom from hitting outriggers during swing operation.



XAM10351



XAM09480E



XAM09672

## COOPERATION HOISTING IS PROHIBITED AS THE RULE

Cooperation hoisting, where two or more cranes are used to hoist a single load, is strictly prohibited. Cooperation hoisting is very hazardous and may cause the machine to fall due to an uneven centre of gravity, unscheduled fall of the hoist load or boom damage. If cooperation hoisting is required for unavoidable reasons, discuss and establish a work scheme under the responsibility of the user, let the worker fully acknowledge the work method and procedures, and only proceed under the direct leadership of the work supervisor. Also, observe the following cautions:

- Use the cranes of same model.
- Choose the Machine model that can handle sufficiently larger load than the load to be hoisted.
- Make sure only one person gives signals.
- Limit the crane operations to single operations as a rule, and do not attempt any swing operation.
- Appoint one responsible slinger who is most experienced.

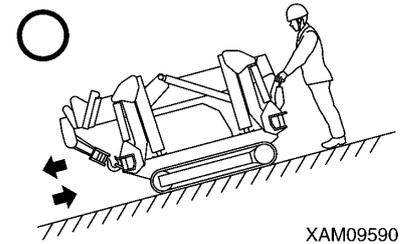
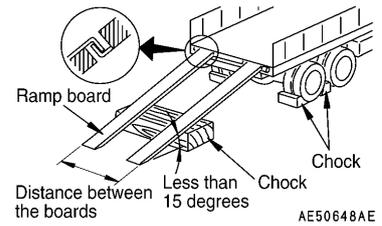
## WORKING AT THE SITE WITH UNDERGROUND LIFTING

- Leave at least three loops of wire rope in the winch drum when winding down the wire rope in case of underground work or similar occasion. This Machine is equipped with three-winding stop alarm / automatic stop device as the safety device, but even then take care to prevent this safety device from activating.
- Make sure signs are communicated fully.
- Be especially careful with the crane operations.

### 3. TRANSPORT PRECAUTIONS

#### CAUTIONS WHEN LOADING OR UNLOADING

- Be especially careful when loading or unloading the Machine because the risks intervene.
- Select a location that is level and has firm road surface when loading or unloading the Machine. In addition, keep enough distance from the roadside.
- Use the ramps under 15 degrees or smaller angle. In addition, decide the clearance between ramps to meet the centre of the rubber tracks.
- Always set the Machine in the "travelling posture" and securely insert the position pins (4 pieces) to the outrigger rotary parts before loading or unloading the Machine.
- ★ See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travel Posture" for details.
- Always move backward when loading the Machine. Moving forward may cause the machine to fall.
- When loading or unloading, set the engine rotation to low idling (low speed rotation) and operate slowly by low speed travels.
- Use the ramps that have fully strong width, length and thickness, and that enable safe loading/unloading.  
Reinforce with blocks or other substances if the ramps deflect much.
- Remove the mud and other substances from the footing to prevent the Machine from skidding over the ramps. Remove the substances stuck on the ramps such as grease, oil or ice, and keep clean.  
Be especially careful in the rainy days where slips easily occur.
- Do not change direction over a ramp. Temporarily leave the ramp before correcting the direction.
- Be slow when operating to change the direction on the truck platform where the footing is unstable.
- After loading the Machine, apply the wood blocks so that the Machine does not move, and securely fix with wire ropes or other means.
- ★ See "Operation 5.1 Loading/unloading" for details.
- ★ See "Operation 5.3 Cautions in Loading Machine" for details.



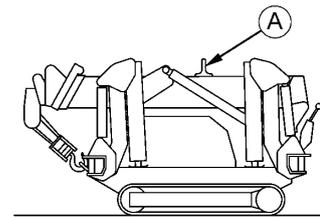
#### CAUTIONS DURING TRANSPORT

Observe the related regulations and exercise safety during transport.

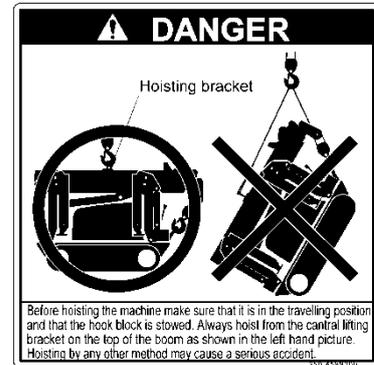
## CAUTIONS WHEN LOADING/UNLOADING WITH CRANE

Be careful of the following when loading or unloading the Machine by hoisting with a crane.

- When lifting up the Machine, always set it to the stowage position first, and lift from the lifting bracket (A) on the top of the boom. Only use this bracket and a single wire sling. Any other manner than this, i.e. from other lifting brackets or multiple sling wires, may cause the machine to drop and result in a serious injury or death. Where there is no choice and the machine has to be hoisted in a different manner, please contact us or service agencies.



XAM10511



- Only use a sling (e.g. wire rope and shackles) which is approved and capable of lifting the mass (weight) of the machine.
- The crane's stowed posture when it is hoisted means its "travelling position" where the 4 outrigger position pins are securely inserted in the outrigger rotary plate.

The centre of balance of the machine is specified subject to the machine being in its travelling position. Also make sure to secure the hook block (4) to its stowing position and tension the wire rope which will prevent the boom derricking cylinder from extending.

★ See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travel Position" for details.

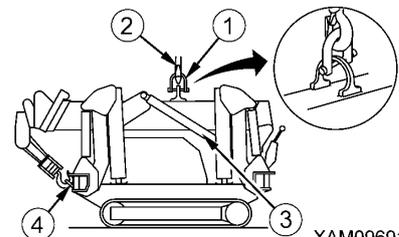
- When the machine is hoisted in for an extensive time, the boom derricking cylinder may extend which causes the centre of balance of the machine to change and put it out of balance.

Thus, hoisting should be limited to within 10 minutes.

- Where it is required to hoist the machine for a longer time (exceeding 10 minutes), or when it is carried by a helicopter, use a proper carriage deck as shown in the diagram on the right, for safe transportation.

★ Recommended hoisting equipment

- Shackle: BC or SC, nominal 14



XAM09691



XAM03900

## 4. BATTERY HANDLING PRECAUTIONS

### BATTERY HANDLING CAUTIONS

The battery fluid contains diluted sulphuric acid that generates hydrogen gas, and causes bodily accidents and fires if handle improperly, so always observe the following precautions:

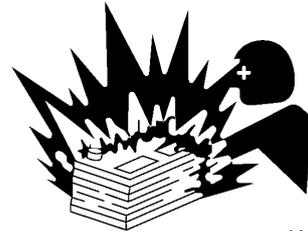
- Do not let a cigarette or any fire source approach the battery.
- Always put on protective glasses and rubber gloves before handling the battery.
- If the battery fluid contacted clothing or skin, immediately wash away by huge quantity of water.
- If the battery fluid enters an eye, wash immediately with water and see the doctor as soon as possible.
- If you have accidentally swallowed the battery fluid, immediately drink a huge quantity of water, milk, raw egg or vegetable oil, and see the doctor as soon as possible.
- Wipe with a wet clean cloth when cleaning the battery upper surface or related part. Do not use organic solvent or detergent e.g. gasoline or paint thinner.
- Tighten the battery cap fully.
- If the battery fluid is frozen, do not charge battery or start the engine using other power source. Such act may cause the battery to catch fire.
- Before charging or starting up using other power source, defreeze the battery fluid and check that failures such as battery fluid leak do not exist.
- Always detach the battery from the Machine frame before charging the battery.



A0055040



A0055090

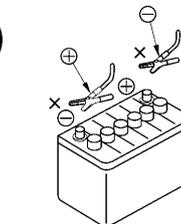


A0055170

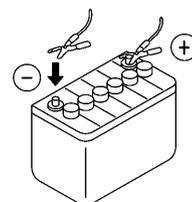
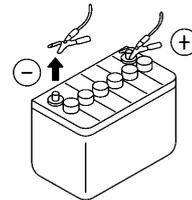
### CAUTIONS WHEN STARTING UP USING BOOSTER CABLE

Wrong booster cable connection method may result in fire, so always observe the following.

- Start the engine by two persons, with one standing on the driving operation position in the travel operation panel side.
- When starting using other Machine, be careful to prevent contact between the normal Machine and broken Machine.
- Keep the starter switch key of both the normal Machine and the broken Machine in OFF position when the booster cable is connected.
- Do not connect to wrong side [connecting (+) to (-), (-) to (+)] when connecting the booster cable.
- Start connecting from (+) terminal first, but start disconnecting from (-) terminal (ground) first.
- Connect the ground to the (-) terminal of the battery of the broken Machine when connecting the ground as the last procedure.
- ★ See "Operation 8.4 Starting Engine with Booster Cable" for details.
- Avoid the contact between clips of the booster cable, and contact between a clip and the Machine when disconnecting the booster cable.



XAM22720



XAM04590

## CAUTIONS WHEN CHARGING BATTERY

Improper handling when charging the battery may cause the battery to explode. Follow the manuals attached to the Machine and the charger, and always observe the following.

- ★ See "Operation 8.3 Cautions in Charging Battery" for details.
- Carry the charger to a location with good ventilation, then remove the battery cap. Doing so causes the hydrogen gas to disperse and prevents explosion.
- Adjust the charger voltage to suit the voltage of the battery to charge. Mistake in adjusting the voltage may cause explosions due to overheat and ignition of the charger.
- Securely fix the (+) charge clip of the charger to the (+) terminal of the battery, then securely fix the (-) charge clip to (-) terminal of the battery.
- Set the charge current to no more than 1/10 of the rated capacity of the battery, or, in case of quick charge, set to the rated capacity of the battery or smaller.
- Excessive charge current may cause fire and explosions due to fluid leaks or fluid deficiency.



A0055170

## 5. MAINTENANCE PRECAUTIONS

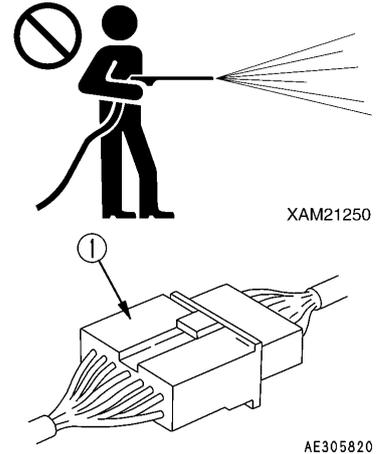
### 5.1 PRECAUTIONS BEFORE MAINTENANCE

#### FAILURE REPORT

Execution of maintenance not described in our manual may cause unexpected failures. Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.

#### CLEAN BEFORE INSPECTION OR MAINTAINANCE

- Before starting an inspection or maintenance, clean the Machine and prevent rubbish from entering the Machine and make sure the safety will be ensured during maintenance.
- Attempt to inspect or maintain the Machine still dirty not only lessens chance of locating faulty part, but may cause rubbish or mud entering your eye, or slipping and tripping that results in injury.
- Always observe following when washing the vehicle.
  - Use antislip shoes to prevent slips and trips caused by wet foothold.
  - Put on protective equipment when using a high pressure steam car wash. Avoid accidents from the high pressure water causes the skin laceration or mud or other substance flying into eye.
  - Do not directly spray water onto electrical system (sensors, connector (1), receiving box and related). Water entering the electrical system is dangerous and will cause faulty or improper operations.



#### TIDY UP WORKPLACE

Always tidy away tools, hammers and other things that obstruct the working area; grease and oil should be wiped off items immediately after use. An untidy workplace may cause safety hazards and result in injuries to personnel.

#### FOLLOW SUPERVISOR INSTRUCTION DURING TEAMWORK

Appoint a person who supervises the work and follow his/her instructions in case of Machine repair or installing/uninstalling a work device. Unexpected accidents due to misunderstood communication between workers may occur during teamwork.

#### USE APPROPRIATE TOOLS

Do not use damaged or deteriorated tool, or use a tool for a purpose that is not a proper purpose of use. Use tools suitable for the maintenance work. Entrance of a broken piece of a tool such as a boss with crashed head or a hammer may destroy eyesight.



## HANDLING ILLUMINATION DEVICES

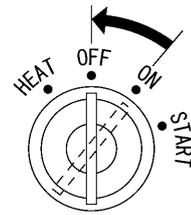
- Use explosion proof illumination device when inspecting the fuel, oil, battery fluid or similar substance. Failure to use explosion proof illumination device may cause serious fire and explosion.
- Attempt to work without using illumination device in a dark place may cause injury or other issue. Always use illumination device. Do not use a lighter or other burning object even if dark. Such use may cause fire, and furthermore the battery gas may catch fire and explode.



A0055160

## STOP ENGINE BEFORE INSPECTION OR MAINTENANCE

- Before inspection or maintenance, always park the Machine at a location where the ground is level, rock-falls, landslides and flooding do not occur, and fully retract and lower the boom, and stop the engine.
- Operate each of the crane operation levers forward backward several times to relieve the pressure remaining in the hydraulic circuits.
- Apply pawls to prevent rubber tracks from moving.
- Persons in charge of the maintenance should pay attention to prevent parts of the body and clothes from contacting the moving parts.



XAM21280

## FIRE RISK PREVENTION

Always observe the following during maintenance where the fuel, oil, battery or other substance that may catch fire is handled.

- Keep the fuel, oil and any other easily combustible oil and fats away from fire during storage.
- Do not leave the site when replenishing the fuel or oil.
- Use incombustible cleaning oil for the objects such as the components, and do not use light petroleum, gasoline or anything else that may catch fire.
- Do not smoke when inspecting or maintaining. Smoke at a location designated to do so.
- When inspecting fuel, oil, battery fluid or similar, use explosion proof illumination devices but do not use fires such as a lighter or a match for illumination.
- Loosened and damaged electrical connections may short circuit and result in a fire. Inspect accordingly before starting work.
- Make sure a fire extinguisher is near the inspection / maintenance site.



A0055020



A0055040

## 5.2 PRECAUTIONS DURING MAINTENANCE

### NO UNAUTHORIZED PEOPLE

Do not allow anyone, other than the necessary personnel, admittance to the site during maintenance. Post a guard, if necessary.  
Take special care in case of a polishing, welding work, or digging work.

### MEASURES UPON FINDING ABNORMALITY DURING INSPECTION

- Always repair whenever an abnormality is found during inspection. Attempt to use without repairing the defect may cause bodily accidents.
- Ask us or our sales service agency for repair depending on the failure type.

### DO NOT DROP TOOL OR PART INSIDE MACHINE

- Do not drop any bolt, nut or tool inside the Machine when inspecting while opening the inspection port or tank replenishment port. Dropped object may damage the Machine or cause the Machine to operate improperly and thus may cause accidents. If dropped, always retrieve.
- Do not keep anything unnecessary for the inspection in your pocket.

### NOISE CAUTION

Large noise in the surroundings may cause hearing difficulty or deafness.  
Use ear protection or ear plugs before long-term noise exposure, such as engine maintenance.

### WORK BY AT LEAST TWO PERSONS DURING MAINTENANCE WITH ENGINE RUNNING

To prevent accidents, do not attempt maintenance when the engine is running.

Always observe the following in case of maintaining with the engine running for unavoidable reason.

- One should seat in the driving seat, and keep checking each other while ensuring that the engine can be stopped any time.
- Be especially careful when working near a rotating part which may entangle.
- Do not touch operation levers. If it is unavoidable to use an operational lever, always give a sign to other person and let him/her evacuate to a safe place.
- Do not touch the alternator belt or other parts, as this may break tools or sever limbs.



A0055210

### CAUTIONS WHEN WORKING BELOW MACHINE

- Park the car over a level and firm location, and fully retract and lower the boom.
- Before the maintenance below the Machine, extend the outriggers maximum so the Machine lifts. When doing so, insert support platforms (height increasers) below front and rear of the Machine to stabilize the Machine.



A0055140

### CAUTIONS WHEN WORKING ABOVE MACHINE

- Tidy the footing to avoid falling and always observe following precautions during maintenance above the Machine.
- Do not spill oil or grease.
- Always tidy away work tools.
- Beware of the footing when walking.
- Do not jump from the Machine under any circumstance. Use a platform, and secure your body in three locations (both feet and one hand, or both hands and one foot) when climbing up or down the Machine.
- Use protective equipment that suit the work.
- Do not step on the boom, outrigger or machinery cover to prevent bodily accidents such as falling or tripping due to slippage.



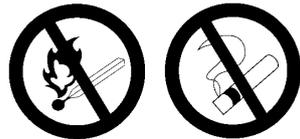
AD305870

### CAUTIONS WHEN REPLENISHING FUEL OR OIL

- The fuel, oils and similar substance may catch on fire. Light petroleum is used as the fuel and thus requires extra effort to observe the following.
- Keep the engine turned off when refilling.
  - Do not smoke when supplying.
  - Immediately wipe away dripped fuel or oil.
  - Securely tighten the fuel and oil caps.
  - Supply fuel/oil at a location with good ventilation.
  - Do not leave the site when replenishing the fuel or oil.



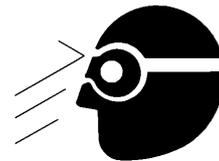
A0055020



A0055040

### BEWARE OF CHIPS WHEN WORKING WITH HAMMER

When using a hammer, always wear protective clothing such as glasses and a helmet. Also, insert a copper bar or similar object between the hammer and target object. Hitting metal parts such as a pin or bearing may cause splintering or chipping, which in turn could cause eye injuries if safety precautions are not met.



AE305880

## CAUTIONS DURING WELDING REPAIR

Weld in a location with good facility, and, only authorized personnel are permitted to weld. Unauthorized personnel are strictly prohibited since risks such as gas generation, fire and electrical shock are present when welding.

The personnel authorized to weld are requested to always observe the following.

- Disconnect the battery terminals to prevent battery explosions.
- Peel off the paint from the welding section to prevent gas generation.
- Attempt to heat up a hydraulic machinery, piping or a section near such part may cause combustible vapour or mist to be generated and catch fire. Avoid heating such section.
- Directly heating a pressurized piping or rubber hose may cause a sudden snip. Apply a fire protection cover.
- Disconnect the wiring connectors of the radio control and remote control devices, moment limiter display and converter.
- Wear protective equipment.
- Always ventilate the area.
- Keep combustibles away from the area and prepare a fire extinguisher.
- Do not ground to a location near electrical part. Such may cause the electrical part to malfunction.

## DISCONNECT BATTERY TERMINAL

Disconnect (-) terminal of the battery and stop the electrical flow before repairing the electrical system or starting an electrical weld.

★ See "Operation 8. Battery Handling" for details.



A0055170

## CAUTIONS WHEN ADJUSTING RUBBER TRACK TENSION

• Grease is sealed inside the rubber track tension adjuster. The grease is at a high pressure because of the tension of the rubber track. Attempt to release the grease without observing the following precautions may cause the grease valve to pop out and result in serious accident.

- Do not loosen the tension adjustment grease valve one full turn or above. Doing so may cause the grease valve may pop out.
- To avoid the risk during tension adjustment, do not place your body in front of the grease valve.

★ See "Operation 2.1.3 [1] Checking/adjusting Rubber Track Tension" for details.



A0055200

## HIGH PRESSURE HOSE HANDLING CAUTIONS

Oil leaking from high pressure hose may cause fire or bodily accident due to faulty operation. Whenever a damaged hose or loosened bolt is found, abort working and ask us or our sales service agency for a repair.

- Replacement of high pressure hose requires experienced skill. In addition, the tightening torques are decided by the hose types and size.

Customers are prohibited to repair or replace the applicable parts, if any of the following conditions are found:

- Hose sleeve damage or leak.
- Scratch or truncation of the coat, or exposure of reinforcing layer of a wire
- Coat is partially swollen.
- Indication of twist or collapse on a movable part of hose.
- Alien object buried in coating.
- Hose sleeve deformation.

## HIGH PRESSURE OIL CAUTIONS

Failure to make sure the pneumatic circuit pressure is relieved before inspection or replacement of a high pressure piping or hose may result in bodily accidents.

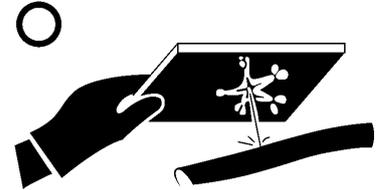
Always observe the following.

- Do not start any inspection or replacement before the pressure dissipates.
- Put on protective glasses and leather gloves.
- When a piping or hose leak exists, the piping/hose itself or vicinity or the ground is wet. If such is seen, a piping crack, hose crack or inflation is considerable, so always ask us or our sales service agency for a repair.
- High pressure oil leaking through a small hole may puncture the skin or destroy eyesight upon contact.

If this happens, wash away with flowing water and see the doctor as soon as possible.



A0055180



A0055190

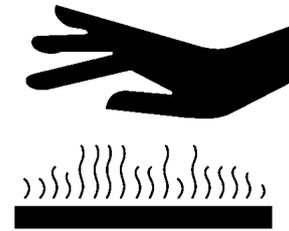
## CAUTIONS WHEN TEMPERATURE IS HIGH

Parts such as the engine, all oils, exhaust system manifold and muffler are at high temperature during short time after stopping the engine.

Attempt to remove the cap or execute maintenance such as oil draining, water draining or filter replacement may result in suffering burns.

Wait until the temperature lowers, then execute the inspection/maintenance following the procedure written in this manual.

- ★Operation 2.1.2 Checking Before engine starting: checking cooling water level, checking oil level in engine oil pan, checking oil level in hydraulic oil tank.
- ★Maintenance 8.9 250 hours maintenance: Replacement engine lubrication oil and filter cartridge.
- ★Maintenance 8.10 500 hours maintenance: Replacement engine lubrication oil and filter cartridge, replacement hydraulic oil return filter.
- ★Maintenance 8.11 1000 hours maintenance: Cleaning inside cooling system, replacement oil inside hydraulic oil tank.



A0055050

## CHECKS AFTER INSPECTION/MAINTENANCE

Failure to execute an inspection/maintenance item or failure to check the function and operation of the maintained part may cause an unexpected fault which may result in bodily accidents.

Always observe the following.

- Checks with engine stopped
  - Check for unexecuted inspection/maintenance.
  - Check that inspection/maintenance was completed without errors.
  - Check for any dropped tool or part. Ones caught by the interior or lever related link mechanism poses extra danger.
  - Check for any fuel leak, water leak, oil leak, bolt loose and similar issues.
- Checks with engine running

Take special care when checking with the engine running while referring to "Work by at least two persons during maintenance with engine running" section.

  - Check that the inspected/maintained part operates normally.
  - Check that issues such as an oil leak do not occur when load is applied to the oil pressure by increasing the engine rotation.

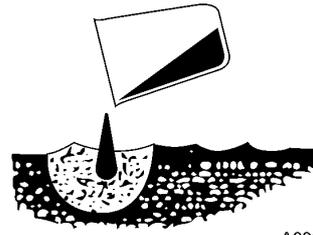
## CAUTIONS WHEN TREATING WASTE

To prevent environmental pollution, observe the following:

- Never allow waste oil to flow into water systems, such as river or sewage system.
- Always drain into a container when draining the oil from the Machine.

Do not directly drain to the ground.

- Observe the applicable legal regulations and rules when disposing harmful substance such as the oil, fuel, solvent, filter or battery.



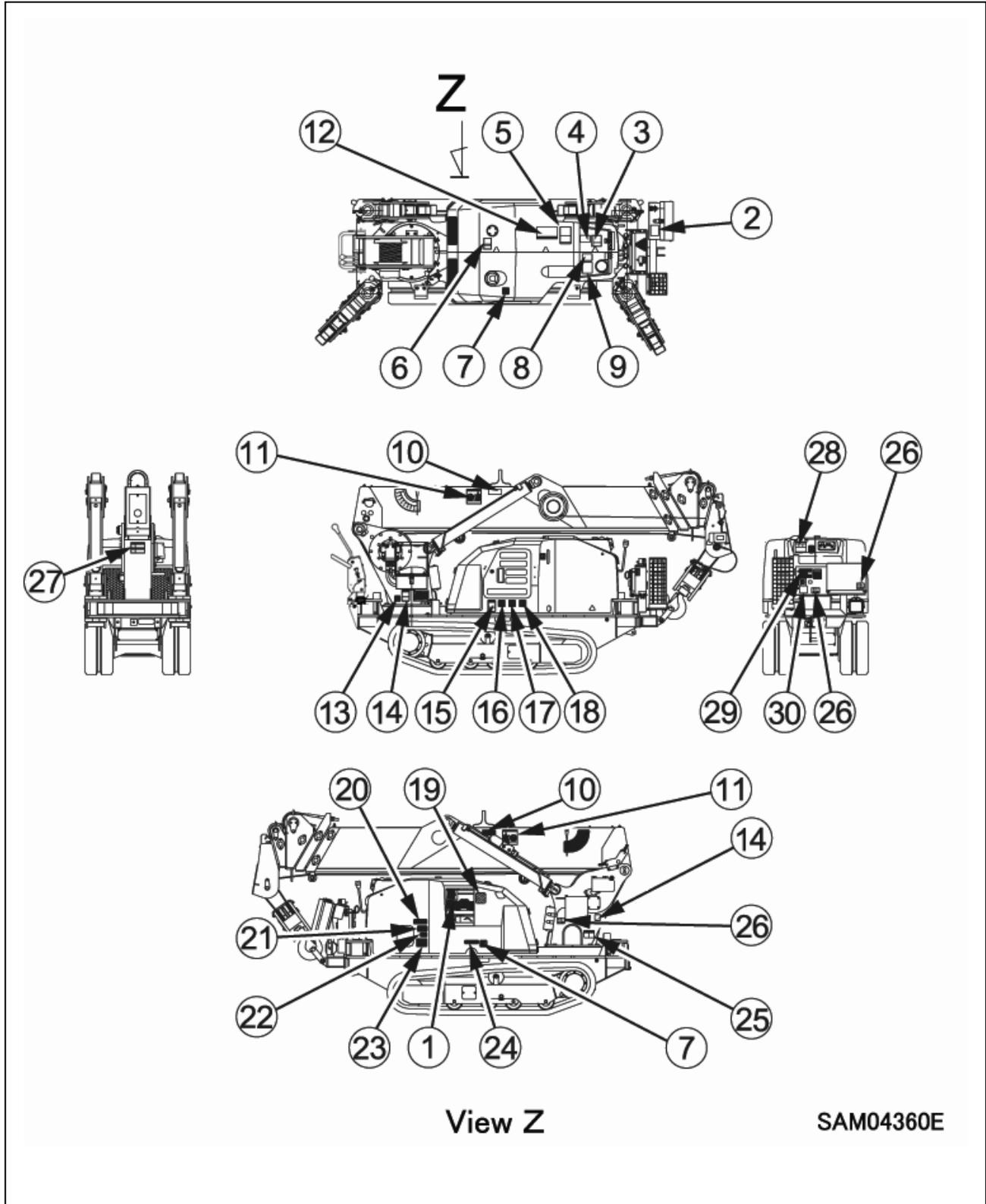
A0055220

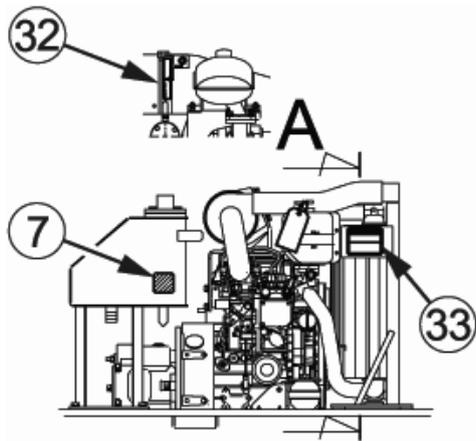
## 6. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS

Keep safety labels clean and visible at all times.

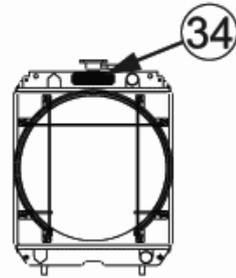
If lost, replace immediately or apply for a new one.

Labels other than the following safety labels exist. treat same.

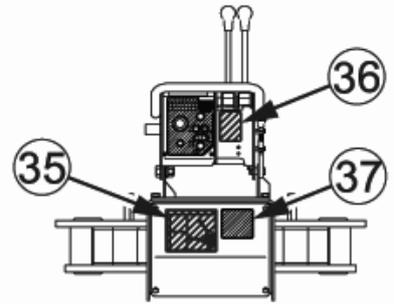




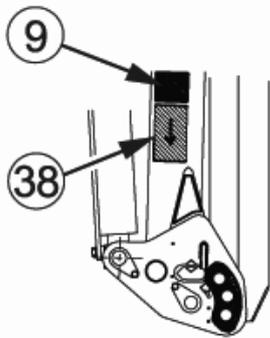
Inside the Machinery Cover



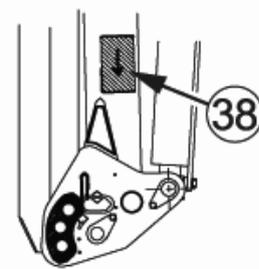
View A (radiator)



Travelling Controller



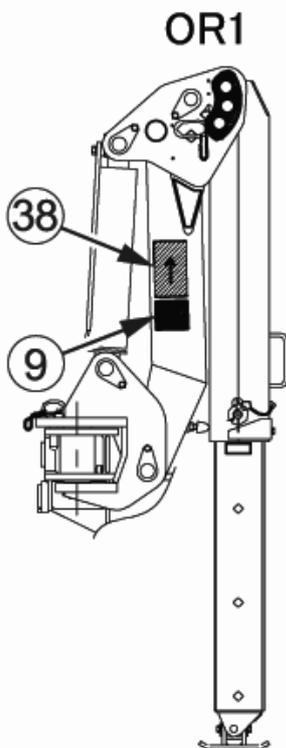
OR4



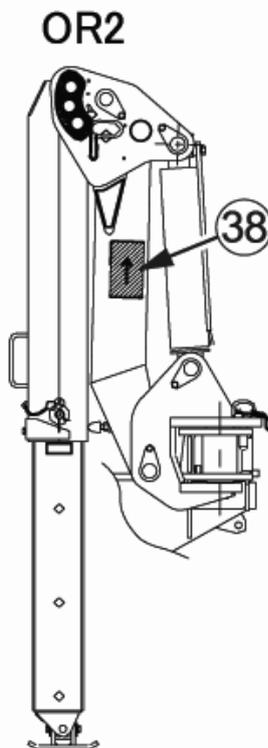
OR3



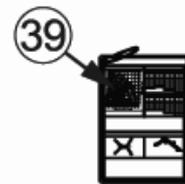
Hook



OR1



OR2



Outriggers

SAM04370E

(1) Crane operating caution (102-2146700)

### MC285C-2 Working Range Chart

1. This chart does not reflect any bending of boom.  
 2. Curve (A) represents the case where one-half of (B) mark is exposed from 2nd stage boom.  
 3. Curve (C) represents the case where second of (B) mark is exposed from 2nd stage boom.

### WARNING

- Use a leveling instrument to position your machine horizontally on level and hard ground.
- Use outriggers extended to the maximum, in principle.
- For setting insert retainer pins for positioning pins.
- For traveling, be sure to stow outriggers.

### CAUTION

- For crane work, extend four outriggers so that load is uniformly applied and tracks are lifted off the ground by about 80mm.
- Do not perform crane work with tracks rounded, because it may cause damage to undercarriage. Do not lift your machine excessively for increasing the lifting height over the ground level, which will cause the stability to be reduced. Work within the specified values.

G. L.

---

### MC285C-2 Rated Total Load Chart

Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to maximum								Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum							
2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom		2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom	
Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)	Working Radius (m)	Rate Total Load (t)
1.4 or less	2.82	3.0 or less	1.22	3.6 or less	0.82	4.0 or less	0.55	1.5 or less	1.72	3.0 or less	0.51	3.6 or less	0.40	4.0 or less	0.33
1.5	2.52	3.5	0.97	4.0	0.74	4.5	0.40	2.0	1.07	3.5	0.41	4.0	0.33	4.5	0.28
2.0	1.92	4.0	0.78	4.5	0.58	5.0	0.34	2.5	0.63	4.0	0.33	4.5	0.28	5.0	0.23
2.5	1.57	4.5	0.63	5.0	0.48	5.5	0.30	3.0	0.52	4.5	0.28	5.0	0.23	5.5	0.18
3.0	1.22	5.0	0.53	5.5	0.43	6.0	0.27	3.5	0.39	5.0	0.20	5.5	0.18	6.0	0.16
3.5	0.97	5.205	0.53	6.0	0.38	6.5	0.23	3.705	0.35	5.205	0.20	6.0	0.16	6.5	0.13
3.705	0.92			6.5	0.35	7.0	0.20					6.5	0.13	7.0	0.10
				6.705	0.33	7.5	0.18					6.705	0.12	7.5	0.08
						8.0	0.15							8.0	0.07
						8.205	0.15							8.205	0.06

- The Rated Total Load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook (30kg) included when.
- If third stage boom is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 5.575m".
- If one half or more of the mark (B) is exposed from second boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 7.075m".
- If one half or more of the second mark (B) is exposed from second stage boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 8.575m".
- Rough operation of crane is extremely dangerous, stick to safe operation.

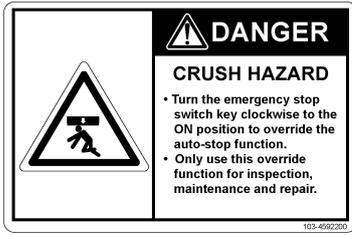
---

### OUTRIGGERS EXTENDED TO MAXIMUM

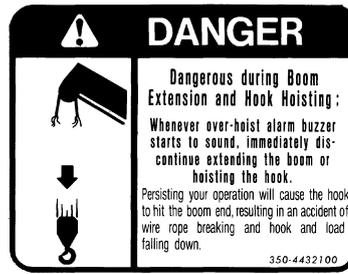
With the inner box pulled out to the position of Maximum Extension, positioning pin for outrigger base is set Maximum Position.

- If the position of inner box or outrigger base positioning pin is retracted by even one step, your work should be performed in accordance with the value for other than maximum extension.
- When swinging with a load suspended, stability may vary between the front and rear or right and left side of the machine. Perform your work with the working radius reduced to as short as possible and paying attention to a possibility of tipping over.
- For any crane work, use outriggers to maintain the machine body horizontally.

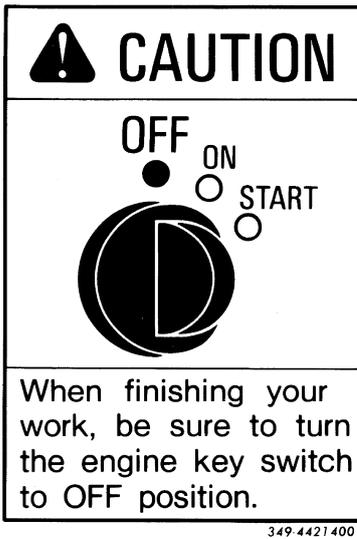
(2) Emergency stop caution (103-4592200)



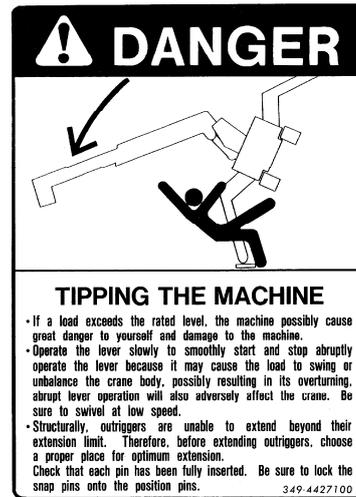
(3) Caution for over-hoist alarm (350-4432100)



(4) Main switch caution (349-4421400)



(5) Caution for crane handling (349-4427100)



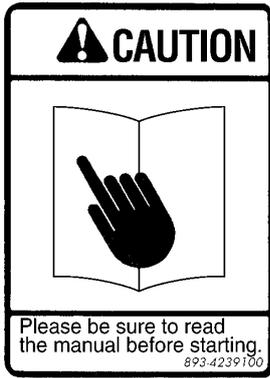
(6) Hydraulic oil caution (104-4550800)



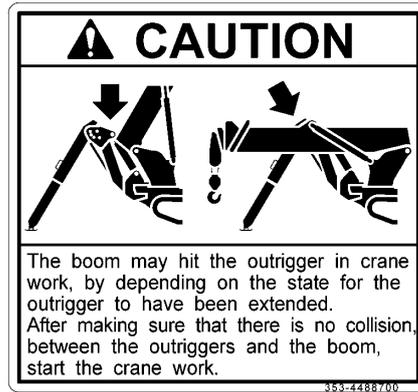
(7) High temperature caution (553-4267700)  
(3 places)



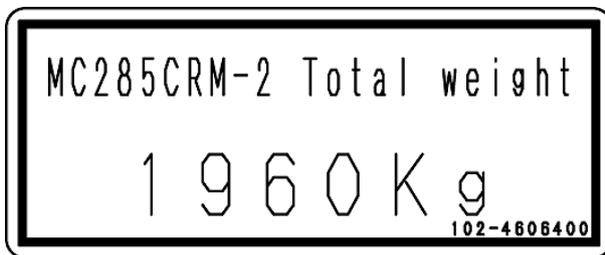
(8) Caution when driving, inspecting or maintaining (893-4239100)



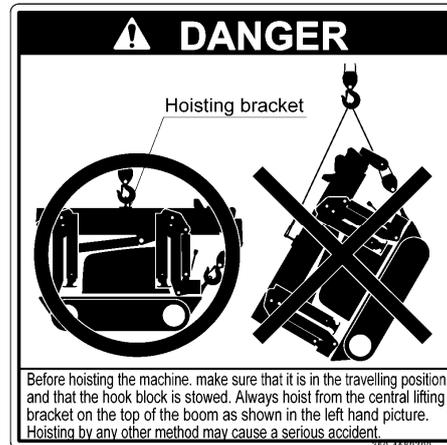
(9) Caution when outrigger setting (353-4488700) (3 places)



(10) Machine total weight (102-4606400)



(11) Caution when hoisting machine (350-4589300)



(12) Wire falls caution (104-3327800)

! DANGER

CRUSH/TIPPING HAZARD

Before operation, always verify the actually used number of wire falls (or parts of line) and operating mode, and then keep pressing the mode selector switch of the moment limiter for 2 seconds or more. The setting of the mode changes. To shift to each mode, each time press the switch for 2 seconds or more.

MODE (Wire fall or parts of line indicator LED combination)

Single fall / 1 Part of line	LED <sup>1</sup> lights only
2 falls / 2 Parts of line	LED <sup>2</sup> lights only
4 falls / 4 Parts of line	LED <sup>4</sup> lights only
Searcher hook (optional equipment)	all LEDs lit
Fly-Jib (optional equipment)	LED <sup>1</sup> flashes only

Moment limiter doesn't work properly if actual operating mode and mode selector switch do not match.

There is optional equipment that cannot be selected according to the model.

104-3327800

FALL MODE  
(PARTS OF LINE)  
 4  
 2  
 1

Moment Limiter Display  
Location of mode selector switch

(13) Winch caution (553-4267500)



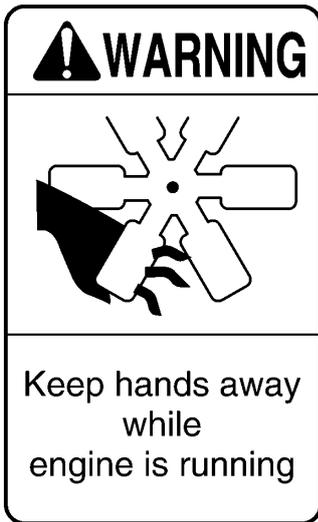
553-4267500

(14) No access to crane (349-4422000)



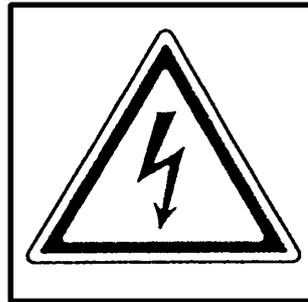
349-4422000

(15) Rotating fan caution (349-4526900)



349-4526900

(16) Electric shock caution (553-4267300)



553-4267300

(17) Warning (553-4268000)



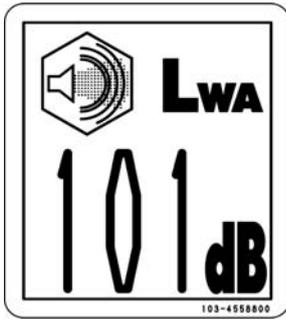
553-4268000

(18) Pinch caution (553-4267600)



553-4267600

(19) Noise performance (103-4558800)



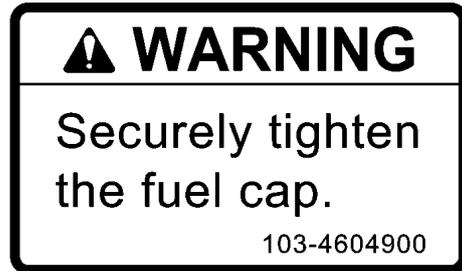
(20) Fire ban (349-4427500)



(21) Fire extinguisher caution (103-4604800)



(22) Fuel tank cap caution (103-4604900)



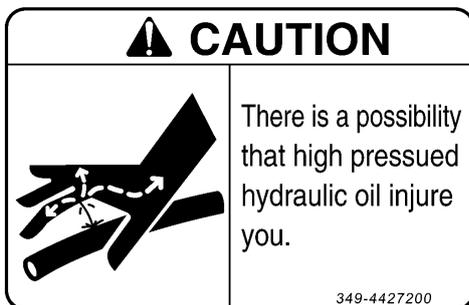
(23) Diesel fuel caution (553-4267100)



(24) Exhaust gas caution (349-4427400)



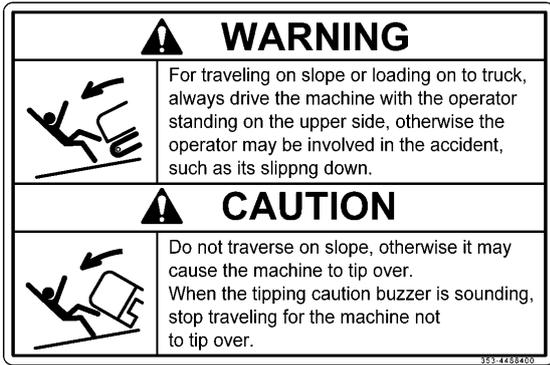
(25) High pressure oil caution (349-4427200)



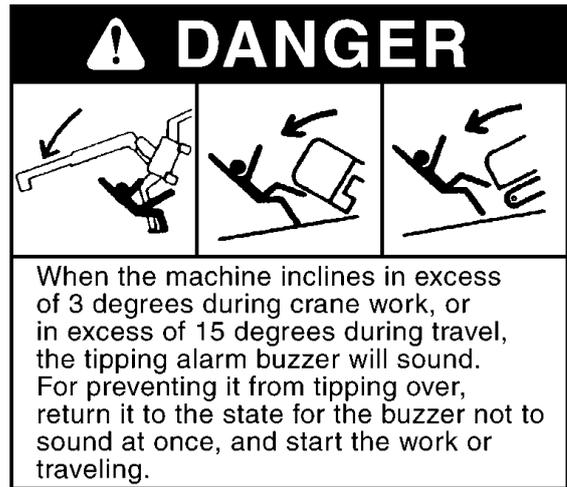
(26) Washing caution (350-4539700)



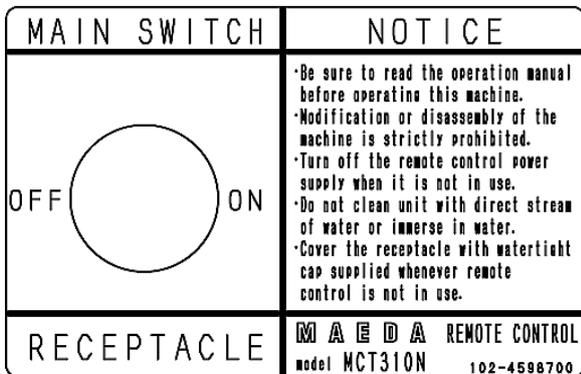
(27) Caution when travelling on slope  
(353-4488400)



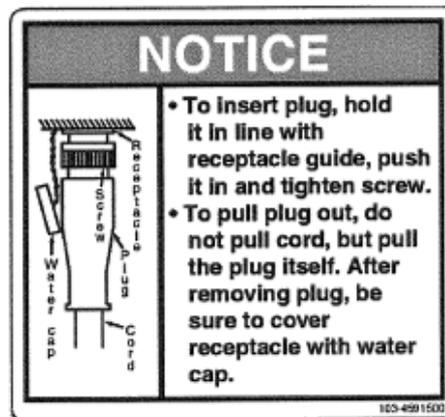
(28) Slope caution (353-4488600)



(29) Caution for remote-control receiver  
(102-4598700)



(30) Caution for remote-control receiver plug  
(103-4591500)



(31) Hook block caution (553-4267400) (2 places)

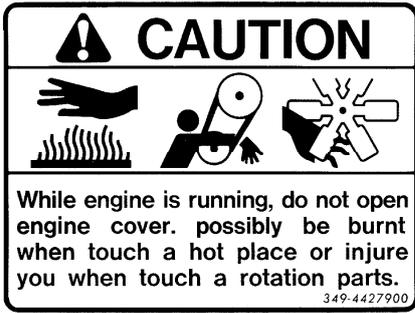


553-4267400

(32) High temperature caution (349-4427800)



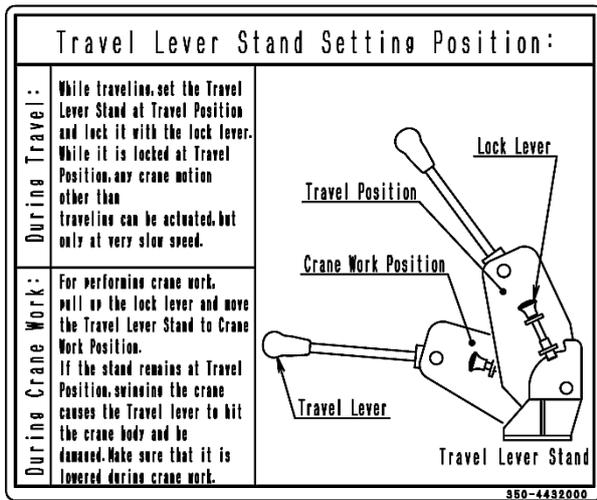
(33) Engine cover caution (349-4427900)



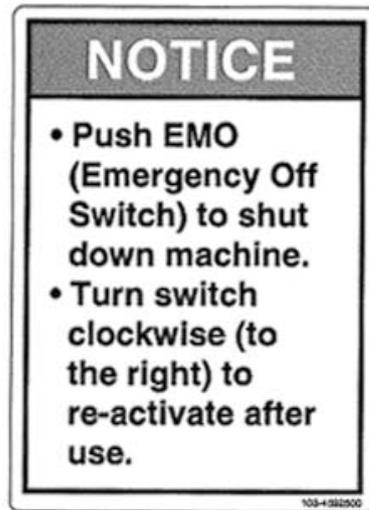
(34) Radiator caution (349-4427300)



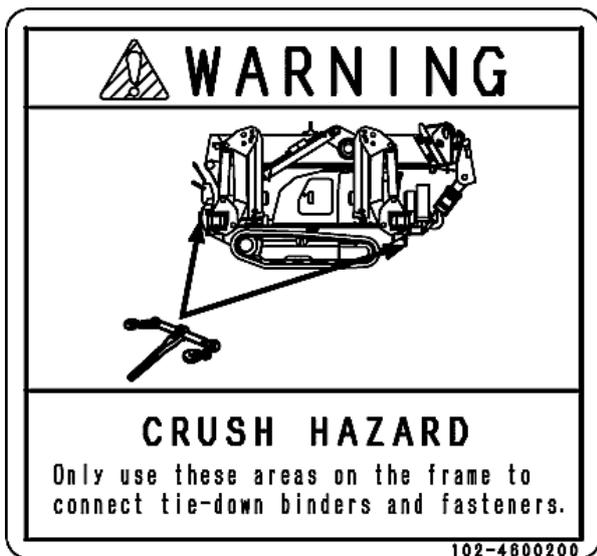
(35) Travel lever stand position (350-4432000)



(36) Emergency stop notice (103-4592500)



(37) machine hoisting position (102-4600200)

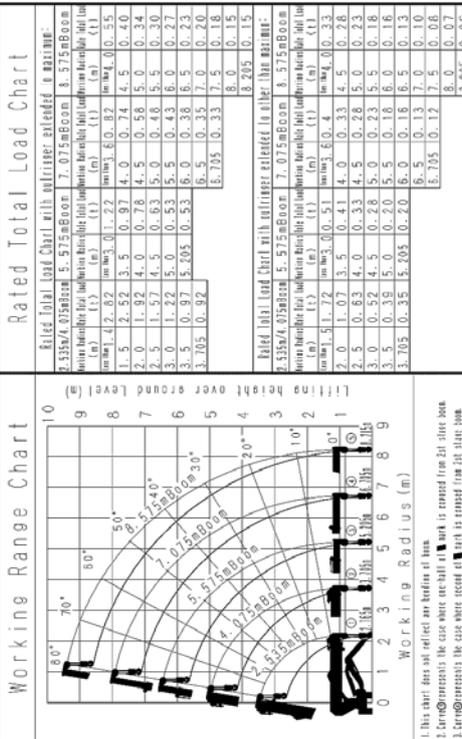


(38) Outrigger pin hole caution and footing check (101-4593300) (4 places)



(39) Precautions for use (portable card) (102-2147400)

MINI-CRAWLER CRANE MC285C-2



Working Radius (m)

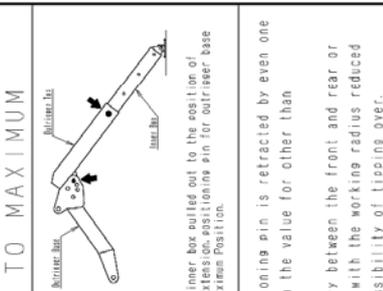
1. The Rated Total Load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bendings of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook (30kg) included when.

2. If third stage boom is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 5.575m".

3. If one half or more of the second boom is exposed from second stage boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 7.075m".

4. If one half or more of the second boom is exposed from second stage boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 8.575m".

5. Rough operation of crane is extremely dangerous. Stick to safe operation.



**OUTRIGGERS EXTENDED TO MAXIMUM**

1. If the position of inner box or outrigger base positioning pin is retracted by even one step, your work should be performed in accordance with the value for other than maximum extension.

2. When swinging with a load suspended, stability may vary between the front and rear or right and left side of the machine. Perform your work with the working radius reduced to as short as possible and paying attention to a possibility of tipping over.

3. For any crane work, use outriggers to maintain the machine body horizontally.



**PERFORMANCE**

(1) Lifting with a same working radius, performance will vary depending on the boom length in use. Also, even with very minor change in the working radius, lifting capability changes in great deal.

(2) Lifting capability of the crane becomes smaller as the working radius grows longer.

(3) Depending on the outrigger, the crane is extended, lifting capability changes.

(4) Depending on the direction of boom forward, lateral, backward, stability changes. Stability is worst when boom is in lateral position, when swinging from forward to lateral position, strictly observe the other data, load chart values.

**Rules for Operating the Crane**

- Check stability and understand the instruction manual before starting your work.
- Make sure to conduct the pre-work check-up.
- For crane work be sure to ground the outriggers so that the machine is in level. Make sure all the four outriggers are grounded.
- Use the outriggers in accordance with the instruction manual.
- When tracks should be lifted off the ground by about 10mm.
- For setting of the outriggers, insert the rubber position pins correctly. Be care not to catch your feet in the hole.
- Check to see the over-haul alarm system works properly. That buzzer sounds and light warning stops.
- For working with this crane, operator qualification is required by local authority with respect to its operation as well as written work.



**Working Work**

- Stick to lifting load rates according to outrigger setting and ground condition. From work with the outrigger, nothing lifted off the ground is dangerous and should not to be performed.
- Be sure to observe the Rated Total Load Chart.
- Avoid over-loaded work as it may cause the machine to tip over or an other danger.
- Perform any crane work with caution, raising at low speed is dangerous because work speed will also become high.
- During crane work, be care not to allow the load to sway.
- Do not perform any lateral or horizontal swinging or sharp turning of your boom as it may damage your crane.
- Do not leave your crane with any load suspended.
- Do not allow anyone to enter underneath the boom during crane operation.
- When an over-hauling alarm sounds, the over-haul alarm will be activated, causing the buzzer to sound for the back well forward so that it does not cause the buzzer to sound.



**Machine Travel**

- For traveling, be sure to slow the outriggers and lock the lock to its holder.
- Reduce speed for making turn or traveling over bad road surface.
- For making a stop, be sure to engage checks.
- For traveling on slope or loading on to tracks, always drive the machine with the rearward standing on steep side.



**Miller Work**

After completion of your work, always turn off your main switch (air filter switch).



**Inspection and Service**

- Conduct pre-work inspection as well as regular periodical inspection such as monthly and annual.
- If any deficiency should be detected through such check and inspection, stop ahead and correct it immediately.
- In accordance with the standards stipulated in Instruction Manual, services such as replacement of consumables, lubrication and reinforcement or replacement of fabricated should be conducted.



**OTHER RULES**

- Because use of this crane may result in serious accident involving death or injury.
- Before starting your crane work, read the Instruction Manual and have the safe manner of its operation.

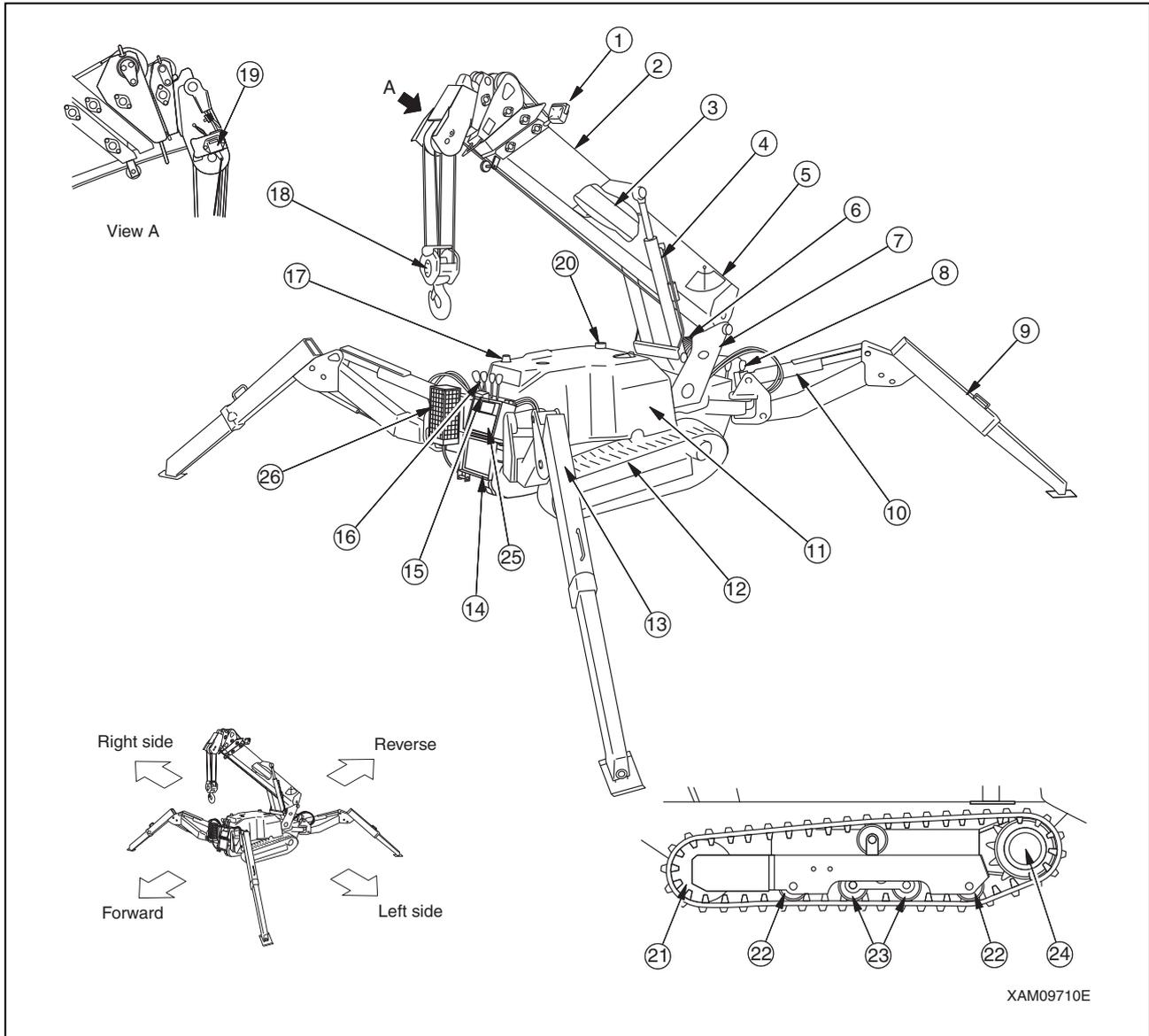


# OPERATION

1. MACHINE EACH SECTION	3- 2
2. OPERATIONS	3-37
3. HANDLING RUBBER TRACKS	3-90
4. HANDLING WIRE ROPES	3-94
5. TRANSPORTATION	3-96
6. HANDLING IN COLD WEATHER	3-99
7. LONG-TERM STORAGE	3-101
8. HANDLING BATTERY	3-102
9. TROUBLESHOOTING	3-107

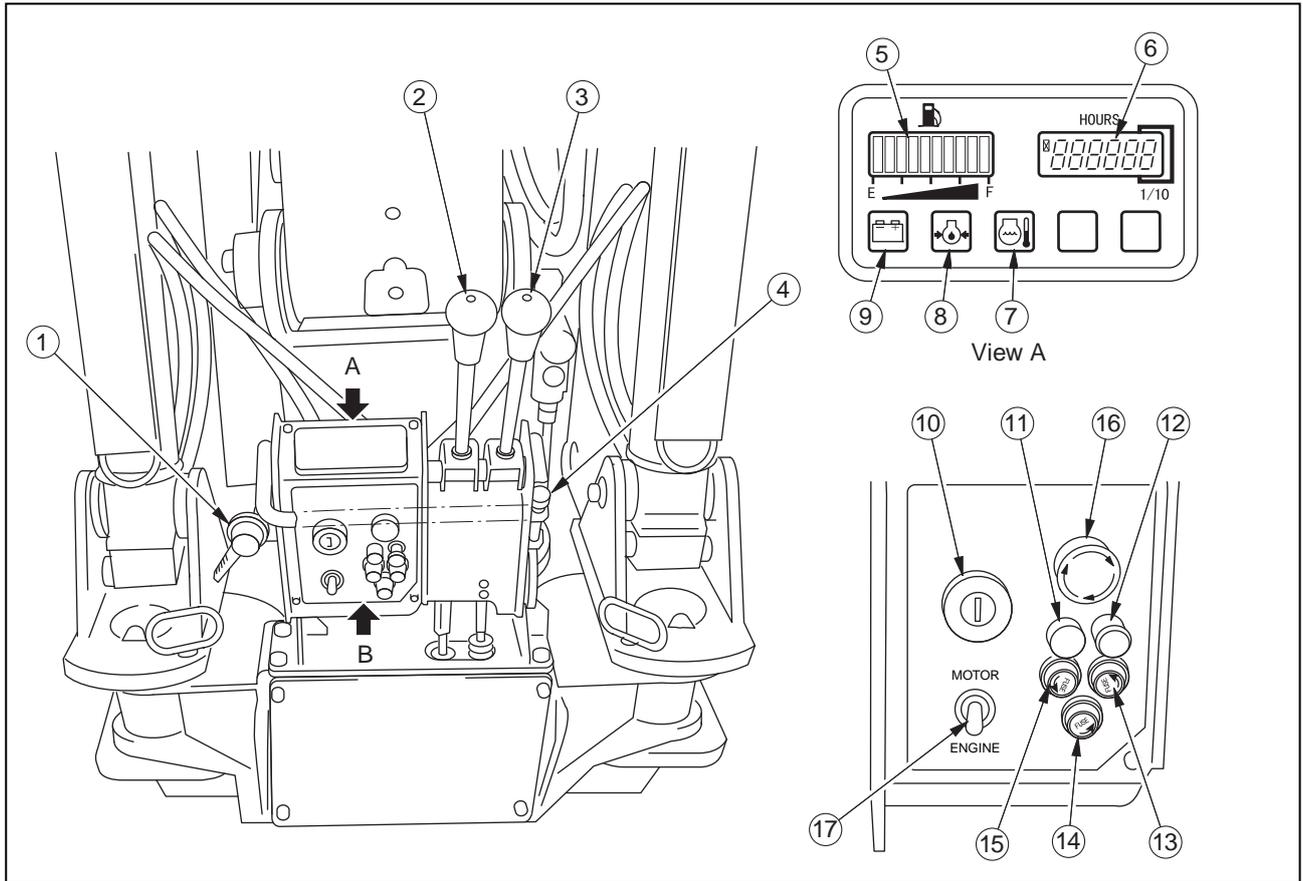
# 1. MACHINE EACH SECTION

## 1.1 MACHINE EACH UNIT



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (1) Working light                               | (14) Hook hanger                            |
| (2) Boom  | (15) Over-hoist alarm buzzer                |
| (3) Boom telescoping cylinder (Inside the boom) | (16) Crane control                          |
| (4) Boom derricking cylinder                    | (17) Outrigger un-set warning lamp (Yellow) |
| (5) Angle indicator                             | (18) Hook block                             |
| (6) Winch                                       | (19) Over hoist detector                    |
| (7) Post  | (20) Hydraulic oil tank                     |
| (8) Moment limiter converter                    | (21) Front idler                            |
| (9) Outrigger                                   | (22) Track roller                           |
| (10) Outrigger cylinder                         | (23) Tandem track roller                    |
| (11) Machinery covers                           | (24) Travelling motor and sprocket          |
| (12) Rubber track                               | (25) Moment limiter display                 |
| (13) Fuel tank (under the engine)               | (26) Working status lights                  |

## 1.2 TRAVELLING AND CRANE OPERATION UNITS



- (1) Accelerator lever
- (2) Left travelling lever
- (3) Right travelling lever
- (4) Travel stand lever
- (5) Fuel level gauge
- (6) Hour meter
- (7) Engine water temperature monitor
- (8) Engine oil pressure monitor
- (9) Battery charge monitor

- (10) Main starter switch
- (11) Horn switch
- (12) Working light switch
- (13) Fuse (10A)
- (14) Fuse (10A)
- (15) Fuse (30A)
- (16) Emergency engine stop switch (EMO)
- (17) Engine/Electric motor select switch (electric motor option only)

## 1.2.1 DESCRIPTION OF EACH LEVER

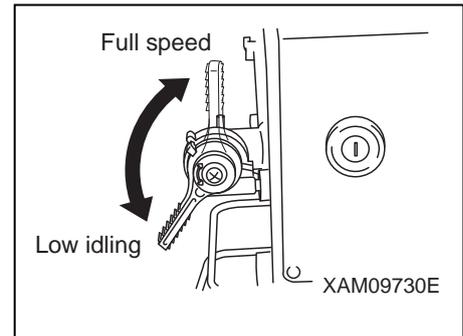
### [1] ACCELERATION LEVER (1)

Use the lever to adjust the engine speed or output.

- Low idling: Pull the lever toward you.
- High speed: Push the lever forward.

#### NOTES

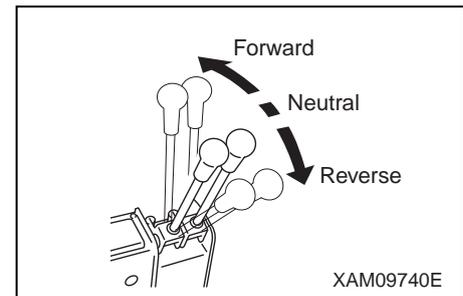
- At the desired engine speed for your work, release the lever. It will stop at that position.
- Acceleration lever is also provided on the crane operation unit.



### [2] LEFT/RIGHT TRAVELLING LEVER (2), (3)

Use these levers to move the machine forward/backward, stop, slew, and to adjust the travelling speed.

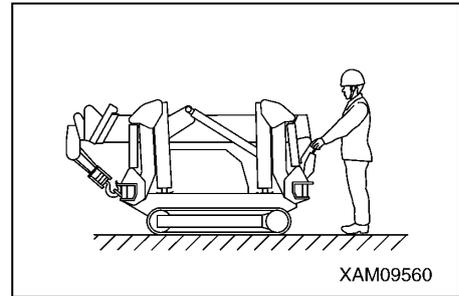
- Forward: Push the left and right levers forward at the same time.
- Neutral: Release your hands from left and right levers at the same time. The levers return to the NEUTRAL position and the machine automatically brakes and stops at that position.
- Backward: Pull the left and right levers toward you at the same time.
- Left turn: Release your hand from the left lever and operate the right lever forward or backward.
- Right turn: Release your hand from the right lever and operate the left lever forward or backward.
- Spin turn: Operate the left and right levers to the opposite direction. The left and right crawlers turn to the opposite direction, allowing you to make the spin turn.



### [3] TRAVELLING LEVER STAND AND LOCK LEVER (4)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Before setting the travelling lever stand to “Travelling position”, be sure to stow the crane and let the machine assume travelling position. Travelling with the crane not in travelling position, may cause it to tip over and cause a serious accident.
- When pulling up the travelling lever stand lock lever, be careful not to contact the travelling lever, as it may cause the undercarriage to move.



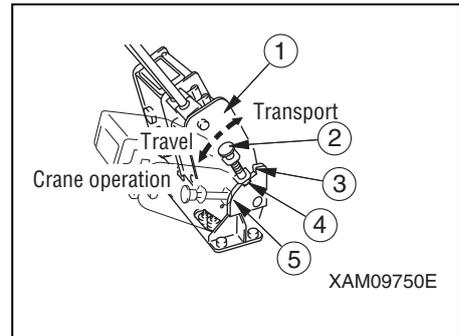
Use this stand to switch the work state of the machine (Travelling control, Crane operation, Stowing position).

- For travelling:

Pull up the locking lever (2) before erecting the entire lever stand (1) forward to the “Travel Position”. The machine is in “Travel Position” when the bottom end of locking lever (2) fits into the guide groove (4).

- For crane operation:

Pull up the locking lever (2) before pressing the whole lever stand (1) down to the “Crane Work Position”. The machine is in “Crane Work Position” when the end of locking lever (2) fits into its place before the stopper (5).



#### **NOTES**

- Where the travelling lever stand is set in the “Travelling position”, only travelling operation is available. In such a condition, respective crane control levers and outrigger setting switches are disabled to manage their functions.
- Also, where the travelling lever stand is set in the “Travelling position”, any outrigger setting or crane operations by the Remote Controller are not workable.
- For any outrigger setting or crane operations, set the travelling lever stand in the "Crane Position".

- For transport or storage:

With the locking lever (2) pulled up, erect the entire lever stand (1) forward. The machine is in Transport Position when the end of locking lever (2) fits in the position before the stopper (3) at guide top.

#### **NOTES**

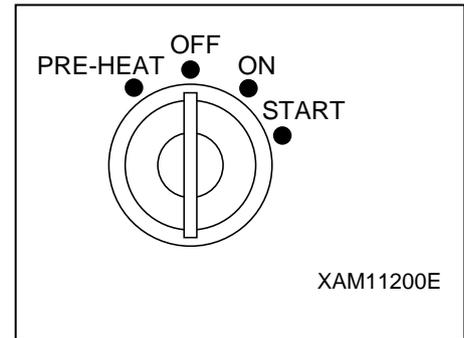
When the travelling lever stand is set in the "Stow Position", the whole of the stand can be positioned within the back end of the carrier. This position may be convenient during transportation or when the parking area is restricted.

## 1.2.2 DESCRIPTION OF EACH SWITCH

### [1] STARTER SWITCH (10)

Use this switch to start and stop the engine.

- **HEAT** : Turn the key to this position when starting the engine in cold weather.
- **OFF** : You can insert/remove the key at this position. All the switches in the electrical system are turned off and the engine stops.
- **ON** : Electricity runs into all the circuits.
- **START**: When the engine has started, release your finger from the key. The key automatically returns to the ON position.

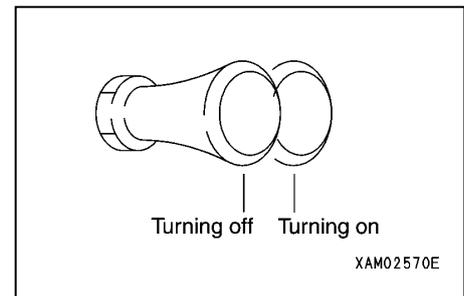


### [2] HEADLIGHT SWITCH (12)

Use this switch to turn on the headlights on the front of the machine.

- **ON**: Pull the switch toward you. The headlights turn on.
- **OFF**: Push the switch forward. The headlights turn off.

<b>NOTES</b>
The headlights do not light up even if the headlight switch is operated when the starter switch is at the OFF position.

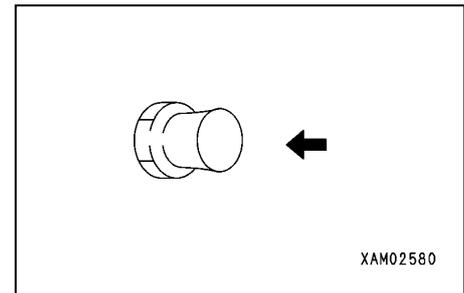


### [3] HORN SWITCH (11)

Use this switch to honk the horn.

- **Honking the horn**: Press the switch.

<b>NOTES</b>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The horn will stop when you release your finger from the switch.</li> <li>• The horn switch is provided on the crane operation side as well.</li> </ul>

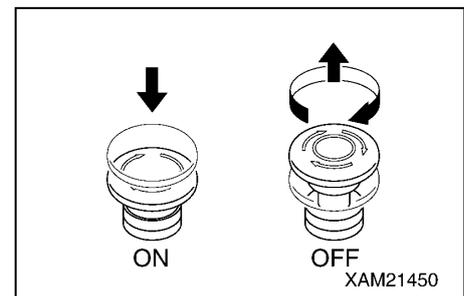


### [4] ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH (16)

Use this switch in case of an error in the machine to stop the machine in an emergency.

- **ON**: Press the switch. The engine stops.
- **OFF**: Turn the switch clockwise (direction of the arrow in the right figure). The switch returns to the original position.

<b>NOTES</b>
When restarting the engine after emergency stop, be sure to turn the engine emergency stop switch to the OFF position before starting the engine.



### 1.2.3 DESCRIPTION OF EACH METER AND LAMP

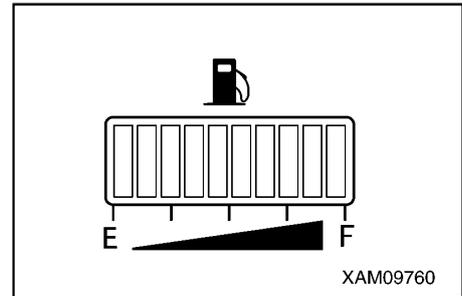
#### [1] FUEL GAUGE (5)

This gauge indicates the remaining amount of the fuel in the fuel tank.

Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position and the gauge indicates the remaining amount of the fuel with the "bar".

When only one "bar" lights up on the "E" side, there is not much fuel left.

Stop the operation immediately and refuel.



#### NOTES

- At the end of a day, refill the fuel tank (until all the "bar"s (10 bars) light up.)
- The remaining amount indicated may not be correct for a while after the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position. This is normal.

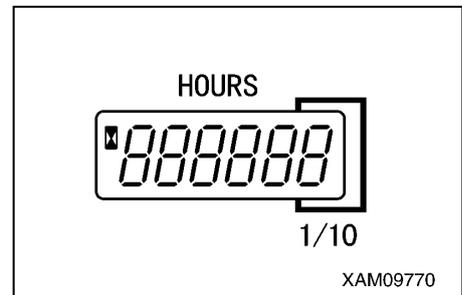
#### [2] HOUR METER (6)

This meter shows the total running hours of the machine.

Use this value as the reference for periodical check interval.

If the engine is in operation, the meter indication advances even if the machine is not moving.

The meter indication advances by "1" when the machine has been running for 1 hour regardless of the engine rotation speed.



#### [3] ENGINE WATER TEMPERATURE MONITOR (7)

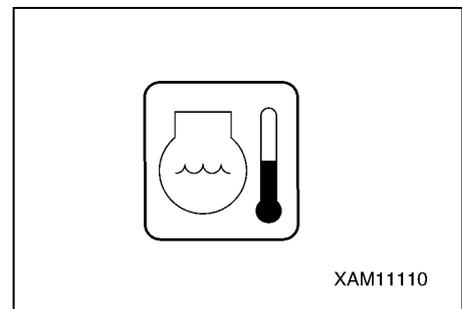
This monitor indicates errors with the engine cooling water temperature.

The temperature is normal if this monitor is OFF during the operation.

If it lights up during the operation, it means that the engine cooling water temperature exceeded the normal temperature.

Promptly switch the engine rotation to low idling and wait until the monitor goes off (engine cooling water temperature goes down).

Then, stop the operation and check the water leakage from the radiator, clogging in the radiator core, and damage and tension of the alternator belt.



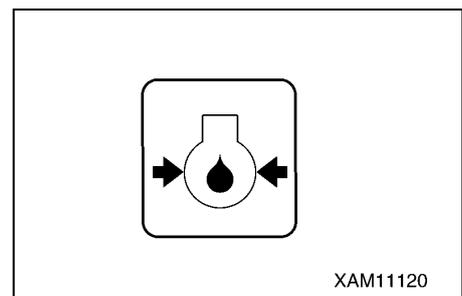
#### [4] ENGINE OIL PRESSURE MONITOR (8)

This monitor indicates the drop in the engine oil pressure.

If it lights up when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and goes off as the engine rotation increases after the engine is started, the engine oil pressure is normal.

If it lights up during the operation, the engine oil pressure has dropped.

Immediately stop the machine and check for clogging of the engine oil filter and engine lubricant level.



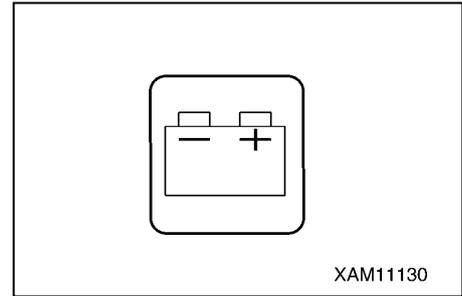
## [5] BATTERY CHARGE MONITOR (9)

This monitor indicates errors in the battery charge system.

If it lights up when the starter switch is turned to the "ON" position and goes off as the engine rotation increases after the engine is started, the battery charge system is normal.

If it lights up during the operation, there is an error in the battery charge system.

Immediately stop the machine and check the tension of the alternator belt.



## [6] FUSES (13) (14) (15)

### ⚠ CAUTION

Be sure to turn the starter switch to the OFF position when checking or replacing a fuse.

### CAUTION

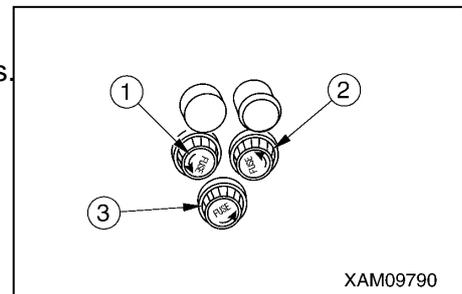
Fuses protect electrical components and wires from being burnt out.

- Fuses are tubular fuses. If a fuse is corroded and shows white powder, be sure to change the fuse.
- If a fuse has melted, always check the cause in the circuit and repair the problem before changing the fuse.
- Always make sure the replacement fuse is of the same capacity.

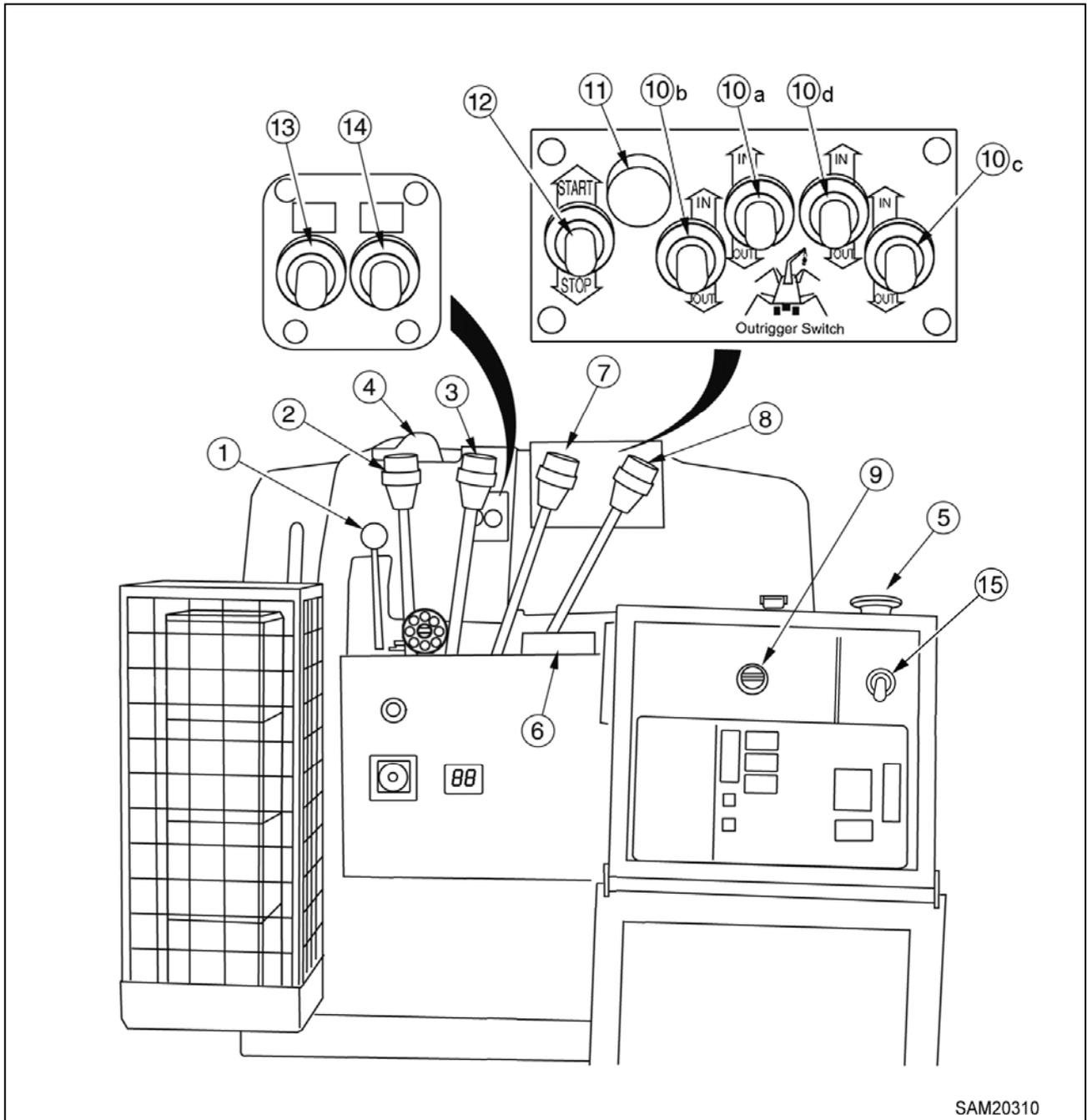
Systems and capacities of fuses are as follows:

- Fuse (1) (30A): For light, slope gauge and crane control systems.
- Fuse (2) (10A): For meter panel, horn.
- Fuse (3) (10A): For engine, fuel pump.

1. Turn the fuse holder on control panel counterclockwise and take it out.
2. Check and replace fuses contained in the removed fuse holder.
3. Install new or checked fuse to the holder and turn it clockwise to tighten.



### 1.3 CRANE OPERATION UNIT



SAM20310

- |  |                                  |
|--|----------------------------------|
| (1) Accelerator lever                  | (10) Outrigger setting switch    |
| (2) Swing lever                        | (a) Outrigger (1) setting switch |
| (3) Boom telescope lever               | (b) Outrigger (2) setting switch |
| (4) Outrigger un-set warning lamp      | (c) Outrigger (3) setting switch |
| (5) Emergency engine stop switch (EMO) | (d) Outrigger (4) setting switch |
| (6) Level                              | (11) Horn switch                 |
| (7) Winch lever                        | (12) Auxiliary starter switch    |
| (8) Boom lift lever                    | (13) Boom stowing switch         |
| (9) Emergency stop cancel switch       | (14) Hook Stowing switch         |
|  | (15) Boom lift bypass switch     |

### 1.3.1 DESCRIPTION OF EACH LEVER

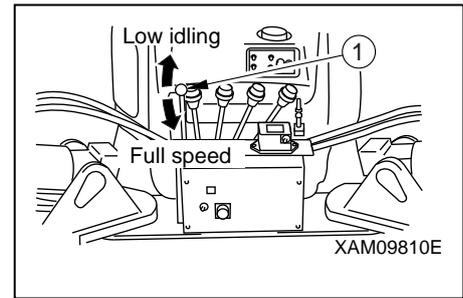
#### [1] ACCELERATION LEVER (1)

Use the lever to adjust the engine speed or output.

- Low idling: Push the lever forward.
- Full speed: Pull the lever toward you.

#### NOTES

- At the desired engine speed for your work, release the lever. It will stop at that position.
- Acceleration lever is also provided on the travelling control unit.



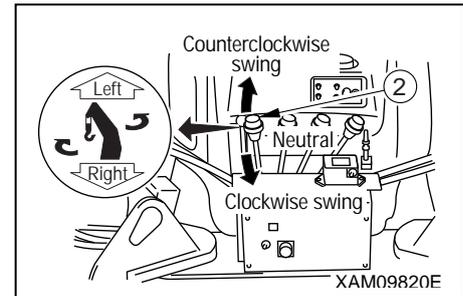
#### [2] SLEWING LEVER (2)

Use the lever to slew the crane boom and post.

- Slew counter clockwise: Push the lever forward (Left).
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever returns to the NEUTRAL position and the slewing stops.

- Slew clockwise: Pull the lever toward you (Right).



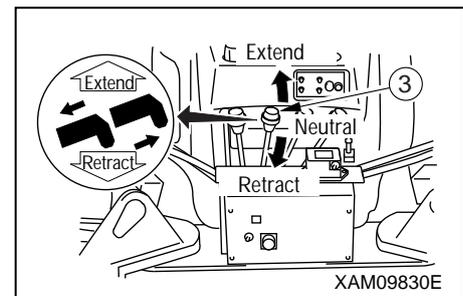
#### [3] BOOM TELESCOPING LEVER (3)

Use this lever for telescoping the crane boom.

- Extend: Push the lever forward (Extend).
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever returns to the NEUTRAL position and the boom telescoping stops.

- Retract: Pull the lever toward you (Retract).



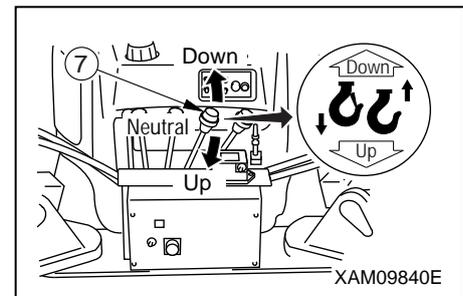
#### [4] WINCH LEVER (7)

Use this lever to raise/lower the hook block of the crane.

- Lower: Push the lever forward (Down).
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever returns to the NEUTRAL position and the machine automatically brakes. The lowering/raising of the hook block stops.

- Raise: Pull the lever toward you (Up).



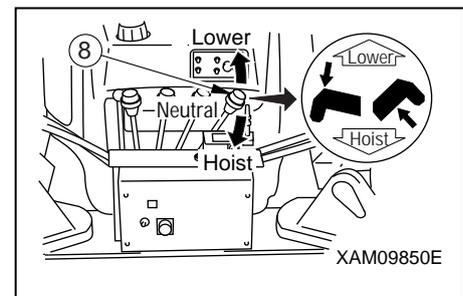
#### [5] BOOM DERRICKING LEVER (8)

Use this lever for derricking the crane boom.

- Lower: Push the lever forward (Lower).
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever returns to the NEUTRAL position and the boom derricking stops.

- Raise: Pull the lever toward you (Raise).



### 1.3.2 DESCRIPTION OF EACH SWITCH

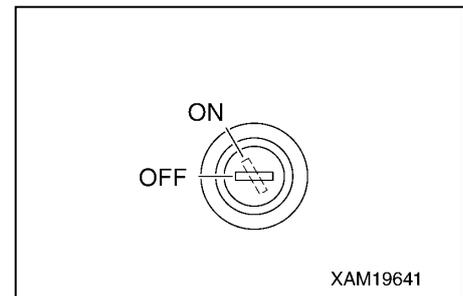
#### [1] EMERGENCY STOP CANCEL SWITCH (9)

#### **⚠ DANGER**

- Do not turn the emergency stop cancel switch to the ON (cancel) position except in a machine failure condition or when conducting a load test. When turning ON (cancel) the emergency stop cancel switch, always shift the crane speed to low, and also the moment limiter functions are not available. Any crane operation in such conditions will result in dropping of hoisted load, breakage of crane boom, and/or crane tipping due to over load, and may cause a serious accident resulting in death or serious injury.  
Key for the switch must be detached during normal operations.
- Do not turn the emergency stop cancel switch to the ON (cancel) position when stowing the hook.  
The winch wire rope may be cut causing the hook to fall on or damage the boom.  
Use the hook stowing switch when stowing the hook.

Open the cover when using the switch.

- ON (Clear): Insert the key into the switch. Turn the key clockwise and retain the key at that position. The activation stop function is cleared while the key is maintained at the ON position.
- OFF (Auto): Insert the key into the switch and turn the key counterclockwise. The activation stop functions.  
The key can be removed or inserted at this position.



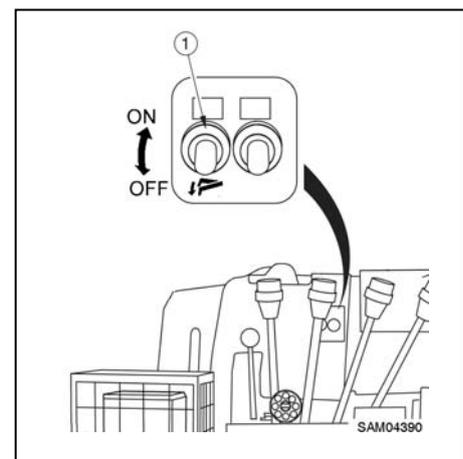
#### [2] BOOM STOWING SWITCH (13)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The boom stowing switch cancels the auto-stop function of the lower-limit detecting interlock device during the boom “lowering” operation.  
Operate the boom derricking lever carefully when stowing the boom. Pay sufficient attention not to let the boom collide with the machine body.
- Use the boom stowing switch only when stowing the boom.

Use this switch to stow the boom.

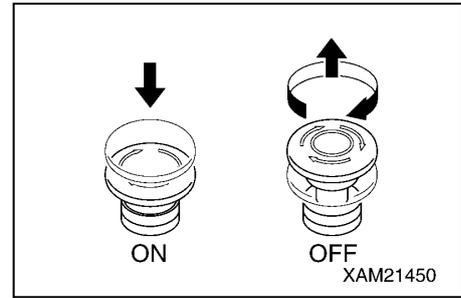
- ON: Keep pushing the switch downward and operate the boom derricking lever to “LOWER” side. The boom lowers and can be stowed.
- OFF: Release your finger from the switch. The switch returns to the original position and the auto-stop function of the lower-limit detecting interlock device will be activated.



### [3] ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH (5)

Use this switch in case of an error in the machine to stop the machine for emergency.

- ON: Press the switch. The engine stops.
- OFF: Turn the switch clockwise (direction of the arrow in the right figure). The switch returns to the original position.



#### NOTES

When restarting the engine after emergency stop, be sure to turn the engine emergency stop switch to the OFF position before starting the engine.

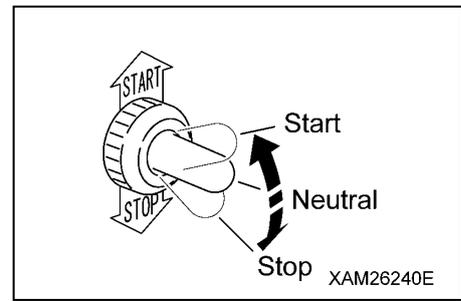
### [4] AUXILIARY STARTER SWITCH (12)

#### CAUTION

The auxiliary starter switch functions only while main starter switch at travel control is in ON position. To start-up engine using the auxiliary starter switch, the main starter switch must remain at ON position.

Use this switch to start and stop the engine.

- START: Keep pushing the switch upward. The engine starts. When the engine has started, release your finger from the switch.
- Neutral: Release your finger from the switch. The switch returns to the NEUTRAL position.
- STOP: Keep pushing the switch downward. The engine stops. When the engine has stopped, release your finger from the switch.



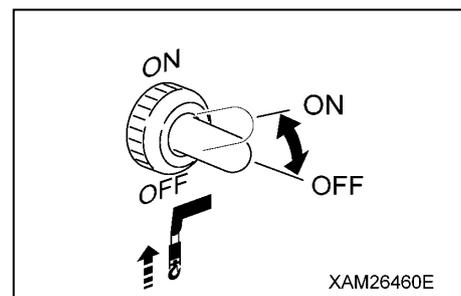
### [5] HOOK STOWING SWITCH (14)

#### WARNING

- The hook stowing switch cancels the auto-stop function of the over hoist detector. Operate the winch lever carefully when stowing the hook block. Pay sufficient attention not to let the hook block collide with the boom.
- Use this switch only when stowing the hook block.
- When the hook block is stowed in the hook block holder and the wire rope slacking is eliminated, turn OFF the hook stowing switch without delay. Otherwise, the wire rope will be over-wound which causes it to wedge into the winch drum.
- Make sure the accelerator lever is in low idling position before operating the hook stowing switch.

Use this switch to stow the hook block at the lower top of the machine.

- ON: Keep pushing the switch upward. The over hoist detector is released and the hook block is wound up slower than the normal operation mode, so that it is stowed in the hook holder.
- OFF: Release your finger from the switch. The switch returns to the original position and the auto-stop function of the over hoist detector will be activated.

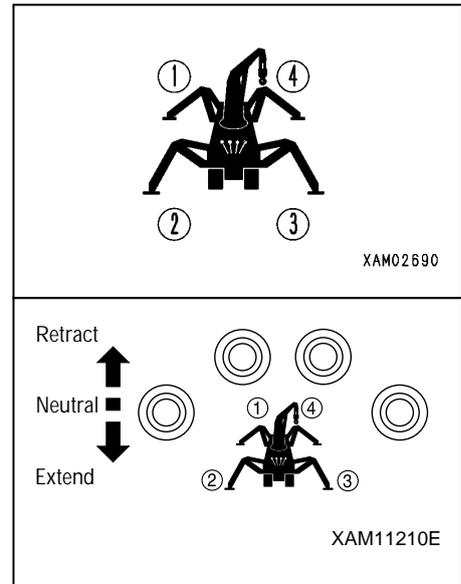


### [6] OUTRIGGER SETTING SWITCH (10)

Use these switches to install or stow each of 4 [(1) to (4)] outriggers.

4 Outrigger individual setting switches enable to control each of 4 [(1) to (4)] outriggers separately.

- **IN** : Turn the switch upward.  
Outrigger cylinder retracts and the outrigger is stowed.
- **Neutral**: Release your finger from the switch.  
The switch returns to its **NEUTRAL** position and extending or retracting of the outrigger is interrupted.
- **OUT** : Turn the switch downward.  
Outrigger cylinder extends and the outrigger is installed.

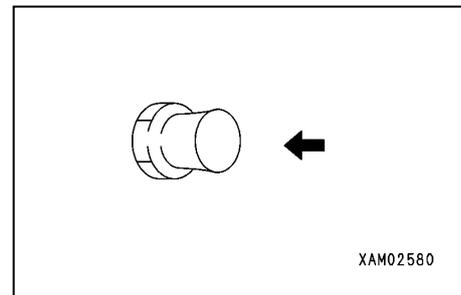


### [7] HORN SWITCH (11)

Use this switch to honk the horn.

- Honking the horn: Press the switch.

NOTES
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The horn will stop when you release your finger from the switch.</li> <li>• The horn switch is provided on the travelling control side as well.</li> </ul>



### [8] LEVEL (6)

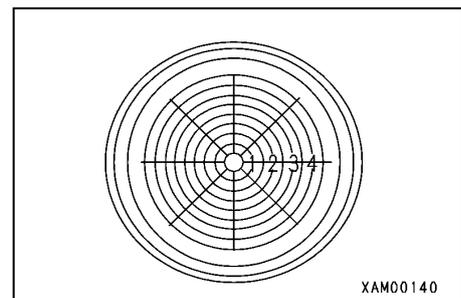
#### ⚠ WARNING

**When installing the outrigger, make adjustments while looking at the level so that the machine body will be leveled. Performing the crane operation with the body tilted will cause overturning.**

This device indicates how much the machine body is tilted.

The bubble position shows how much the machine is tilted in which direction.

Use this device to verify that the machine is levelled when setting the outriggers.

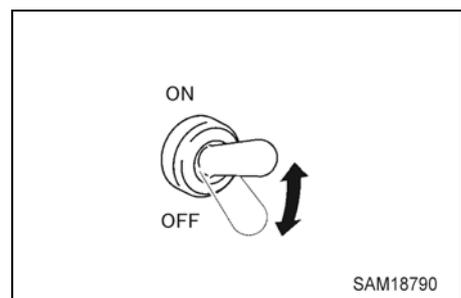


### [9] BOOM LIFT BYPASS SWITCH (15)

Use this switch to raise the boom in overload condition.

**ON** : Keep pushing the switch upward. This releases boom raise restriction under overload condition and you can raise the boom.

**OFF** : Release your finger from the switch. The switch returns to the original position and the auto-stop function of boom raise under overload condition will be activated.



Refer to the "OPERATION 1.5.3 MOMENT LIMITER OPERATION" for more information about how to use this switch.

## 1.4 OUTRIGGER SAFETY DEVICES

### 1.4.1 FUNCTIONS OF OUTRIGGER SAFETY DEVICES

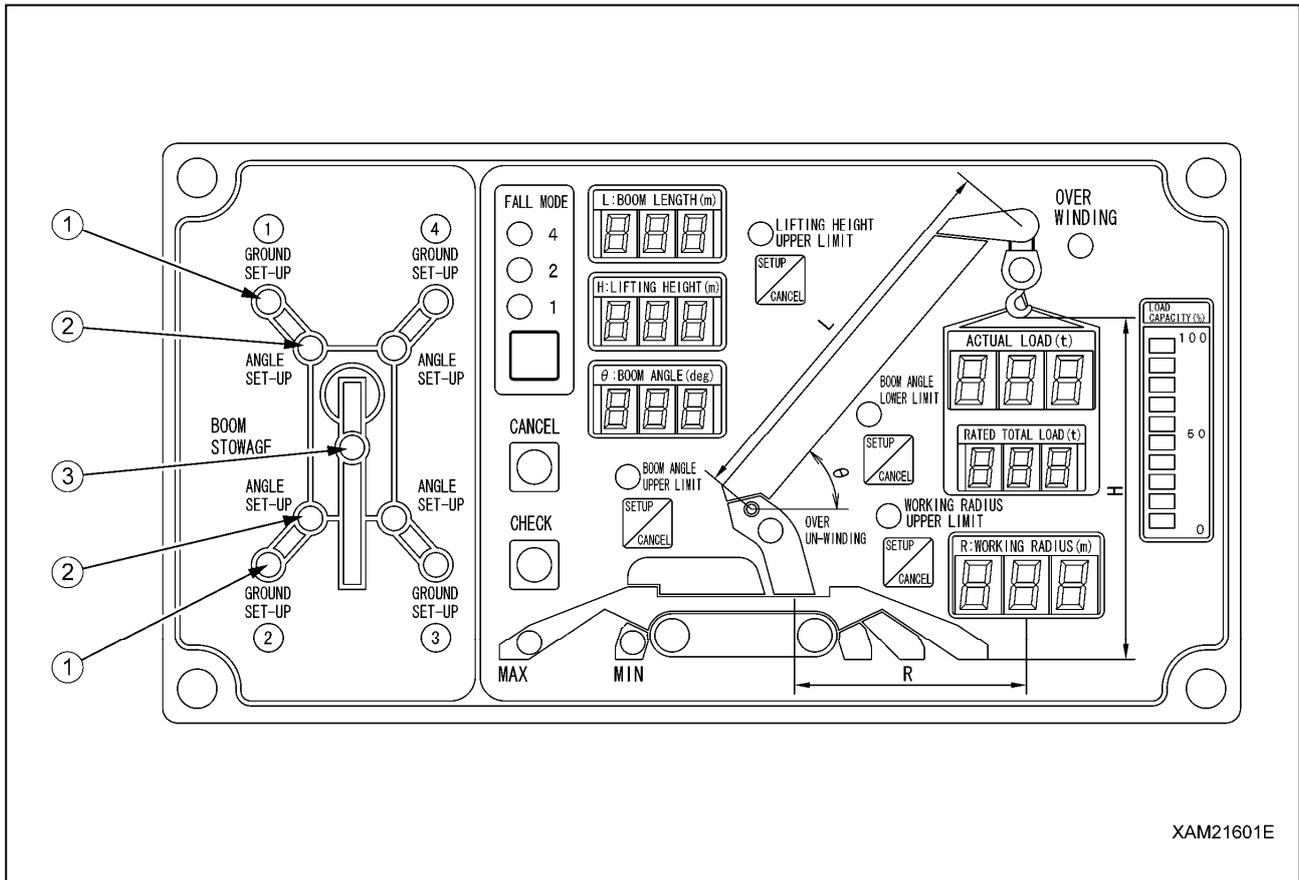
The outrigger safety devices have the interlock functions shown in the table below.

	Interlock Function	Description of Interlock Function
1	Outrigger Interlock	<p>Outriggers are not enable unless outrigger rotary is set to outward where position pin holes are aligned and ready for pin insertion with boom being stowed (boom lowered to maximum, slewed and stored)..</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Whether the boom is lowered to the maximum is verified by the detection switch located to the post.</li> <li>• Install a protrusion on the post at the boom slew and stow position and a detector switch on the travelling dolly in order to detect whether the boom has stopped at the slew and stow position.</li> </ul>
2	Crane Interlock	<p>The crane operation (telescoping, raising/lowering hook, derricking, and slewing) is enabled only when all four outriggers are extended and set (overhung and grounded).</p> <p>The outrigger extension status is detected as follows.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Install a detection switch at outrigger rotary section to detect proper positioning of rotary for setting outriggers.</li> <li>• Install a detection switch inside the outrigger inner box to detect if the tray is seated properly through the detection pin installed between the tip of the inner box and the tray.</li> </ul>

### CAUTION

- **Set the outriggers in the extension status and operate the work selector switch in the outrigger operation panel to the “CRANE” position to enable the crane operation.**  
When the detection condition for setting one of the four outriggers (see the item 2 in the table above) is no more fulfilled, the working status lamp (red) rotates and lights up, and outrigger un-set warning lamp (red) flashes.  
If this state remains for 3 seconds or more, the crane interlock function is activated and the crane operation will be disabled.
- **Stow the crane and operate the work selector switch on the outrigger operation panel to the “OUTRIGGER” position to enable the outrigger setting and extension operations.**
- **If the crane operation is not enabled after operating the work selector switch on the outrigger operation panel to the “CRANE” position even after the outrigger is being extended and set, there may be faulty adjustment or failure in the outrigger safety device.**  
Please ask us or our sales service agency for repair.
- **After rotating outriggers to outward, properly insert position pins for locking.**

## 1.4.2 NAMES AND DESCRIPTIONS OF OUTRIGGER DISPLAY



- (1) Outrigger setting lamp
- (2) Outrigger angle setting lamp
- (3) Boom stowing lamp

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Do not remove, disassemble, or repair detection switches. Do not move the detection switches from the original location to another.
- If you hit detection switches or find damage to the detection switches, be sure to check the ON/OFF operation of the lamps on the outrigger display and operation of the crane interlock function and outrigger interlock function. If you find any error, ask us or our sales service agency for repair.

#### **[1] OUTRIGGER SETTING LAMPS (LED, CHANGES TO GREEN/RED)**

This LED indicates that the outriggers are set by its illumination.

The LED lights up in green when the outrigger tray is set and the LED blinks on and off in red when the tray floats (stow).

The conditions of the outrigger trays are detected by the base of the

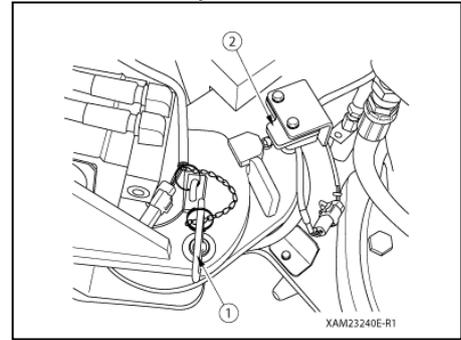
## [2] OUTRIGGER ANGLE SETTING LAMPS (LED, CHANGES TO GREEN/RED)

This LED turn on to indicate the outrigger is rotated outward.

The LED lights up in green when the outrigger is rotated all the way out. And the LED blinks on and off in red when the outrigger is in the shut position even a little.

When the outrigger is in the fully outer position it is detected by the Detection Switch (2) of the outrigger pivot.

After positioning outrigger rotary to outward,properly insert position pins for locking.



## [3] BOOM STOWING LAMP

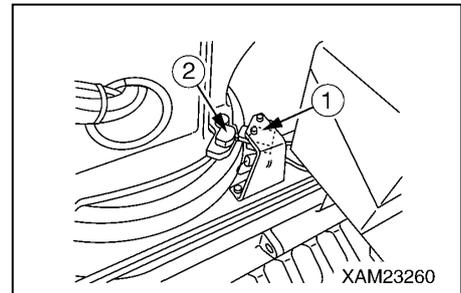
This lamp turns on and indicates that the boom is stowed.

The boom stowing lamp turns on and off in accordance to the following two types of detection switches. (When both of the detection switches detect.)

### [BOOM STOWING DETECTION IN SLEWING DIRECTION]

The lamp turns on when the boom stops at the slew and stow position, and turns off when the boom leaves the slew and stop position.

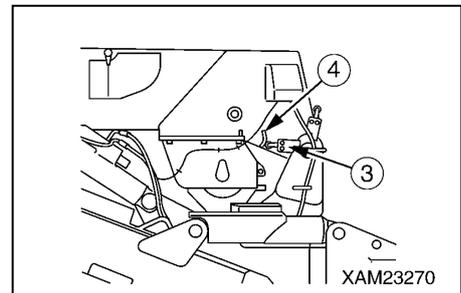
Boom movements are detected by the projection (2) (slew) on the post and the detection switch (1) (fix) on the travelling dolly.



### [BOOM STOWING DETECTION IN HORIZONTAL DIRECTION]

The lamp turns on when the boom stops at the horizontal stowing position, and turns off when the boom leaves the horizontal stowing position.

Boom movements are detected by the projection (4) (movable) at the side of the boom rear edge and the detection switch (3) (fixed) at the boom connection.

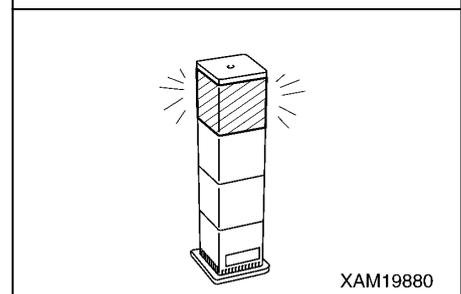
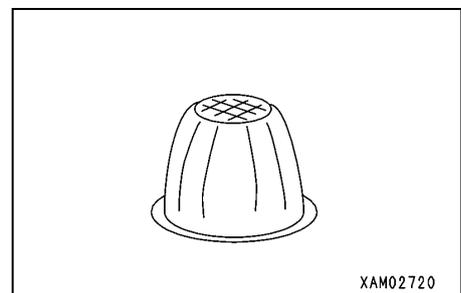


## 1.4.3 OUTRIGGER UN-SET WARNING LAMP (Yellow)

This lamp flashes to indicate that one or more of the four outriggers are not properly set.

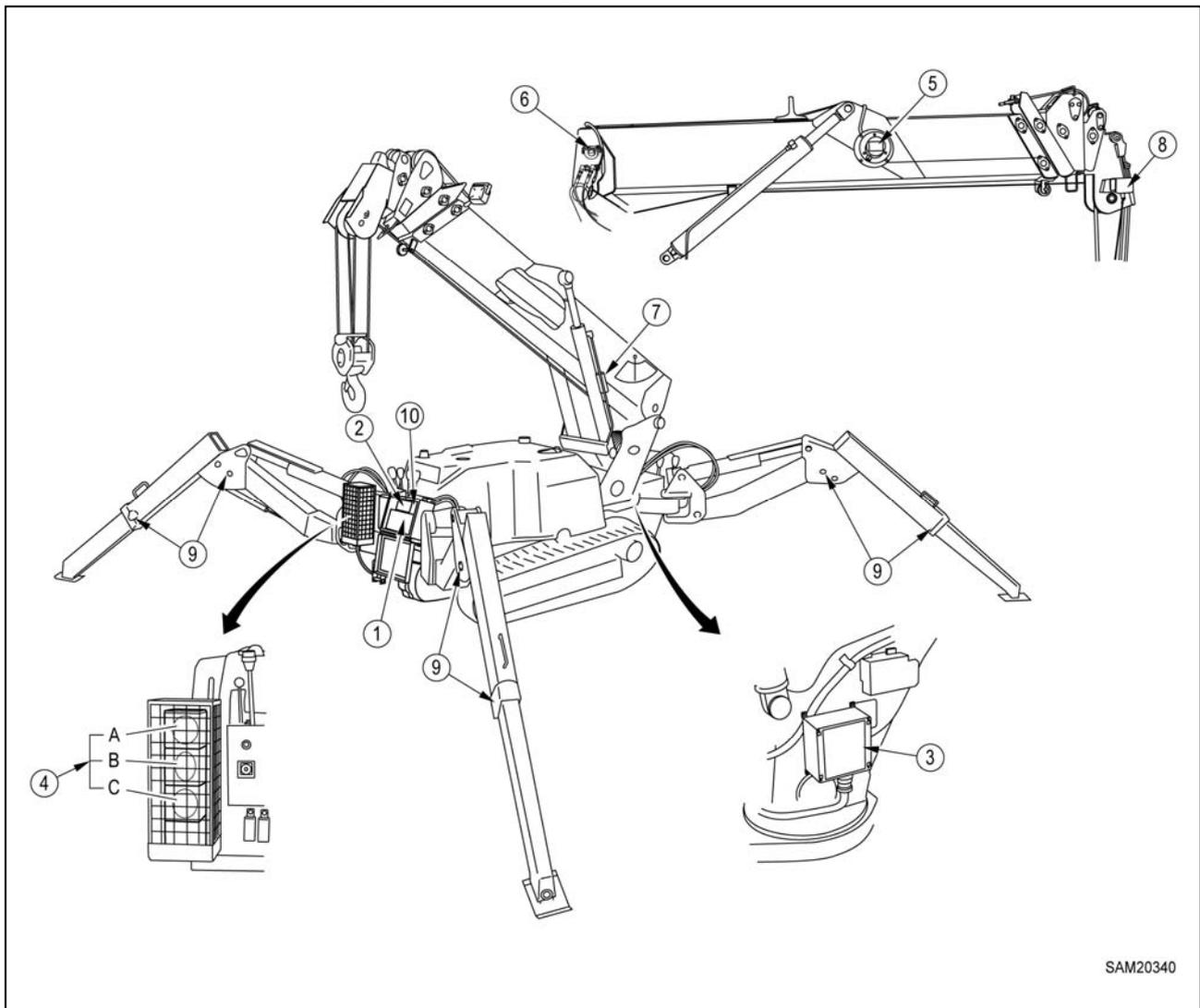
### NOTES

- The outrigger un-set warning lamp flashes if extension or setting of any of the four outriggers cannot be detected.
- The outrigger un-set warning lamp is interlocked with the working status lamp (red) for moment limiter. As soon as the outrigger un-set warning lamp flashes, the working status lamp (red) also rotates and lights up.



## 1.5 MOMENT LIMITER (OVERLOAD DETECTOR)

### 1.5.1 MOMENT LIMITER CONFIGURATION



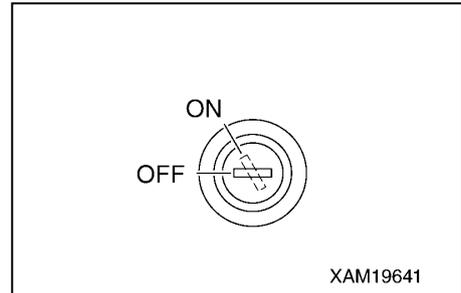
SAM20340

- (1) Moment limiter display unit
- (2) Emergency stop cancel switch
- (3) Moment limiter converter
- (4) Working status lamp
  - (A) Red working status lamp (Warning lamp for load factor of 100 % or more)
  - (B) Yellow working status lamp (Pre-warning lamp for load factor of 90 to 100 %)
  - (C) Green working status lamp (Working lamp for load factor of less than 90 %)
- (5) Boom length gauge (inside boom)
- (6) Boom angle gauge (side of boom rear edge)
- (7) Pressure sensor (derrick cylinder) (two)
- (8) Over hoist detector (side of boom tip)
- (9) Outrigger position detection switch
- (10) Boom lift bypass switch

## 1.5.2 FUNCTION OF MOMENT LIMITER

### **⚠ DANGER**

- Do not remove, disassemble, or repair detectors. Do not move the detectors to another location from original position.
- Should an object hit a detector or you find any damage on a detector, be sure to verify the actuation status of the auto stop.  
If you find any abnormality with the actuation of the auto stop, do not fail to fix it.
- Do not turn ON (cancel) the emergency stop cancel switch unless you find an error or check/perform maintenance on detectors.  
When turning ON (cancel) the emergency stop cancel switch, always shift the crane speed to low.  
Overloading can cause the hoisted load to fall, boom breakage, or overturning of this machine that can lead to serious accidents resulting in death or serious injury.
- The machine will not stop automatically even if the crane is overloaded during the crane slewing operation. Do not slew the crane when being overloaded.
- When the boom approaches the stop position during the operation, be sure to change the operation speed of the boom to low speed.  
With high-speed boom operation, the boom may overrun the specified stop position, causing serious accidents such as overturning of the machine resulting in death or serious injury.



The moment limiter is a device installed to prevent the hoisted load from falling, the boom from breaking, or the machine from overturning due to overloading.

Always check the operation of the moment limiter before crane operation to verify no abnormality.

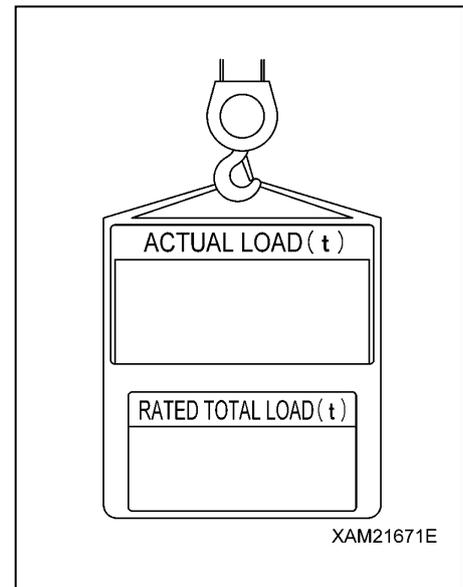
### **[1] MECHANISM OF MOMENT LIMITER**

The moment limiter calculates current "rated total load" by knowing the current boom posture by the boom angle gauge and the boom length gauge, by knowing the outrigger extension condition by the outrigger position switch, and by knowing the number of wire falls (entered by the driver).

Then by actually hoisting a load, the "read load" (hoist load) is sent from the pressure sensor of the derrick cylinder to the moment limiter.

The moment limiter comparatively calculates between the "rated total load" computed out of the current posture and the "real load" (hoisted load), and issues alarm if the result indicates the real load/rated total load=90 to 100%.

If the calculation result indicates the real load/rated total load=above 100%, an alarm is issued and the causes the boom operation to automatically stop.



### **[2] DISPLAY OF THE MOMENT LIMITER ERROR MESSAGES**

The moment limiter performs self-diagnosis on the moment limiter display unit when an error is issued by the boom angle gauge, boom length gauge, pressure sensor, or when a circuit is opened or a connector is disconnected.

The result is displayed on the "Rated total load Display" of the moment limiter display unit by an error code to notify the operator of the error.

Immediately stop the use of the crane when an error code is displayed.

See "Operation 1.5.9 Moment Limiter Error Causes and Actions to be taken".

### 1.5.3 MOMENT LIMITER OPERATIONS

The moment limiter is a device for unexpected events. Operations relying on the device will rather incur danger.

Pay sufficient attention during the operation not to cause auto-stop of the crane.

#### [1] PROHIBITED ACTIONS AFTER AUTO STOP

### DANGER

The following crane operations are prohibited after the crane has stopped automatically due to overloading. These operations may cause overturning of the machine or breakage of the boom and are very dangerous.

- Boom lowering operation
- Boom raising operation
- Boom extending operation
- Hook raising operation
- Crane slewing operation

#### [2] RECOVERY OPERATION AFTER AUTO STOP

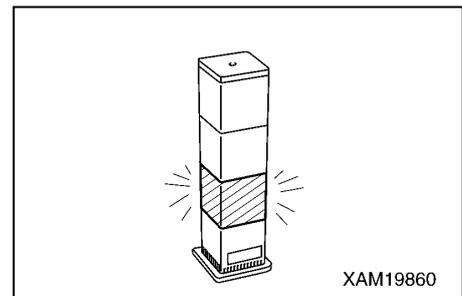
### DANGER

Be sure to switch the engine speed to low speed and perform crane operation carefully if the moment limiter load factor is 90 % or higher.

Performing crane operation at high engine speed will swing the hoisted load and is very dangerous, causing overloading and it may break the boom.

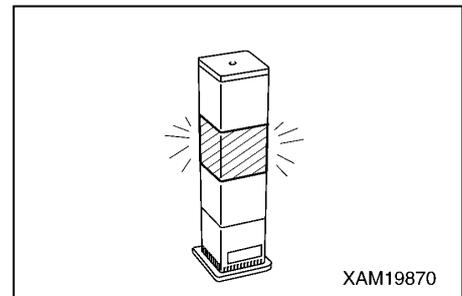
#### 1. With load factor of “less than 90 %”

When the hoisting load is less than 90 % of the rated total load, the working status lamp lights is green, indicating normal operation status.



#### 2. With load factor of “90 to less than 100 %”

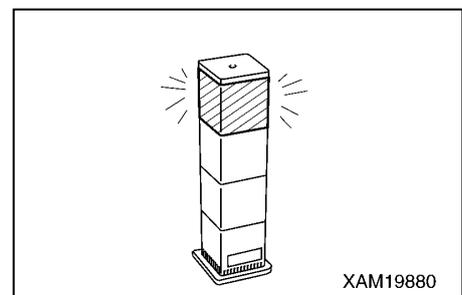
When the hoisting load reaches 90 % of the rated total load (pre-warning), the working status lamp changes from green to yellow and the alarm sounds intermittently, notifying the operator and those around that the hoisting load is close to the rated total load.



#### 3. With load factor of “100 % or higher”

When the hoisting load reaches 100 % of the rated total load by continuing the crane operation after exceeding 90 % of the rated total load (pre-warning), the working status lamp changes from yellow to red and the alarm now sounds continuously. The following crane operations will be stopped automatically.

- Hook raising operation
- Boom extending operation
- Boom lowering operation
- Boom raising operation

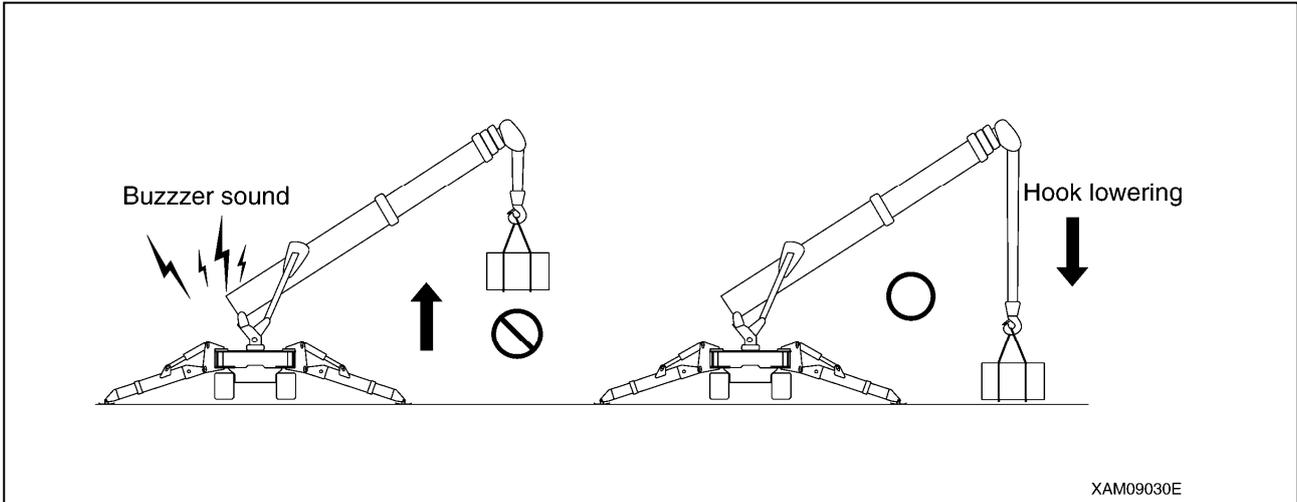


The audible message of “Peep, overloading” will be issued. Furthermore, the LED of “100 %” on the moment limiter loads factor display lights up.

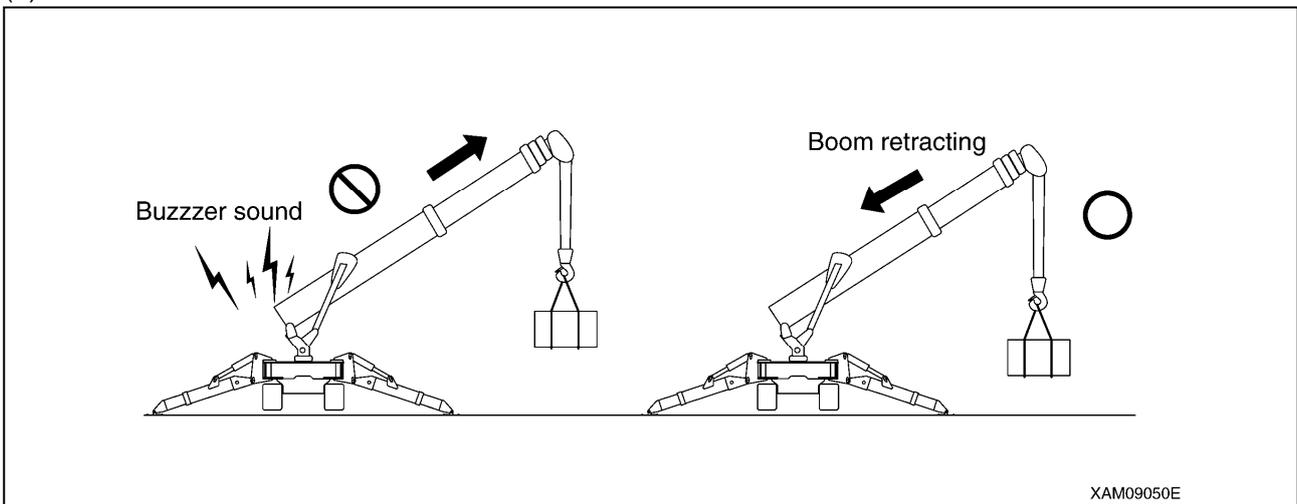
#### 4. Recovery Operation from Auto Stop

The recovery operation from overloading should be the reverse operation of the crane operation that caused the auto stop. Perform one of the following.

(1) Lower the hook and put the hoisted load on the ground.



(2) Retract the boom.



#### 5. When recovering by boom raising operation

In the case of an automatic stop, when raising of the boom is unavoidable, the boom raising operation is possible only while keeping the boom lift bypass switch in the "ON" position.

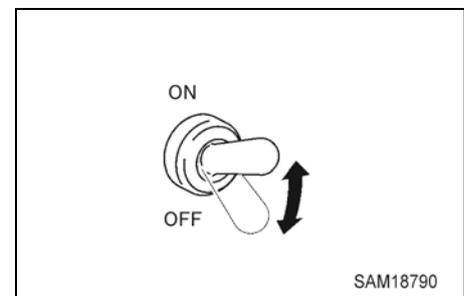
To return to the "OFF" position, also return the boom raising lever.

### **⚠ DANGER**

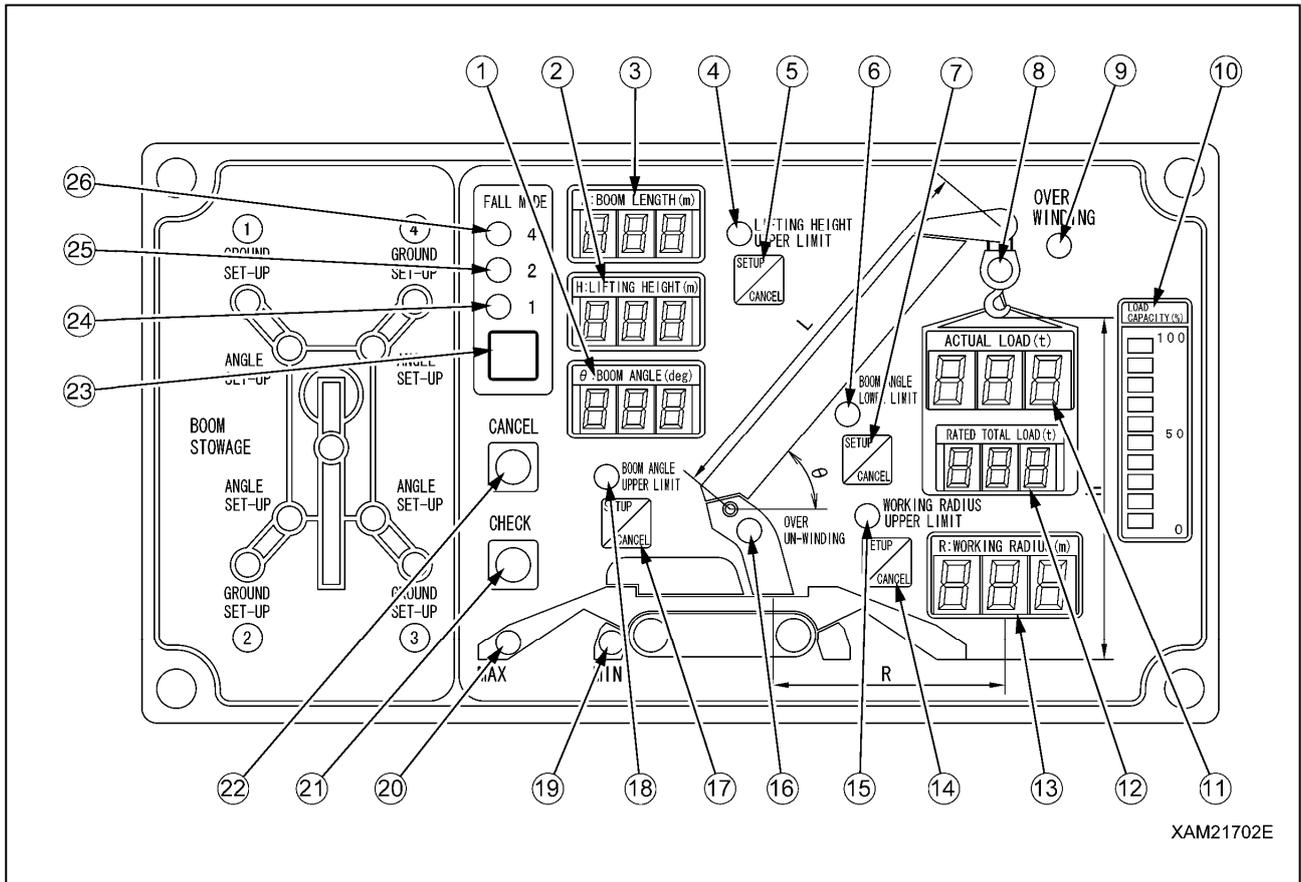
**Only use this switch when an automatic stop has occurred through entry into the overload region while lowering or extending the boom.**

**Do not use under normal conditions or when lifting clear from the ground.**

**If you use this switch when lifting from the ground, there is a risk of serious accidents such as the machine being damaged or overturning.**



## 1.5.4 NAMES OF MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT



XAM21702E

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (1) Boom angle display                                  | (13) Working radius display                  |
| (2) Lifting height display                              | (14) Working radius upper limit switch       |
| (3) Boom length display                                 | (15) Working radius upper limit LED (Orange) |
| (4) Boom lifting height upper limit LED (Orange)        | (16) Over un-winding LED (Red)               |
| (5) Boom lifting height upper limit switch              | (17) Boom angle upper limit switch           |
| (6) Boom angle lower limit LED (Orange)                 | (18) Boom angle upper limit LED (Orange)     |
| (7) Boom angle lower limit switch                       | (19) Outrigger MIN. extension LED (Blue)     |
| (8) Load factor LED (Changes to green, yellow, and red) | (20) Outrigger MAX. extension LED (Blue)     |
| (9) Over hoist detection LED (Red)                      | (21) Check switch                            |
| (10) Load capacity display (Yellow)                     | (22) Cancel switch                           |
| (11) Actual load display                                | (23) Fall mode selector switch               |
| (12) Rated total load display                           | (24) 1-fall fall LED (Blue)                  |
|   | (25) 2-falls fall LED (Blue)                 |
|   | (26) 4-falls fall LED (Blue)                 |

## [1] DESCRIPTIONS OF SWITCHES ON MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT

### 1. WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED (BLUE)

#### **⚠ DANGER**

When entering the number of wire falls, verify the actually used number of wire falls and make sure to set up correctly.

Entering incorrect number of wire falls may prevent issuance of the pre-warnings and boom auto-stop even when overload is imminent, and thus may result in crane damage or machine trip that may result in a serious accident.

Use this switch to change the number of wire falls.

- Keep pressing the switch for 2 seconds or more.

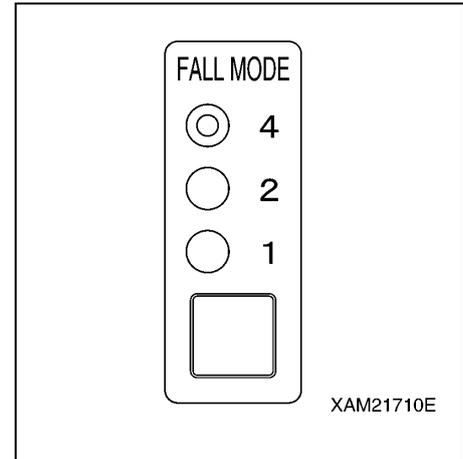
The setting changes from “4-falls” to “searcher hook mode” to “.1-fall”, to “2-falls”.

At the same time, the wire falls display LED changes from “4-falls” to “searcher hook mode”, indicating that the setting has changed.

- Then each time you press the switch for 2 seconds or more, the setting of the wire falls changes from “1-fall” to “2-falls”, and then from “2-falls” to “4-falls” and then from “4-falls” to “searcher hook mode”.

#### **NOTES**

When changing the setting right after doing so, release your hand from the switch, and then press the switch again.



### 2. BOOM ANGLE UPPER LIMIT SWITCH AND LED (ORANGE)

Use this switch to set or cancel the boom angle upper limit.

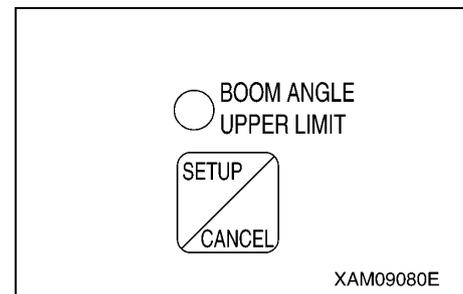
#### **[SETUP]**

With no upper limit value being set, set the boom to the angle you would like, and press the switch for 2 seconds.

The boom angle at this point is set as the upper limit.

At the same time, the LED lights up indicating that the upper limit value was set.

To enable this setting, turn the key switch to the “ON” position again after turning it to the “OFF” position, or lower the boom by “10 degrees” or more from the set boom angle to get out of the pre-warning zone while the engine is being started.



#### **NOTES**

Be sure to verify that the boom automatically stops at the set angle before performing the actual operation. If the boom does not stop automatically, re-set the boom angle using the procedure above.

When the boom reaches the pre-warning zone or stops at the upper limit with the boom angle upper limit set, the boom angle upper limit LED flashes.

#### **[CANCEL]**

With the upper limit value being set (LED ON), press the switch for 5 seconds.

The current upper limit value setting will be cleared. At the same time, the LED goes off indicating that the upper limit value setting is cleared.

#### **NOTES**

The setting and cancelling will not repeat even if you keep the switch pressed for more than 2 seconds. Release the switch, and then press the switch again.

### 3. BOOM ANGLE LOWER LIMIT SWITCH AND LED (ORANGE)

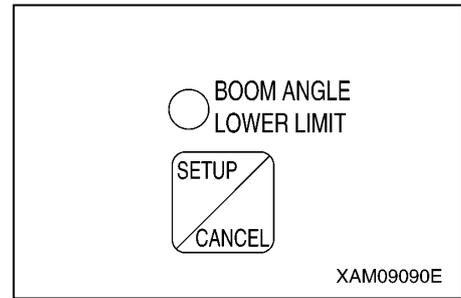
Use this switch to set or cancel the boom angle lower limit.

#### [SETUP]

With no lower limit value being set, set the boom to the angle you would like, and press the switch for 2 seconds.

The boom angle at this point is set as the lower limit.

At the same time, the LED lights up indicating that the lower limit value was set.



To enable this setting, turn the key switch to the "ON" position again after turning it to the "OFF" position, or raise the boom by "7 degrees" or more from the set boom angle to get out of the pre-warning zone while the engine is being started.

#### NOTES

Be sure to verify that the boom automatically stops at the set angle before performing the actual operation. If the boom does not stop automatically, re-set the boom angle using the procedure above.

When the boom reaches the pre-warning zone or stops at the lower limit with the boom angle lower limit set, the boom angle lower limit LED flashes.

#### [CANCEL]

With the lower limit value being set (LED ON), press and hold the switch for 5 seconds.

The current lower limit value setting will be cleared. At the same time, the LED will turn off indicating that the lower limit value setting is cleared.

#### NOTES

The setting and cancelling will not repeat even if you keep the switch pressed for more than 2 seconds. Release the switch and then press the switch again.

### 4. WORKING RADIUS UPPER LIMIT SWITCH AND LED (ORANGE)

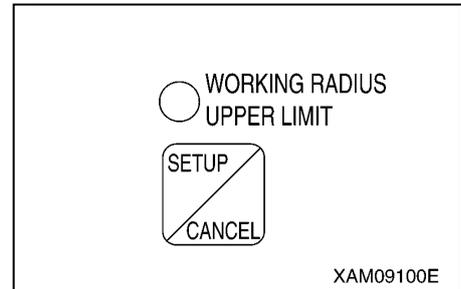
Use this switch to set or cancel the working radius upper limit.

#### [SETUP]

With no upper limit value being set, set the boom to the working radius you would like, and press the switch for 2 seconds.

The working radius at this point is set as the upper limit.

At the same time, the LED lights up indicating that the upper limit value was set.



To enable this setting, turn the key switch to the "ON" position again after turning it to the "OFF" position, or reduce the working radius by "1.3 m" or more from the set working radius to get out of the pre-warning zone while the engine is being started.

#### NOTES

Be sure to verify that the boom automatically stops at the set working radius before performing the actual operation. If the boom does not stop automatically, re-set the working radius using the procedure above.

When the boom reaches the pre-warning zone or stops at the upper limit with the working radius upper limit set, the working radius upper limit LED flashes.

#### [CANCEL]

With the upper limit value being set (LED ON), press the switch for 5 seconds.

The current upper limit value setting will be cleared. At the same time, the LED goes off indicating that the upper limit value setting is cleared.

#### NOTES

The setting and cancelling will not repeat even if you keep the switch pressed for more than 2 seconds. Release the switch and then press the switch again.

## 5. LIFTING HEIGHT UPPER LIMIT SWITCH AND LED (ORANGE)

Use this switch to set or cancel the lifting height upper limit.

While the lifting height is restricted by detecting the height of the tip of the boom, the lifting height on the display panel shows the lifting height when the hook was raised to the over hoist detection status.

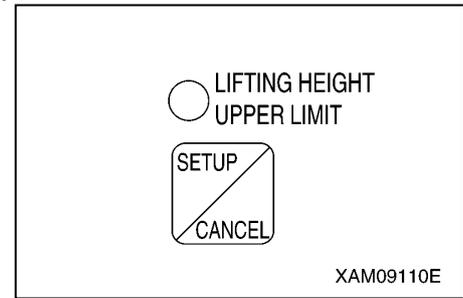
### [SETUP]

With no upper limit value being set, set the boom to the lifting height you would like, and press the switch for 2 seconds.

The lifting height at this point is set as the upper limit.

At the same time, the LED lights up indicating that the upper limit value was set.

To enable this setting, turn the key switch to the "ON" position again after turning it to the "OFF" position, or reduce the lifting height by "1.3 m" or more from the set lifting height to get out of the pre-warning zone while the engine is being started.



### NOTES

Be sure to verify that the boom automatically stops at the set lifting height before performing the actual operation. If the boom does not stop automatically, re-set the lifting height using the procedure above.

When the boom reaches the pre-warning zone or stops at the upper limit with the lifting height upper limit set, the lifting height upper limit LED flashes.

### [CANCEL]

With the upper limit value being set (LED ON), press the switch for 5 seconds.

The current upper limit value setting will be cleared. At the same time, the LED will turn off indicating that the upper limit value setting is cleared.

### NOTES

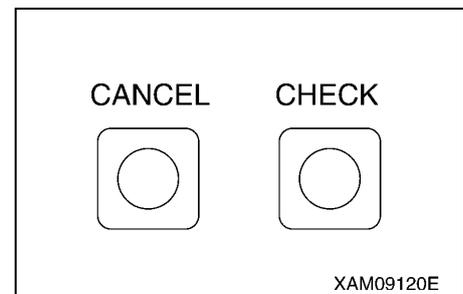
The setting and cancelling will not repeat even if you keep the switch pressed for more than 2 seconds. Release the switch and then press the switch again.

## 6. CANCEL SWITCH

Use this switch to cancel the all setting sets in the section 2 to 5 above.

- Press this switch and "CHECK" switch at the same time for 5 seconds or more.

The all value sets in sections 2 to 5 above will be cancelled.



## 7. CHECK SWITCH

Use this switch to verify the values set in sections 2 to 5 above.

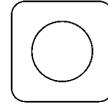
- Press this switch. Every time the switch is pressed, the set value will be displayed in the following order.

- (1) "Boom angle upper limit value" is displayed at the boom angle display section.
- (2) "Boom angle lower limit value" is displayed at the boom angle display section.
- (3) "Working radius upper limit value" is displayed at the working radius display section.
- (4) "Lifting height upper limit value" is displayed at the lifting height display section.
- (5) Returns to the original display.

### NOTES

- When a set value is displayed, the LED for its setting switch section flashes at the same time.
- If no switch has been pressed for 5 seconds or another switch was pressed with a set value being displayed, the display goes back to the original display.
- The display will be blank for the item to which no value is set.
- The display sections other than for the corresponding items will be blank.

CHECK



XAM22160E

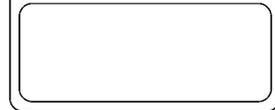
L: BOOM LENGTH (m)



H: LIFTING HEIGHT (m)



$\theta$ : BOOM ANGLE (deg)



XAM09140E

R: WORKING RADIUS (m)



XAM09150E

## [2] DESCRIPTIONS OF MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT

For LEDs not described in this section, see “Operation 1.5.4 Names of moment limiter display unit”.

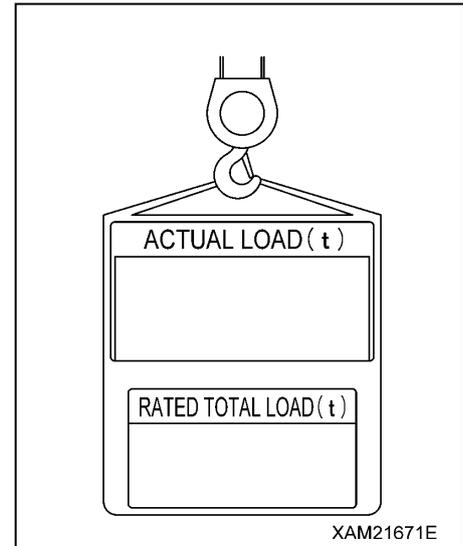
### 1. ACTUAL LOAD DISPLAY SECTION

This section constantly displays the actual load of the hoisted load during the crane operation.

The actual load indicates the total weight of the hoisted load including rigging and the hook block.

If “0.0” to “0.1” is displayed when nothing is being hoisted, the system is normal.

If the value displayed is out of this range, contact us or our sales service agency.



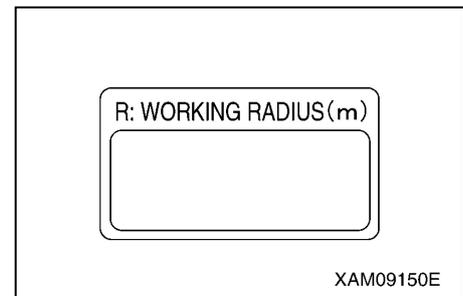
### 2. RATED TOTAL LOAD DISPLAY SECTION

This section displays the number of wire falls on the hook, working radius, current hoistable rated total load (hook weight + rigging weight + load to be hoisted) computed out of the conditions such as the degree of outrigger extension.

### 3. WORKING RADIUS DISPLAY SECTION

This section constantly displays the current working radius during the crane operation.

The working radius is the horizontal distance from the crane slewing centre to the centre of the hook.



### 4. BOOM LENGTH DISPLAY SECTION

This section constantly displays the current boom length during the crane operation.

The boom length is the distance from the boom foot pin to the sheave pin at the end of the boom.

### 5. LIFTING HEIGHT DISPLAY SECTION

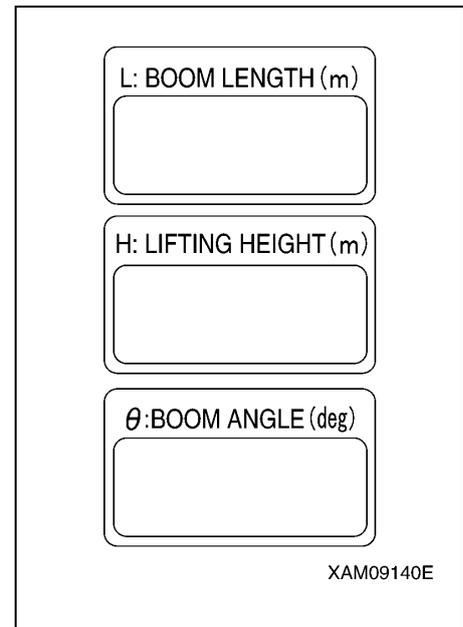
This section constantly displays the current lifting height during the crane operation.

The lifting height is the vertical distance from the ground to the bottom of the hook.

### 6. BOOM ANGLE DISPLAY SECTION

This section constantly displays the current boom angle during the crane operation.

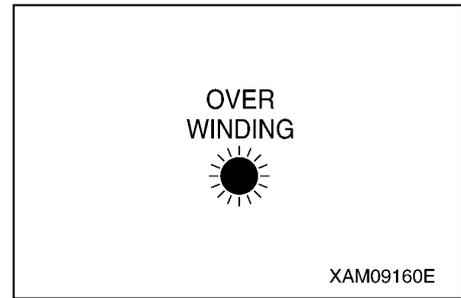
The boom angle is the angle formed between the boom and the horizontal line.



### 7. OVER WINDING LED (RED)

This LED flashes when the hook is overwound, and issues an overwinding warning and causes the machine to automatically stop.

This LED also flashes when the hook is stowed during the hook stowing operation. This is normal.

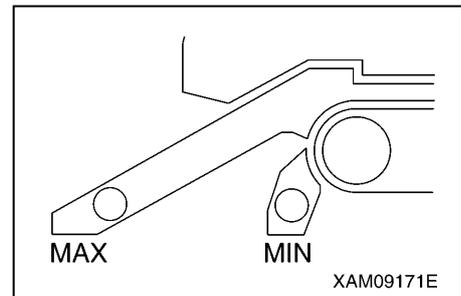


### 8. OUTRIGGER EXTENSION LED (BLUE)

The LED lights up to indicate the outrigger extension status.

- If any of the four outriggers has not properly reached the middle extension position, the "MIN" LED lights up.
- If all the four outriggers reach the maximum extension position, the "MAX" LED lights up.

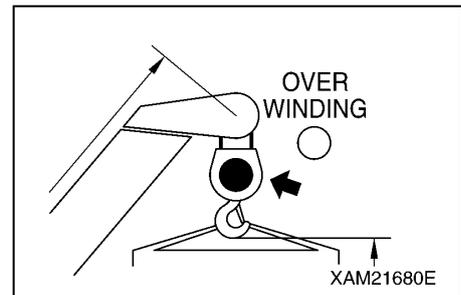
Even if you thought you had set the outriggers at the maximum extension position, the "MIN" LED lights up if any of the outriggers did not properly reach the maximum extension position.



### 9. LOAD FACTOR LED (CHANGES TO GREEN/YELLOW/RED)

This LED indicates the status of the moment limiter load factor by its illumination.

- The LED lights up in green if the load factor is less than 90 %.
- The LED lights up in yellow if the load factor is 90 to less than 100 %.
- The LED lights up in red if the load factor is 100 % or higher.

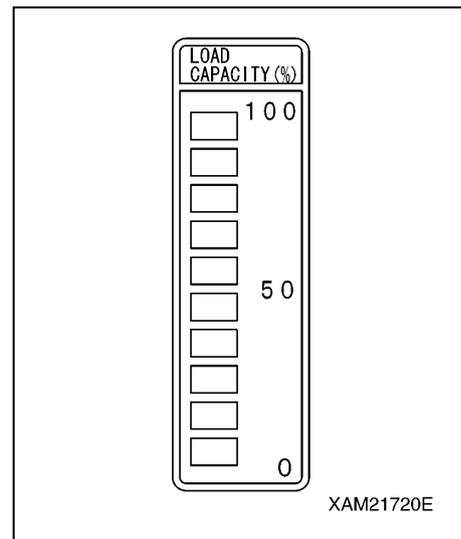


### 10. LOAD FACTOR DISPLAY (YELLOW)

This display indicates the status of the moment limiter load factor by its illumination.

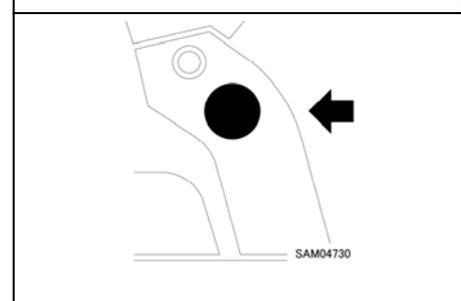
- The load factor is indicated by ON/OFF of the "bar" according to the changes of the load factor.
- All the "bars" will be ON when the load factor reaches 100 % or higher.

NOTES
When the load factor is about 50 %, all the "bars" around the number "50" on the right and below are ON. All the "bars" around the number "50" and above are OFF.



### [11] Over Un-Winding LED (RED)

When the hook reaches over un-winding condition while the crane is operating, the over un-winding LED flashes for warning and Hook un-winding is automatically interrupted.



## 1.5.5 MOMENT LIMITER FUNCTIONS

### [1] OVERLOAD WARNING

**1. SAFETY ZONE** (“Actual load” is less than 90 % of the “rated total load”)

- Green working status lamp lights up.
- The LED lights up in green if the load factor is less than 90 %.

**2. PRE-WARNING** (“Actual load” is 90 to less than 100 % of the “rated total load”)

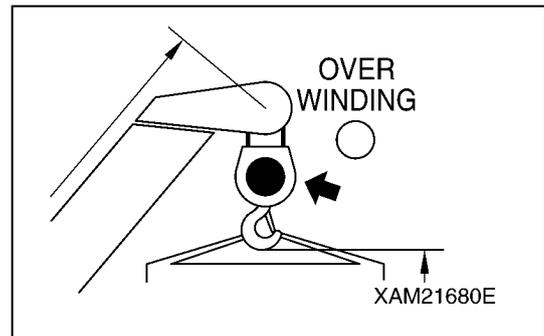
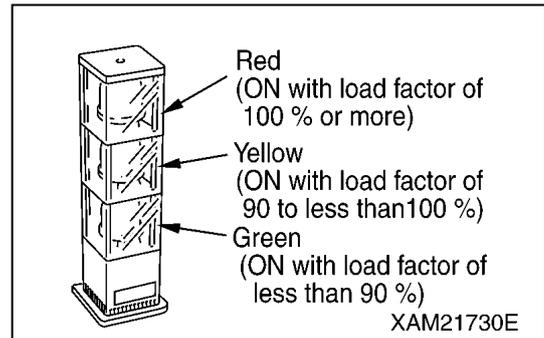
- Yellow working status lamp lights up.
- The LED lights up in yellow if the load factor is 90 to less than 100 %.
- Intermittent alarm sound.

**3. LIMIT WARNING** (“Actual load” is 100 % or higher than the “rated total load”)

- Red of the working status lamp lights up.
- The LED lights up in red if the load factor is 100 % or higher.
- Continuous alarm sound.
- The hazardous operation of the boom stops automatically.
- Voice message of “Overloading” is heard.
- “Load factor 100 % or more” LED (yellow) lights up.

### 4. CLEARING LIMIT WARNING AUTO STOP

If the system stops automatically, promptly perform the recovery operation caused by overloading. See “Operation 1.5.3 [2] Recovery Operation After Auto Stop” for recovery operations.



## [2] WORKING ENVELOPE RESTRICTION WARNING

When the working envelope gets close to the set restriction value, a warning is issued to notify the operator and people around of the situation.

The last status of the set value for the working envelope restriction is memorized even if the starter switch is turned to the OFF position.

### NOTES

See "Operation 1.5.4 [1] Descriptions of Switches on Moment Limiter Display Unit" for how to set the value for working envelope restriction.

When the working envelope has been set, the restriction will be as follows.

#### 1. SAFETY ZONE

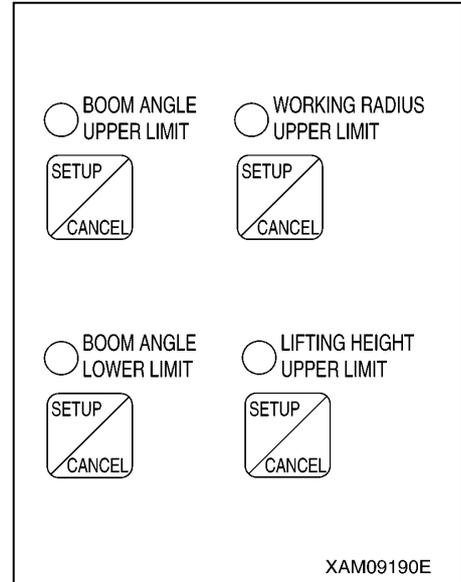
- The appropriate working envelope restriction LED (orange) lights up.
- Green of the working status lamp lights up.

#### 2. PRE-WARNING

- The appropriate working envelope restriction LED (orange) lights up.
- The alarm bleeps intermittently.

#### 3. LIMIT WARNING

- The appropriate working envelope restriction LED (orange) lights up.
- Red of the working status lamp lights up.
- The alarm bleeps continuously.
- The hazardous operation of the boom stops automatically.



## [3] OVER HOIST DETECTOR

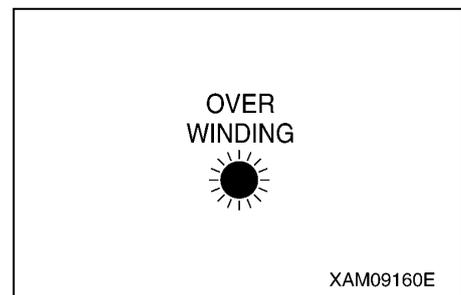
### CAUTION

**Pay attention to the distance between the hook and boom when raising the hook.  
Extending the boom also raises the hook.  
Always check the hook height when extending the boom.**

When overwinding the hook, raising the hook, or extending the boom:

- The "Overwinding" LED (red) flashes.
- Continuous alarm sound.
- The hook raising and boom extending operation stop automatically.
- A voice saying "hook is overwinded" is heard.

In case of auto stop, immediately perform the recovery operation (hook lowering and boom retraction).



#### [4] NUMBER OF WIRES SELECTOR SWITCH

### ⚠ WARNING

- Stop the crane operation when changing the number of wires hooked using the number of wires selector switch.  
Changing the number of wires during the crane operation can cause unexpected accidents.
- Perform the crane operation always after matching the number of wires display on the moment limiter and the actual number of wires. Mistaking the number of wires can cause serious accidents.

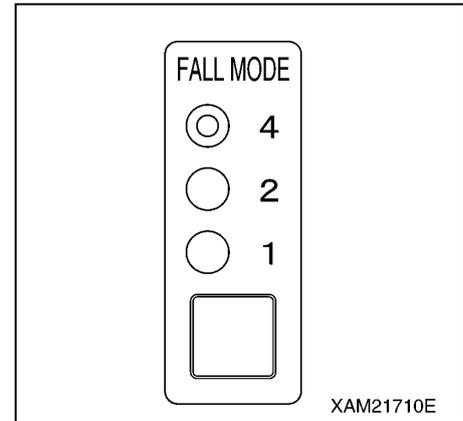
The wire rope has the safe load per rope determined.

Determine the number of wires according to the maximum load to be hoisted.

The actual number of wires hooked and the number of wires display on the moment limiter must match.

With this machine, the hook for four/two wire ropes is referred to as the standard specifications.

The last status of the set number of wires is memorized even if the starter switch is turned to the OFF position.



#### [5] BOOM UPPER LIMIT DETECTION

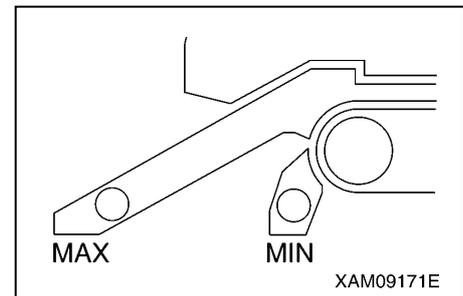
When the boom is raised and the boom angle reaches 77 degrees, the boom raising operation stops automatically.

#### [6] BOOM LOWER LIMIT DETECTION

When the boom is lowered and the boom angle reaches 3 degrees, the boom lowering operation stops automatically.

#### [7] OUTRIGGER EXTENSION DETECTION

The outrigger extension status is detected with the limit switch mounted to each of the four outriggers, lighting the appropriate LED (blue) of the “MIN”, “MID”, or “MAX” and changing the rated total load.

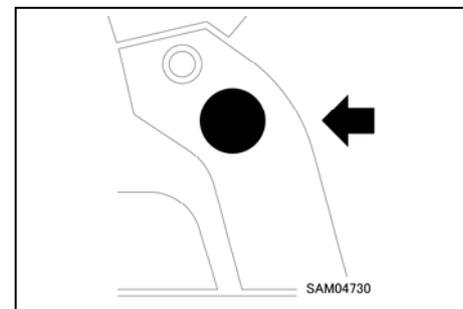


#### 8 Over un-winding Detection

If you unwind the hook excessively to cause the wire cable on the Winch drum to run out,

- The “Over un-winding” LED (red) flashes.
- If the hook lowering operation is attempted, the warning beep sounds intermittently.
- The hook lowering operation stops automatically.

In case of auto stop, immediately perform the recovery operation. Perform hook raising motion as the recovery operation.



### 1.5.6 MOMENT LIMITER STARTING STATUS

The moment limiter checks its function for 2 seconds when the starter switch is turned to the ON position. Meanwhile,

- The red working status lamp lights up.
- All the LEDs light up.
- The horn sounds momentarily.

Then, if the moment limiter and the sensors are normal upon the completion of the functional check of the moment limiter, the red working status lamp turns off and the green working status lamp lights up indicating that the machine is ready for use.

#### CAUTION

**If the red working status lamp does not turn off after completing the functional check of the moment limiter, be sure to contact us or our sales service agency.**

### 1.5.7 MOMENT LIMITER WORKING ENVELOPE SETTING

#### ⚠ WARNING

- **The boom may go beyond the set value when operated at high speed even if the working envelope was restricted by the moment limiter. Be sure to set the working envelope with a safe distance from obstacles. Operate the crane at low speed.**
- **Be sure to verify that the boom stops at the set position after setting the boom working envelope.**

If the boom working envelope is limited due to a lack of working space, you can set the boom working envelope to the desired value.

#### [1] SETTING WORKING ENVELOPE

Operate the boom to the limit of the working envelope you would like to restrict, and press the appropriate SETUP/CANCEL switch for 2 seconds.

The limit value is now set.

At the same time, the LED above the appropriate switch lights up. Then, return the boom to the following setting to enable the restriction control.

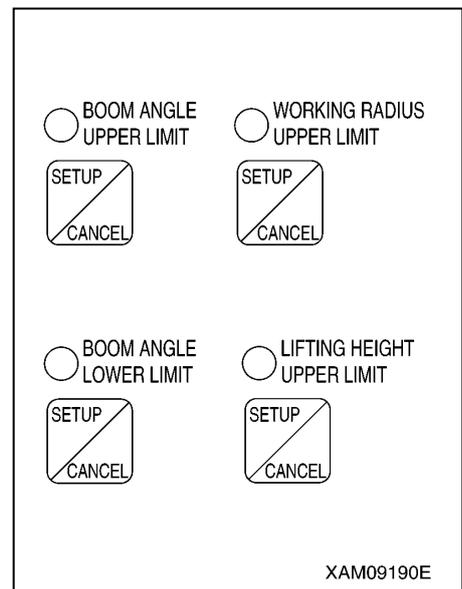
“Set value – 10 degrees or more” for boom upper limit.

“Set value + 7 degrees or more” for boom lower limit.

“Set value – 1.3 m or less” for working radius upper limit

“Set value – 1.3 m or less” for lifting height (With [Lower] or [Retract] operation of the boom)

Or, turn the starter switch to the “OFF” position and then turn again to the “ON” position to enable the restriction.



#### NOTES

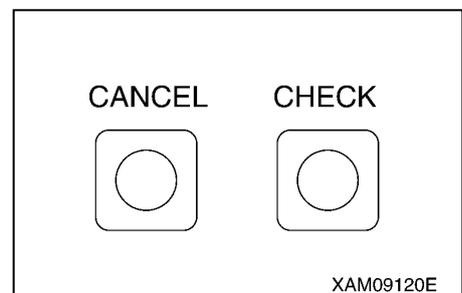
The last status of the set value has been held in memory even if the starter switch is turned to the “OFF” position.

#### [2] CANCELING WORKING ENVELOPE SETTING

- Press and hold the CANCEL switch and CHECK switch at the same time for 5 seconds or more.

All the set working envelope restrictions are cancelled.

At the same time, the LED above all the working envelope limit switches turn off to complete the cancellation of the settings.



- Press the SETUP/CANCEL switch of the item which restriction you would like to cancel for 5 seconds.

The set value of only the item can be cancelled.

At the same time, the LED above the switch goes off to complete the cancellation of the setting.

### NOTES

See "Operation 1.5.4 [1] Descriptions of Switches on Moment Limiter Display Unit" for how to set limit on the working envelope.

## 1.5.8 EMERGENCY STOP CANCEL SWITCH

### ⚠ DANGER

**Do not turn ON (cancel) the emergency stop cancel switch unless you find an error or check/perform maintenance on detectors.**

**When turning ON (cancel) the emergency stop cancel switch, always shift the crane speed to low. Keep the switch key removed during normal crane operation.**

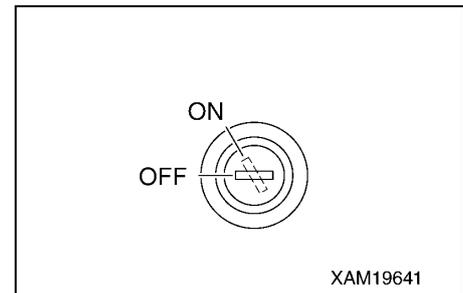
### CAUTION

**Do not use the emergency stop cancel switch when stowing the hook. The winch wire rope may be cut, causing the hook to fall or boom to be damaged. Use the hook stowing switch for stowing the hook.**

Use the emergency stop cancel switch when inspecting, performing maintenance, and cancelling the operation stop as needed.

Open the cover when using the switch.

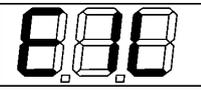
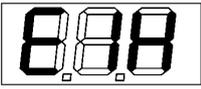
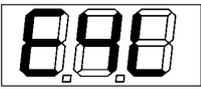
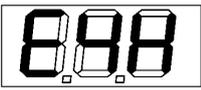
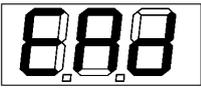
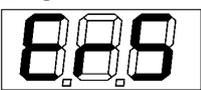
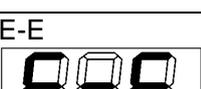
- OFF (Auto): Turn the key counterclockwise.  
The operation stop functions.  
The key can be removed or inserted at this position.
- ON (Cancel): Turn the key clockwise and hold it at that position.  
The operation stop function is cancelled while the key is held.



### 1.5.9 MOMENT LIMITER ERROR CAUSES AND ACTIONS TO BE TAKEN

The moment limiter displays an error code at the “rated total load” display section on the display panel to notify the error.

If an error code shown in the table below was displayed, contact us or our sales service agency.

Error Code	Error Details	Actions to Be Taken
E1L 	The input to pressure sensor 1 is lower than the specified value.	Check the installation of the pressure sensor 1.
E1H 	The input to pressure sensor 1 is higher than the specified value.	
E2L 	The input to pressure sensor 2 is lower than the specified value.	Check the installation of the pressure sensor 2.
E2H 	The input to pressure sensor 2 is higher than the specified value.	
E3L 	The input to angle detector is lower than the specified value.	Check the installation of the angle detector.
E3H 	The input to angle detector is higher than the specified value.	
E4L 	The input to length detector is lower than the specified value.	Check the installation of the length detector.
E4H 	The input to length detector is higher than the specified value.	
EAD 	The AD converter at the converter section is not functioning properly.	Turn the starter switch to the “OFF” position and then to the “ON” position again. If an error is displayed again, change the converter.
ERS 	The communication between the converter section and the display unit is not carried out properly.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the cable between the display unit and the converter. If the cable is normal, change the converter.</li> <li>• Check the fuse built-in the converter.</li> </ul>
E-E 	Error with calibration memory. This error is also issued when calibration has not been done yet.	Turn the starter switch to the “OFF” position and then to the “ON” position again. If an error is displayed again, change the display unit.
No display	---	Check the fuse built-in the display unit.

## 1.6 MACHINERY COVER

### **! WARNING**

- Be sure to stop the engine and remove the starter switch key before removing the machinery cover.
- Do not remove the machinery cover immediately after the operation while the engine is still hot.

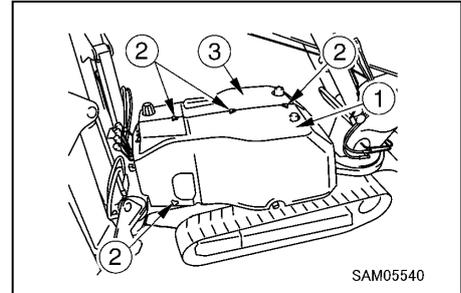
### [1] REMOVING MACHINERY COVER

Remove the machinery cover with the following procedure when performing inspection/maintenance inside the machinery cover.

1. Remove 7 mounting bolts (2) from the left side machinery cover (1).

#### **NOTES**

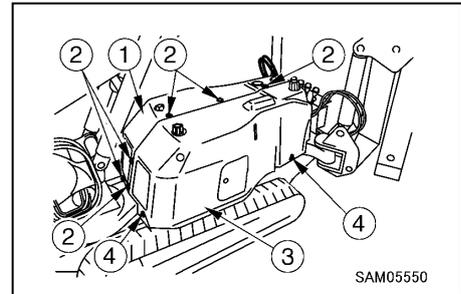
The mounting bolts (2) are positioned with 3 at the top, 3 at the rear and 1 at the front left lower side.



2. Remove 2 mounting bolts (4) from the right side machinery cover (3).

#### **NOTES**

The mounting bolts (4) are positioned with 1 at the rear lower side and 1 at the right lower side.



3. Remove the left side machinery cover (1).

4. Remove the right side machinery cover (3).

### [2] INSTALLING MACHINE COVER

When you have finished inspection/maintenance of the machinery cover, reinstate the machinery cover using by reversing the procedure in 1.6.1.

Upon completion, always check each part for interference.

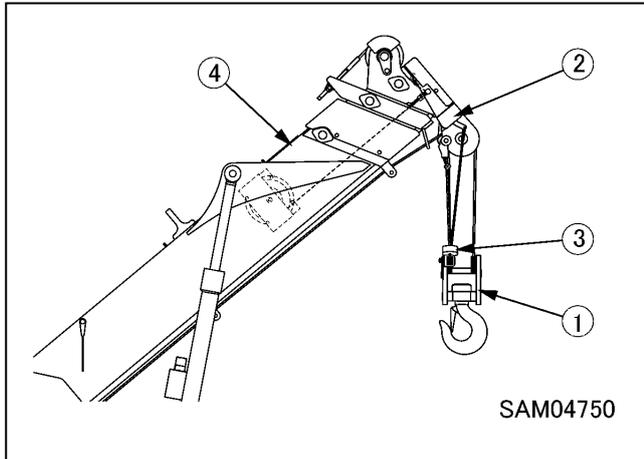
## 1.7 OVER HOIST DETECTOR

### CAUTION

Pay attention to the distance between the hook block and the boom when raising the hook block.

The hook block also raises when the boom is extended.

Always check the height of the hook block when performing the boom extending operation.



- (1) Hook block
- (2) Over hoist detector
- (3) Weight
- (4) Boom

When the hook block (1) is raised or the boom (4) is extended, the over hoist detector intermittently activates the buzzer to warn the operator of overwinding if the hook block (1) approaches the end of the boom (4) and pushes up the weight (3).

At the same time, the raising of the hook block (1) and the extension of the boom (4) stop automatically. When a warning buzzer sounds, operate the winch lever immediately to the "LOWER" side or operate the boom telescoping lever to the "RETRACT" side to lower the hook block (1).

## 2. OPERATIONS

### 2.1 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATIONS

#### 2.1.1 VISIBLE CHECKS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

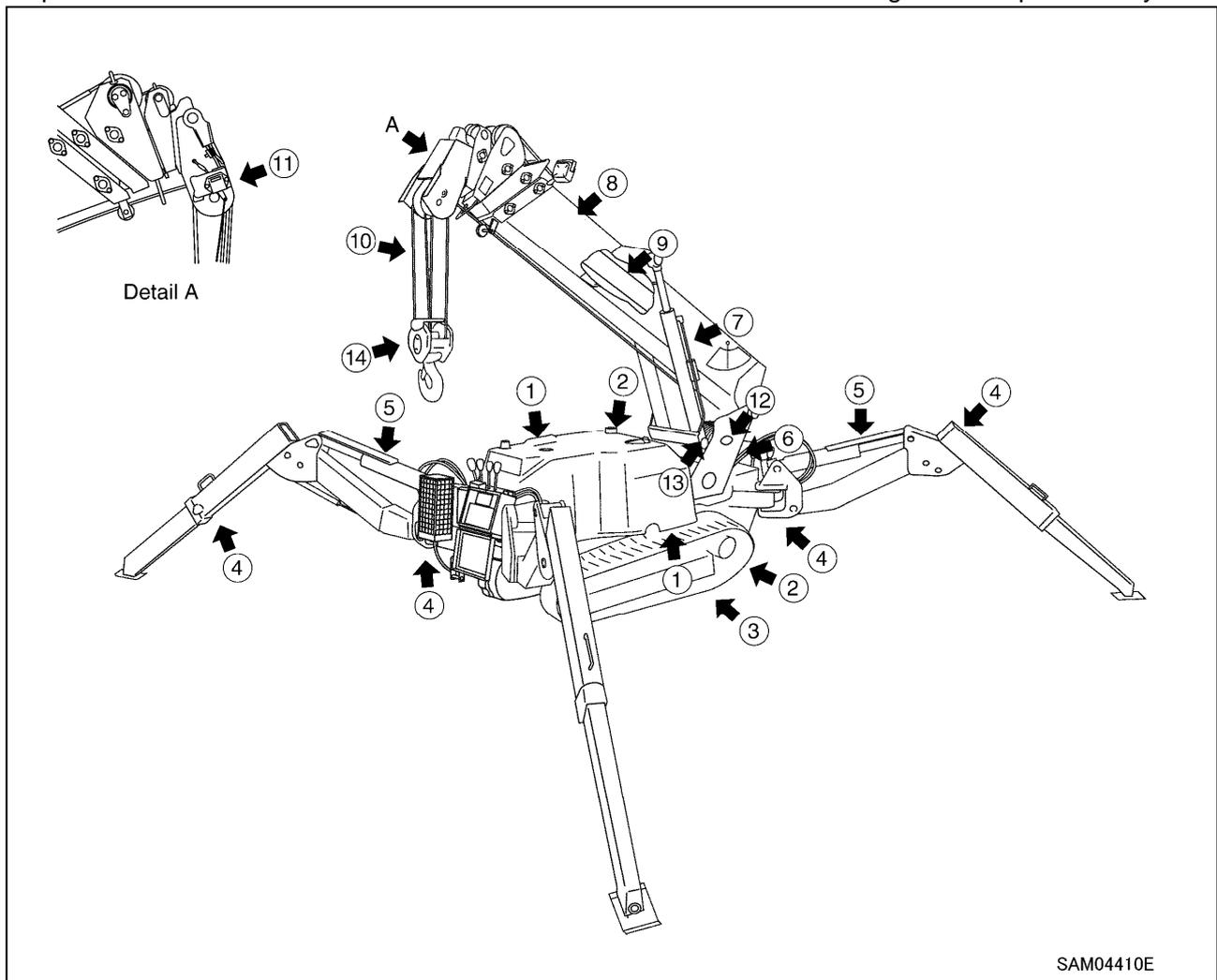
- This machine has a diesel engine.  
If fuel is smelled around the engine, the fuel may be leaking. Carefully check the cracks on the fuel hose or fuel hose connections.
- Build up of combustibles and oil leakage around the hot engine section such as engine and muffler and around the battery can cause a fire in the machine.  
Carefully check around these areas. Should you find any abnormality, be sure to fix it or contact us or our sales service agency.

Before starting the engine, check around the engine for smell of gasoline.

Inspect external areas and the bottom of the machine to check for any loose bolts and oil leakage, in addition to checking the crane and hydraulic systems.

Check for looseness or play in electric wiring and any deposits of trash in places where it is exposed to high temperatures.

Inspections described in this section should be conducted before the first engine start-up of the day.



### **[1] INSPECTION AROUND ENGINE**

Check for and remove any accumulation or deposits of inflammable items including fallen leaves, wastepaper, trash, oil or grease in high temperature areas such as engine and muffler.

Check for fuel or oil leakage from the engine and repair if necessary.

Check for slack wiring or loose connections. Also check for any trace of burning around the starter, alternator or battery and repair any abnormality that may be found.

### **[2] INSPECTION OF HYDRAULIC SYSTEM OF UNDERCARRIAGE**

**(Travel motor, control valve, hydraulic oil tank, and hose joint)**

Check for loose pipe connections or oil leakage and repair any abnormality.

### **[3] INSPECTION OF UNDERCARRIAGE (rubber track, track roller, sprocket and idler)**

Check for damage, wear and loose track rollers. Repair any abnormality. Check for loose or missing bolts and retighten as necessary. For details, see "OPERATION, 3. HANDLING OF RUBBER TRACK".

### **[4] INSPECTION OF OUTRIGGER**

Check for cracks and bent or damaged parts. Check wear of support pins etc, and repair as necessary.

### **[5] INSPECTION OF OUTRIGGER CYLINDER**

Check for loose pipe connections, oil leakage, wear or damage of support pins etc, and repair as necessary.

### **[6] INSPECTION OF POST**

Check for cracks, and bent or damaged parts. Also check for loose post and slew ring mounting bolts, loose swing system speed reducer mounting bolts, loose pipe connections or oil leakage. Repair any abnormality detected.

### **[7] INSPECTION OF DERRICK CYLINDER**

Check for loose pipe connections, oil leakage, wear or damage of support pins etc, and repair as necessary.

### **[8] INSPECTION OF BOOM**

Check for cracks, bent or damage sections in all areas, and check wear of support pins etc, and repair as necessary.

Check for loose mounting bolts of the support pin lock plate portion and tighten it as necessary.

### **[9] INSPECTION OF TELESCOPE CYLINDER**

Check for loose pipe connections or oil leakage and repair as necessary.

### **[10] INSPECTION OF WIRE ROPE**

Check for damage, deformation, wear, twists, kinks and corrosion and replace where necessary. For details, see "OPERATION, 4. HANDLING of WIRE ROPE".

**[11] INSPECTION OF OVER-HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE**

Check the wire rope of over-hoist weight for damage etc, and replace it as necessary.

**[12] INSPECTION OF WINCH MOTOR**

Check for loose pipe connections, oil leakage or loose mounting bolts, and repair as necessary.

**[13] INSPECTION OF WINCH DRUM**

Check the drum for cracks, bending or damage and repair it as necessary. Check hoisting wire rope for disorderly winding and repair it as necessary

**[14] INSPECTION OF HOOK BLOCK**

Check hook and sheaves for cracks, bending or damage and repair where necessary. Check hook and sheaves for proper rotation and repair as necessary.

## 2.1.2 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

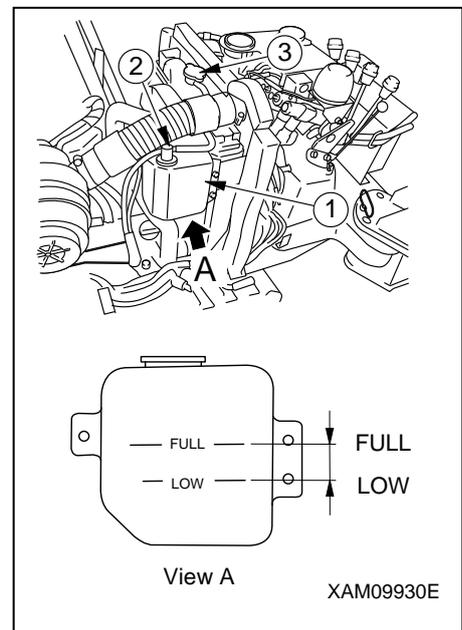
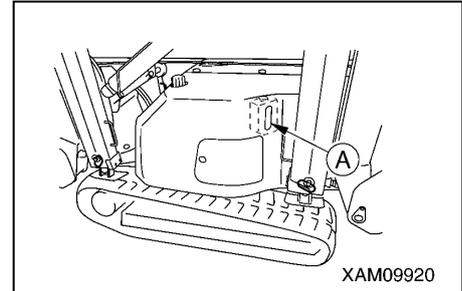
Check the following in this section without starting the engine and before starting the first work every day.

### [1] CHECKING/REFILLING ENGINE COOLING WATER

#### WARNING

**Do not check or refill the cooling water with the radiator cap removed. Always check and refill in the reserve tank. Heated cooling water may spout, causing burns.**

1. Stop the machine at levelled location.
2. Check the cooling water level in the reserve tank (1) through the inspection window (A), located at the front right side of the machinery cover. It must be between “FULL” and “LOW”.
3. If the cooling water level is lower than the “LOW” level, use the following procedure to refill with cooling water.
  - (1) See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
  - (2) Remove the cap (2) of the reserve tank (1) and fill water from the filler opening to the level “FULL”.
  - (3) After refilling with cooling water, securely install the cap (2) of the reserve tank (1).
  - (4) See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.
5. If the reserve tank is empty, follow the steps below.
  - (1) See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
  - (2) Remove the radiator cap (3) and check the cooling water level in the radiator.
  - (3) If the cooling water level in the radiator was low, check the radiator, radiator hose, and engine for water leakage.
  - (4) Fill water from the radiator filler opening and securely install the radiator cap (3).
  - (5) Remove the cap (2) of the reserve tank (1) and fill water from the filler opening to the level “FULL”.
  - (6) After refilling with the cooling water, securely install the cap (2) of the reserve tank (1).
  - (7) See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.



## [2] CHECKING/CLEANING RADIATOR AND OIL COOLER FINS

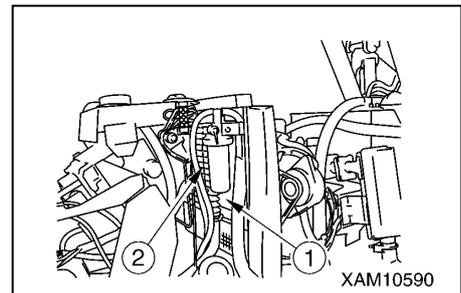
### **⚠ WARNING**

Dust may blow in all directions when compressed air is used. Always wear goggles and a mask.

### **CAUTION**

- To prevent damage on the fins during the use of the compressed air, keep the pressure of the compressed air to 0.20 -0.29 MPa (2 – 3 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>) and apply it away from the fins. Damage on the fins will cause water leakage or overheating.
- At the dusty site, check the fins every day and clean as needed.

1. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
2. Apply the compressed air (0.20 -0.29 MPa (2 – 3 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>)) to the oil cooler (2) and radiator (1) to remove the mud and dust clogged in the fins.
3. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.



### [3] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN ENGINE OIL PAN

#### **CAUTION**

Securely install the oil level gauge (filler cap) after checking the oil level and refilling with the oil. If the oil level gauge falls during the operation, the hot oil spouts out of the pan, causing burns.

#### **CAUTION**

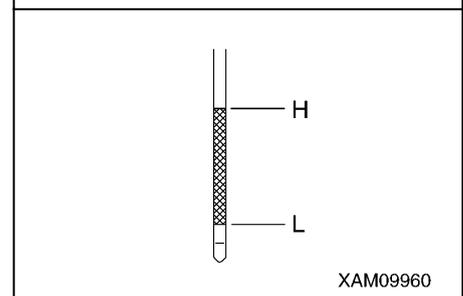
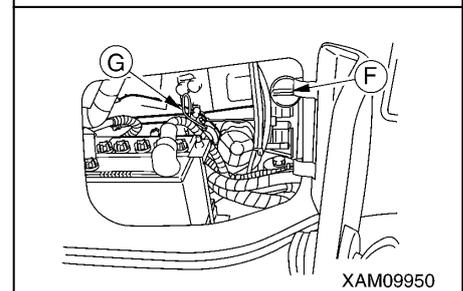
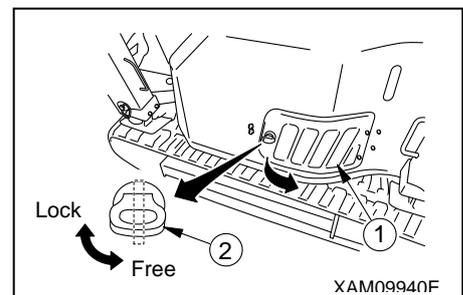
- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used. Using other oil than those specified may shorten the life of the engine. Be sure to refill with the specified oil.
- Keep the engine oil at the appropriate level.  
The oil level being too high will result in too much oil consumption and this tends to increase the oil temperature, deteriorating the oil faster. The oil level being too low may burn out the engine.
- Be careful not to let any foreign substance go into the filler opening when refilling with the oil.

1. Stop the machine on a level surface.
2. Open the inspection cover (1) on the side surface of right hand machinery cover.  
To unlock the inspection cover (1), insert the key (2) into the key hole and turn it counterclockwise, and then pull the cover toward you.
3. Pull the oil level gauge (G) out and wipe the oil with a disposable cloth.
4. Insert the oil level gauge (G) into the oil filler and pull it out.
5. If the oil level is between the “H” mark and “L” mark on the oil level gauge (G), the oil level is normal.
6. If the oil level is lower than the “L” mark, refill with the engine oil from the filler opening.

#### **NOTES**

Refill the engine oil until it almost reaches the oil filler port.

7. After refilling with the oil, securely install the oil level gauge (G).
8. Close the inspection cover (1) and turn the key (2) clockwise.  
Pull the inspection cover (1) lightly to check that it is locked, and pull out the key (2).

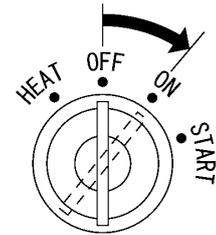


#### [4] CHECKING/REFUELING FUEL LEVEL IN FUEL TANK

### **⚠ DANGER**

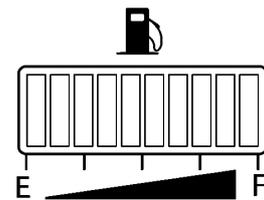
- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which fuel to be used.
- Be extremely careful with fire such as cigarettes.
- Be sure to stop the engine when refuelling. If the engine is running during refuelling, fuel spills on hot surfaces such as the muffler, may catch fire.
- Over-filling may cause fuel spill. Refuel to the level slightly lower than the specified upper limit level. If the fuel spills, be sure to thoroughly wipe it off.
- Be careful not to let any foreign substance go into the filler opening when refuelling.
- Be sure to close the tank cap after refuelling.

1. Turn the starter switch to the “ON” position.



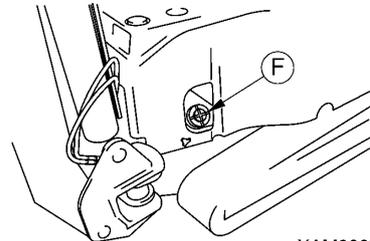
XAM22060

2. Looking at the fuel gauge on the monitor panel, check if the fuel is filled to almost full (around “F”).



XAM09760

3. If the fuel level is low, remove the tank cap (F) and refuel from the filler opening while watching the fuel gauge.



XAM09970

4. After refuelling, turn the tank cap (F) to securely close it.

### **NOTES**

Fill the fuel tank to full after finishing the work for the day.

## [5] CHECKING/CLEANING WATER SEPARATOR

### ⚠ WARNING

- The water separator pot has fuel (diesel oil) inside. Be extremely careful of fire such as cigarettes when cleaning the water separator pot.
- If the fuel spills when the water separator pot is removed, thoroughly wipe it off.

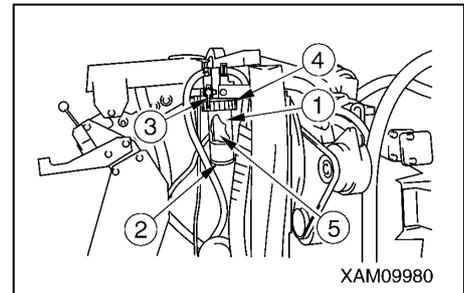
### CAUTION

- Water or dust accumulated inside the water separator pot will cause engine failure. Check inside the pot and remove any water or dust accumulated inside.
- If water remains in the water separator pot, it is assumed that water is also mixed in the fuel tank. See “Maintenance 8.7 Maintenance for Every 50 Hours” and remove water and dust mixed into the fuel tank.

1. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.

2. Check the water separator pot (1) for any water or dust in the pot and verify if the red float (2) in the pot has not come up from the bottom.

The red float (2) in the pot (1) coming up indicates that the water has mixed in.



3. If there is water accumulated in the pot (1), clean the inside of the pot using the following procedure.

(1) Raise the fuel lever (3) to horizontal position (close) to shut off the fuel.

(2) Turn the retainer ring (4) counterclockwise to loosen, then remove the pot (1).

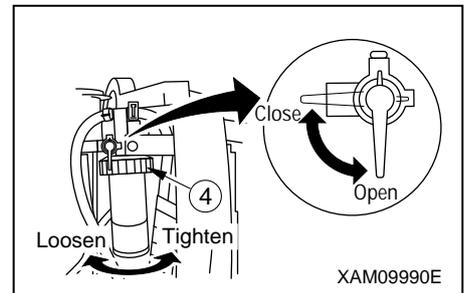
(3) Pull out the element (5) from the pot (1).

(4) Clean the pot (1) with diesel, and spray the compressed air (0.20 to 0.29 MPa {2 to 3 kg/cm<sup>2</sup>}) inside to scrape off the dusts from the surface.

(5) Insert the element (5) into the pot (1).

(6) Set the pot (1) then turn the retainer ring (4) clockwise to tighten.

(7) Lower the fuel lever (3) down to the vertical position (open) to open the fuel circuit.



4. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.

## [6] CHECKING/CLEANING FUEL FILTER POT

### ⚠ WARNING

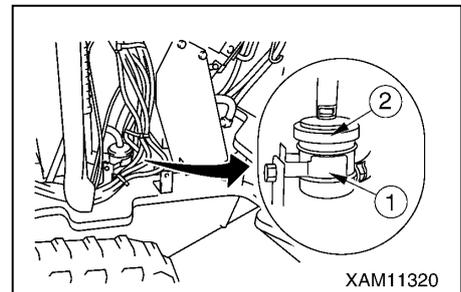
- The fuel filter pot has fuel (diesel oil) inside. Be extremely careful of fire such as cigarette when cleaning the water separator pot.
- If the fuel spills when the fuel filter pot is removed, thoroughly wipe it off.

### CAUTION

- Water or dust accumulated inside the fuel filter pot will cause engine failure. Check inside the pot and remove any water or dust accumulated inside.
- If water remains in the fuel filter pot, it is assumed that much water is also mixed in the fuel tank. See “Maintenance 8.7 Maintenance for Every 50 Hours” and eliminate water and dust mixed into the fuel tank.

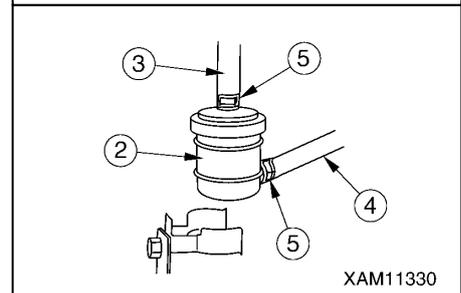
1. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.

2. Inspect the fuel filter pot (2) and check for water or dust accumulated inside the pot, and also for the dust or similar object blocking the element.



3. If water, dust or similar object is accumulated inside the pot (2), clean the inside of the pot using the following procedure.

- (1) Remove the fuel filter (2) from the holder (1).
- (2) Loosen the clamps (5) of fuel hoses (3) and (4) connecting to the fuel filter (2), and disconnect the fuel hoses (3) and (4).
- (3) Connect the fuel hoses (3) and (4) to the new fuel filter (2) to prevent them from falling with the clamps (5).
- (4) Insert the fuel filter (2) into the holder (1) to secure it.



### NOTES

After inserting the fuel filter into the holder, lightly shake the fuel filter to check that it is firmly secured.

- (5) After replacing the fuel filter, bleed the fuel system.

### NOTES

Turn the key switch to “ON” to operate fuel pump and wait up to 5 minutes for the air to be released.

4. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.

## [7] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

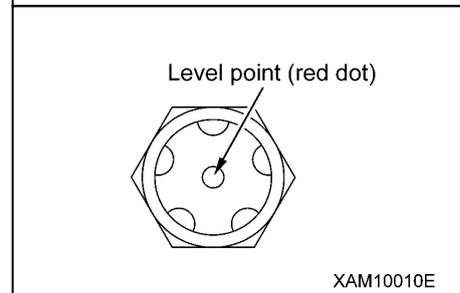
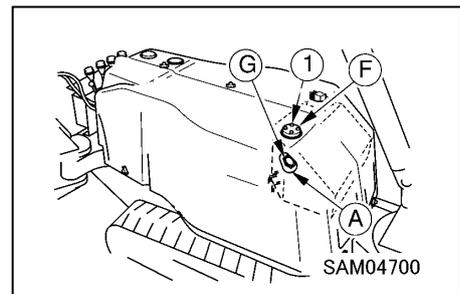
### **⚠ WARNING**

- The oil may spout out when the cap of the hydraulic oil tank is removed. Loosen the bolts so that the cap is raised a little to allow the release of inner pressure, then remove bolts and remove the cap.
- Securely tighten mounting bolts of the oil filler cap after refilling with the oil. If the mounting bolts are loose and then filler cap falls during the operation, the hot oil spouts out of the pan, causing burns. Also, when attaching the oil filler cap, always attach a rubber packing, otherwise, when the rubber packing is neglected, The hot oil may spout out of the filler cap fitting, causing burns.

### **CAUTION**

- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Be sure to put the machine in the travelling position when checking the oil level. Checking the oil level in the working position will cause overfilling since the oil in the cylinders has not returned to the tank.
- Avoid the oil exceeding the level point (red point) of the level gauge. When the oil goes beyond the correct level, it may spout out from the air breather during travelling or crane operation.
- Be careful not to let dust enter the filler opening when refilling with oil.

1. Stop the machine on a level surface.
2. Check the oil level gauge (G) in the left side of the machinery cover and ensure that oil is sufficient to reach the level point (red point).
3. If there is not sufficient oil, refill with the hydraulic oil using the following procedure.
  - (1) Remove 4 mounting bolts (1) and the filler cap (F) on the top of the hydraulic oil tank.
  - (2) Refill with the hydraulic oil from the filler opening (F) while looking at the oil level gauge (G).
  - (3) After refilling with oil, set the filler cap (F) and rubber packing to the filler opening position and tighten mounting bolts securely.



## [8] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE

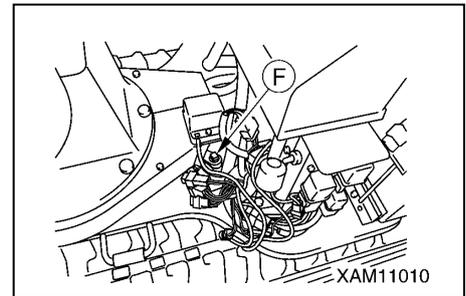
### ⚠ WARNING

Securely tighten the filler plug after refilling with the oil. If the filler plug falls during the operation, the hot oil spouts out of the pan, causing burns.

### CAUTION

- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the filler plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

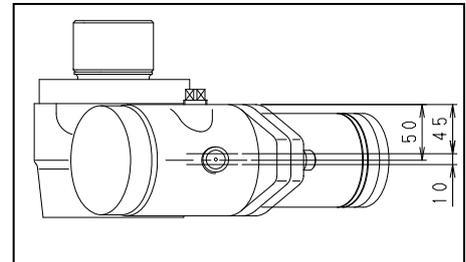
1. Stop the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
3. Remove the filler plug (F) on the slewing reduction gear case.  
Fill with gear oil from the plug hole up to the middle of the gear case.



### NOTES

The height at middle of gear case is 50 mm from the top of the filler plug. 50mm ( $\pm 5$  mm) is the appropriate oil level.  
Do not allow ingress of dust or dirt when measuring or filling oil.

4. If the oil level is low, refill with the gear oil from the plug hole of the filler plug (F).
5. Put in the filler plug (F) and secure it after oil checking/refilling.
6. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.



## [9] CHECKING/REFILLING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL

### **⚠ WARNING**

- The electrolyte generates combustible gas and presents explosion hazard. Do not bring any fire close to the electrolyte.
- The electrolyte is a hazardous substance. Avoid contact with eyes or skin. Should it come into the contact with eyes or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water and consult a physician.
- Do not refill the electrolyte above the “Maximum level line”.  
The fluid leakage can cause fire.

### **CAUTION**

- Wipe the top of the battery with a moist cloth to keep it clean.
- Distilled water should be refilled before starting the work next day to avoid freezing.

1. Stop the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
3. Verify the electrolyte you can see through the side of the battery case from the inspection hole of the machinery cover.

#### **NOTES**

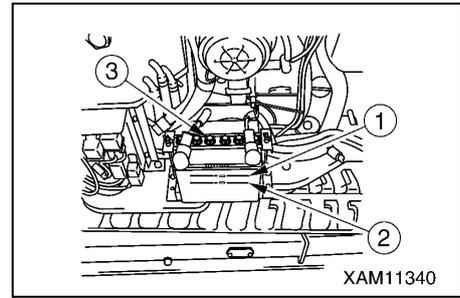
Wipe the battery case clean if it is dirty.

4. Verify that the surface of the electrolyte is at the upper level line (1).
5. If the surface of the electrolyte is not at the maximum level line (1), remove six battery caps (3) and replenish up to the maximum level (1).

#### **NOTES**

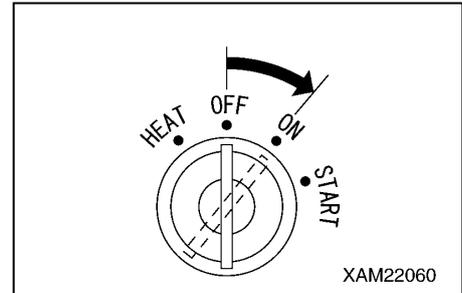
If electrolyte is spilled, refill with electrolyte, and wash immediately with water.

6. Check breather hole of battery cap (3) and clean if necessary before tightening securely.
7. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.

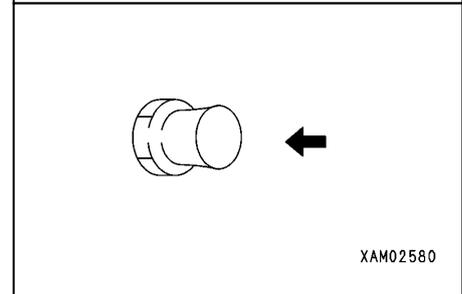


### [10] CHECKING HORN FOR OPERATION

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position and check the following.

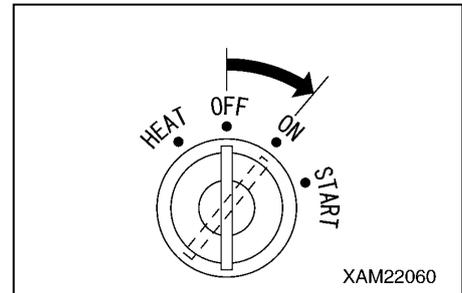


2. Press the horn switch to verify that the horn sounds.  
If not, the horn may be faulty or the circuit may be open.  
Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.

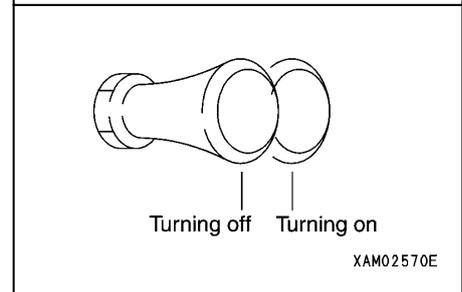


### [11] CHECKING HEADLIGHTS FOR OPERATION

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position and check the followings:



2. Pull the flood light switch to see if the flood light at the front of the machine lights up. If it does not, a blown bulb or wiring failure is likely. Contact your dealer for service.

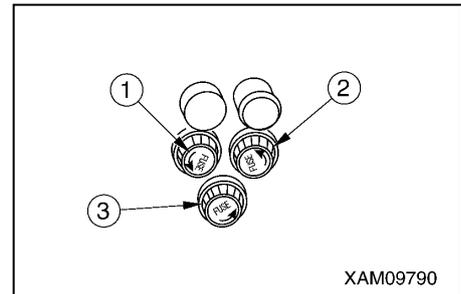


## [12] CHECKING FUSE BOX FOR DAMAGE

### **⚠ WARNING**

**If fuses are brown frequently or if you find the trace of a short circuit created in the electrical wiring, be sure to find the cause and fix the problem.**

1. Turn the fuse holders on control panel counterclockwise and take tubular fuses out.
2. Check the fuse for damage and meltdown and if the fuse of the specified capacity is being used.
3. If a fuse has melted down or the trace of an open/short circuit is found in the electrical wiring, ask us or our sales service agency for repair.



## [13] CHECK CRACKS, DEFORMATION OR DAMAGE OF BOOM AND FRAME

Check the boom and frame for cracks, deformation or any other damage, and correct them if anything abnormal is found.

## [14] CHECK DEFORMATION, DAMAGE OR WEAR OF WIRE ROPE

Check the rope end fixing, rope take up condition and contact between the ropes. For the check and inspection of wire rope while winch and boom telescoping, See "OPERATION, 4. Handling of wire rope" for detail.

### 2.1.3 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE

Check the following in this section after starting the engine and before starting the first work every day.

#### CAUTION

The checkups described in this section should be carried out after starting the machine. Refer to "Operation 2.2 Starting Engine" and later to execute the engine start up, travelling operations, outrigger operations and crane operations.

#### [1] CHECKING/ADJUSTING RUBBER TRACK TENSION

#### CAUTION

- Set the outriggers and raise the rubber track for about 50 mm from the ground when checking/adjusting the tension of the rubber tracks.
- The standard tension of the rubber track is that the clearance between the wheels tread of the track roller at centre and the shoulder of the rubber track is 5 to 10 mm.
- If the tension is not sufficient even after injecting the grease, the rubber track or the sealing of the tension adjustment cylinder needs to be changed. Contact us or our sales service agency for the judgement of whether to replace, repair, or keep the rubber track.

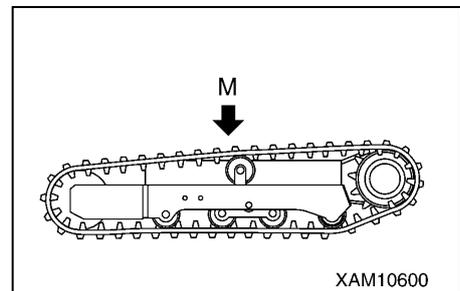
The rubber tracks are worn out differently depending on the working conditions and soil quality. Regularly check the wear and tension of the rubber tracks.

Especially, with the new machine or when a new part was installed, "initial slack" appears with 5 to 30 hours of driving after adjusting the tension to the specified value.

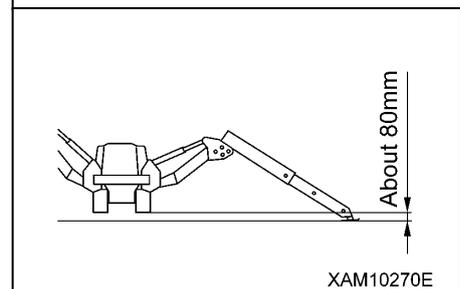
Adjust the tension frequently until the period of "initial slack" passes. This will prevent "rubber track from coming off due to insufficient tension on the rubber track".

#### [TENSION CHECK]

1. Move the left and right crawlers so that the junction of the rubber track (indicated by M) comes to the top centre between the axles.

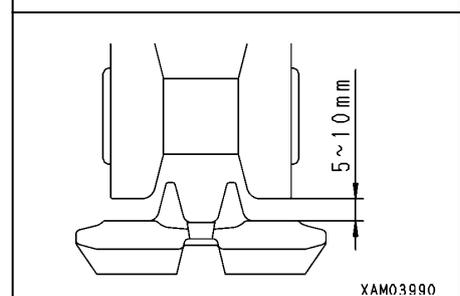


2. See "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation" to set the outriggers and raise the crawlers for about 80mm from the ground.



3. Measure the clearance between the wheel tread of the track roller at centre and the shoulder of the rubber track.

NOTES
The clearance of 5 to 10 mm indicates the standard tension.



4. If the tension is out of the standard range, see the section of tension adjustment on the next page to make adjustments.

## [TENSION ADJUSTMENT]

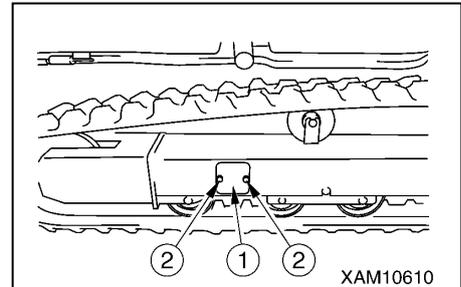
If the “tension check” of the rubber track found the tension lower than standard tension of the rubber track, make adjustments as described below.

Working with the loose rubber track (the tension of the rubber track at 15 mm or more) will cause run-off or early wear of the core metal.

### • LOOSE TENSION (INCREASE TENSION)

- Have a grease gun (pump) ready.

1. Remove the 2 bolts (2) and then remove inspection cover (1).



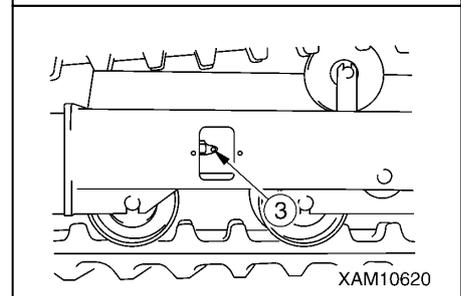
2. Inject the grease from the grease nipple (3) using the grease gun.

3. Perform the following tasks to verify the proper tension.

- (1) See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers and lower the machine on the ground.

- (2) Move the machine forward/backward.

- (3) See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation” to set the outriggers and raise the crawlers again for about 80mm from the ground.



4. Perform the “tension check” of the rubber track again.

If the tension is not appropriate, make another adjustment.

5. Install the inspection cover (1) to the original position and tighten 2 mounting bolts (2).

6. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers and lower the machine on the ground.

• TIGHT TENSION (DECREASE TENSION)

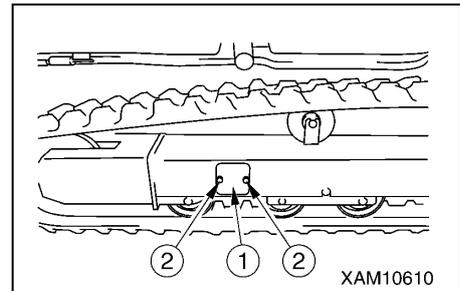
**⚠ WARNING**

Inside the rubber track tension adjustment device, the grease is sealed. The grease is under high pressure due to the tension of the rubber track.

Making adjustments without observing the following may cause the grease valve to fly away, resulting in serious accidents.

- Do not loosen the grease valve for tension adjustment more than 1 turn. The grease valve may pop out.
- Do not place yourself right in front of the grease valve when adjusting the tension to avoid any danger.

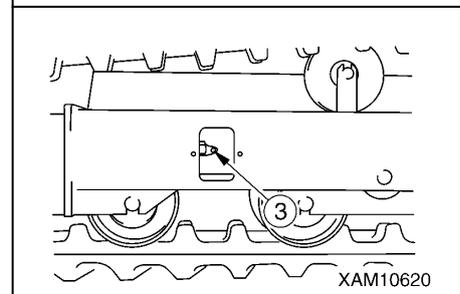
1. Remove the 2 bolts (2) and then remove inspection cover (1).



2. Slowly loosen the grease valve (3) to drain the grease.

**NOTES**

When loosening the grease valve (3), do not loosen by more than one turn.



3. If the grease is not drained easily, perform the following to drain the grease.

- (1) See "Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation" to stow the outriggers and lower the machine on the ground.
- (2) Move the machine forward/backward.
- (3) See "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation" to set the outriggers and raise the crawlers again for about 80mm from the ground.

4. Tighten the grease valve (3).

5. Perform the "tension check" of the rubber track.

If the tension is not appropriate, make another adjustment.

6. Install the inspection cover (1) to the original position and tighten 2 mounting bolts (2).

7. See "Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation" to stow the outriggers and lower the machine on the ground.

## [2] CHECKING RUBBER TRACKS FOR DAMAGE AND WEAR

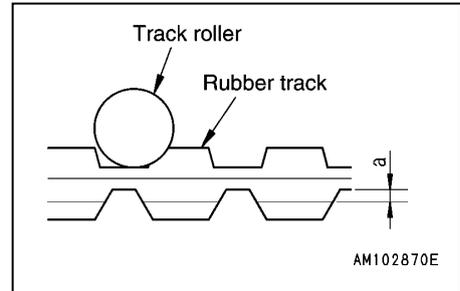
### CAUTION

Contact us or our sales service agency for determining whether to replace, repair, or keep the rubber track.

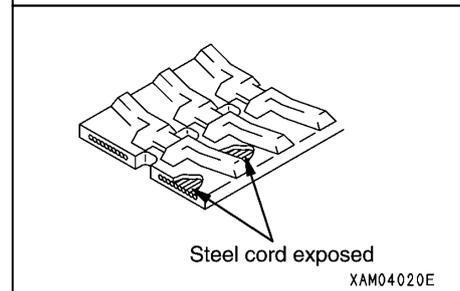
The following condition requires the repair or replacement of the rubber track. Ask us or our sales service agency for repair/replacement.

#### [LUG HEIGHT]

- When the lug height “a” decreases with wear, the traction force drops.  
Replace the rubber track when the lug height decreases to 5 mm or lower with a new rubber track.

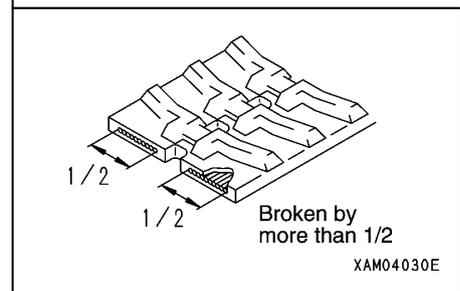


- When the lug is worn out and the steel cord inside the rubber track is exposed for more than 2 links, replace the rubber track with a new one.



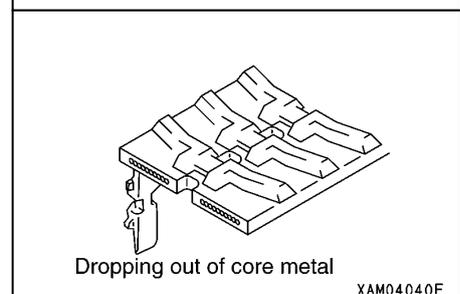
#### [BROKEN STEEL CORD]

- If more than half of the steel cord layer is broken on one side, replace the rubber track with a new one.



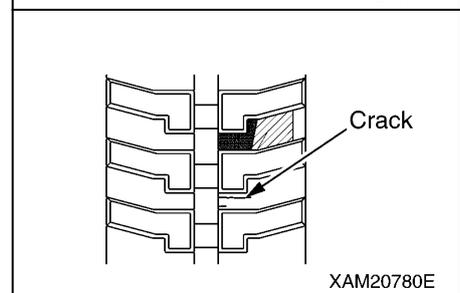
#### [FALLEN CORE METAL]

- If the core metal of the rubber track is fallen out at more than 1 location, change the rubber track with a new one.



#### [CRACKS]

- If there is a crack between rubber track lugs, change the rubber track with a new one or repair the rubber track.

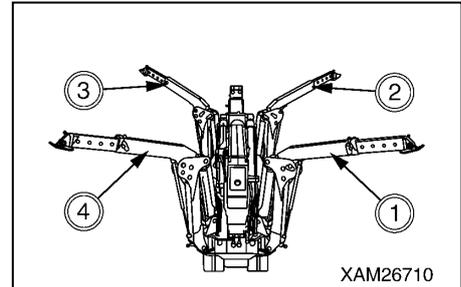


### [3] CHECKING OUTRIGGER OPERATION

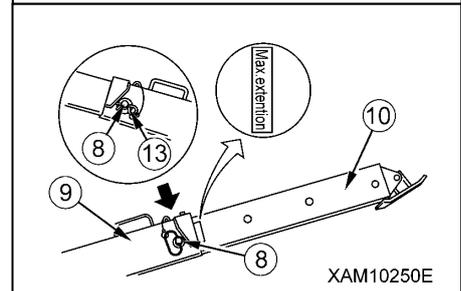
## ⚠ WARNING

Be sure to refer to "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation" and "Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation", and strictly observe the methods described and cautions given when checking operations of the outriggers.

1. See "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation [1] Tasks to be Performed Upon Engine Stop" to rotate the outrigger rotary of all the outriggers outward, and pull out the inner boxes.



2. See "Operation 2.2 Starting the Engine" to start the engine.

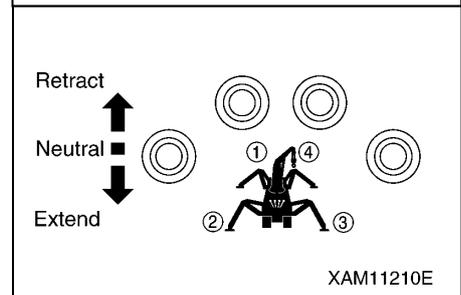


3. Check whether the outrigger lowers smoothly when one of the Outrigger individual settings switches is turned to "OUT".

Also, check whether the outrigger rises smoothly when that Outrigger individual setting switch is turned to "IN".

During the operation, check whether any abnormal sound is made.

Continue to check all outrigger individual setting switches in turn.

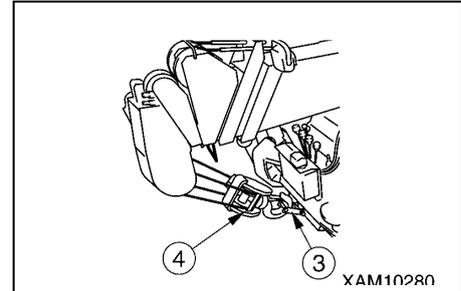


## [4] CHECKING CRANE OPERATIONS

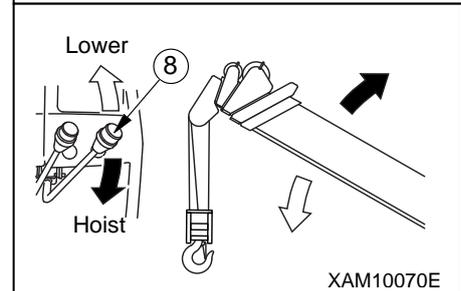
### ⚠ WARNING

Be sure to set the outriggers by the maximum extension state by referring to " Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation" before checking the crane operations.  
Be sure to refer to the Operation sections between "2.13 Cautions before Crane Operation" and "2.21 Crane Stowing Operation", and strictly observe the methods described and cautions given when checking crane operations.

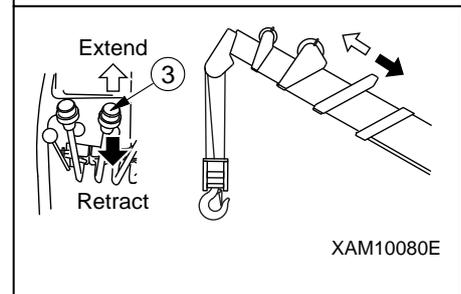
1. Refer to "Operation 2.14 Operations before Crane Operations" and slacken the wire rope which fixes the hook block (4) to release it from the hook holder (3), according to the procedure for it.



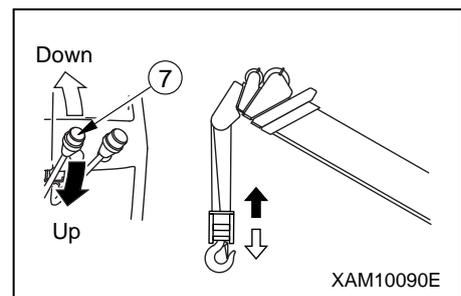
2. Verify that the boom rises smoothly when the boom derricking lever (8) is operated to "RAISE" side (pull toward you). Also, verify that the boom lowers smoothly when the boom derricking lever (8) is operated to "LOWER" side (push forward). When doing the above, check for any abnormal sound emitted by part of the boom or from the boom derrick cylinder. If there is any abnormality, repair.



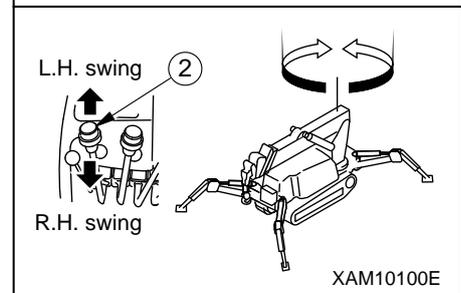
3. Verify that the boom extends smoothly when the boom telescoping lever (3) is operated to "EXTEND" (push forward). Also, verify that the boom retracts smoothly when the boom telescoping lever (3) is operated to "RETRACT" (pull toward you). When doing the above, check for any abnormal sound emitted by part of the boom or from the boom telescoping cylinder. If there is any abnormality, repair.



4. Verify that the hook is wound down smoothly when the winch lever (7) is operated to "DOWN" (push forward). Also, verify that the hook is wound up smoothly when the winch lever (7) is operated to "UP" side (pull toward you). When doing the above, check for any abnormal sound emitted by part of the boom or from the winch motor. If there is any abnormality, repair.



5. Verify that the crane smoothly slews counterclockwise when the slewing lever (2) is operated to "LEFT" side (push forward). Also, verify that the crane smoothly slews clockwise when the slewing lever (2) is operated to "RIGHT" side (pull toward you). When doing the above, check for any abnormal sound emitted from the post. If there is any abnormality, repair.



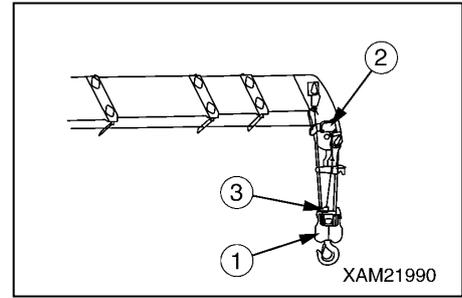
**[5] CHECKING OVER HOIST DETECTOR FOR OPERATION**

Over hoist the hook block (1), and raise the hook with winch and extend the boom, and verify that the buzzer sounds and an audible message saying "Over hoisted" is spoken, the hook raising operation and boom extending operation stop.

If these events do not happen, the over hoist detector may be faulty.

If the alarm does not stop, the over hoist detector may be faulty or the circuit may be open.

Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.



**[6] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION**

**⚠ WARNING**

**If you find any abnormality with the moment limiter, immediately contact us or our sales service agency.**

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
2. Check with the working status lamp. The red lamp lights up for 2 seconds and then the green lights up.
3. Check the moment limiter display unit.  
Verify that no error code is displayed at the "RATED TOTAL LOAD" display on the display panel.
4. Start the engine and operate the crane as follows to verify if the moment limiter properly displays the value.

Crane Operation and Displayed Parameter	Value Displayed on Moment Limiter
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at minimum	2.5 m
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at maximum	8.6 m
Displayed "working radius" with the boom length of "4.4 m" and boom angle of "29.2 °"	3.5 ± 0.1 m
Displayed "ACTUAL LOAD" when the weight of the known weight was hoisted ★Must be equal to the total weight of weight + rigging ★Note that it may show some errors depending on the boom conditions.	Actual load

5. Operate the crane until the moment limiter display values indicate the boom length is "4.4 m" (booms (1) + (2)) and boom angle is "29.2 degrees", then measure the "boom angle" and "working radius. If the measured value(s) differ from the moment limiter display value, contact us or our sales agency.

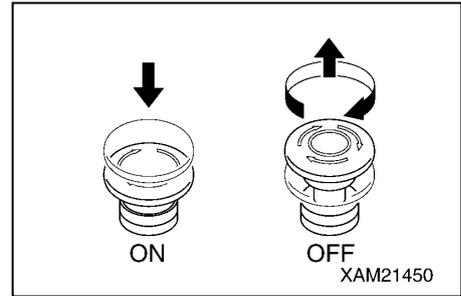
## [7] CHECKING ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH FOR OPERATION

Push the Engine emergency Stop Switch and ensure that the engine stops.

If the engine does not stop, there may be an error with the switch or a wire disconnected. Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.

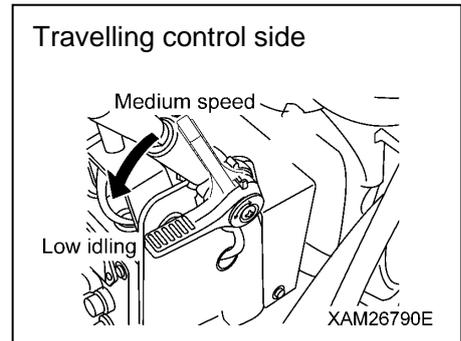
### NOTES

When restarting the engine after emergency stop, be sure to turn the engine emergency stop switch to the OFF position before starting the engine. The engine does not start when it is "ON".



## [8] CHECKING ENGINE EXHAUST GAS COLOUR, NOISE AND VIBRATION

1. Set the acceleration lever of either Travel Operation Unit or Crane Operation Unit to low idling position so that the engine is kept in no load operation for 5 minutes.
2. Verify that the engine exhaust gas colour is either transparent or slightly blue. Also, check for abnormal noises and vibrations.  
If there is any abnormality, repair.



## 2.2 STARTING ENGINE

### ⚠ WARNING

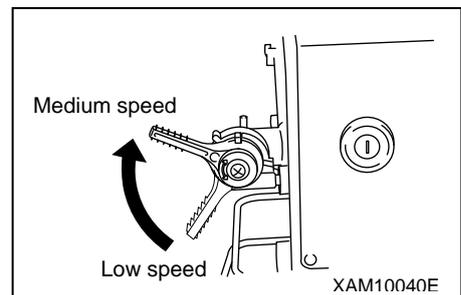
Verify that there is no one and obstacle around when starting the engine. Honk a horn and start the engine.

### 2.2.1 NORMAL ENGINE START

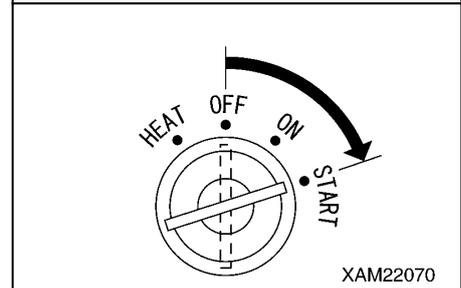
#### CAUTION

- Do not keep the starter turned for more than 5 seconds. Doing so will accelerate the battery discharge.  
If the engine does not start, wait for 1 minute before retrying.
- Verify that the fuel lever of the water separator pot is in the vertical position (open) before starting the engine.
- Verify that the main switch on the remote control reciver is at the "OFF" position.

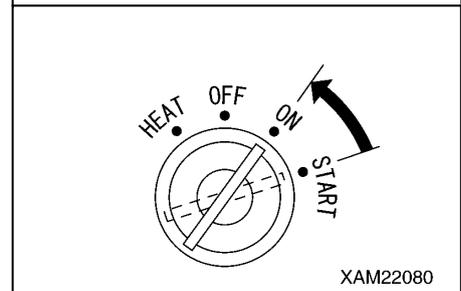
1. Pull the acceleration lever clockwise to operate the engine at medium speed (lever stroke about midway).



2. Insert the key into the starter switch and turn the key to the "START" position.



3. Release your hand from the key once the engine has started.  
The key will automatically return to the "ON" position.



## 2.2.2 STARTING ENGINE IN COLD WEATHER

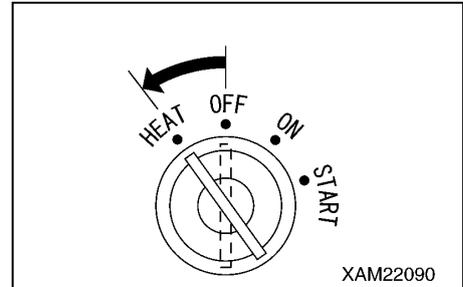
### CAUTION

- Do not keep the starter turned for more than 5 seconds. Doing so will accelerate the battery discharge.
- If the engine does not start, wait for 1 minute before retrying.
- Verify that the fuel lever of the water separator pot is at the vertical position (open) before starting the engine.
- Verify that the main switch on the remote control receiver is at the "OFF" position.

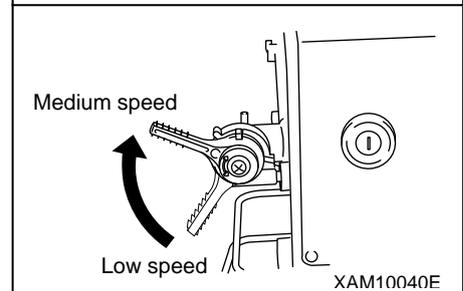
Start the engine as follows when it is cold.

1. Insert the key into the starter switch and turn the key to "HEAT" (preheat) position. Keep the position the 3 seconds.

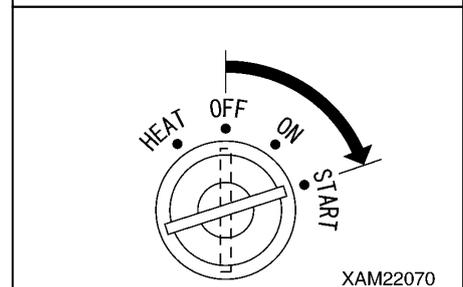
Release your hand, and the key will automatically return to the "ON" position.



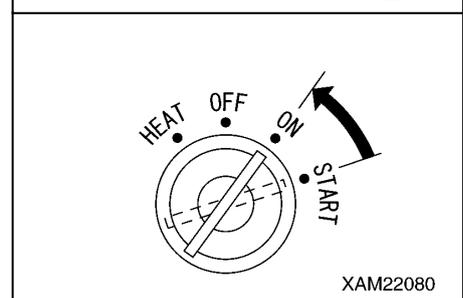
2. Pull the acceleration lever clockwise to operate the engine at medium speed (lever stroke about midway).



3. When the "preheat monitor" goes off, turn the key to the "START" position.



4. Release your hand from the key once the engine has started. The key will automatically return to the "ON" position.

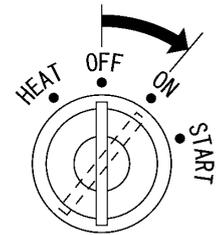


## 2.2.3 STARTING THE ENGINE WITH AUXILIARY STARTER SWITCH

### CAUTION

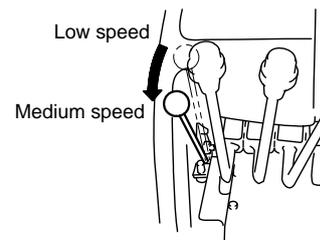
- To start the engine with the auxiliary starter switch, make sure that the main starter switch is in ON position.
- Do not keep the starter turned for more than 5 seconds. Doing so will accelerate the battery discharge.  
If the engine does not start, wait for 1 minute before retrying.
- Even in normal temperatures, pull the choke knob before starting the engine, as a rule.
- Verify that the fuel lever of the water separator pot is at the vertical position (open) before starting the engine.
- Make sure that the engine emergency stop switch is in OFF position. The engine does not start when it is "ON".
- Verify that the main switch on the remote control receiver is at the OFF position.

1. Insert the key into the main starter switch and turn the key to the ON position.



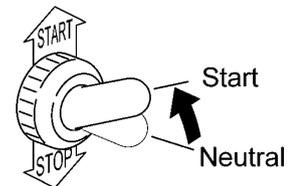
XAM22060

2. Pull the acceleration lever toward you to operate the engine at medium speed (lever stroke about midway).



XAM03140E

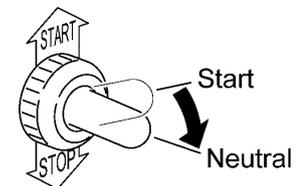
3. Push up the auxiliary starter switch to the "START" position (upward).



XAM26830E

4. Release your finger from the auxiliary starter switch once the engine has started.

The auxiliary starter switch will automatically return to the NEUTRAL position.



XAM26840E

## 2.3 OPERATIONS AND CHECKS AFTER STARTING ENGINE

### **⚠ DANGER**

Never refuel (diesel oil) while the engine is in operation.  
Always stop the engine when refueling.

### **⚠ WARNING**

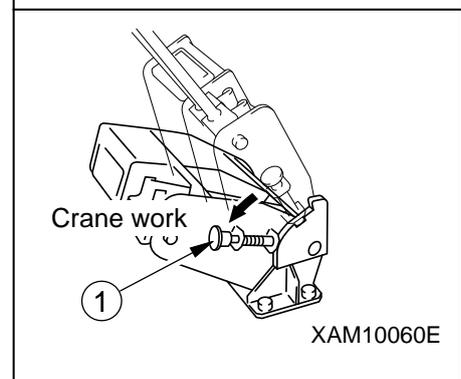
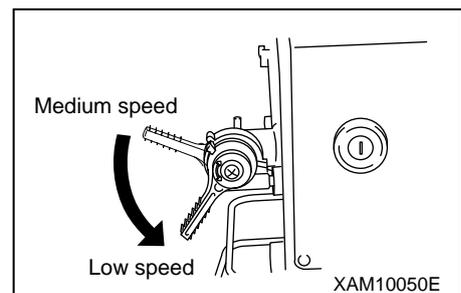
- If any abnormal condition takes place during the warm-up operation, immediately press the engine emergency stop switch to stop the engine. Then, turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position. The power to the electrical system will be shut off.
- Always perform the warm-up operation. The sufficient warm-up operation is necessary particularly when it is cold.  
Insufficient warm-up operation will slow down the movement response of the travelling system or crane system to the operation levers, resulting in serious accidents.
- Always check the operation of the crane after warm-up operation.  
Be careful not to let the hook block interfere or collide with the boom.
- Be careful not to let the boom hit the operator or this machine when slewing the boom.
- If you find any abnormality during the crane operation check, stop the machine immediately for emergency and repair.  
Using the system in abnormal condition can result in serious accidents.

### **CAUTION**

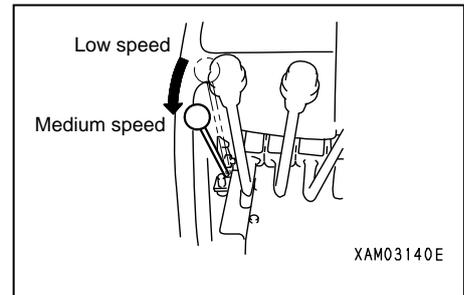
- The appropriate temperature of the hydraulic oil is 50 to 80 °C.  
Even when operating at low temperature by necessity, increase the temperature of the hydraulic oil to about 20 °C.
- Do not idle away suddenly until the warm-up operation is done.
- When the engine has started, check if the "battery charge monitor" and "engine oil pressure monitor" went off. If there is any abnormality, repair.
- Do not leave the engine in low or high idling for more than 20 minutes.  
If idling is necessary, apply load from time to time or operate at the medium engine speed.  
When using the engine at low speed, idle away the engine for about 5 minutes once a day.

Perform the warm-up operation as follows once the engine has started.

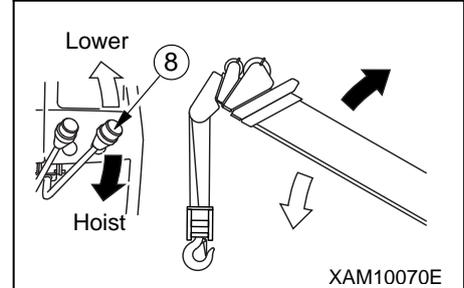
1. Push the acceleration lever counterclockwise. Keep the engine idling and continue the operation with no load for about 5 minutes.
2. Check if there is any abnormality with the engine exhaust gas colour, noise, and vibration.  
If there is any abnormality, repair.
3. Pull up the lock lever (6) before pressing the whole lever stand (7) down to the "Crane Operation Position", then release the lock lever (6).
4. See "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation" and set the outriggers.
5. Refer to "Operation 2.14 Operations before Crane Operations" and slacken the wire rope which fixes the hook block to release it from the hook holder, according to the procedure for it.



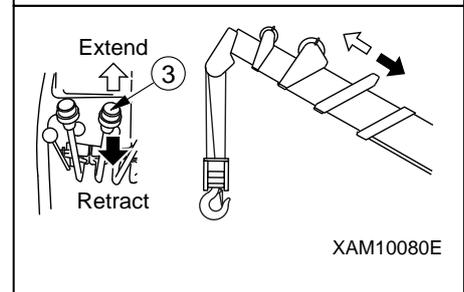
6. Pull the acceleration lever toward you to operate the engine at medium speed (lever stroke about midway).



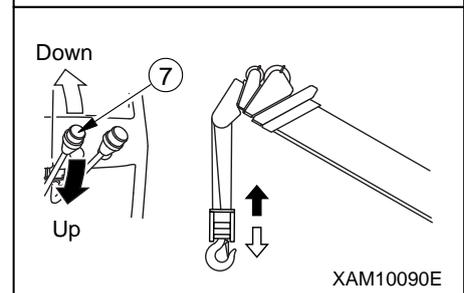
7. Operate the boom derricking lever (8) slowly forward/backward and move the derricking cylinder up/down until it reaches the stroke end. Check if there is any abnormality with the operation. If there is any abnormality, repair.



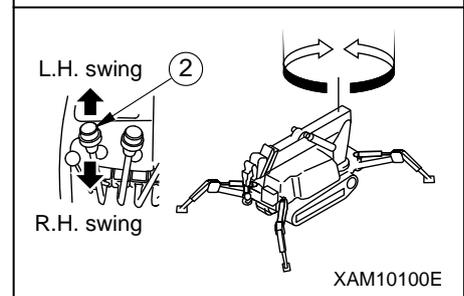
8. Operate the boom telescoping lever (3) slowly forward/backward to extend/retract the boom until it reaches the stroke end. Check if there is any abnormality with the operation. If there is any abnormality, repair.



9. Operate the winch lever (7) slowly forward/backward to check if the hook block is smoothly raised/lowered. Also check if the hook block immediately stops and the winch drum does not wind in mess when the winch lever returns to the "NEUTRAL" position. If there is any abnormality, repair.



10. Operate the slewing lever (2) slowly forward/backward to check if the crane smoothly slews clockwise and counter clockwise for 360 degrees or more. Also check if the crane stops immediately when the slewing lever returns to the "NEUTRAL" position. If there is any abnormality, repair.



## 2.4 BREAKING-IN MACHINE

### ⚠ CAUTION

Perform breaking-in for the period of about the first 250 hours (hours displayed on the service meter).

The life of the machine shortens if overloaded operation or task is performed before the various sections of the machine are used to the operation.

While this machine is shipped after thorough adjustment and inspection, immediate difficult tasks will quickly degrade the functions and shorten the life of the engine and crane.

Perform the breaking-in for the first “250 hours” (time displayed on the service meter).

Pay attention particularly to the following during the breaking-in period.

- Be sure to perform the warm-up operation and avoid idling away after the engine has started.

See “Operation 2.3 Operations and Checks after Starting Engine”

- Avoid overloaded operation or tasks with high-speed operation.
- Avoid sudden starting, sudden acceleration, unnecessary sudden stop or sudden steering
- When the breaking-in period reaches “50 hours”, do not fail to change the engine oil.

See “Maintenance 8.2 [1] Replacement Engine Lubricating oil and Oil filter cartridge”.

The metal powder produced inside the engine through breaking-in increases in the engine oil and it deteriorates the oil, shortening the engine life.

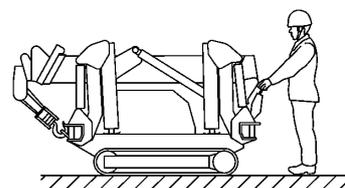
## 2.5 MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE

### ⚠ WARNING

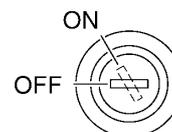
- When moving this machine self-propelled, take the “travelling posture” with which the boom, hook block, and outriggers are stowed.
- Travelling or travelling hoist with the boom extended is essentially prohibited. This will overturn the machine, causing serious injury and accidents.
- Do not use this machine for any other purpose except the major purpose such as using it for carrying the load on the machine.
- Follow the local laws and regulations if driving the machine on public roads.

Take the travelling posture shown on the right when moving the machine.

1. See “Operation 2.21 Crane Stowing Operation” to stow the crane. Stow the hook block in the specified position.
2. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.
3. Verify that the emergency stop cancel switch is at the OFF (auto) position.



XAM09560

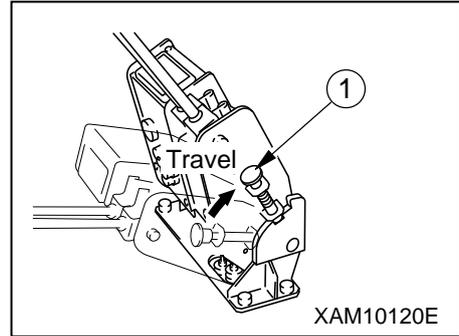


XAM19641

## 2.6 STARTING MOVING MACHINE

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Do not allow anyone around the machine.
- Clear away all the obstacles on the travelling path.  
Check for projections and grooves on the travelling path especially when going backward. Fix the travelling path.
- Check the safety around the machine and honk the horn before starting to move the machine.
- This machine is designed that the person who operates it should move along with it, when the machine starts travelling. Set the engine speed to low and operate the left and right travelling levers slowly at the same time. Check the travelling speed of the machine.  
Do not make a sudden start especially when you are going backward as this may cause a serious accident.
- The front of the machine will be the out of view. Be extremely careful when moving forward.
- If you cannot verify the safety because the driving direction is out of view, stop driving and check if it is safe in the travelling direction. Use a guide person if necessary depending on the work site situation.
- The whole lever stand can be folded. To start travelling, pull up the lock lever (1) before erecting the entire lever stand forward to the "Travelling Control Position", then fit the lock lever (1) into the guide groove.

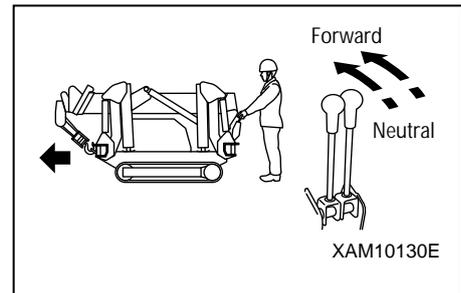


### [PREPARATION BEFORE STARTING MOVING]

#### [1] MOVING FORWARD

Operate the left and right travelling levers at the same time.

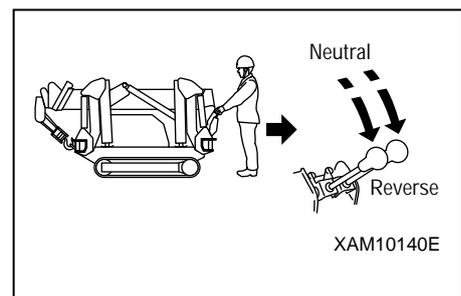
- Push the left and right travelling levers slowly forward to move forward.



#### [2] MOVING BACKWARD

Operate the left and right travelling levers at the same time.

- Pull the left and right travelling levers slowly toward you to move backward.



## 2.7 CHANGING DIRECTION OF THE MACHINE

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Sudden steering or unnecessary spin turns at high speed not only damages the rubber track and hydraulic devices, but also may result in a collision with other objects. Stop the machine, and then adjust the engine speed to low speed before performing the spin turns.
- Do not change the path on the slope. The machine may slip to the side. Be especially careful on soft ground and clay soil.

#### [1] CHANGING THE MACHINE DIRECTION WHEN STOPPED

##### • LEFT TURN

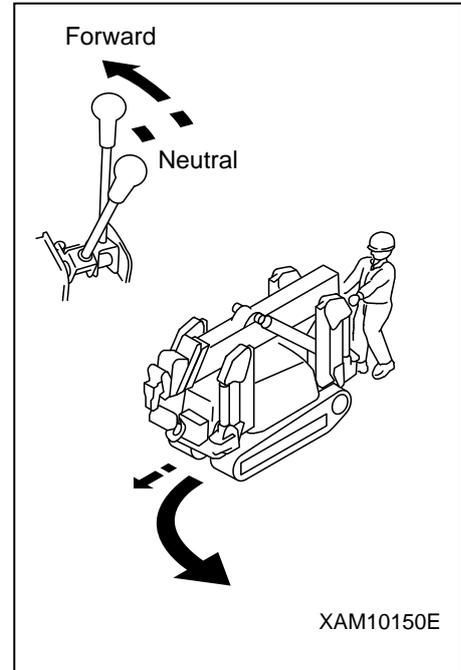
Operate the right travelling lever.

Tilt the travelling lever forward to turn to the left in the forward direction. Tilt the travelling lever toward you to turn to the left in the backward direction.

##### • RIGHT TURN

Operate the left travelling lever.

Tilt the left travelling lever forward to turn to the right in the forward direction. Tilt the left travelling lever toward you to turn to the right in the backward direction.



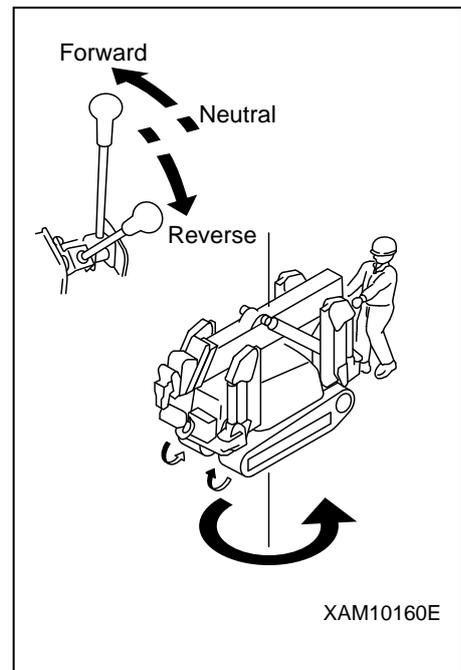
#### [2] SPIN TURNS

##### • LEFT SPIN TURN

Tilt the right travelling lever forward while tilting the left travelling lever toward you to rotate the left and right rubber tracks in the opposite direction for left spin turn.

##### • RIGHT SPIN TURN

Tilt the left travelling lever forward while tilting the right travelling lever toward you to rotate the left and right rubber tracks in the opposite direction for right spin turn.



### [3] CHANGING DIRECTION WHILE MOVING FORWARD/BACKWARD

#### • LEFT TURN WHILE MOVING FORWARD

While tilting the right travelling lever forward, return only the left travelling lever to the NEUTRAL position.

#### • LEFT TURN WHILE MOVING BACKWARD

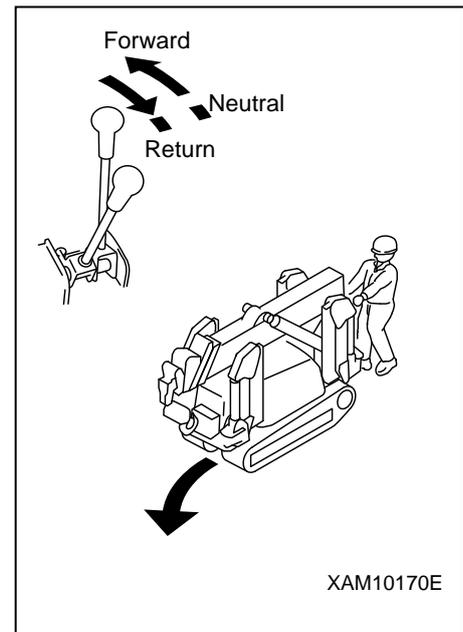
While tilting the right travelling lever toward you, return only the left travelling lever to the NEUTRAL position.

#### • RIGHT TURN WHILE MOVING FORWARD

While tilting the left travelling lever forward, return only the right travelling lever to the NEUTRAL position.

#### • RIGHT TURN WHILE MOVING BACKWARD

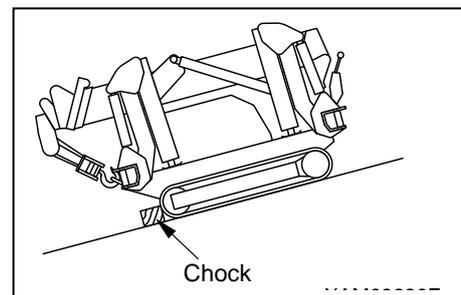
While tilting the left travelling lever toward you, return only the right travelling lever to the NEUTRAL position.



## 2.8 STOPPING/PARKING THE MACHINE

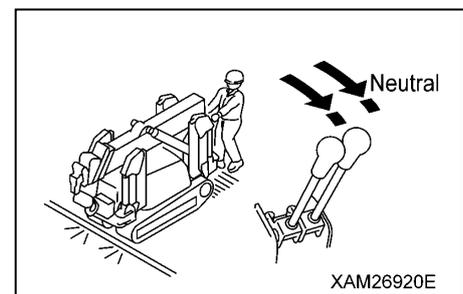
### ⚠ WARNING

- Avoid sudden stops and try to stop with a safety margin whenever possible.
- Choose a levelled and solid location for parking the machine.  
If it is necessary to park on a slope, provide some blocks so that the machine will not move.
- Careless contact with the travelling lever(s) during the engine operation may result in sudden movement of the machine, leading to serious accidents.
- Stop the engine and always remove the key from the starter switch. Take the key with you when you leave the machine.



Operate the left and right travelling levers to the NEUTRAL position at the same time.

This initiates the automatic braking system the machine and the machine stops.

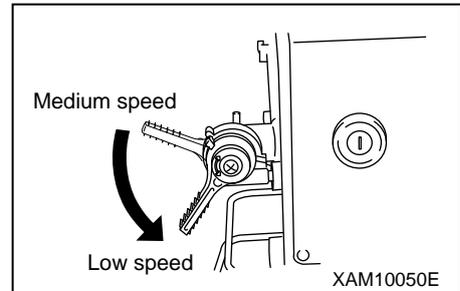


## 2.9 STOPPING ENGINE

### CAUTION

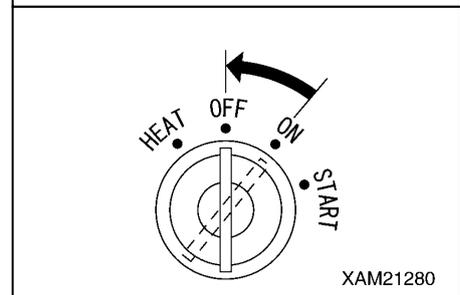
- Stopping the engine before it sufficiently cools down may shorten the life of engine units. Do not stop the engine suddenly except for an emergency.
- When the engine is overheated, do not stop the engine suddenly. Change the engine speed to low speed, and gradually cool down the engine before stopping the engine.
- Verify that the main switch at the remote controller control box unit is at the “OFF” position.

1. Push the acceleration lever counterclockwise. Keep the engine idling and continue the operation with no load for about 5 minutes.



2. Turn the starter switch key to the “OFF” position.  
The engine will stop.

3. Remove the starter switch key.



## 2.10 INSPECTION AFTER STOPPING ENGINE

1. Visibly check for oil leakage, fuel leakage, and water leakage, and check around the crawlers, crane, and exterior of the machine. If you find any leakage or abnormality, fix the problem.
2. Top off the fuel tank.
3. Dead leaves and papers around the engine will cause fire. Remove all flammable objects.
4. Clean off mud on the crawlers and outriggers.

## 2.11 CAUTIONS IN DRIVING

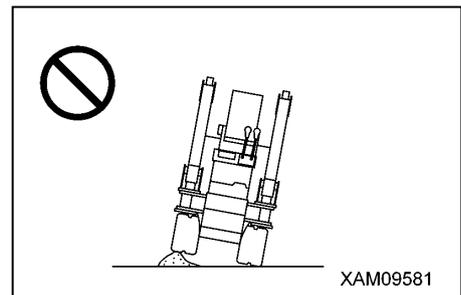
### WARNING

Not observing these cautions while driving will result in serious accidents.

#### [1] CAUTIONS IN DRIVING

- When travelling, stow hook and outrigger, and make sure the surrounding safety.
- When stowing outriggers, insert each position pins completely to lock.
- Be seated to operate travelling.
- Driving over the boulder stones or a stump not only causes the overturning of the machine, but also gives an impact to the machine (especially around crawlers), causing breakage. Avoid or remove the obstacles not to travel over it whenever possible.

If you have to travel over the obstacles by necessity, be sure to take the “travelling posture” to lower the centre of gravity, and reduce the travelling speed as much as possible so that the machine will go over the obstacles at the centre of the crawlers.

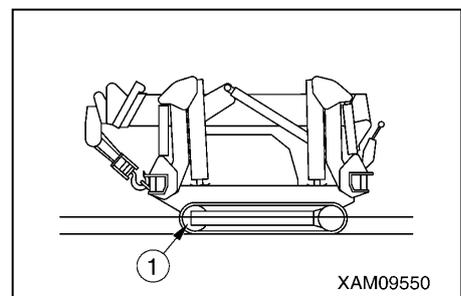


#### NOTES

See “Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Posture” for the travelling posture of the machine.

#### [2] ALLOWABLE WATER DEPTH

Use this machine in the water of the depth of under the centre of the idler (1) where the muffler beneath the machine body doesn't go under water.



### [3] CAUTIONS ON UPWARD/DOWNWARD SLOPE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- If the machine tilts more than “15 degrees” forward or backward, or from side to side while travelling, the machine may overturn. Do not travel on the slope of more inclination.

- Slopes inclined by 15 degrees or more present an overturning hazard. Do not travel on these slopes.

- Never change the direction on the slope or drive parallel to the slope.

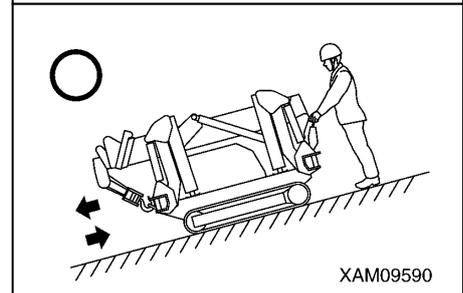
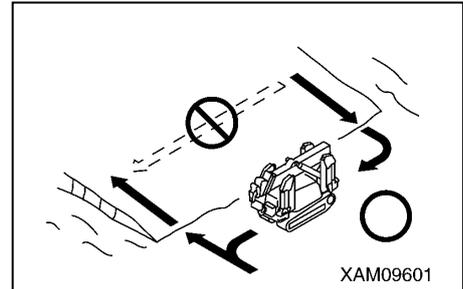
Travel safely such as by going down to the level ground and taking a detour.

- Operate the acceleration lever and travelling levers to decrease the travelling speed as much as possible when going down the slope.

Operating the travelling lever to the “NEUTRAL” position automatically brakes the machine, but may overrun when going down the slope at high speed.

- Direct the machine perpendicular to the slope and the operation seat must be the side of the uphill when driving on the slope.

- If the engine stops on the slope, return the travelling levers to the “NEUTRAL” position and restart the engine.



## 2.12 OUTRIGGER SETTING OPERATION

### WARNING

- **GROUND FOR SETTING OUTRIGGERS**

Always set the outriggers on level, safe and solid ground.

Performing the crane operation without setting the outriggers can contribute to the overturning of the machine.

- **EXTENDING AND SETTING THE OUTRIGGERS**

- Keep people away from the machine when setting the outriggers.

Close proximity to the machine may cause serious accidents such as getting caught between an outrigger and the machine main unit.

- Always monitor the level gauge when setting the outriggers.

When the machine tilts to "3 degrees" or more, the overturning alarm buzzer sounds.

- Set the outriggers so that the rubber tracks are about 80 mm above the ground.

After setting the outriggers, verify that all the four outriggers are securely set.

- The outriggers of this machine can be set flexibly according to the terrain. However, if the outriggers cannot be set in the "outrigger extended to maximum" state, perform the crane operation with the values given in the "Rated total load chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum" in the rated total load chart.

- When setting the outriggers, always maintain the outrigger rotary at the extension position, and insert the position pin into the end. Do not set the outriggers with the outrigger rotary stowed.

- When setting the outriggers, always extend the outrigger top.

Avoid setting outriggers when the outrigger top is stowed.

- During outrigger switching operation, always keep the engine in middle or lower speed.

When the engine is controlled to high speed, outriggers move too quickly which may result in serious accidents including tipping.

- To lift up the machine by control of the Outrigger individual setting switches, use the procedure as follows:

- This machine has 4 outriggers. Be careful not to confuse the use of respective 4 Outrigger individual setting switch. Check both the outrigger numbers indicated in the control panel and number labels attached to each outrigger. A serious accident may occur if the outrigger numbers are confused.

- When you control 2 of the individual switches at one time, only 2 in the front (outriggers [(2)] and [(3)]) or only 2 in the rear (outriggers [(1)] and [(4)]) shall be operated at the same time. When 2 outriggers in either left or right side are controlled at the same time, these may extend very quickly to cause crane tipping.

- Use each of 4 Outrigger individual setting switches properly so that 4 outriggers extend evenly. Otherwise, when 2 outriggers in either left or right side extend very quickly, it may cause the machine to overturn.

- Any outrigger operations other than extending and retracting (e.g. inserting and extracting position pins) must be performed whilst engine is stopped. If any unauthorised person touches the outrigger setting switches, it may cause the outrigger cylinders to move suddenly, and result in a serious accident.

### CAUTION

For outrigger operations, set the travelling lever stand in the Travelling Operation Unit to the "Crane Operation Position". When the travelling lever stand is in "Travelling" position, any outrigger setting switches are not available for outrigger operations.

## ⚠ WARNING

### • SELECTING LOCATION TO SET OUTRIGGERS

- When setting the outriggers on the structural objects such as construction site or concrete floor, verify in advance that the surface where the outriggers will be set has sufficient strength.

Insufficient strength in the setting surface will result in the machine overturning or falling due to the setting surface collapsing.

- Outriggers may sink, leading to overturning hazard, if set in soft ground such as:

- Road surface with low-cost pavement (low-cost asphalt or thin concrete)
- Surface with paving stones.
- Area reclaimed after excavation work
- Landfill
- Road shoulders or area close to a hole such as excavation work
- Deteriorated pavement surface

- Areas where under the pavement surface is hollow due to water erosion and the top soil appears to be hard but soft in the ground.

- Slope

### • PROTECTING GROUND

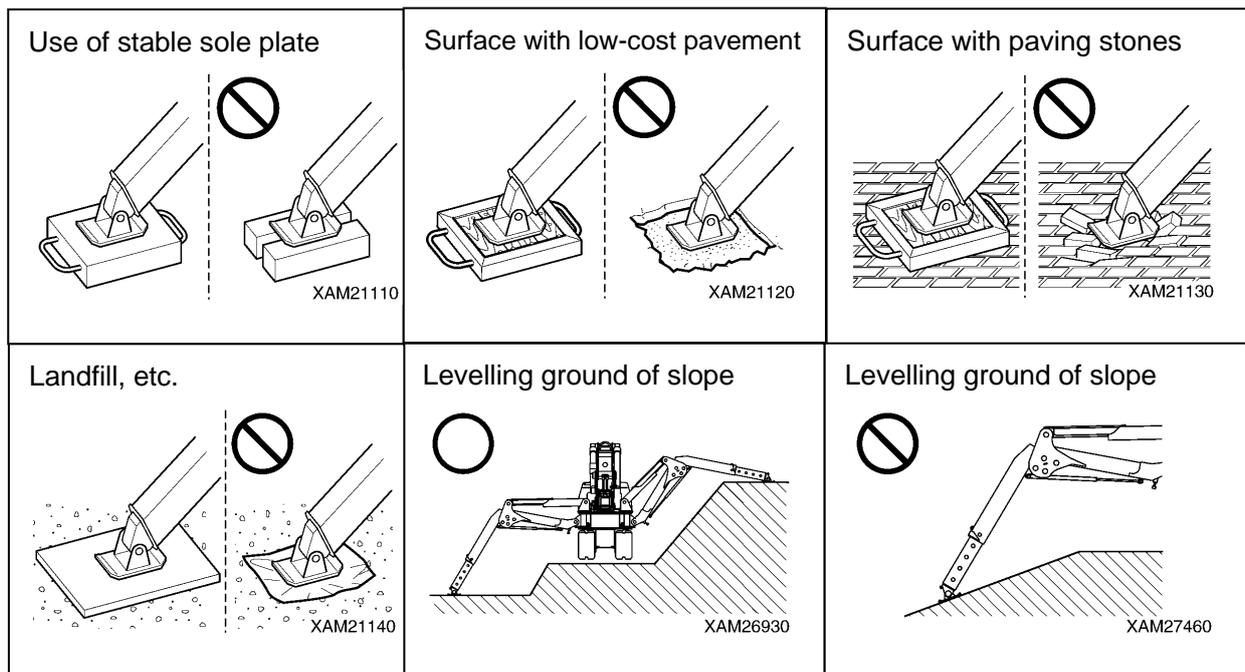
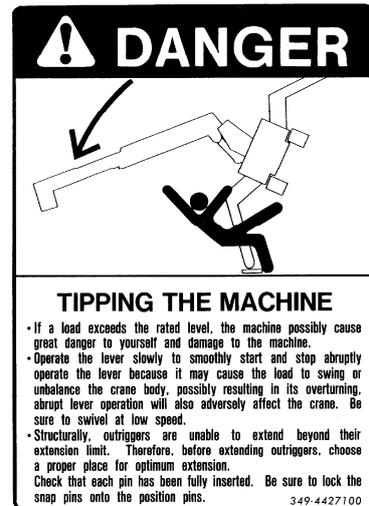
- Place a sole plate of sufficient size with sufficient strength under the tray of all the outriggers on the soft ground to protect the ground.

- If it is necessary to set the outriggers near the road shoulder, make sure to take precautions to prevent the collapse of the road shoulder.

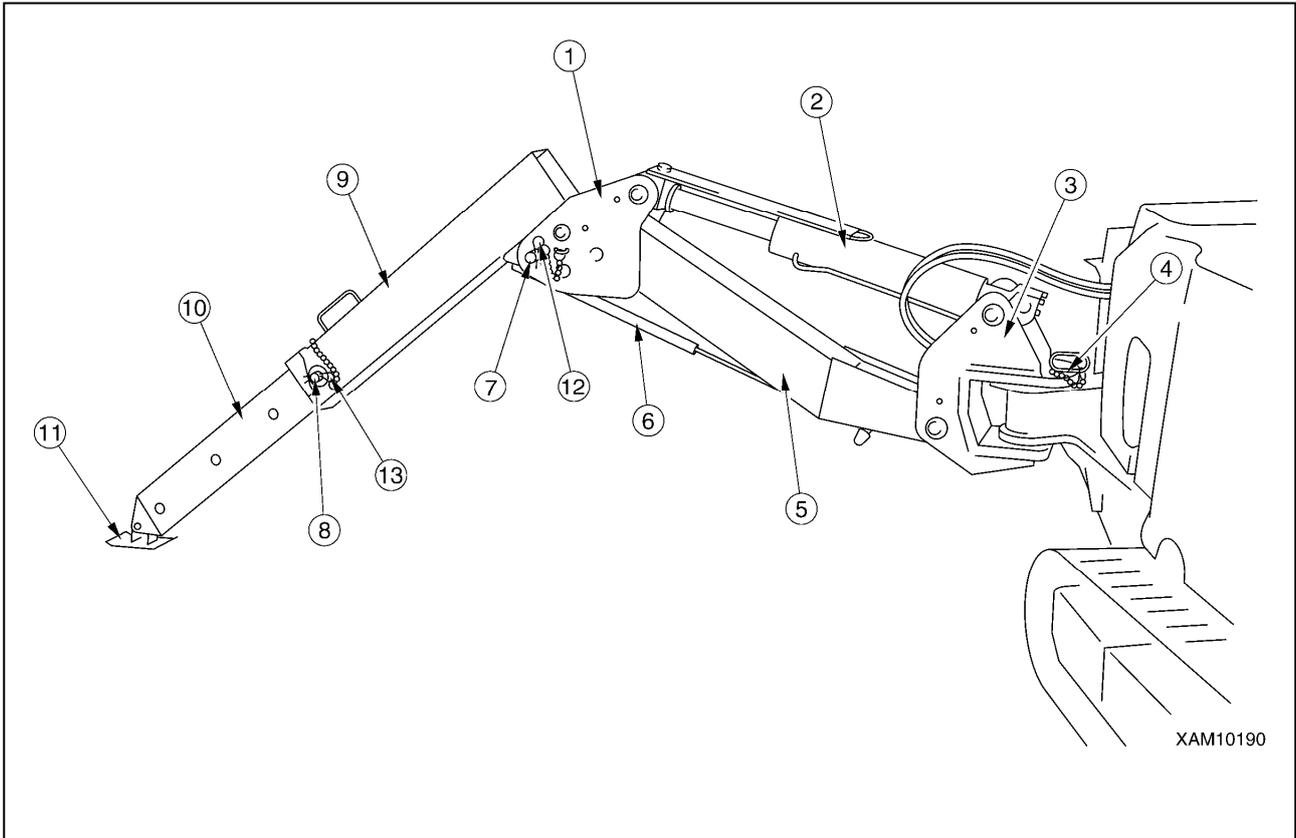
- When working on a slope, level the tray of all the outriggers and the ground under the rubber tracks before setting the outriggers.

Setting the outriggers with the tilted ground surface without levelling the ground surface will cause the outriggers to slip or overturn, causing serious accidents.

- If the ground is not protected or if the outriggers sink even after protecting the ground, do not operate the crane.



## 2.12.1 NAME OF OUTRIGGER COMPONENTS



- |                                |                               |
|--------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (1) Outrigger base             | (8) Inner box position pin    |
| (2) Outrigger cylinder         | (9) Outrigger top             |
| (3) Outrigger rotary           | (10) Inner box                |
| (4) Rotary position pin        | (11) Outrigger adapter (Tray) |
| (5) Outrigger base Box         | (12) Snap pin                 |
| (6) Stay (Damper type)         | (13) Snap pin                 |
| (7) Outrigger top position pin |                               |

## 2.12.2 OUTRIGGER SET UP OPERATION

### [1] TASKS TO BE PERFORMED UPON ENGINE STOP

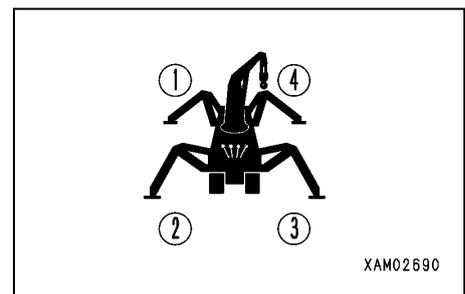
#### **! WARNING**

To install in "Outriggers MAX Extension" position, locations of holes for position pins (4) n outrigger rotaries (3) are different between outriggers [(1)] and [(4)] and (outriggers [(2)] and [(3)]).

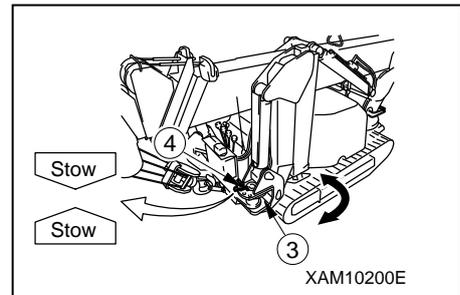
Please read description in this section thoroughly so that you can install outriggers securely. This section describes the practice to install outriggers in "Outriggers MAX Extension" position.

There are four outriggers installed on the machine.

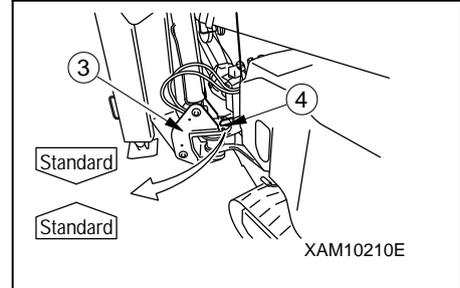
Although the setting method is described for just one outrigger (outrigger (3)), set the other three outriggers in the same way.



1. Pull the position pin (4) out of the outrigger rotary (3) and rotate the outrigger rotary outward.



2. Rotate the outrigger rotary (3) so that the sticker "Standard" affixed to its side and the sticker "Standard" affixed to the side of frame are aligned.



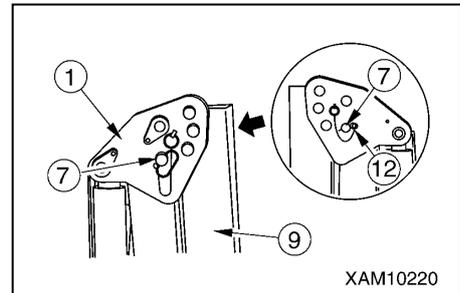
3. Insert positioning pin (4) to the aligned hole of the outrigger rotary (3).

**CAUTION**

- Each position pin (4) contains a chain which prevents the pin from going missing. Make sure that such chains are not entangled with the frame. If so, it may result that position pins (4) are not inserted completely to the end of the hole in the outrigger rotary (3). Due to such an instable condition, that pin is likely to come out from the hole easily.
- Stickers in outrigger rotaries and frames should match as follows when outriggers are extended to the standard position: "Standard " and "Standard" for outriggers.

4. Pull out the snap pin (12) from the position pin (7) of the outrigger base (1) to pull out the position pin (7).

5. Lift up the outrigger top (9) to align the hole in the outrigger top (9) and the hole of the top position in the outrigger base (1) (as indicated by the sticker, "Extend to max.").



**NOTES**

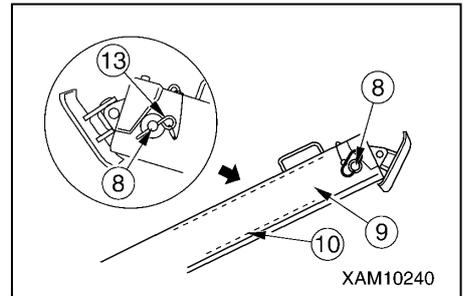
Location of the hole of the top position in the outrigger base (1) is identifiable by the sticker, "Extend to max.".

6. Insert the position pin (7) to hole of the top position in the outrigger base (1) (as indicated by the sticker, "Extend to max.") and secure it with a snap pin (12) at the end.

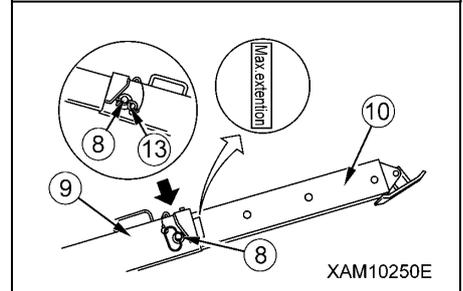
**NOTES**

When the position pin is inserted into any hole in the outrigger base (1) to which a sticker, "Other than max." is affixed, the crane operation shall be limited in accordance with the "Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum".

7. Pull the snap pin (13) out from the position pin (8) of the outrigger top (9) to pull out the position pin (8).



8. Pull out the outrigger inner box (10) from the outrigger top (9) and align the hole in the outrigger top (9) and the hole in the root position of the outrigger inner box (10).

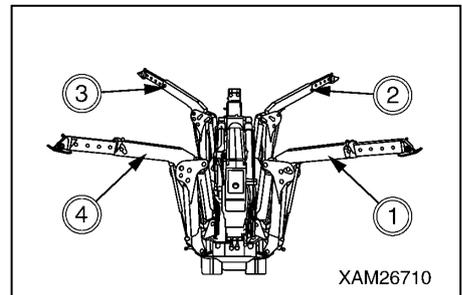


<b>NOTES</b>
The hole in the root position of the outrigger inner box (10) is a hole which matches the hole in the outrigger top (9) when a "MAX" sticker which is affixed to the side of the inner box is completely exposed.

9. Insert the position pin (8) to the hole of the outrigger top (9) then secure it with the snap pin (13).

<b>NOTES</b>
When the pin is inserted into any hole other than the "MAX" of the inner box, the crane operation shall be limited in accordance with the "Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum".

10. When all the above preparations are complete, check again that each position pin and other instalments are correctly inserted and secured by a snap pin or such.

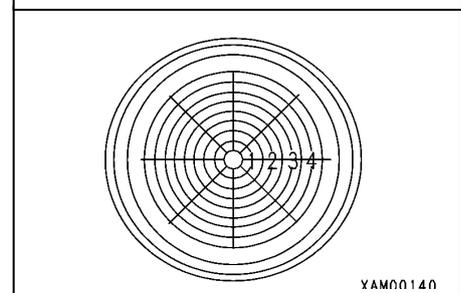
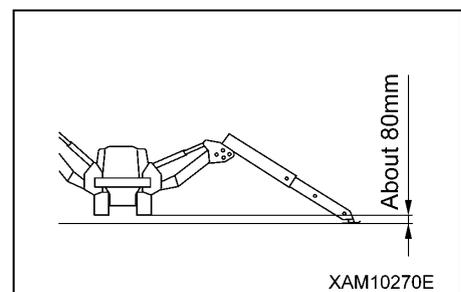
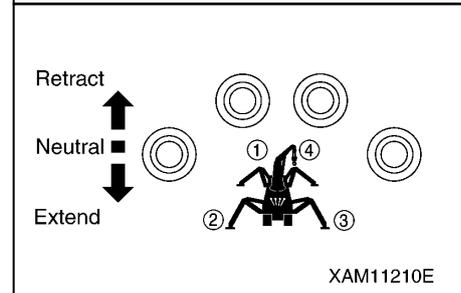
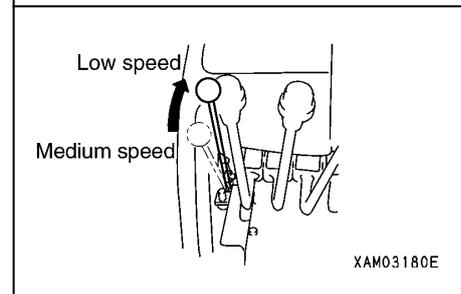
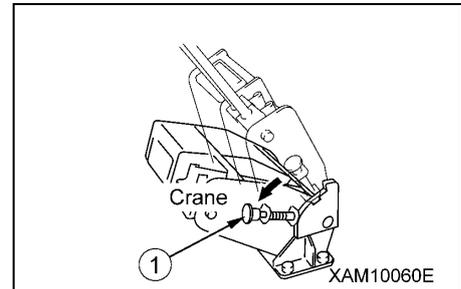


## [2] TASKS TO BE PERFORMED AFTER STARTING THE ENGINE

### ⚠ WARNING

- The overturning alarm buzzer sounds if the machine tilts by “3 degrees” or more when setting the outriggers. Operate the outrigger switches and adjust the machine to be leveled until the alarm buzzer stops.

1. See “Operation 2.2 Starting the Engine” to start the engine.
2. Pull up the lock lever (1) before pressing the whole lever stand down to the "Crane Operation Position", then release the lock lever (1).
3. Push the acceleration lever to forward and change the engine speed to less than medium speed.
4. Check the number on the operation plate at the switch section on the outrigger operation panel to determine which outrigger to be operated.
5. Turn the Outrigger operation switches respectively or 2 switches at the same time to the OUT position, so that all the 4 Outrigger adapters (Trays) touch the surface of the ground consistently.
6. After all the 4 Outrigger adapters (Trays) touch the surface of the ground consistently, turn the Outrigger operation switches to the OUT position. 4 outrigger cylinders will begin to extend. When the crane body has lifted to an approx. height of 80 mm, release the Outrigger operation switches to the NEUTRAL position.
7. When the machine was raised to about 80 mm above the ground, operate the outrigger operation switches while checking the position of the bubble in the level to adjust the machine to be levelled.
8. After setting the outriggers, operate all the outrigger operation switches to the NEUTRAL position.

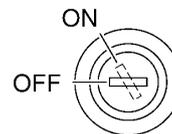


## 2.13 CAUTIONS BEFORE CRANE OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

Not observing these cautions before operation may result in serious accidents.

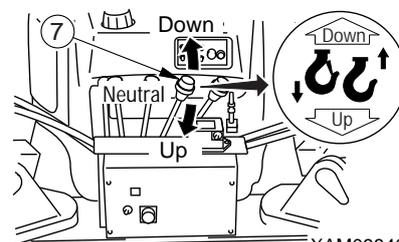
- Verify that the emergency stop cancel switch, boom stowing switch, and hook stowing switch are at the “OFF” position. If these switches are at the “ON” position, the operations will not stop.



XAM19641

- Over hoisting the hook block will activate the alarm buzzer of the over hoist detector and the operation stops. When the alarm buzzer sounds, release your hand immediately from the winch lever (7) to the “NEUTRAL” position to stop raising the hook.

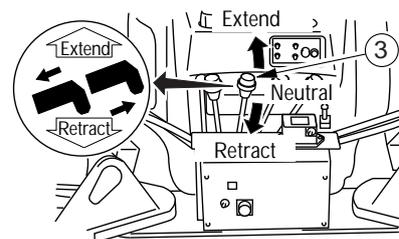
Then, operate the winch lever (7) to “DOWN” (push forward) side to lower the hook block.



XAM09840E

- Extending the boom will hoist the hook block, activating the alarm buzzer of the over hoist detector and the operation stops. When the alarm buzzer sounds, release your hand immediately from the boom telescoping lever (3) to the “NEUTRAL” position to stop extending the boom.

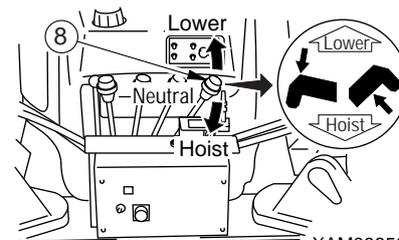
Then, operate the boom telescoping lever (3) to “RETRACT” (pull toward you) side to retract the boom.



XAM09830E

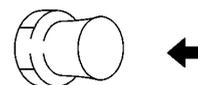
- Raising the boom will hoist the hook block, activating the alarm buzzer of the over hoist detector and the operation stops. When the alarm buzzer sounds, release your hand immediately from the boom derricking lever (8) to the NEUTRAL position to stop raising the boom.

Then, operate the boom derricking lever (8) to “DOWN” (push forward) side to lower the boom.



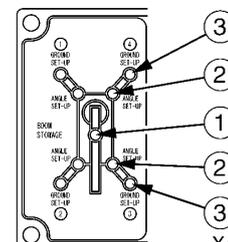
XAM09850E

- Use the horn switch to honk the horn to notify the people around of the danger during the crane operation.



XAM02580

- Verify that all the outriggers are extended and set. If any of the four outrigger extension lamps (2) or four outrigger setting lamps (3) is flashing red, the crane cannot be operated.



XAM22010E

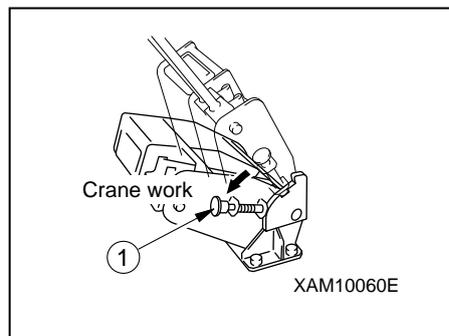
## 2.14 OPERATIONS BEFORE CRANE OPERATIONS

### CAUTION

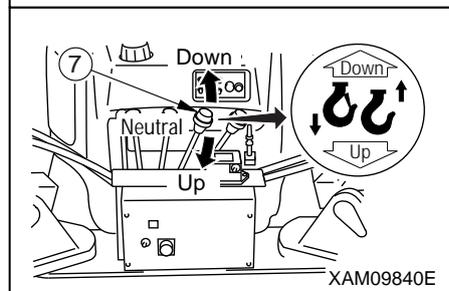
- For manipulation of each crane operation levers and outrigger setting switches, set the travelling lever stand in the Travelling Operation Unit to the "Crane Operation Position". When the travelling lever stand is in "Travelling" position, each lever or outrigger setting switch is not available for its operation.
- When the hook block is released from its holder, be careful not to loosen the wire rope too much to let the hook lie on the ground. Such a condition may result in an irregular winding of the wire rope to the winch.

Perform the following operations before crane operation.

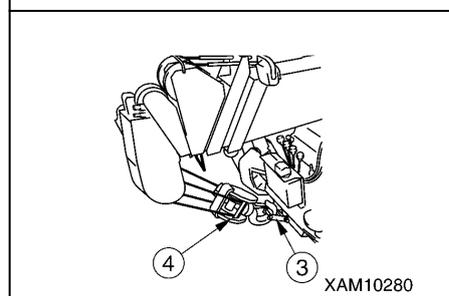
1. Pull up the lock lever (1) before pressing the whole lever stand down to the "Crane Operation Position", then release the lock lever (1).



2. Push the winch lever (7) forward to the "Lowering" position to slacken the wire rope which fixes the hook block.



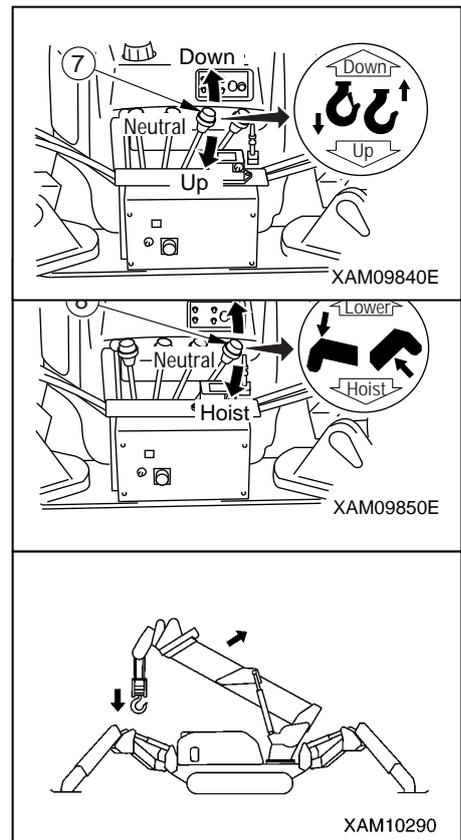
3. Remove the hook block (4) from the hook hanger (3).



## 2.15 CRANE OPERATION POSTURE

Follow the procedure below to set the crane operation posture:

1. Operate the winch lever (7) to the "DOWN" (push forward) side and lower the hook. Do not let the hook block touch the ground.
2. Operate the boom derricking lever (8) to the "RAISE" (pull toward you) side and raise the boom to the angle where the hook block is not over hoisted and not touching the ground.



## 2.16 HOOK RAISING/LOWERING OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

- With the boom deflection, the hoisted load slightly shifts forward. Notify the workers around such as slinging operators.
- If the hook is over hoisted, an alarm will sound and a voice message saying “Hook over hoisted” will be heard. Immediately manoeuvre the winch lever to the “NEUTRAL” position to stop raising the hook.
- When lowering the hook for long distance for underground works, be sure to leave more than three turns of the wire rope on the winch drum.

### CAUTION

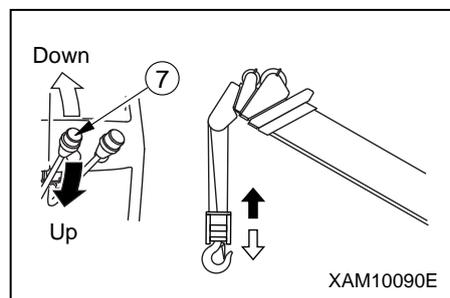
Do not let the hook block touch the ground.  
The winch drum will wind irregularly, damaging the wire rope.

Operate the winch lever (7) as follows;

- Lower: Push the lever forward “DOWN”.
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever will return to the “NEUTRAL” position and the raising/lowering of the hook block stops.

- Raise: Pull the lever to the “UP” side toward you.



### NOTES

Adjust the winch raising/lowering speed with the winch lever and stroke of the acceleration lever.

## 2.17 BOOM DERRICKING OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

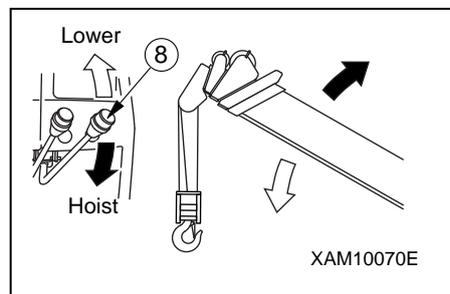
- Operate the boom derricking lever as slowly as possible. Sudden lever operation especially while hoisting a load will cause the load to swing, giving a great impact to the machine, and thus may break the crane or overturn the machine.
- Lowering the boom increases the working radius and the rated total load that can be hoisted decreases. Be extremely careful so that the load weight will not be overloaded with the boom most lowered when working by derricking the boom.

Operate the boom derricking lever (8) as follows.

- Lower: Push the lever forward to the “LOWER” side.
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.

The lever goes back to the “NEUTRAL” position and the boom derricking stops.

- Raise: Pull the lever toward you to the “RAISE” side.



### NOTES

Adjust the boom derricking speed with the boom derricking lever and the stroke of the acceleration lever.

## 2.18 BOOM TELESCOPING OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

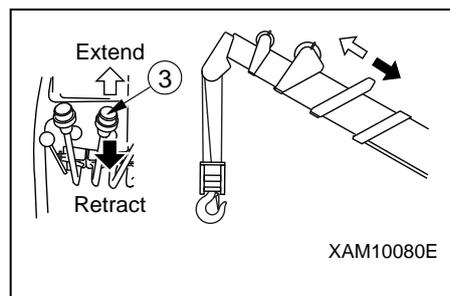
- Operate the boom telescoping lever as slowly as possible. Sudden lever operation especially while hoisting a load will cause the load to swing, giving a great impact to the machine. This may break the crane or overturn the machine.
  - Do not pull the load horizontally or pull in the load by telescoping the boom.
  - Extending the boom increases the working radius and the rated total load that can be hoisted decreases. Be extremely careful so that the load weight will not be overloaded with the boom most extended when working by telescoping the boom.
  - When the boom is extended, the hook block is raised.
- If the alarm buzzer of the over hoist detector and the audible message of “Hook Over Hoisted” are heard during the boom extending operation, return the boom telescoping lever immediately to the “NEUTRAL” position and stop the boom extending operation.

### CAUTION

- The hook block is raised or lowered while telescoping the boom. Perform the winch operation at the same time to adjust the hook block height.
- When the boom is extended for a long time, the boom slightly retracts due to the temperature change in the hydraulic oil. In this case, extend the boom as needed.

Perform the boom telescoping lever (3) as follows.

- Extend: Push the lever forward to the “EXTEND” side.  
The lever returns to the “NEUTRAL” position and the boom telescoping stops.
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.
- Retract: Pull the lever toward you to the “RETRACT” side.



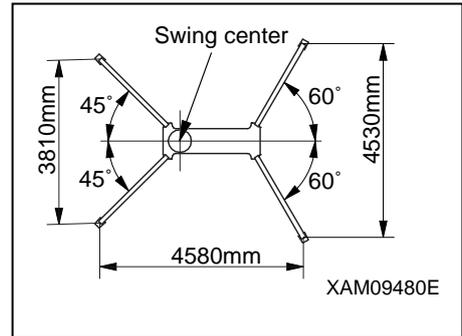
### NOTES

Adjust the boom telescoping speed with the boom telescoping lever and the stroke of the acceleration pedal.

## 2.19 SLEWING OPERATION

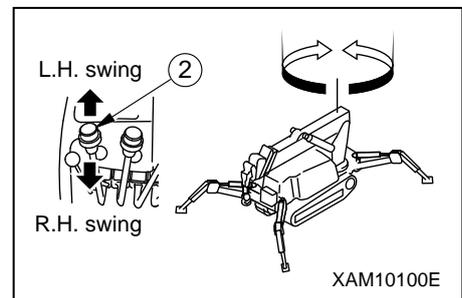
### ⚠ WARNING

- Check the safety around and honk the horn before slewing.
- Operate the slewing lever as slowly as possible. Start smoothly, slew at low speed, and stop gently. Sudden lever operation especially while hoisting a load will cause the load to swing, causing the loss of stability in the machine, and thus may break the crane or overturn the machine.
- Even if the outriggers are set normally, some directions have lower stability when slewed for 360 degrees. Be extremely careful when slewing while hoisting a load.
- Depending on how outriggers are extended, the hoisted load may hit an outrigger during the slewing operation, breaking the crane or overturning the machine. Be careful not to let the hoisted load hit an outrigger.



Operate the slewing lever (2) as follows.

- Slew counter clockwise: Push the lever forward to the “LEFT” side.  
The lever returns to the “NEUTRAL” position and the slewing stops.
- Neutral: Release your hand from the lever.  
The lever returns to the “NEUTRAL” position and the slewing stops.
- Slew clockwise: Pull the lever toward you to the “RIGHT” side.



### NOTES

Adjust the crane slewing speed with the slewing lever and the stroke of the acceleration pedal.

## 2.20 ACCELERATION OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

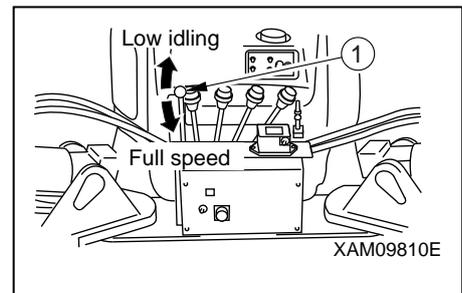
Accelerating the operation speed of the crane units more than is necessary is dangerous.

### CAUTION

Decrease the speed at the beginning and near the end of an operation. Change the speed to low speed or high speed according to the load.

Operate the acceleration pedal (1) as follows.

- Low idling: Push the lever forward.  
The engine speed decreases and the operation speed of the crane units slows down.
- Full speed: Pull the lever backwards.  
The engine speed increases, and the operation speed of the crane units accelerates.



### NOTES

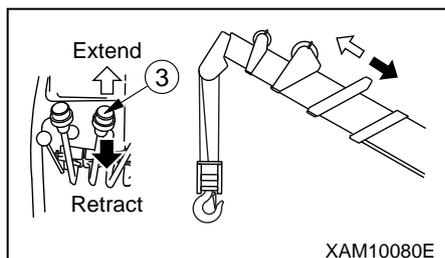
At the desired engine speed for your work, release the lever. It will stop at that position.

## 2.21 CRANE STOWING OPERATION

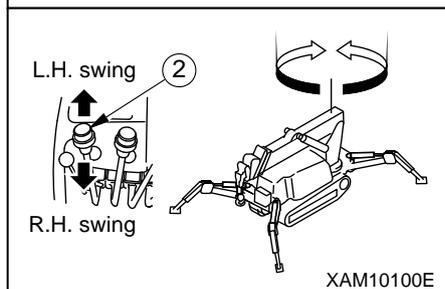
### CAUTION

- Stop the hook block from swinging before stowing.
- When stowing the hook block, do not topple the entire hook block sideways on the ground by loosening the wire rope too much. This will cause the irregular winding on the winch drum.
- The boom “retracting” operation will lower the hook block. The hook block also lowers with the boom “lowering” operation. Raise the hook at the same time so that the hook block will not touch the ground or interfere with the machine.
- Stow the boom securely into the stowing position. After stowing the boom, verify that the boom stowing lamp on the outrigger display lights up in green. If the boom stowing lamp does not light up, the outriggers cannot be stowed. If the boom stowing lamp does not light up, lower the boom to the maximum or slew the boom to verify that the boom stowing lamp lights up.

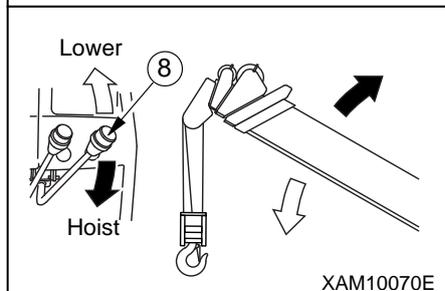
1. Operate the boom telescoping lever (3) to the “RETRACT” (pull toward you) side to fully retract the boom.



2. Operate the slewing lever (2) to the “LEFT” or “RIGHT” side so that the boom slews to the centre of the machine.



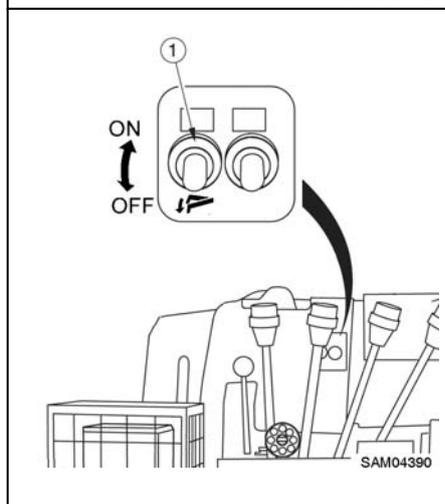
3. Operate the boom derricking lever (8) to the “LOWER” (push forward) side and lower the boom until it automatically stops.



4. With the boom stowing switch (1) switched to the “ON” position, operate the boom derricking lever (8) again to the “LOWER” (push forward) side to stow the boom.

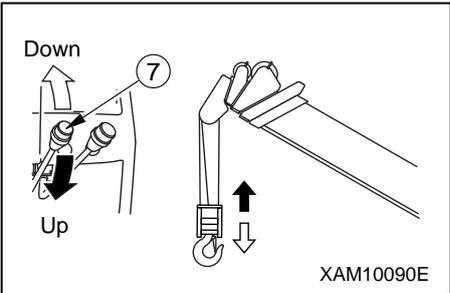
### NOTES

The boom shall be fully lowered in this operation. During this operation take care not to be trapped by the hook block.

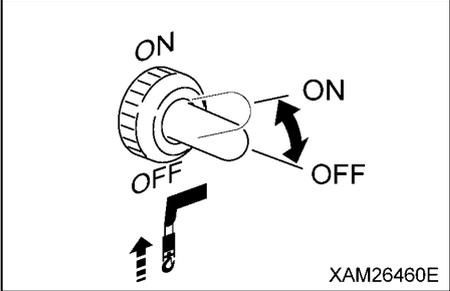


5. Operate the winch lever (7) to the “UP” (pull toward you) side and winch until the hook block automatically stops (over hoist).

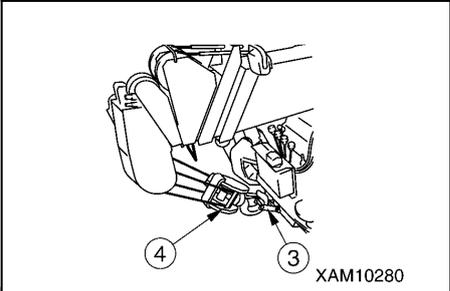
<b>NOTES</b>
Hoisting the hook block too much will result in the detection of over hoist. The alarm buzzer will be heard and the hook raising operation automatically stops.



6. Hold the hook block with one hand and turn the hook stowing switch to the ON position (Upward) to wind up the hook block (4).

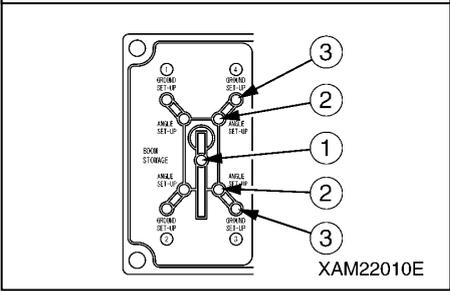


7. Leave the hook stowing switch in the ON position (Upward) and fasten the hook of the hook block (4) to the hook holder (3).



8. Verify that the boom stowing lamp (1) (green) on the outrigger display lights up.

<b>NOTES</b>
If the boom stowing lamp (1) (green) on the outrigger display does not light up, repeat the boom lowering operation to the lowest position and slewing operation.



## 2.22 OUTRIGGER STOWING OPERATION

### ⚠ WARNING

- Do not let people approach towards the machine while stowing the outriggers. Close proximity to the machine may result in serious accidents such as getting caught between an outrigger and the main unit of the machine.
- Verify that there is nothing under the rubber tracks when stowing the outriggers. If there is any object under the rubber tracks, the machine may overturn and cause serious accidents when stowing the outriggers.
- Stop the engine for all operations except for extending/setting the outrigger cylinders. The third person touching an outrigger switch may result in sudden movement of the outrigger cylinder, which may lead to serious accidents.
- When the position pin is removed, the outrigger loses the support and rotates. Always hold the outrigger with one hand when removing the position pin.
- Do not put hands or fingers around the gaps of movable areas when stowing the outriggers as they may get caught, leading to serious accidents.
- Insert the position pin to the end when stowing the outriggers.
- There are four outriggers. Be careful not to mistake 4 outrigger switches for the others. Check the numbers shown on the "operation plate" at the switch section and the location of the "number plate" affixed to the outriggers. Wrong operation can lead to serious accidents.
- When operating two outrigger setting switches at the same time, choose two front switches (outrigger (2) and (3)) or two rear switches (outrigger (1) and (4)). Operating two left or right switches at the same time will suddenly raise two outriggers on one side, causing the machine to overturn.
- Reduce to a low engine speed when operating the outrigger switches. At the high engine speed, the outriggers operate suddenly, leading to serious accidents such as overturning of the machine.
- When lowering the raised machine, operate the four outrigger switches so that the four outriggers are lowered little by little. Suddenly retracting two outriggers just on the right side or left side will cause instability and may overturn the machine.

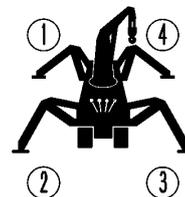
### CAUTION

For outrigger operations, set the travelling lever stand in the Travelling Operation Unit to the "Crane Operation Position".  
When the travelling lever stand is in "Travelling" position, any outrigger setting switches are not available for outrigger operations.

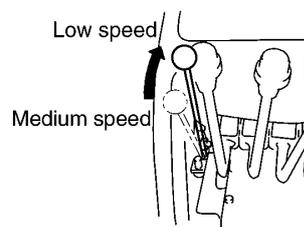
### [1] TASKS TO BE PERFORMED AFTER STARTING ENGINE

Although the stowing method is described for just one outrigger (outrigger (3)), stow the other three outriggers in the same way.

1. See "Operation 2.2 Starting Engine" and start the engine.
2. Push the acceleration lever to forward and change the engine speed to less than medium speed.



XAM02690



XAM03180E

3. Verify that the boom stowing lamp (1) (green) on the outrigger display is illuminated.

4. Check the number on the operation plate at the switch section on the outrigger operation panel to determine which outrigger to be operated.

5. Push down an outrigger setting switch or two of them at the same time to the "ON" (upward) side.

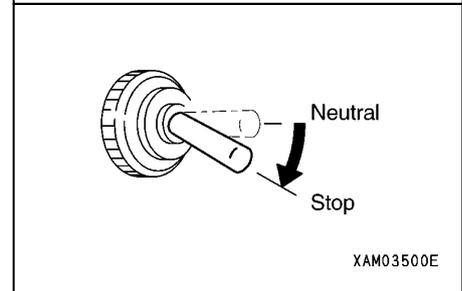
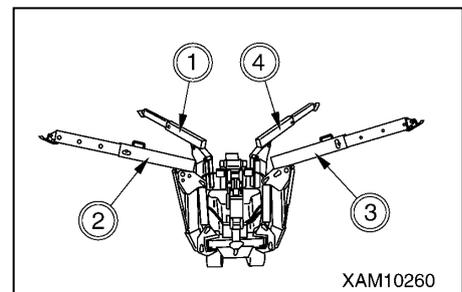
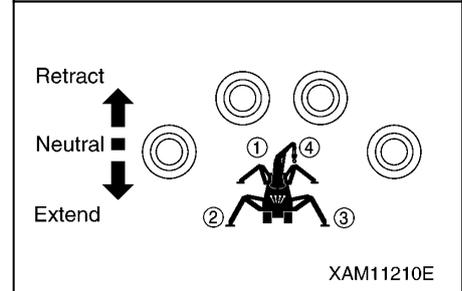
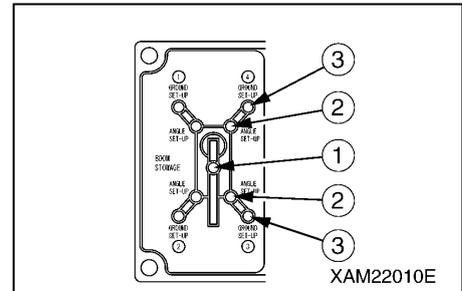
When the outrigger setting cylinder retracts and the machine starts to go down, return the switch to the "NEUTRAL" position. Operate the remaining switches in the same way and lower all the four outriggers to the same height. Return the switch to the "NEUTRAL" position.

Repeat this operation to gradually lower the machine until the rubber tracks go down completely on the ground.

6. When the left and right rubber tracks are completely set on the ground, push down again an outrigger setting switch or two of them at the same time to the "IN" (upward) side.

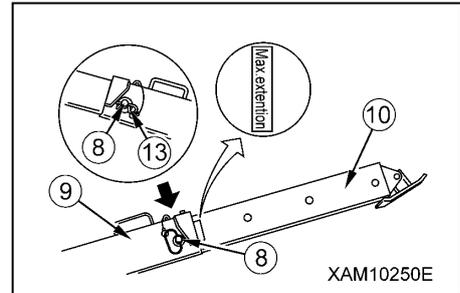
When the setting cylinder completely retracts and the top box (9) goes up to the upper limit, release your finger from the outrigger setting switch.

7. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position to switch off the engine.

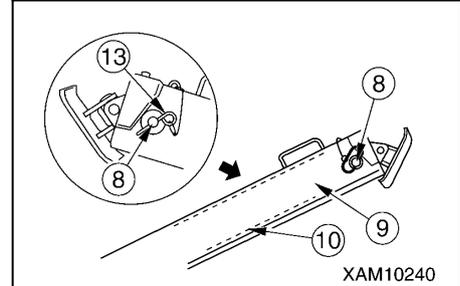


## [2] TASKS TO BE PERFORMED UPON ENGINE STOP

1. Remove the snap pin (13) of the position pin (8) tip of the outrigger top box (9) and pull out the position pin (8).

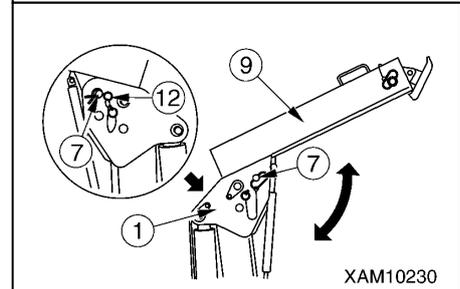


2. Push the inner box (10) into the outrigger top box (9) and align the hole of the outrigger top box (9) and the hole nearest to the end of the inner box (10).



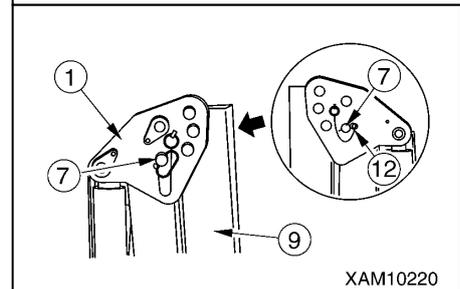
3. Insert the position pin (8) to the hole of the outrigger top box (9) and secure with snap pin (13).

4. Remove the snap pin (12) of the position pin (7) tip of the outrigger base (1) and pull out the position pin (7).

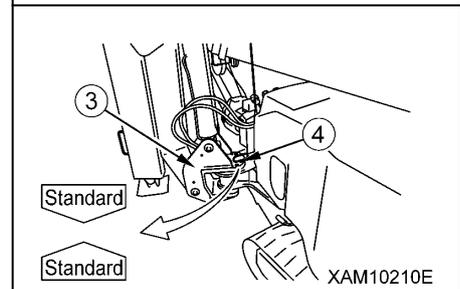


5. Lower the outrigger top box (9) and align the hole of the outrigger top box (9) and the hole of the lowest position in the outrigger base (1).

6. Insert the position pin (7) into hole of the lowest position in the outrigger base (1) and secure it with a snap pin (12).

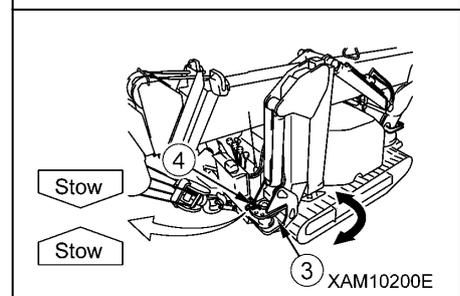


7. Pull out the position pin (4) of the outrigger rotary (3) and rotate the outrigger rotary (3) inward.



8. Rotate the outrigger rotary (3) so that the sticker "Standard" affixed to its side and the sticker "Stow" affixed to the side of frame are aligned.

9. Insert positioning pin (4) into the hole with the sticker "Stow" of the outrigger rotary (3).



10. When the outrigger is stowed, check each position pin is correctly inserted and secured by a snap pin or such.

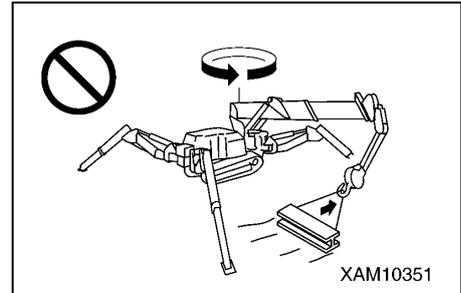
## 2.23 DOS AND DON'TS DURING CRANE OPERATIONS

### **! WARNING**

- Always set the outriggers on level, solid ground when performing the crane operations.
- Never perform travelling hoist or the crane operations without setting the outriggers. The machine will be unstable and overturn, leading to serious accidents.
- See the cautions given in the Safety besides the dos and don'ts in this section.

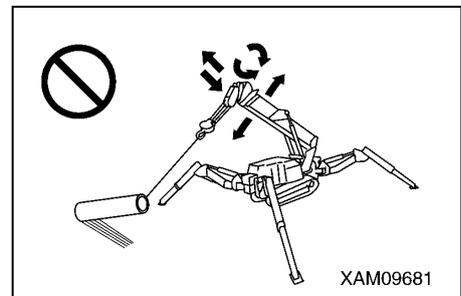
#### **[1] DON'T OPERATIONS WITH SLEWING FORCE**

Drawing in or lifting the load with slewing operation is prohibited.



#### **[2] DON'T OPERATIONS WITH DERRICKING FORCE**

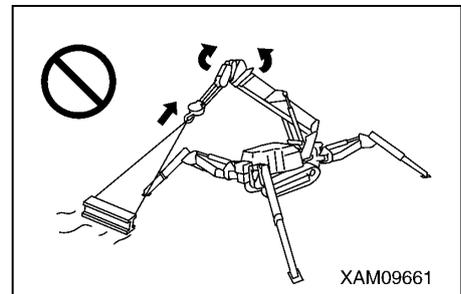
Drawing in or lifting the load with boom derricking operation is prohibited.



#### **[3] DON'T PULL SIDWARD, DRAW IN, AND HOIST DIAGONALLY**

Pulling the load sideways, drawing it in, or hoisting diagonally applies unreasonable force on the machine. It not only damages the machine body, but also is dangerous. Never operate in this way.

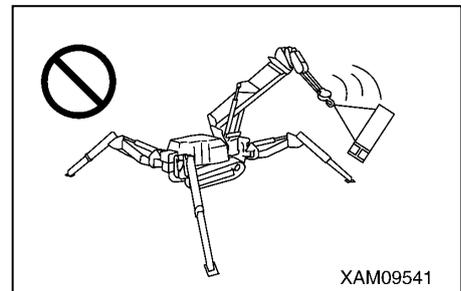
The hook must lift right above the centre of gravity of the load hoisted.



#### **[4] DON'T OPERATE VIOLENTLY DURING OPERATION**

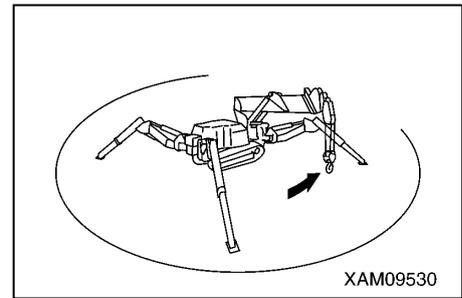
Do not operate the lever suddenly.

Especially, "slewing", "boom lowering", and "hook lowering" must be operated at low speeds.



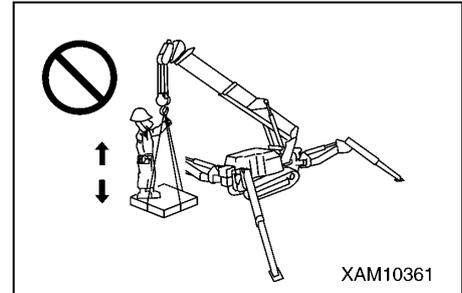
**[5] DON'T ACCESS INTO WORKING RADIUS**

Strict access to restrict both authorized and non-authorized personnel into the working radius, or underneath the hoisted load.



**[6] DON'T USE FOR OTHER THAN MAIN APPLICATIONS**

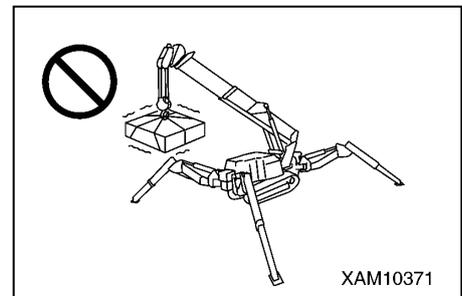
Do not move people up/down with the crane.



**[7] DON'T PERFORM UNREASONABLE OPERATIONS**

Operations requiring more than the machine performance can cause accidents.

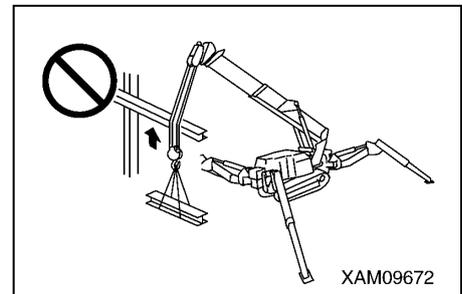
Crane operations must always be carried out according to the rated total load chart.



**[8] DON'T WIND WIRE BY FORCE**

Be careful not to hook the wire rope over a tree or steel beam while working.

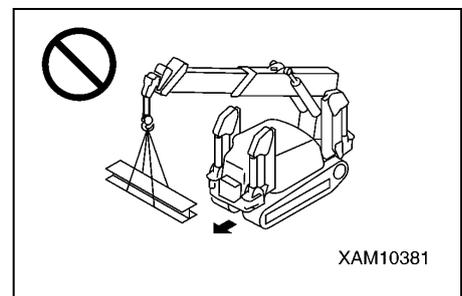
If it gets stuck with something, do not force to wind the wire. Untangle and then wind the wire.



**[9] DON'T OPERATE DURING TRAVELLING HOIST**

The load may swing or the machine may overturn during the travelling hoist.

Do not perform slewing operation or crane operations.



## **3. HANDLING RUBBER TRACKS**

### **3.1 GOOD USE**

While the rubber tracks demonstrate many advantages thanks to its performance characteristic to the material, it has a weak point in strength.

Therefore, we would like you to sufficiently understand the characteristics of the rubber tracks and to respect don'ts operations and observe the cautions on handling so that the life of the rubber tracks can be extended and its advantages exercised.

Be sure to read "3.3 Dos and Don'ts with Rubber Tracks" and "3.4 Cautions in Using Rubber Tracks" in the Operation before using the machine.

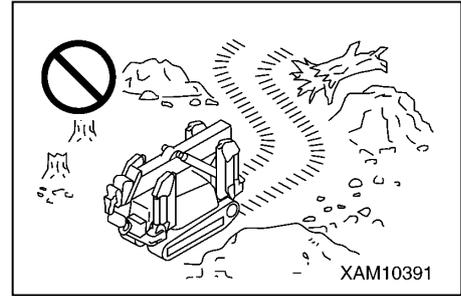
### **3.2 WARRANTY**

Verification of proper tension of the rubber tracks, maintenance of rubber tracks, and damage caused by the fault of customers such as not respecting don'ts operation or not observing cautions in working, for example, "worked at the site where there were objects that may tear the rubber blocks, such as steel plates, U-shaped gutters, corners of bricks, corners of sheer broken stones and rocks, reinforcing steels, and iron scraps", are not covered by warranty.

### 3.3 DOS AND DON'TS

The following operations are prohibited.

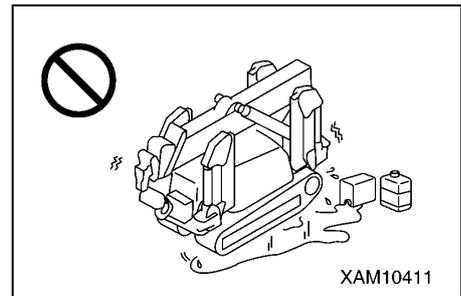
- Working and slewing on the ground with broken stones, hard rock ground with great irregularity, reinforcing steels, iron scraps, and near the edge of the steel plates will damage the rubber tracks.



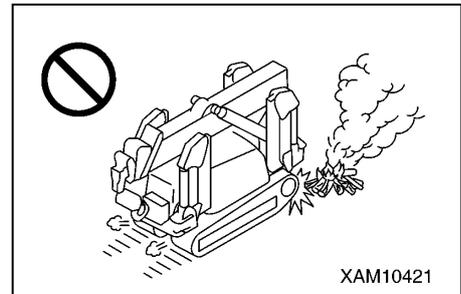
- Locations where there are many large and small stones, such as river beds, stones will pass under the machine and may damage the rubber tracks. In extreme cases, the rubber tracks may come off.



- Keep the oil and chemical solvents away from the rubber tracks. If these materials come into contact with the rubber tracks, wipe off immediately. Do not TRAVEL over road surfaces where the oil has built up.



- Do not enter hot areas such as open fires, steel plates left in direct view of the sun, or recently poured asphalt.



- Keep the rubber tracks indoor where there is no direct sunlight or rain when storing them for long time (three months or more).

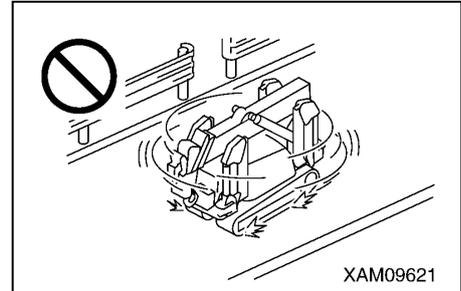
### 3.4 CAUTIONS IN USING RUBBER TRACKS

#### **⚠ WARNING**

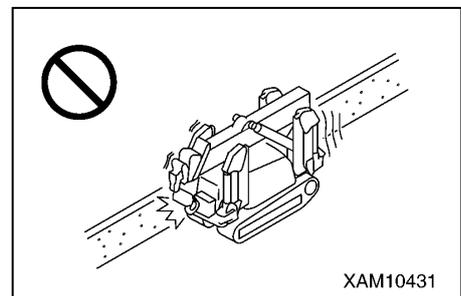
**Not observing these cautions will cause serious accidents or damage to the rubber tracks.**

Keep the following in mind during operation.

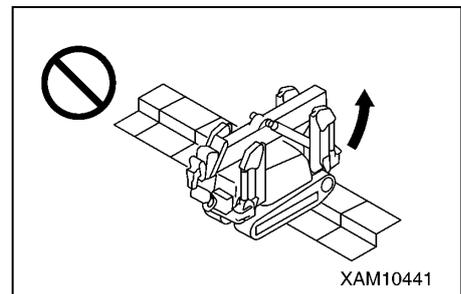
- Avoid making spin turns on concrete surfaces.  
Sudden steering will cause early wear or defect on the rubber tracks. Avoid making sudden steering whenever possible.



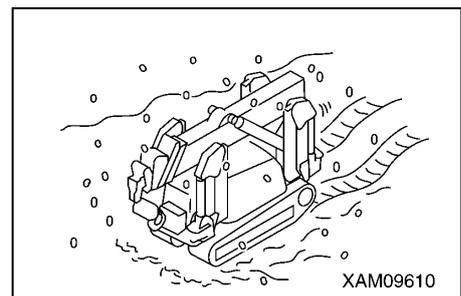
- Do not operate the machine in a way that the edge of the rubber tracks is pressed against the concrete and walls.



- Avoid steering at the location with a great step.  
Make the machine perpendicular to the step when going over it. Going over the step diagonally may result in the rubber tracks coming off.



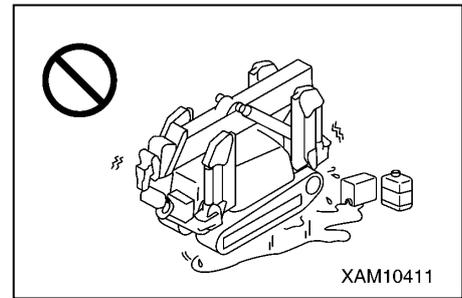
- The rubber tracks slip very easily on a wet steep plate or snowed and frozen surface. Be especially careful not to slip when operating on the slope.



- Avoid using the rubber tracks whenever possible depending on the material to be worked on.

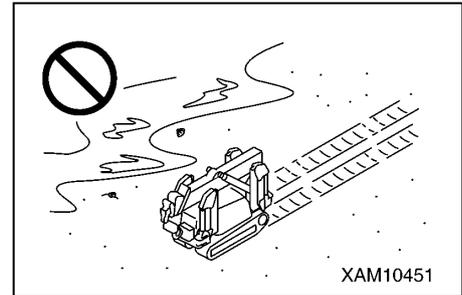
If it is necessary to use the rubber tracks on the materials listed below, make sure to wash thoroughly after use.

- Avoid the operation on the material crushed and yielding oil (such as soy beans, corns, rape cake, etc.)
- Handling salt, ammonium sulphate, potassium chloride, or concentrated superphosphate corrodes the bonding at the cored bar section.

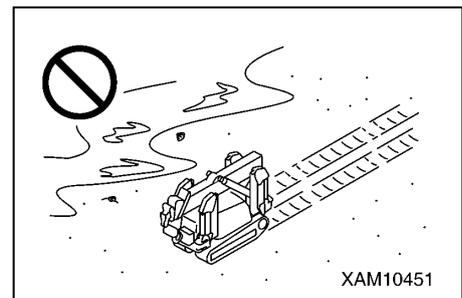


- Salt corrodes the bonding at the cored bar section. Avoid using the machine on the beach whenever possible.

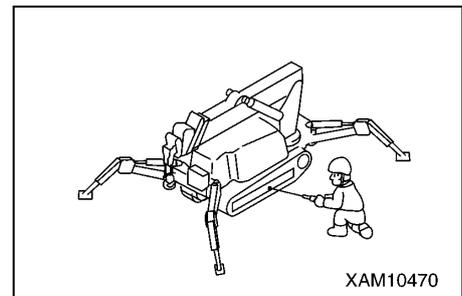
- The operation in the very cold land changes the material of the rubber tracks, shortening its life.  
Use the rubber tracks in the range of -25°C to + 55°C, due to the physical property of the rubber.



- When handling food such as salt, sugar, wheat, and soybeans, some pieces of wire or rubber may be mixed in the food if there is any deep scratch on the rubber tracks.  
Use the rubber tracks after repairing the cracked rubber.



- Always use the rubber tracks at appropriate tension to prevent the rubber track from coming off.  
Loose tension will allow the rubber tracks to come off.



## 4. HANDLING WIRE ROPES

### 4.1 BENCHMARK FOR REPLACING WIRE ROPES

#### CAUTION

- The benchmark for replacing wire ropes is common to all the wire ropes for winching, telescoping the boom, and slinging.
- Measure the wire rope diameter at the section where the rope repeatedly passes through the sieve. Measure from three directions and average the value.
- Do not use the old wire ropes even if they had not been used.
- See “Maintenance 8.5 [2] Replacement Winch Wire Ropes” for how to replace the wire rope.
- Contact us or our sales service agency for replacing/repairing the wire ropes.

#### [1] WIRE ROPE NOMINAL DIMENSION

- Wire rope for winching : IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 0/0  $\phi$  7 x 48 m
- No. 4 wire rope for extending boom : IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 0/0  $\phi$  9 x 4.92 m
- No. 4 wire rope for retracting boom : IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 0/0  $\phi$  8 x 8.28 m
- No. 5 wire rope for extending boom : IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 0/0  $\phi$  6 x 4.655 m
- No. 5 wire rope for retracting boom : FC 6 x 37 0/0  $\phi$  5 x 7.85 m

#### [2] BENCHMARK FOR REPLACING WIRE ROPES

The wire rope fatigues as time goes by.

Change the wire ropes when they show the following signs.

- In one twist (6 crests), 10 % or more of the wires (excluding the filler wires) are broken.

#### NOTES

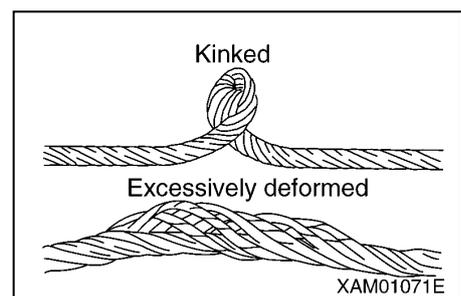
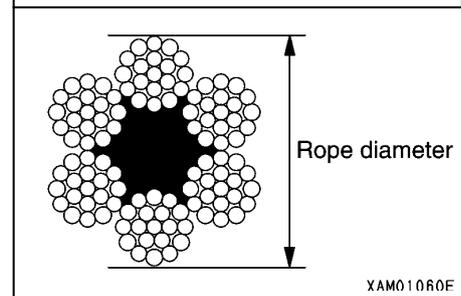
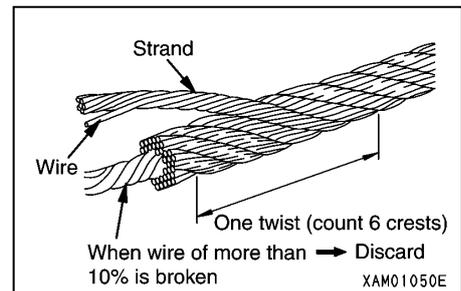
Change winching/boom telescoping wire rope when 13 or more wires are broken.

- The diameter of the wire rope is worn for 7 % or more of the nominal diameter.

#### NOTES

- Change the 9-mm diameter wire rope when it is reduced to 8.4 mm.
- Change the 8-mm diameter wire rope when it is reduced to 7.5 mm.
- Change the 7-mm diameter wire rope when it is reduced to 6.6 mm.
- Change the 6-mm diameter wire rope when it is reduced to 5.6 mm.
- Change the 5-mm diameter wire rope when it is reduced to 4.7 mm.

- The rope is twisted and has some kinks.
- The rope shows remarkable deformation or corrosion.
- The rope shows some abnormality at the terminals.



## 4.2 What TO DO WITH TWISTED WINCH WIRE ROPE

### ⚠ WARNING

Be sure to wear a pair of thick leather working gloves when handling wire ropes.

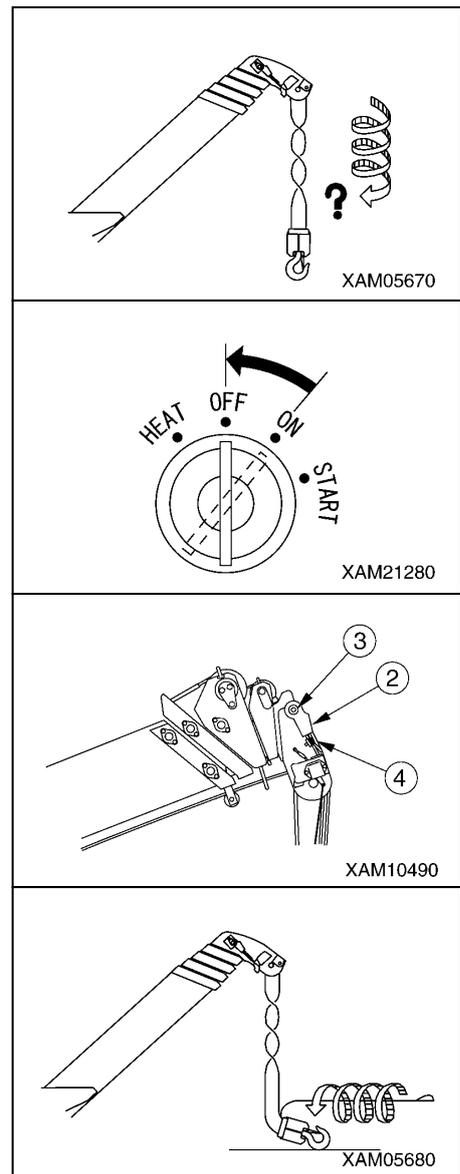
### CAUTION

Change the hooking direction of the wire rope (inverse the hook block side and winch drum side) from time to time to extend the life of the wire rope.

When the wire rope gets twisted, straighten the twist with the following procedure.

1. With the hook in normal condition, check the twisting direction and how many times the rope is twisted.
2. Operate the winch lever to "DOWN" (push forward) side to lower the hook block onto the ground.  
If the hook cannot be lowered, operate the boom derricking lever to the "LOWER" (push forward) side to lower the boom or operate the boom telescoping lever to the "RETRACT" (pull toward you) side to retract the boom to lower the boom.
3. Turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position to stop the engine.
4. Remove the wedge socket pin securing bolt (3) to remove the wedge socket (2).
5. Force to twist the end of the wire for "n" (number of wire falls) times of the number hook is twisted for in the opposite direction from the direction the hook block is twisted to and which you checked in the step 1 (opposite direction from the one the wire rope tries to go back to naturally when you release your hand from the wedge socket) and install the wire rope.
6. Start the engine and operate the boom derricking lever to the "RAISE" (pull toward you) side to increase the boom angle to maximum.
7. Operate the boom telescoping lever to the "EXTEND" (push forward) side to extend the boom to maximum.
8. Operate the winch lever to repeat raising/lowering the hook block several times.
9. Tidily spool up the wire rope into the winch drum with some tension applied to the rope.
10. Repeat the above procedure until the hook is not twisted.

If the wire rope is still twisted after performing the procedure above, change with a new wire rope.



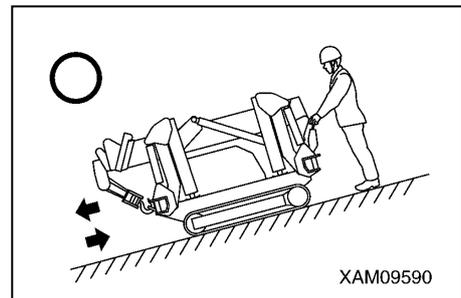
## 5. TRANSPORTATION

Observe the related laws and regulations and transport the machine safely.

### 5.1 LOADING/UNLOADING

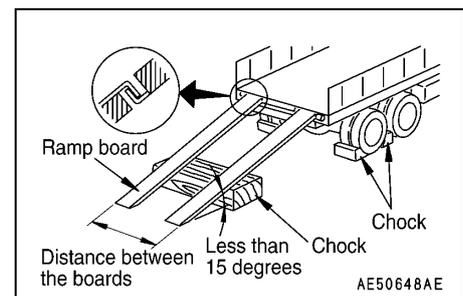
#### WARNING

- See "Specifications 1.1 Specification List" in the Dimension for the dimensions and mass of the machine.
- Select and use the ramp boards that satisfy the following conditions.
  - Has a length that when placed, the angle from the track is 15 degrees or less.
  - Has a width no narrower than the rubber tracks.
  - Has a thickness and strength that can fully withstand the mass of the machine.
- Be sure to place the ramp boards perpendicular to the truck box.  
Also, match the centre of the each of the rubber tracks with the centre of corresponding ramp board. Misguided ramp boards and unmatched rubber crawlers may cause the machine to slip out of the ramp boards and cause serious accidents.
- Use ramp boards with slope of 15 degrees or less. The space between boards shall be set to be appropriate to the centre of the rubber tracks.
- Always put the machine in the "travelling posture" when loading/unloading the machine. See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Posture" for travelling posture.
- Always load the machine by moving backward. Moving forward involves overturning hazard. The operator must be on the back side of the truck.
- Always unload the machine by moving forward. Moving backward involves overturning hazard. The operator must be on the back side of the truck.
- Loading/Unloading the machine involves danger. Be extremely careful.
- Select flat and solid ground for loading/unloading the machine. Keep sufficient distance from the shoulders.
- Remove dirt around the crawlers to prevent side slip of the machine on the ramp boards. Remove any materials on the loading ramps such as ice, grease, and oil.
- Never change direction on the ramp boards. Go down from the ramp board, and then change the direction.



Always put the machine in the "travelling posture" when loading/unloading the machine. Always use ramp boards or forwarding blocks when loading/unloading the machine and use the following procedure.

1. Brake the trailer securely. Place wheel blocks next to the wheels of the trailer to secure the trailer.
2. Ramp boards must be suitably aligned so that the machine rests in the centre of the trailer.



#### NOTES

Verify that the two ramp boards are at the same height.

3. Operate the acceleration pedal and keep the engine at low speed.
4. TRAVEL slowly toward the ramp boards, and load/unload the machine in a way that the boom does not hit the trailer. Move backward to load the machine, and forward to unload the machine.
5. Do not operate any other lever than travelling levers on the ramp boards.
6. Load the machine properly to the desired position on the trailer.

## 5.2 HOISTING MACHINE

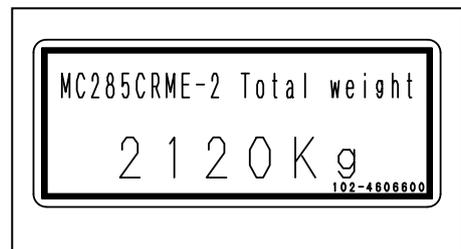
### **⚠ DANGER**

- When lifting up the Machine, always set it to the stowage position first, and lift from the lifting bracket (A) on the top of the boom. Only use this bracket and only one sling wire. Any other manner than this, i.e. from other lifting brackets or multiple sling wires, may cause droppage of the machine and result in a serious injury or death. Where there is no choice but to hoist in a different manner, please contact us or service agencies.
- The hoisting attachments such as wire ropes and shackles used in hoisting should be sufficiently strong enough for the weight of this machine.
- Crane stowed position when it is hoisted means its "Travelling position" where 4 of outrigger position pins are securely inserted in the outrigger rotary. The centre of the balance of the machine is specified subject to the machine being in its travelling position. In addition, to set it into that position correctly, secure the hook block (4) to its stowing position, also tension the wire rope tight, this will prevent the boom derricking cylinder from extending. Refer to "Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Position" for details of travelling position.
- Hoisting the machine for a long time will cause the boom derricking cylinder to extend, shifting the centre of gravity and the machine to lose balance. Hoisting should be limited to a max of 10 minutes.
- Where it is required to hoist the machine for a longer time (exceeding 10 minutes), or when it is carried by a helicopter, use a proper carriage deck as shown in the diagram on the right, for safe transportation.



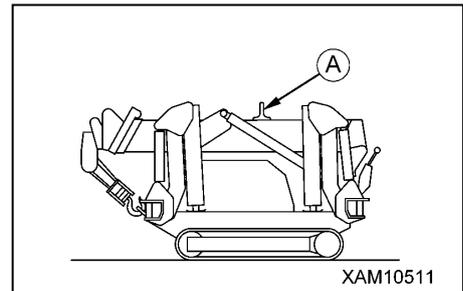
### **CAUTION**

- When the local laws and regulations are applicable, the person who uses the crane to perform hoisting operation must be qualified to do so. If not, the operator must be well trained and skilled.
- See the Dimension or the nameplate attached to the machine for the weight of the machine.
- The dimensions are for standard specifications. The hoisting method varies depending on the attachments and options mounted. In that case, contact us or our sales service agency.



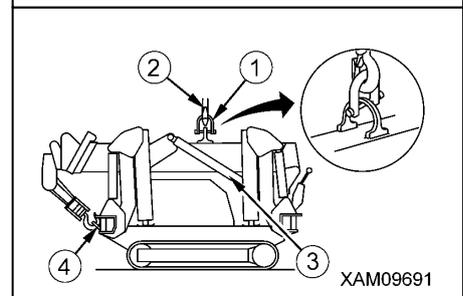
Hoist the machine on solid and flat ground using the following procedure.

1. See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Position" and put the machine in the "Travelling position".
2. Verify that the position pins (four) are securely inserted in the outrigger rotary joint of the 4 outriggers.
3. Hang the hook (2) directly to the bracket (A) on the top of the boom, or use a shackle (1) to hang the hook (2).



<b>NOTES</b>
Position (A) on the top of the boom is in the centre of gravity of the machine.

4. As soon as the machine leaves the ground, stop and wait until the machine is stabilized. Then slowly hoist the machine.
5. Check the changes in the position due to the leakage from the hydraulic circuit on the head side of the derricking cylinder (4) when the machine is hoisted.



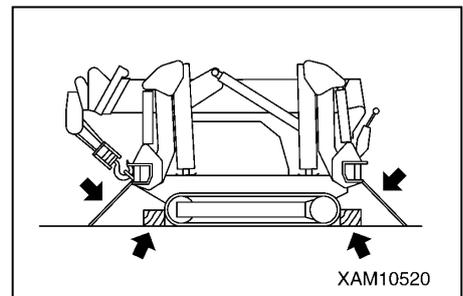
### 5.3 CAUTIONS IN LOADING MACHINE

**⚠ WARNING**

**Select flat and solid ground for loading/unloading the machine. Keep sufficient distance from the shoulders.**

Load the machine to the specified position on the trailer and secure the machine with the following procedure.

1. Stop the engine and remove the key of the starter switch.
2. Place a square piece of timber in the front and back of the rubber tracks to prevent the machine from moving during transportation. Secure the machine with chain or wire rope, and do not let it move from side to side.



### 5.4 CAUTIONS DURING TRANSPORTATION

**⚠ WARNING**

**Take road width, height, and weight into consideration in determining the transportation route.**

If there are applicable local laws and regulations, observe these laws and regulations for safe transportation.

If not, contact us or our sales service agency.

## 6. HANDLING IN COLD WEATHER

### 6.1 PREPARING FOR LOW TEMPERATURE

In cold conditions, the machine starts to have some difficulty in starting. Take the following actions.

#### [1] LUBRICATION

Change the oil to the one with low viscosity. See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for the specified viscosity.

#### [2] COOLING WATER

##### WARNING

Antifreezing fluid is inflammable. Do not put the fluid close to fire and do not smoke while handling the fluid.

##### CAUTION

Never use antifreezing fluid with methanol, ethanol, and propanol.

See “Maintenance 8.11 Maintenance Every 1000 Hours [2] Cleaning Engine Cooling System” for the cooling water replacement period and mixing rate of antifreezing fluid.

#### [3] BATTERY

##### WARNING

- The battery produces combustible gas and can be explosive. Do not put fire close to the battery.
- The battery fluid is a harmful substance. Keep it away from your eyes and skin. Should it come into contact with your eye or skin, wash the affected area with plenty of water and consult a physician immediately.

The battery capacity drops when the temperature decreases.

In this condition, the battery fluid can freeze with low battery charging rate. Keep the charging rate as close to as 100 %. Keep the battery warm in order to start the engine next morning.

##### NOTES

Measure the specific gravity of the battery fluid and convert it into the charging rate using the chart below.

		Fluid Temperature (°C)			
		20	0	-10	-20
Charging Rate (%)	100	1.28	1.29	1.30	1.31
	90	1.26	1.27	1.28	1.29
	80	1.24	1.25	1.26	1.27
	75	1.23	1.24	1.25	1.26

#### **[4] CAUTIONS AFTER COMPLETING THE OPERATION**

Observe the followings to prevent the machine from not being able to function the next morning because of deposits such as dirt and water and materials around the feet frozen.

- Remove dirt and water on the machine.

Keep the hydraulic cylinder rod surface especially clean to prevent seal from being damaged with the dirt coming into the seal together with the water drops.

- Park the machine on solid and dry ground.

If there is no such location to park, place a board on the ground to park the machine on the board.

This prevents the ground and around the feet of the machine from freezing and allows the machine to start moving next morning.

- Remove the drain plug to drain the water in the fuel system to prevent the water from freezing.
- The battery ability remarkably drops at low temperature.

Cover the battery or remove the battery from the machine and keep it in a warm place to be installed next morning.

- If the electrolyte level is low, refill with distilled water next morning before starting the operation.

Do not refill after the operation in order to prevent the water from freezing during the night.

- Remove any snow and ice on the machine. Particularly, remove snow and ice on the boom completely, because they may fall during operation.
- Check that the load is not frozen to the ground. It is dangerous to lift a load being stuck to the ground during night.

#### **[5] AFTER THE COLD WEATHER IS GONE**

When the season changed and it started to get warm, take the following action.

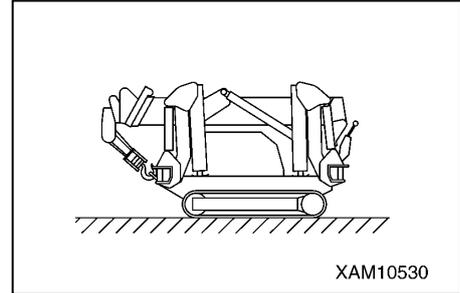
- See "Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature" to change the oil in the system to the one with specified viscosity.

## 7. LONG-TERM STORAGE

### 7.1 BEFORE STORING MACHINE

#### CAUTION

Keep the machine in the posture shown in the figure on the right during long-term storage to protect the cylinder rod. See "Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Posture" for travelling posture. (To prevent rust on the cylinder rod)



Store the machine as described below for long-term storage:

- Wash and clean each section of the machine and store indoor.  
If you have to leave it outdoors, select a flat location where the machine is not likely to be exposed to flood or other disasters and cover the machine.
- Refuel, grease, and change the oil without fail.
- Disconnect the negative terminal of the battery and cover, or dismount the battery from the machine for storage.
- If the temperature will drop to 0 °C or below, add antifreezing fluid. Ask us or our sales service agency for the mixing quantity of the antifreezing fluid.

### 7.2 DURING STORAGE

#### ⚠ WARNING

If you have to perform antirust operation indoors, open the window and entrance for better ventilation to prevent gas poisoning.

Be sure to operate the machine once a month during the storage to maintain the oil film at lubricating section. Charge the battery at the same time.

### 7.3 AFTER STORAGE

#### ⚠ WARNING

If you did not perform antirust operation monthly during the long-term storage, contact us or our sales service agency before using the machine.

Perform the followings before using the machine after the long-term storage.

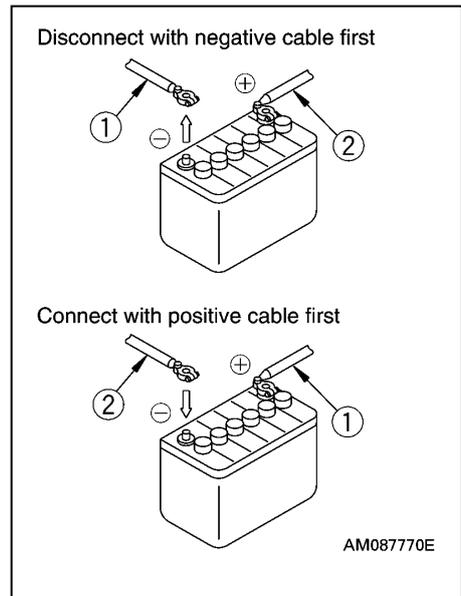
- Refuel, grease, and change the oil without fail.
- Remove the cover over the battery (install the battery to the machine if dismantled for storage).  
Check the electrolyte level and specific gravity, and then connect the battery cable from the positive side.
- Remove the drain plug of the fuel tank, hydraulic oil tank, and engine oil pan to drain the water mixed in.
- Carefully perform the check before starting operation and warm-up operation.  
Carefully check the various parts of the machine.

## 8. HANDLING BATTERY

Observe the following when handling the battery.

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Stop the engine and turn the main starter switch to the “OFF” position when checking/handling the battery.
- Wipe off the dust accumulated on the top of the battery with a moistened cloth.
- The battery produces hydrogen gas, which may cause an explosion hazard. Do not put fire such as cigarettes close to the battery or take any actions that can cause sparks.
- The battery fluid is diluted sulfuric acid, which corrodes clothes and skin. Should the battery fluid come into contact with your clothes or skin, wash the affected area immediately with plenty of water. Should it go into your eye, wash your eye immediately with clean water and consult a physician.
- Wear goggles and rubber gloves when handling the battery.
- Disconnect the ground side (normally (-) terminal) first to remove the battery, and conversely, connect the (+) terminal first to install the battery. Objects such as tools coming between (+) terminal and the machine body will cause sparks.
- Slackened battery terminals can cause sparks with poor contact, causing an explosion hazard. Tighten securely when installing the terminals.
- Secure the battery when changing the battery to prevent the battery from being displaced. If it is not secured, the terminals will slacken, causing sparks.
- Verify the (+) terminal and (-) terminal when removing and installing the battery.



### 8.1 CAUTIONS IN HANDLING BATTERY

- Always try to keep the battery charged.  
The battery should not be charged in a rush after being discharged. Measure the specific gravity of the battery fluid in advance and charge the battery as needed.  
Keeping the battery in the best condition lengthens the life of the battery.
- Check the electrolyte level earlier than regular check and maintenance schedule during the hot season.
- The battery ability drops during the cold season. Keep the charging rate as close to as 100 % and try to keep it warm for starting the operation next morning.

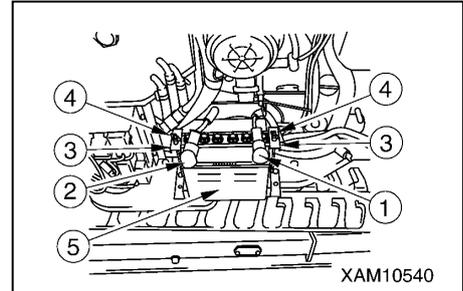
## 8.2 REMOVING/INSTALLING BATTERY

### CAUTION

Verify that the battery does not move after securing the battery. If it moves, secure it again.

#### [1] REMOVAL

1. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and remove the machinery cover.
2. Disconnect the (-) terminal (5) on the ground side first and then the (+) terminal (6) to disconnect the battery cable.
3. Remove the wing nut (4), battery fixing brackets (3), and then remove the battery (5).



#### [2] INSTALLATION

- Reverse the removal procedure to install the battery.

#### NOTES

Connect the (-) terminal (1) on the ground side last when connecting the battery.

## 8.3 CAUTIONS IN CHARGING BATTERY

When charging the battery mounted to the machine

- Abnormal voltage may be applied to the alternator, resulting in a breakage. Disconnect the battery terminal wires before charging the battery.
- Remove all the fluid plugs to release the gas generated.
- Stop charging when the battery becomes overheated (fluid temperature exceeded 45 °C).
- Stop charging promptly once the charging is completed.

Charging even after the charging is completed will;

- (1) overheat the battery
  - (2) reduce the electrolyte level
  - (3) cause failures in battery
- Never inverse the connection of [(+) terminal and (-) terminal]. Doing so can cause damage on alternator.
  - Remove the battery cable when handling the battery other than for battery electrolyte level check and specific gravity measurement.

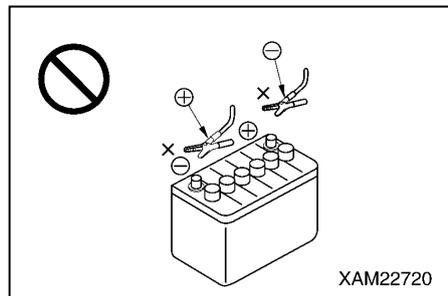
## 8.4 STARTING ENGINE WITH BOOSTER CABLE

Start the engine with booster cable as described below.

### [1] CAUTIONS IN CONNECTING/DISCONNECTING BOOSTER CABLE

#### ⚠ WARNING

- Never let the (+) terminal and (-) terminal come into contact with the other when connecting the cable.
- Wear goggles and rubber gloves when starting the engine with the booster cable.
- Do not let the normal machine and machine in failure come into contact with each other.  
Because the battery produces hydrogen gas, sparks around the battery can cause an explosion.
- Do not make mistakes in connecting the booster cable. Note that there will be some sparks when making the last connection. Make this connection at the location as far as possible from the battery.
- Do not let the booster cable clips contact the other or machine when disconnecting the booster cable.



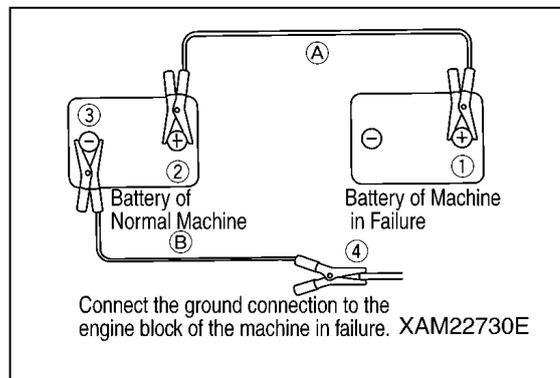
#### CAUTION

- Use booster cable and clips of appropriate size for the battery size.
- The battery in the normal machine and machine in failure should be of the same capacity.
- Check that the cable and clips have no breakage and corrosion.
- Connect the clips securely.
- Verify that the operation levers are at the “NEUTRAL” position.

### [2] CONNECTING BOOSTER CABLE

Connect the booster cable in the numerical order shown in the figure on the right.

1. Turn the starter switch of both of the normal machine and machine in failure to the “OFF” position.
2. Connect a clip of the booster cable (A) to the (+) terminal of the machine in failure.
3. Connect the other clip of the booster cable (A) to the (+) terminal of the normal machine.
4. Connect a clip of the booster cable (B) to the (-) terminal of the normal machine.
5. Connect the other clip of the booster cable (B) to the engine block of the machine in failure.



### [3] STARTING ENGINE

#### ⚠ CAUTION

Verify that the operation levers are at the "NEUTRAL" position. If the safety lock lever is equipped, also verify that the safety lock lever is at the lock position.

1. Verify that the clips are securely connected to the battery terminals.
2. Start the engine of the normal machine and increase the engine speed to full speed (highest speed).
3. Turn the starter switch of the machine in failure to the "START" position to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait for more than 2 minutes before re-starting.

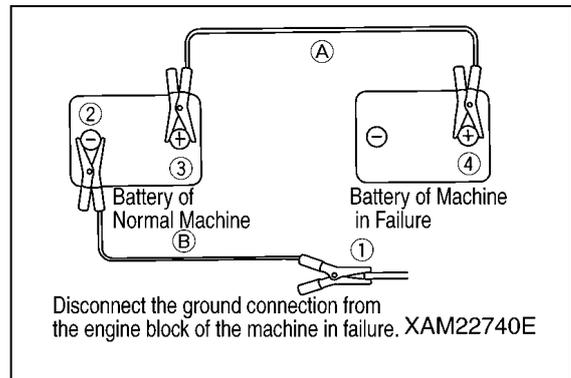
#### NOTES

See "Operation 2.2 Starting Engine" for how to start the engine.

### [4] DISCONNECTING BOOSTER CABLE

When the engine started, disconnect the booster cable in the reverse order of connecting the booster cable.

1. Disconnect the clip of the booster cable (B) connected to the engine block of the machine in failure.
2. Disconnect the clip of the booster cable (B) connected to the (-) terminal of the normal machine.
3. Disconnect the clip of the booster cable (A) connected to the (+) terminal of the normal machine.
4. Disconnect the clip of the booster cable (A) connected to the (+) terminal of the machine in failure.



## 9. TROUBLESHOOTING

### 9.1 ELECTRICAL COMPONENTS

- Make sure that you contact us or our sales service agency for the actions indicated in parentheses in the Actions field.
- Ask our sales service agency to repair if you suspect other abnormality or causes than those given below.

Abnormal Phenomenon	Major Cause(s)	Actions
Dark light even at highest engine speed	• Defective wiring	(• Check and repair slackened terminals and open circuits)
Light blinks during engine operation	• Defective alternator • Defective wiring	(• Replace) (• Check and repair)
Battery charge monitor remains illuminated even after the engine starts	• Defective alternator • Defective wiring	(• Replace) (• Check and repair)
Abnormal noise from alternator	• Defective alternator	(• Replace)
Starter not rotating even after the starter switch is turned	• Defective wiring • Insufficient battery charge	(• Check and repair) • Charge the battery
Starter pinion going out and in repeatedly (struggling)	• Insufficient battery charge	• Charge the battery
Starter key turning slow	• Insufficient battery charge • Defective starter	• Charge the battery (• Replace)
Starter disengaged before the engine starts	• Defective wiring • Insufficient battery charge	(• Check and repair) • Charge the battery

### 9.2 MACHINE BODY

- Make sure that you contact us or our sales service agency for the actions indicated in parentheses in the Actions field.
- Ask our sales service agency to repair if you suspect other abnormality or causes than those given below.

Abnormal Phenomenon	Major Cause(s)	Actions
Crane cannot operate but can travel	• Defective travelling lever stand position detector	(• Check and repair)
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Travelling speed, boom and hook block operation speed too slow</li> <li>• Abnormal noise from pump</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient hydraulic oil</li> <li>• Hydraulic oil tank strainer and element clogged</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill with hydraulic oil to the specified oil level, referring to the section "Check before operation"</li> <li>• Clean and replace the filter by referring to the "Periodical Checks".</li> </ul>
Hydraulic oil temperature too high	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient hydraulic oil</li> <li>• Clogged cooling fins</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Refill with hydraulic oil to the specified oil level, referring to the section "Check before operation"</li> <li>• Clean</li> </ul>
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rubber tracks coming off</li> <li>• Abnormal wear on the sprockets</li> </ul>	• Rubber tracks too loose	• See "Check before operation" and adjust the tension

## 9.3 ENGINE

- Make sure that you contact us or our sales service agency for the actions indicated in parentheses in the Actions field.
- Ask our sales service agency to repair if you suspect other abnormality or causes than those given below.

Abnormal Phenomenon	Major Cause(s)	Actions
Engine does not start even after the starter key is turned	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient fuel</li> <li>• Insufficient battery charge</li> <li>• Insufficient compression</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See “Check before operation” and refuel</li> <li>• Charge the battery (• Check and replace)</li> </ul>
Engine starts but stops right away	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient oil in oil pan</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See “Check before operation” and adjust oil level to appropriate one</li> <li>• See causes and actions for “Engine does not start”</li> </ul>
Engine power is low, the power gradually drops	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Air cleaner element clogged</li> <li>• Radiator fin clogged</li> <li>• Insufficient compression</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See “Periodical Maintenance” for cleaning or replacement of the parts</li> <li>• Clean (• Check and replace)</li> </ul>
Engine water temperature monitor illuminates while the engine is in operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient cooling water</li> <li>• Water leakage from the cooling line</li> <li>• Slackened or broken fan belt</li> <li>• Radiator fin clogged</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See “Check before operation” and refill with cooling water (• Check and repair)</li> <li>• See “Periodical Maintenance” to check, adjust, or change the belt</li> <li>• Check and clean</li> </ul>
Engine oil pressure monitor illuminates while the engine is in operation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Insufficient engine oil</li> <li>• Engine oil filter clogged</li> <li>• Engine unit in failure</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• See “Check before operation” and adjust oil level to appropriate one</li> <li>• See “Periodical Maintenance” to check, adjust, or change the filter (• Check and repair)</li> </ul>



# INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

1. PRECAUTIONS FOR MAINTENANCE	4- 2
2. BASIC MAINTENANCE	4- 4
3. LEGAL INSPECTION	4- 6
4. CONSUMABLES	4- 6
5. LUBRICATING OIL	4- 7
6. ACCESSORY TOOLS AND STANDARD TIGHTENING TORQUE	4- 8
7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST	4-10
8. MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES	4-12

# 1. PRECAUTIONS FOR MAINTENANCE

Thorough understanding of the inspection and maintenance items is required to perform efficient inspection and maintenance that contributes to safe use of this machine.

## WARNING

- Do not perform any inspection or maintenance that is not described in this manual. Potential serious accident or machine failure may occur if it is performed at the discretion of the individual.  
In the event that a judgment on the severity of a failure or malfunction is unable to be made, contact us or our sales service agency to request repair.
- In the event that a failure or malfunction is encountered while the machine is in operation or found during an inspection, report it to your employer or supervisor immediately. Contact us or our sales service agency to request repair accordingly.
- Inspection and maintenance should be performed with the machine placed on a level and strong footing.

### [1] CHECK THE SERVICE METERS

Read the service meters daily to check for any maintenance item that reached the obligatory maintenance period.

### [2] USE GENUINE PARTS FOR REPLACEMENT

Always use Maeda genuine parts as specified in the parts catalogue for part replacement.

### [3] USE PURE GREASE

Always use Maeda pure grease. The viscosity of grease must conform to specifications according to ambient temperature.

### [4] USE CLEAN OIL AND GREASE

Always use clean oil or grease, and keep in a secure container to reduce contact with impurities.

### [5] KEEP THE MACHINE CLEAN

Keep the machine clean to facilitate the detection of a malfunction. Especially keep the grease nipple, breather, and oil level gauge (oil access door) clean to prevent impurities from entering the machine.

### [6] HANDLE WATER AND OIL AT ADEQUATE TEMPERATURE

Drainage, drain oil, and exhaust filter will be at elevated temperatures immediately after the machine is stopped. Only replace drainage, drain oil, and filter only after they drop in temperature for safety.

If the oil is cold, raise the temperature of the oil to approx. 20°C to 40°C.

### [7] CHECK DRAIN OIL AND OIL FILTER

For replacement of oil and filter, check the drain oil and exhaust filter to make sure no a considerable amount of metal powder or foreign objects is present.

### [8] CAUTIONS FOR LUBRICATION

Do not remove the strainer to lubricate if it is attached to the lubrication opening.

### [9] PROTECT OIL FROM IMPURITIES

Avoid dust when inspecting and replacing the oil to keep impurities out of the oil.

### [10] ATTACH A WARNING TAG

When draining coolant and oil, always attach a warning tag to the travelling operation unit to prevent of accidental engine ignition.

### [11] FOLLOW SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

Safety precautions provided on the machine should always be followed when using the machine.

## **[12] CAUTIONS FOR WELD REPAIR**

- Make sure the machine is turned off. (Turn OFF the start switch)
- Do not continuously apply 200V or greater.
- Ground the machine within 1 meter from the welding point.
- Be sure to disconnect the connectors of the remote controller, moment limiting indicator, and moment limiting converter.
- Remove the negative terminal (-) of the battery.
- Make sure no sealing or bearing is present between the welding point and the grounding point. Potential damage to sealing may occur due to sparks if disregarded.
- Do not ground around the boom pin or the hydraulic cylinder. Potential damage to a plated section may occur due to sparks if disregarded.

## **[13] KEEP FROM FLAME**

Always clean the parts with non-combustible cleaning agent or light oil.

Keep the machine away from flame when using light oil.

## **[14] KEEP THE ATTACHMENT SURFACE CLEAN**

Be sure to clean the attachment surface after removing a part to which the O-ring and gasket sealing are attached.

Replace the part with a new one with the O-ring and gasket reattached.

## **[15] Empty YOUR POCKETS**

Always empty your pockets before performing inspection and maintenance of the machine in a downward direction with the cover opened.

## **[16] ASSURE SAFE RUBBER TRACK**

When performing crane operation in a rocky location, make sure of no damage to the rubber track and no looseness, cracks or abrasion of bolts and nuts. Loosen the tension of the crawler tread more than usual.

## **[17] CAUTIONS FOR MACHINE WASH**

- Do not direct a jet of steam to the electrical parts and connector.
- Keep the operation panel dry.
- Wash the machine with a clean cloth, rinsing off dirt and dust.

## **[18] PRE- AND POST-WORK INSPECTION**

Before performing crane operation in muddy water, rain, snow or on the coast, always check for loose fitting plugs and valves. Post-operation inspection requires checks to all units for cracks and superficial damage; looseness of bolts and nuts, after the machine has been washed.

Carry out early greasing. Grease the operating pin that enters the muddy water on a daily basis.

## **[19] CAUTIONS FOR WORKING ON A DUSTY SITE**

The following precautions should be observed when working on a dusty site.

- Occasionally check the air cleaner for clogging.
- Clean and replace the fuel filter in a timely manner.
- Be sure to clean the electrical parts, especially the starter and alternator, to protect them from dust.

## **[20] DO NOT MIX OIL**

Never mix different types of oil under any circumstance.

Replace the oil entirely when replenishing a different type of oil.

Always use Maeda genuine parts for part replacement.

## **2. BASIC MAINTENANCE**

### **[1] OIL HANDLING**

- Oil is used under extremely harsh conditions (high temperature, high pressure) in the engine and working device, which causes the oil to undergo deterioration with operating time.

Always use oil that meets requirements such as grade and operating temperature defined in the operation manual. Be sure to perform periodic replacement of oil irrespective of contamination in the oil.

- Oil is equivalent to human blood. Exercise due caution to handle oil, keeping impurities (such as water, metal powder or dust) out of oil. Most of mechanical failures are attributed to intrusion of impurities.

Extra caution is required to prevent impurities entering during machine storage and lubrication.

- Do not mix oil with other oil of different grade or brand.

- Oil lubrication must conform to the designated quantity of oil.

Failure to lubricate at adequate quantity can lead to a machine failure.

- In the event that oil used in the working device turns cloudy, potential intrusion of moisture or air into the oil may be considered. Contact us or our sales service agency.

- When replacing oil, always replace the relevant filter as well.

- "ISO VG32" is adopted for a hydraulic oil system as factory default.

Do not use any other hydraulic oil that is not recommended by us. Failure to follow the instruction may cause the filters to get clogged. A small amount of oil remaining in piping and cylinders does not cause problems even when mixed with other oil.

### **[2] FUEL HANDLING**

- The fuel pump is precision equipment that becomes inoperative if fuel containing moisture or impurities is used. Extra caution is required to prevent impurities from finding their way into the machine during storage and lubrication.

- Do not remove the strainer when replenishing fuel.

- Always use fuel that meets requirements such as grade and operating temperature defined in the operation manual.

- Ensure that the fuel tank is filled up after finishing daily work to prevent condensation of the humid air inside the fuel tank that will result in intrusion of moisture.

- Drain deposits and water out of the fuel tank before starting the engine or approximately 10 minutes after fuel replenishment.

- The air should be released from the circuit when the machine runs out of fuel or when the fuel filter is replaced.

- Clean the tank and fuel system if any foreign substances enter the fuel tank.

### **[3] STOCKING AND STORAGE OF OIL AND FUEL**

- Store oil and fuel indoors to keep impurities such as moisture or dust out of them.

- When storing oil and fuel in drums for a long time, line the drums horizontally aligning the drum bungs sideways (to store them away from moisture). Be sure to cover the drums with a waterproof sheet if storing them outside.

- To prevent deterioration of oil and fuel resulted from long-term storage; employ the first-in first-out for using oil and fuel.

### **[4] GREASE HANDLING**

- Grease is designed to prevent the joints from rattling and making noise.

- A nipple that is not described in the Periodic Maintenance chapter is used for overhauls, which requires no grease replenishment. Grease the nipple if a long-term use hinders its smoothness.

- Wipe off old grease squeezed out after greasing. Extra care is required to wipe a part that the adhesion of sands and dust accelerates the wearing away of the rotating part.

## **[5] FILTER HANDLING**

- A filter is an extremely important part that keeps major equipment free from impurities in oil, fuel, and the air circuit, which prevents an associated failure. Periodic replacement of the filter is required in accordance with the Operation Manual. The replacement period should be shortened in responses to harsh operating environments or the amount of oil used.
- Do not reuse any washed filters (cartridge type one) under any circumstances.
- After replacing an oil filter, check the used filter for any metal powder.  
If metal powder is found on the used filter, contact us or our sales service agency.
- Always unpack the replacement filter prior to its use.
- Always use Maeda genuine filters.

## **[6] COOLANT HANDLING**

- The river water contains a large amount of calcium and impurities. Use of the river water results in accumulation of water stain in the engine and radiator, which causes heat exchange error leading to overheat. Do not use non-potable water.
- Always use antifreeze following precautions stated in the Operation Manual.
- Keep antifreeze from flame. Antifreeze is a flammable solution.
- The mixing proportion of antifreeze varies with outside air temperature. See “Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours [2] Cleaning engine cooling system” for the mixing proportions.
- In the event of overheating, replenish coolant with the engine cold.
- The machine low in coolant may cause overheating and corrosion attributed to aeration.

## **[7] ELECTRICAL PART HANDLING**

- The electrical parts are susceptible to water damage and damaged coating. A current leakage is developed if the electrical parts are wetted or have damaged coating, which causes the machine to go out of order and malfunction. Exercise due caution when handling the electrical parts.
- Inspection and maintenance include the checking of belt tension, belt damage, and battery electrolyte level.
- Never remove and disassemble equipment (electrical parts) from the machine.
- Only optional electrical parts that accompany the machine can be installed.
- Keep the electrical parts away from water when the machine is washed and used in the rain.
- When using the machine on coastal areas, keep the electrical parts free of water and impurities to prevent corrosion.

## **[8] HYDRAULIC EQUIPMENT HANDLING**

- Hydraulic equipment will be at elevated temperatures during and immediately after operation. Hydraulic equipment operates under high pressure. The following precautions should be observed when performing inspection and maintenance of hydraulic equipment.
  - Place the machine in travel position on a level surface to inhibit the application of pressure to the cylinder circuit.
  - Be sure to stop the engine.
  - Hydraulic oil and lubricating oil will be at elevated temperatures and high pressure immediately after equipment comes to a stop. Perform inspection and maintenance only after the oil drop in temperature for safety. An internal pressure may be exerted despite temperature drop. When removing the plugs, screws and hose joints, stand aside and provide gradual loosening to decompress.
  - Be sure to release the pressure by removing the air from the hydraulic oil tank before performing inspection and maintenance of the hydraulic circuit.
- Inspection and maintenance include hydraulic oil level check and replacement of the filters and hydraulic oil.
- Check the O-ring for scratches when removing the high-pressure hose. If scratches are found, replace the O-ring.
- Bleeding the air from the hydraulic circuit is required after the following tasks are performed: replacement and cleaning of the hydraulic oil filter element and strainer, repair and replacement of hydraulic equipment, and hydraulic piping replacement.

### 3. LEGAL INSPECTION

If periodic inspection for machine safety assurance is stipulated by laws and regulations of your country, perform inspection complying with the inspection items listed below.

1. Make sure no abnormal event is present in the safety devices.
2. Check the hoisting accessories including hook block for any abnormalities.
3. Check the winch wire rope end and wire clip for breakages.
4. Replace the wire rope promptly if it is damaged.
5. Check the hydraulic hose for oil leaks and friction flaws on the surface. Replace the hose if a surface flaw is detected.
6. Check the structural parts including the boom for cracks and deformations.
7. Check for loose or missing mounting bolts and joints.
8. Check if the booms perform proper operation and stop in extending, retracting, raising, lowering, and slewing.

If a malfunction is found, contact us or our sales service agency.

### 4. CONSUMABLES

Consumables such as a filter element and wire rope are to be replaced upon periodic maintenance or prior to the wear limit. Proper replacement of consumables delivers increased economy in machine use.

Always use Maeda genuine parts for part replacement.

See the parts catalogue for part numbers when ordering parts.

#### [LIST OF CONSUMABLES]

Part	Replacement cycle
Hydraulic oil return filter	Every 500 hrs
Cylinder gasket	★3 yrs
Boom slide plate	Every 3 yrs
Winch wire rope	★Every 3 yrs
Boom extending wire rope	★Every 3 yrs
Boom retracting wire rope	★Every 3 yrs

★The cycles marked with a “★” in Replacement cycle include a halt period.

★Contact us or our sales service agency for part replacement.

## 5. LUBRICATING OIL

### 5.1 USE OF LUBRICATING OIL ACCORDING TO TEMPERATURES

Use of lubricating oil should vary with changes in temperature.

Lubricating place	Type of oil	Use by temperature									Specified capacity (liter)	Volume to replace (liter)
		-22 -30	-4 -20	14 -10	32 0	50 10	68 20	86 30	104 40	122°F 50 °C		
Engine oil pan	Engine oil										Hi: 2.3 Lo: 1.0	Hi: 2.3 Lo: 1.0
Hydraulic oil tank	Hydraulic oil										20	20
Swing reducer	Gear oil										0.6	0.6
Winch reducer											0.5	0.5
Travel motor reducer											0.33	0.33
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel										12	—
Cooling system	Water	Nonfreezing fluid addition									2.1	2.1

- A specified oil quantity is defined as a total quantity of oil including that for unit piping, and a replacement oil quantity is defined as a quantity of oil to be replaced at inspection and maintenance.
- Always use SAE10W-CD, SAE10W-30CD, or SAE10W-40CD to start the engine with temperature at 0°C or below despite rise in diurnal temperature to approx. 10°C.
- Be sure to use our recommended abrasion-resistant hydraulic oil for the hydraulic oil system; ISO VG46 and VG32.
- For adjustment of antifreeze concentrations in coolant with temperature at -10°C or below, see "Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours [2] Cleaning Engine cooling system.

#### CAUTION

- Molybdenum disulfide filled grease is to be applied to the boom slide plate (top), both sides and bottom of the boom.
- Do not apply molybdenum disulfide filled grease to the slewing bearing.

## 6. ACCESSORY TOOLS AND

### STANDARD TIGHTENING TORQUE

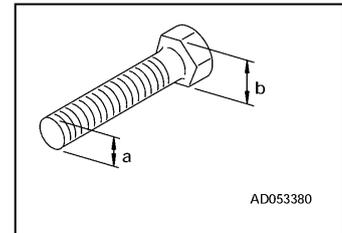
#### 6.1 ACCESSORY TOOLS

Contact us or our sales service agency to request a tool for inspection and maintenance, when necessary.

#### 6.2 STANDARD TIGHTENING TORQUE LIST

Torque the metric bolts and nuts with no specific indication to the values shown in this table.

Adequate tightening torque is determined with respect to a width across flat (b) of a bolt or nut.



[Table 1]

Nominal size (a; mm)	Width across flat (b; mm)	[1] Bolt marked with “8.8” (strength classification) on its head		[2] Bolt marked with “10.9” (strength classification) on its head	
		Tightening torque {N•m (kgf•m)}		Tightening torque {N•m (kgf•m)}	
		Target value	Tolerance	Target value	Tolerance
6	10	7.8 (0.80)	6.8-9.0 (0.70-0.92)	11.0 (1.1)	9.4-12.7 (0.93-1.26)
8	13	19.0 (1.95)	16.5-21.9 (1.70-2.24)	27.0 (2.7)	23.0-31.1 (2.3-3.10)
10	17	37.5 (3.85)	32.6-43.1 (3.35-4.43)	53.0 (5.4)	45.0-61.0 (4.6-6.21)
12	19	65.5 (6.70)	57.0-75.3 (5.85-7.70)	93.0 (9.5)	79.0-107 (8.10-10.9)
14	22	104 (10.6)	90.4-120 (9.2-12.2)	148 (15.1)	126-170 (12.8-17.4)
16	24	163 (16.6)	142-187 (14.4-19.1)	231 (23.5)	196-266 (20.0-27.0)
18	27	224 (22.8)	195-258 (19.8-26.2)	317 (32.3)	269-365 (27.5-37.1)
20	30	318 (32.4)	277-366 (28.2-37.3)	450 (45.9)	383-518 (39.0-52.8)
22	32	432 (44.0)	376-497 (38.3-50.6)	612 (62.4)	520-704 (53.0-71.8)
24	36	549 (56.0)	477-631 (48.7-64.4)	778 (79.3)	661-895 (67.4-91.2)
27	41	804 (81.9)	699-925 (71.2-94.2)	1130 (116)	961-1300 (98.6-133)
30	46	1090 (111)	948-1250 (96.5-128)	1540 (158)	1310-1770 (134-182)
33	50	1485 (151)	1290-1710 (131-174)	2100 (214)	1790-2410 (182-246)
36	55	1910 (194)	1660-2200 (167-223)	2700 (275)	2300-3100 (234-316)

[Table 2]

Nominal size (a; mm)	Width across flat (b; mm)	[3] Bolt marked with “12.9” (strength classification) on its head		[4] Other bolts	
		Tightening torque {N•m (kgf•m)}		Tightening torque {N•m (kgf•m)}	
		Target value	Tolerance	Target value	Tolerance
6	10	13.0 (1.30)	11.1-15.0 (1.11-1.50)	3.0 (0.30)	2.6-3.5 (0.26-0.35)
8	13	31.5 (3.20)	26.8-36.2 (2.72-3.70)	7.5 (0.75)	6.5-8.6 (0.65-0.85)
10	17	62.5 (6.40)	53.1-71.9 (5.44-7.35)	14.5 (1.45)	12.6-16.7 (1.25-1.65)
12	19	109 (11.1)	92.7-125 (9.44-12.8)	25.0 (2.55)	21.7-28.8 (2.20-2.95)
14	22	174 (17.7)	148-200 (15.0-20.4)	40.0 (4.10)	34.8-46.0 (3.55-4.70)
16	24	271 (27.7)	230-312 (23.5-31.9)	62.5 (6.40)	54.3-71.9 (5.55-7.35)
18	27	373 (38.1)	317-429 (32.4-43.8)	86.0 (8.75)	74.8-98.9 (7.60-10.0)
20	30	529 (54.0)	450-608 (45.9-62.1)	122 (12.4)	106-140 (10.8-14.3)
22	32	720 (73.4)	612-828 (62.4-84.4)	166 (16.9)	144-191 (14.7-19.4)
24	36	915 (93.3)	778-1050 (79.3-107)	211 (21.5)	183-243 (18.7-24.7)
27	41	1340 (136)	1140-1540 (116-156)	309 (31.4)	269-355 (27.3-36.1)
30	46	1820 (185)	1550-2090 (157-213)	419 (42.6)	364-482 (37.0-49.0)
33	50	2470 (252)	2100-2840 (214-290)	570 (58.0)	495-656 (50.4-66.7)
36	55	3180 (324)	2700-3660 (275-373)	732 (74.5)	636-842 (64.8-85.7)

## 7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST

Inspection and maintenance items	Page
<b>8.1 INITIAL 10 HOUR MAINTENANCE</b> (Only the first maintenance of a new machine)	4-12
[1] GREASING MACHINE UNITS	4-25
<b>8.2 INITIAL 50 HOUR MAINTENANCE</b> (Only the first maintenance of a new machine)	4-12
[1] REPLACEMENT ENGINE OIL AND REPLACE FILTER CARTRIDGE	4-30
[2] OIL REPLACEMENT IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK	4-39
[3] REPLACEMENT HYDRAULIC OIL RETURN FILTER CARTRIDGE	4-33
[4] CHECKING / ADJUSTMENT ALTERNATOR BELT TENSION	4-28
<b>8.3 INITIAL 250 HOUR MAINTENANCE</b> (Only the first maintenance of a new machine)	4-12
[1] OIL REPLACEMENT IN SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-41
[2] OIL REPLACEMENT IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-43
[3] OIL REPLACEMENT IN TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-45
<b>8.4 INSPECTION OF BEFORE OPERATION</b>	4-12
<b>2.1.1 VISIBLE CHECKS</b>	3-36
[1] INSPECTION AROUND ENGINE	3-37
[2] INSPECTION OF HYDRAULIC SYSTEM OF UNDERCARRIAGE	3-37
[3] INSPECTION OF UNDERCARRIAGE	3-37
[4] INSPECTION OF OUTRIGGER	3-37
[5] INSPECTION OF OUTRIGGER CYLINDER	3-37
[6] INSPECTION OF POST	3-37
[7] INSPECTION OF DERRICK CYLINDER	3-37
[8] INSPECTION OF BOOM	3-37
[9] INSPECTION OF TELESCOPE CYLINDER	3-37
[10] INSPECTION OF WIRE ROPE	3-37
[11] INSPECTION OF OVER-HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE	3-38
[12] INSPECTION OF WINCH MOTOR	3-38
[13] INSPECTION OF WINCH DRUM	3-38
[14] INSPECTION OF HOOK BLOCK	3-38
<b>2.1.2 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE</b>	3-39
[1] CHECKING / REFILLING ENGINE COOLING WATER	3-39
[2] CHECKING/CLEANING RADIATOR AND OIL COOLER FINS	3-40
[3] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN ENGINE OIL PAN	3-41
[4] CHECKING/REFUELING FUEL LEVEL IN FUEL TANK	3-42
[5] CHECKING/CLEANING WATER SEPARATOR	3-43
[6] CHECKING/CLEANING FUEL FILTER POT	3-44
[7] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK	3-45
[8] CHECKING/REFILLING OIL LEVEL IN SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE	3-46
[9] CHECKING/REFILLING BATTERY ELECTROLYTE LEVEL	3-47
[10] CHECKING HORN FOR OPERATION	3-48
[11] CHECKING HEADLIGHTS FOR OPERATION	3-48
[12] CHECKING FUSE BOX FOR DAMAGE	3-49
[13] CHECK CRACK, DEFORMATION OR DAMAGE OF BOOM AND FRAME	3-49
[14] CHECK DEFORMATION, DAMAGE OR WEAR OF WIRE ROPE	3-49

<b>Inspection and maintenance items</b>	<b>Page</b>
<b>2.1.3 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE</b>	3-50
[1] CHECKING / ADJUSTING RUBBER TRACK TENSION	3-50
[2] CHECKING RUBBER TRACKS FOR DAMAGE AND WEAR	3-53
[3] CHECKING OUTRIGGER OPERATION	3-54
[4] CHECKING CRANE OPERATIONS	3-55
[5] CHECKING OVER HOIST DETECTOR FOR OPERATION	3-56
[6] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION	3-56
[7] CHECKING ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH FOR OPERATION	3-57
[8] CHECKING ENGINE EXHAUST GAS COLOUR, NOISE AND VIBRATION	3-57
<b>8.5 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE</b>	4-13
[1] REPLACEMENT RUBBER TRACK	4-13
[2] REPLACEMENT WINCH WIRE ROPE	4-15
[3] CHECKING/ADJUSTMENT BOOM TELESCOPING WIRE ROPE	4-19
<b>8.6 MAINTENANCE EVERY 30 HOURS</b>	4-22
[1] CHECKING / CLEANING / REPLACE AIR CLEANER ELEMENT	4-22
<b>8.7 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS</b>	4-24
[1] DRAINING CONTAMINANT WATER/DEPOSITS IN FUEL TANK	4-24
[2] GREASING MACHINE UNITS	4-25
<b>8.8 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS</b>	4-27
[1] CHECK OIL LEVEL IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE, AND ADD OIL	4-27
<b>8.9 MAINTENANCE EVERY 250 HOURS</b>	4-28
[1] CHECKING / ADJUSTMENT ALTERNATOR BELT TENSION	4-28
[2] CHECKING / REFILLING OIL IN TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-29
<b>8.10 MAINTENANCE EVERY 500 HOURS</b>	4-30
[1] REPLACEMENT ENGINE OIL AND REPLACE FILTER CARTRIDGE	4-30
[2] REPLACEMENT FUEL FILTER CARTRIDGE	4-32
[3] REPLACEMENT HYDRAULIC OIL RETURN FILTER CARTRIDGE	4-33
<b>8.11 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS</b>	4-35
[1] REPLACEMENT AIR CLEANER ELEMENT	4-35
[2] CLEANING ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM	4-36
[3] OIL REPLACEMENT IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK	4-39
[4] OIL REPLACEMENT IN SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-41
[5] OIL REPLACEMENT IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-43
[6] OIL REPLACEMENT IN TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE	4-45
<b>8.12 MAINTENANCE EVERY 2000 HOURS</b>	4-46
[1] INSPECTION/ADJUSTMENT ENGINE VALVE CLEARANCE	4-46
[2] CHECKING ALTERNATOR AND STARTER	4-46

## **8. MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES**

### **8.1 INITIAL 10 HOUR MAINTENANCE**

The following maintenance should be performed after 10-hours of operation, limited to the first maintenance of a new machine.

#### **[1] GREASING MACHINE UNITS**

See "Maintenance 8.7 Every 50 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

### **8.2 INITIAL 50 HOUR MAINTENANCE**

The following maintenance should be performed after 50-hours of operation, limited to the first maintenance of a new machine.

#### **[1] REPLACEMENT ENGINE LUBRICATING OIL AND OIL FILTER CARTRIDGE**

See "Maintenance 8.10 Every 500 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

#### **[2] OIL REPLACEMENT IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK**

See "Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

#### **[3] REPLACEMENT HYDRAULIC OIL RETURN FILTER**

See "Maintenance 8.10 Every 500 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

#### **[4] CHECKING / ADJUSTMENT ALTERNATOR BELT TENSION**

See "Maintenance 8.9 Every 250 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

### **8.3 INITIAL 250 HOUR MAINTENANCE**

The following maintenance should be performed after 250-hours of operation, limited to the first maintenance of a new machine.

#### **[1] OIL REPLACEMENT SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE**

See "Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

#### **[2] OIL REPLACEMENT WINCH MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE**

See "Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

#### **[3] OIL REPLACEMENT TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE**

See "Maintenance 8.11 Every 1000 Hours" for maintenance items and procedure.

### **8.4 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION**

Inspections specified in this section are required to be completed prior to starting an engine first of the day.

See "Maintenance 7. Inspection and Maintenance List" for the inspection and maintenance items

See "Operation 2.1 Checking Before Operation" for before operation inspection items and procedure.

## 8.5 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE

### [1] REPLACEMENT RUBBER TRACK

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The inside of the tension adjusting device of the rubber track is greased. Grease is under high pressure associated with the tension of the rubber track. Failure to follow precautions stated below when removing grease may lead to a serious accident due to the grease valve being popping out.
- When adjusting the grease valve, only loosen by one full turn, otherwise the grease valve may pop out if disregarded.
- Always stand aside when conducting tension adjustment of the grease valve to circumvent potential dangers.
- Ensure that grease is completely removed from the inside of the rubber track before rotating the sprocket to remove the rubber track.

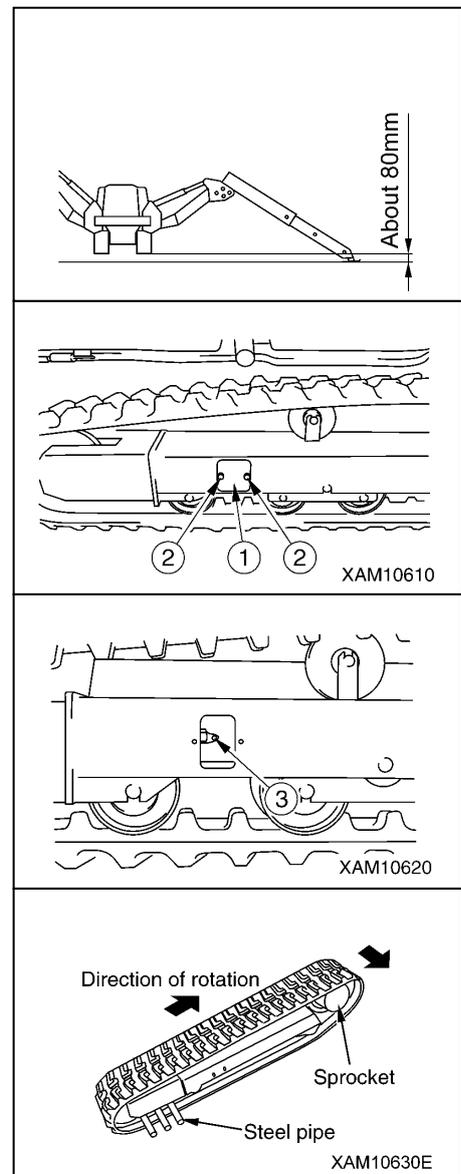
### [REMOVAL RUBBER TRACK]

- Have a steel pipe available.
1. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Set Up Operation” to set up the outriggers and raise the rubber track about 80mm from the ground.
  2. Remove the 2 mounting bolts (2) and remove the inspection cover (1).
  3. Loosen the grease valve (3) gradually and remove grease.

#### **NOTES**

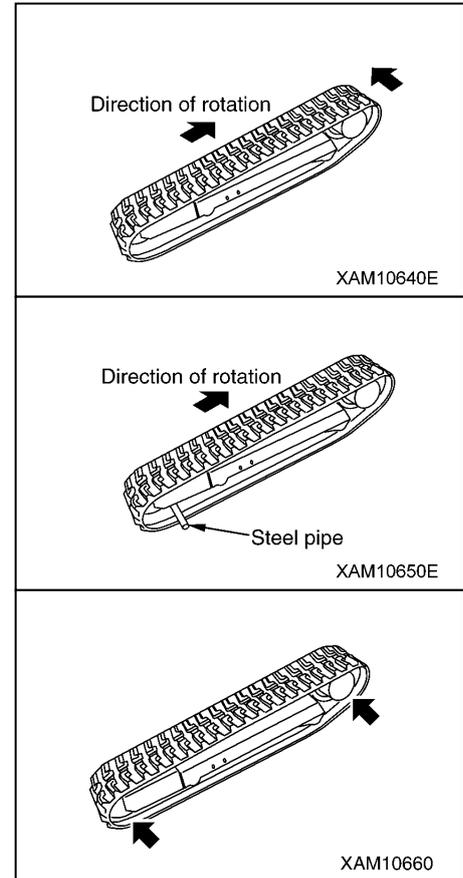
Provide only one full turn of the grease valve (3).

4. Insert the steel pipe between the idler and rubber track, as shown in the diagram (right). Rotate the sprocket backward.
5. When the inserted steel pipe detaches the rubber track from the idler, slide the crawler in a lateral direction to remove it.



## [INSTALLATION RUBBER TRACK]

- Have a grease gun available.
  - Have a steel pipe available.
1. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to set the outriggers and raise the rubber track again about 80mm from the ground.
  2. With the rubber track engaged with the sprocket, put the crawler on the idler.
  3. With the sprocket rotating backward, push the rubber track in to stop rotation.
  4. Insert the steel pipe between the idler and rubber track again, and re-rotate the sprocket to put the crawler on the idler properly.
  5. Stop rotation, and ensure that the rubber track is on the sprocket and idler properly.
  6. Make a tension adjustment to the rubber track according to “Operation 2.1.3 Checking after Starting Engine [1] Checking / adjustment Rubber Track” in the Operation section of the manual.
  7. Ensure that adequate engagement and tension of the rubber track, sprocket, and idler are obtained.
  8. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers and lower the machine onto the ground.



## [2] REPLACEMENT WINCH WIRE ROPE

### ⚠ WARNING

Always wear leather work gloves when replacing the wire rope.

### CAUTION

- The diameter of the wire rope is measured at points where the wire repeatedly runs through the sheave. A mean value needs to be determined through three-way measurement. (A measurement should be performed at several points, spacing between the points.)
- Do not use old wire rope regardless of the frequency of use.
- Always use Maeda genuine wire rope.

### [CRITERIA FOR WINCH WIRE ROPE REPLACEMENT]

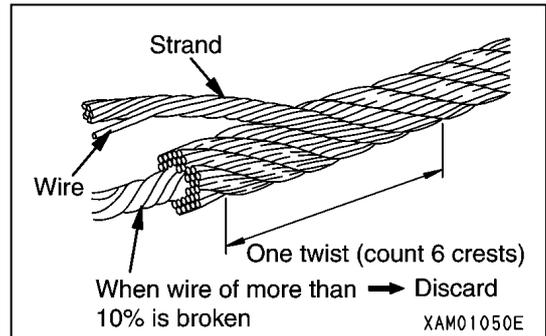
A wire rope undergoes wear and tear over time.

Prompt replacement is required if any of the following appears in the wire rope.

- 10% or more of strands (except a filler wire) in a twist of the wire rope (6 crests) are broken.

#### NOTES

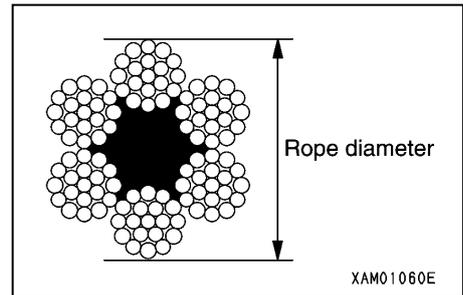
Change winching/boom telescoping wire rope when 13 or more wires are broken.



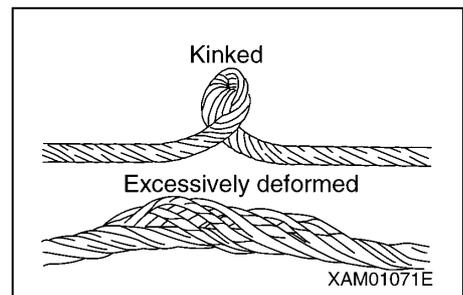
- Wear equivalent to 7% or more of a nominal diameter occurs in the wire rope diameter.

#### NOTES

- Change the 9-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 8.4 mm.
- Change the 8-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 7.5 mm.
- Change the 7-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 6.6 mm.
- Change the 6-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 5.6 mm.
- Change the 5-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 4.7 mm.



- A kink is formed.
- Considerable deformation or corrosion is developed.
- A faulty end socket is used.



## [REMOVAL WINCH WIRE ROPE]

Use the following procedure to remove the wire rope.

1. Place the machine on a level and firm surface.
2. Place the boom telescoping lever in the "Extend" position (push it toward the front) to extend the boom slightly.
3. Place the winch lever in the "Down" position (push it toward the front) to lower the hook block on the ground.

4. Undo the wedge socket fixing bolt (2) and remove the wedge socket (3).

5. Remove the wire clip (4).

6. Pull the wire rope (5) out of the wedge socket (3), following the procedure provided below.

(1) Bring a 4 to 6mm round bar (6) into contact with the rope wedge (7).

(2) Remove the rope wedge (7), lightly tapping the round bar (6) with a hammer in the direction indicated by the arrow (a).

7. Place the winch lever in the "Down" position (push it toward the front) to wind up the wire rope (5) from the winch drum.

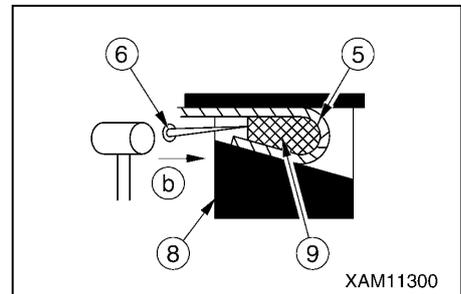
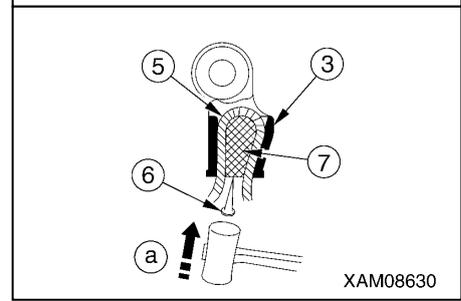
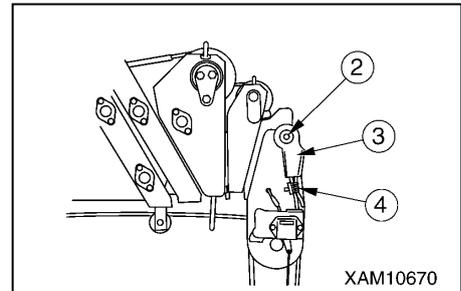
8. With the wire rope wound off from the winch drum; detach the end of the wire rope (5) from the winch drum (8) by following the procedure provided below.

(1) Bring a 4 to 6mm round bar (6) into contact with the rope wedge (9).

(2) Remove the rope wedge (9), lightly tapping the round bar (6) with a hammer in the direction indicated by the arrow (b).

9. Wind up the remaining wire rope (5) completely.

Removal of the winch wire rope is completed.



**[INSTALATION WINCH WIRE ROPE]**

**⚠ WARNING**

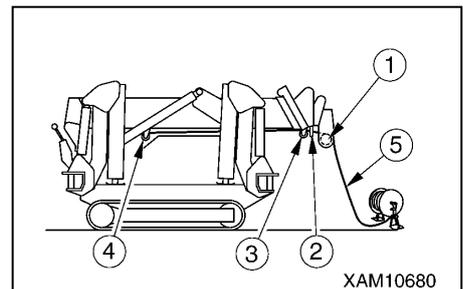
Be sure to attach the rope wedge properly to secure the wire rope. Serious accidents may occur if the wire rope is detached during crane operations.

**CAUTION**

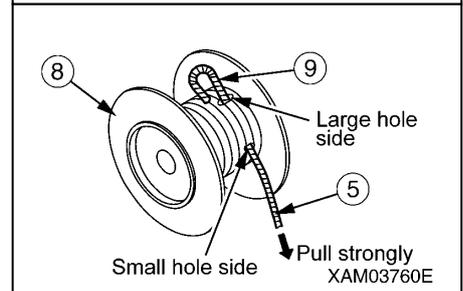
- Avoid irregular winding of the wire rope on the winch drum.
- Always hoist an object (2.9 to 4.9KN {300 to 500kg}) with the boom extended and raised fully immediately after attaching a new rope. Repeat raising and lowering the hook several times until the new rope conforms.
- The wire rope is coiled. Exercise caution not to form a kink in the rope when winding it up. Be sure to unravel by rotating the rope to pull it out of the winch drum.

Use the following procedure to attach the wire rope.

1. With the end of the wire rope held, draw the wire rope (5) through the weight of the over hoist detector, the load sheave (1) at the boom end, the wire guide (2) of No. 2 boom, the guide sheave (3) of No.1 boom, and also the idler sheave (4) of No.1 boom.

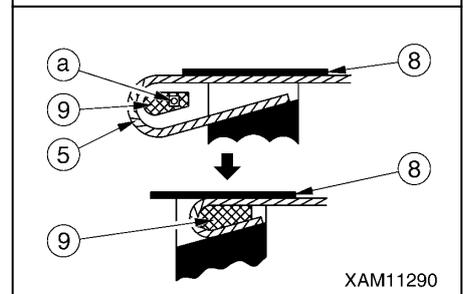


2. Draw the wire rope (5) through the attachment hole of the winch drum (8). Secure the wire rope (5) to the winch drum (8), following the procedure provided below.



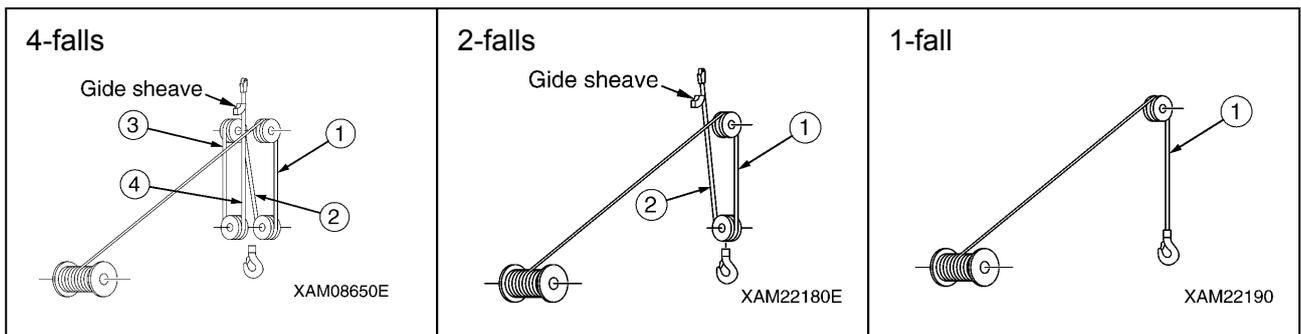
- (1) Draw the slackened wire rope (5) through the winch drum (8).
- (2) The rope wedge (9) should be in position (a). Pass the wire rope (5) around the rope wedge and yank at the rope in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Adjust the length of the wire rope (5) to keep the end of the wire rope from protruding from the narrow hole in the winch drum (8).

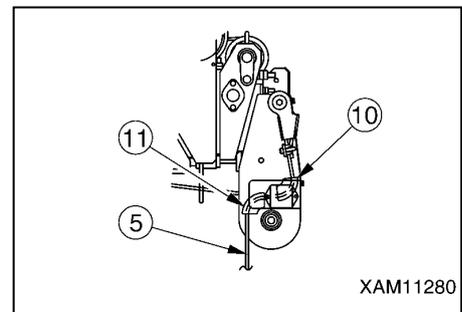


3. Place the winch lever in the "Up" position (pull toward you) slowly to wind up the wire rope (5) on to the winch drum (8).

4. In response to the number of falls (4-falls), draw the wire rope (5) through the load sheave at the boom end, the hook block sheave, the guide sheave, and weight of the over hoist detector.

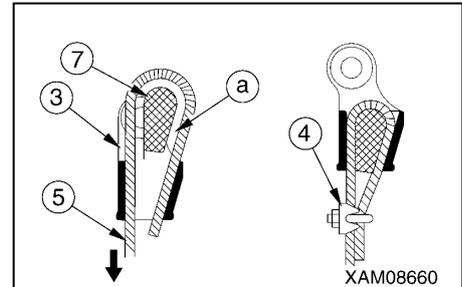


5. As shown in the diagram on the right, thread the wire rope (5) through the fixed sheaves (10) and (11) at the end of boom No. 5.



6. Secure the end of the wire rope (5) to the wedge socket (3), following the procedure provided below.

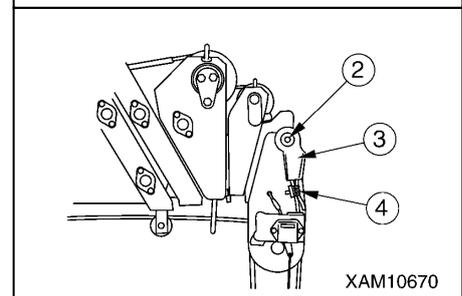
- (1) Draw the wire rope (5) through the wedge socket (3) as shown in the diagram (right).
- (2) With the rope wedge (7) in position (a), yank at the wire rope (5) in the direction indicated by the arrow.



7. Attach the rope clip (4) to the wire rope (5).

8. Secure the wedge socket (3) to the boom, and tighten the wedge socket pin fixing bolt (2).

9. Place the boom derricking lever in the “Raise” position (pull it toward you) or the boom telescoping lever in the “Extend” position (pull it toward you) to raise the hook block.



### NOTES

Winch operation is allowed only after the hook block is raised.

10. With the boom extended and raised fully, place the winch lever in the “Down” position (push it toward the front) to adjust the wire rope (5) until 3 to 4 turns of wire are left on the winch drum (8).
11. With the wire rope (5) held under tension, place the winch lever in the “Up” position (pull it toward you) to wind up the wire rope (5) to the winch drum (8).

### [3] CHECKING/ADJUSTMENT BOOM TELESCOPING WIRE ROPE

#### ⚠ WARNING

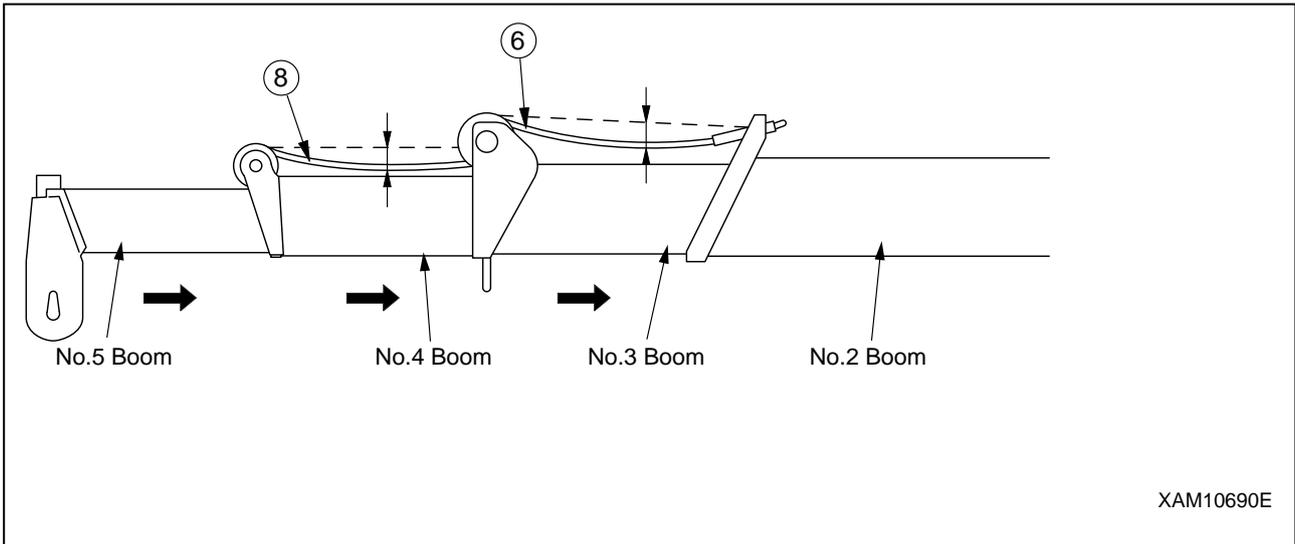
Always wear leather work gloves when replacing the wire rope.

#### [CHECKING BOOM TELESCOPING WIRE ROPE]

When the telescoping wire rope (1) shows a condition as shown in the figure below, adjust as follows:

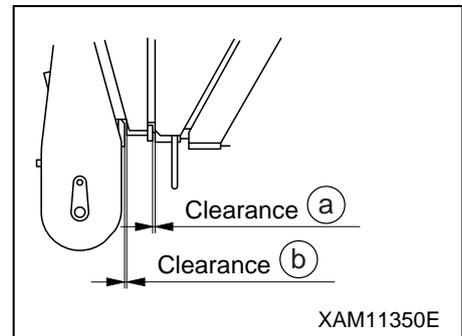
1. Keep the boom level and check whether the centre of the telescoping wire rope (1) sags during the boom retracting operation.

When it sags, refer to the next section, "Adjustment of Boom Telescoping Wire Rope".



2. Check for a 5mm gap between booms No.3 and 4, and also booms No.4 and 5 (shown in diagram, right), when the booms are in a retracted and horizontal position.

If check finds clearance of 5mm or more, perform proper adjustment according to "Adjustment of boom telescoping wire rope".



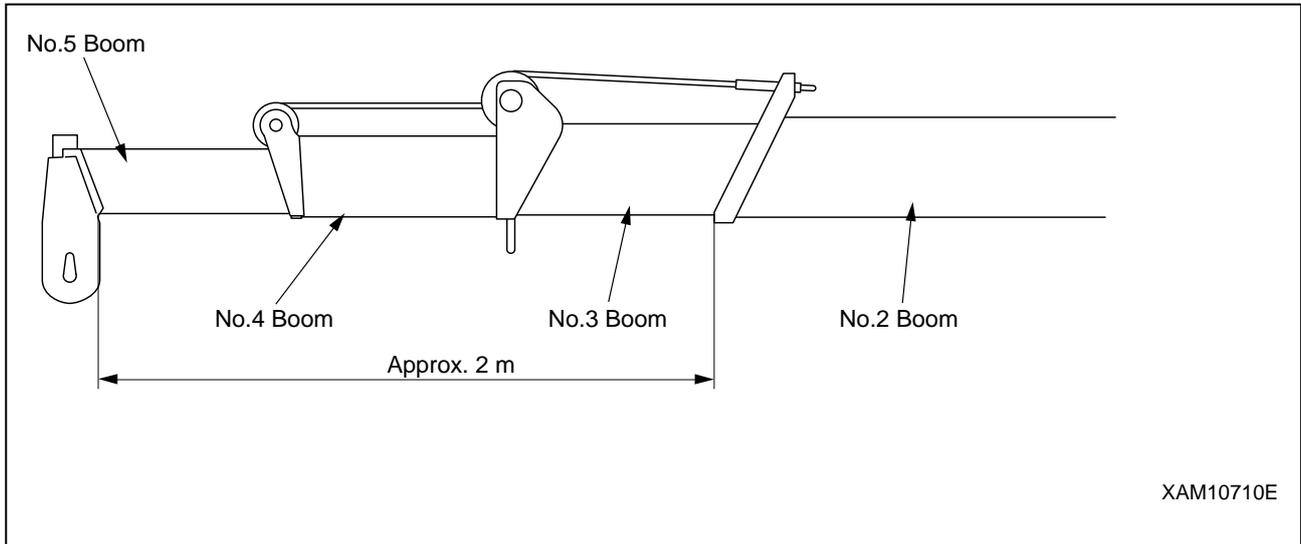
## [ADJUSTMENT OF BOOM TELESCOPING WIRE ROPE]

### CAUTION

The wire ropes must be adjusted to the correct tightness.

A boom extending wire rope (2 pieces) and retracting wire rope (2 pieces) are used in this machine. Adjustment of these wire ropes must conform to the specified procedure. Use the following procedure for wire rope adjustment.

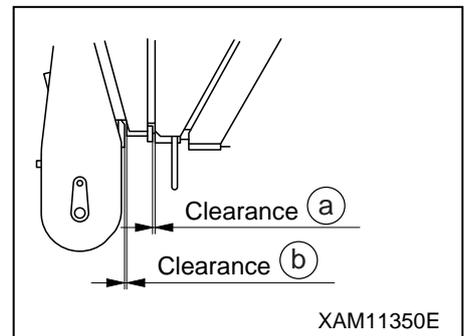
1. With the booms retracted in a horizontal position, extend the telescoping booms by approx. 2m.



2. Retract the booms completely and at a slow speed.

Measure clearance (a) and (b) to check the following for proper adjustment.

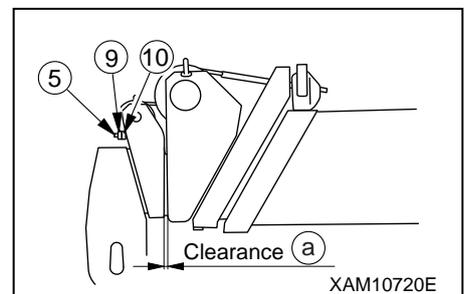
- If there is 5mm or more clearance (a) found, adjust the retracting wire rope (5). See step 3 “Adjustment of No.4 boom retracting wire rope (5)”.
- If there is no clearance at point (a), adjust the extending wire rope (6). See step 4 “Adjustment of No.4 boom extending wire rope (6)”.



3. Adjustment of No.4 boom retracting wire rope (5)

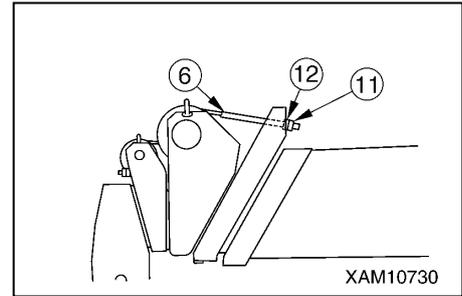
(1) With the lock nut (9) loose, turn the adjusting nut (10) in a clockwise direction so the retracting wire rope (5) becomes tight, and clearance (a) is closed.

(2) If the retracting wire rope sags or 5mm or more clearance remains present after performing steps 1 and 2, readjustment is required.



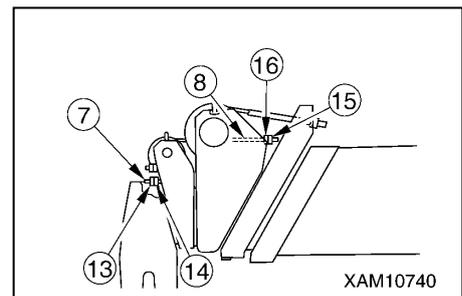
#### 4. Adjustment of No.4 boom extending wire rope (6)

- (1) With the lock nut (11) loose, turn the adjusting nut (12) in a clockwise direction so the extending wire rope (6) becomes tight, and to provide tightening to the verge of the extension of No.4 boom.
- (2) Provide retightening to both adjusting nuts (10) of the boom retracting wire rope (5) by one turn each.
- (3) Secure the adjusting nut (10) and (12) of the No.4 boom retracting wire rope (5) and No.4 boom extending wire rope (6) with the lock nut (9) and (11).
- (4) After completion of steps 1 and 2, and as the result of measurement taken, if the clearance (b) of 5mm or greater remains, make the adjustment in accordance with the step 5 "Adjust No.5 boom retracting wire rope (7). If the clearance (b) is zero, make the adjustment in accordance with the step 6 "Adjust No.5 boom extending wire rope (8).
- (5) Install the boom top cover (4) to original position and tighten the mounting bolts (5) securely.



#### 5. Adjustment of No.5 boom retracting wire rope (7)

- (1) With the lock nut (13) loose, turn the adjusting nut (14) in a clockwise direction so the retracting wire rope (7) becomes tight, and to provide laterally even tightening until clearance (b) is closed.
- (2) If the retracting wire rope sags or 5mm or more clearance (b) remains present after performing steps 1 and 2, readjustment is required.



#### 6. Adjustment of No.5 boom extending wire rope (8)

- (1) With the lock nut (15) loose, turn the adjusting nut (16) in a clockwise direction so the extending wire rope (8) becomes tight, and provides tightening to the verge of the extension of No.5 boom.
- (2) Retighten both adjusting nuts (14) of the boom retracting wire rope (7) by one turn each.
- (3) Secure the adjusting nut (14) and (16) of the No.5 boom retracting wire rope (7) and No.5 boom extending wire rope (8) with the lock nuts (13) and (15).

## 8.6 MAINTENANCE EVERY 30 HOURS

### [1] CHECKING / CLEANING AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

#### WARNING

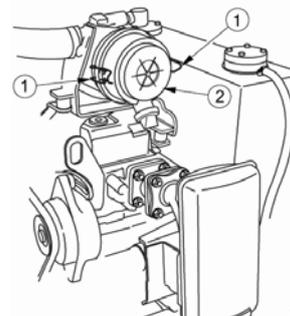
- Do not clean and replace the air cleaner when the engine is in rotation. Such action may cause damage to the engine.
- Use of compressed air when cleaning the element causes particles to become airborne. Always wear protective goggles to prevent damage to eyes.

#### CAUTION

- Clean the air cleaner every 20 to 30 hours. Assure pre- or post-work cleaning when using the machine in a dusty site.
- Do not tap and bump the element while cleaning it.
- Avoid the use of an element if the groove, gasket, or sealing is damaged.
- Be sure to replace the element after 5 cleanings or a lapse of 1 year from initial use.
- Always use Maeda genuine elements.

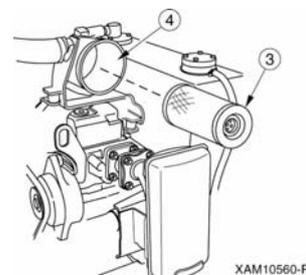
1. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and remove the machinery cover.

2. Disengage the two clamps (1) and remove the dust pan (2).



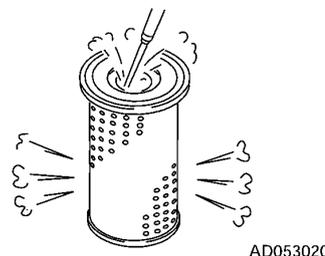
3. Pull out the element (3).

4. Cover the duct entrance located at the back of the air cleaner body (4) with a clean cloth or tape, to keep impurities out of the duct entrance.



5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner body (4).

6. Blow dry compressed air on the inside of the element along the grooves at {max. 0.69MPa (7kg/cm<sup>2</sup>)}.  
Blow compressed air on the outside of the element along the grooves, and re-blow the air on the inside.



#### NOTES

Always replace the element with a new one after 5 cleanings or a lapse of 1 year from initial use.

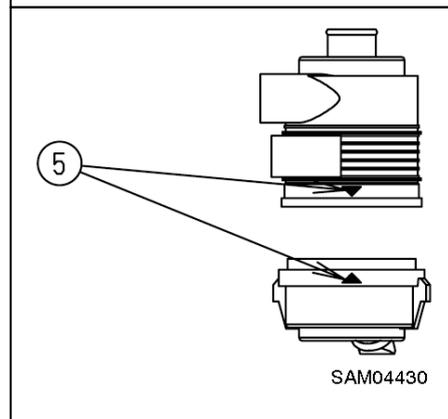
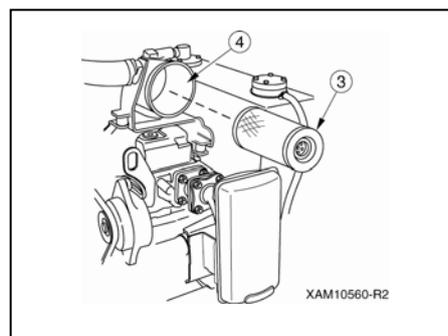
7. Shine a light bulb into the element after cleaning for check. If check finds a pore or thinned part, replace the element.



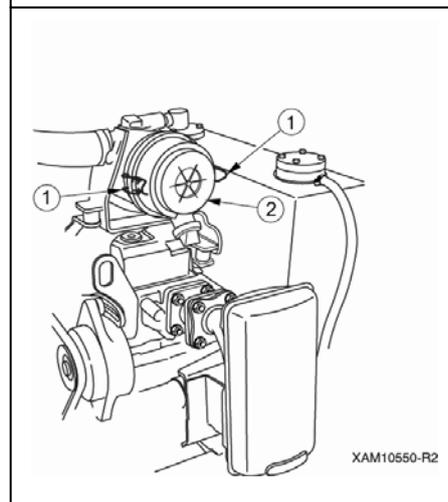
8. Remove the cloth or tape from the air connector at the back of the air cleaner body (4).

9. Insert the cleaned element (3) into the air cleaner body (4).

10. Connect dust pan (2) and air cleaner body (4) aligning the arrows (5). Securely fasten with the clamps (1) in 2 places.



11. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and install the machinery cover.



## 8.7 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS

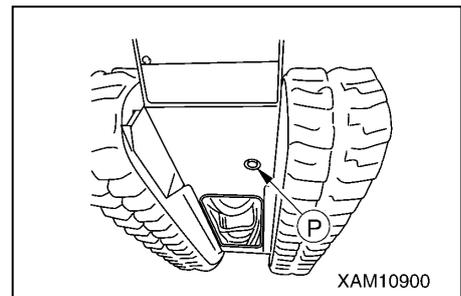
### [1] DRAINING CONTAMINANT WATER/DEPOSITS IN FUEL TANK

#### WARNING

- Keep away from heat and flame, including cigarettes.
- Be sure to stop the engine before draining fuel.  
Potential ignition may occur through spilled fuel if disregarded.
- Always put in the fuel tank drain plug and secure it after draining fuel.
- The fuel tank drain plug is mounted on the underside of the machine.  
To drain fuel, use outriggers to raise the rubber track about 80mm, allowing access under the machine. Always place supports (stands) under the front and rear sides of the machine to make it stable.

- Fuel drain pan: A 1-litre container

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to set the outriggers and raise the rubber track about 80mm from the ground.
3. Place a container to collect the fuel directly underneath the drain plug (P) of the fuel tank.
4. Turn the drain plug (P) slowly to avoid splashing fuel on yourself, and drain fuel.



#### NOTES

Remove the fuel tank cap if normal or smooth fuel draining fails.

5. After draining the fuel, tighten the drain plug (P) securely.

#### NOTES

Wipe off fuel completely if spilled.

6. Install the inspection cover (1), and secure it with the three mounting bolts (2).
7. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.

## [2] GREASING MACHINE UNITS

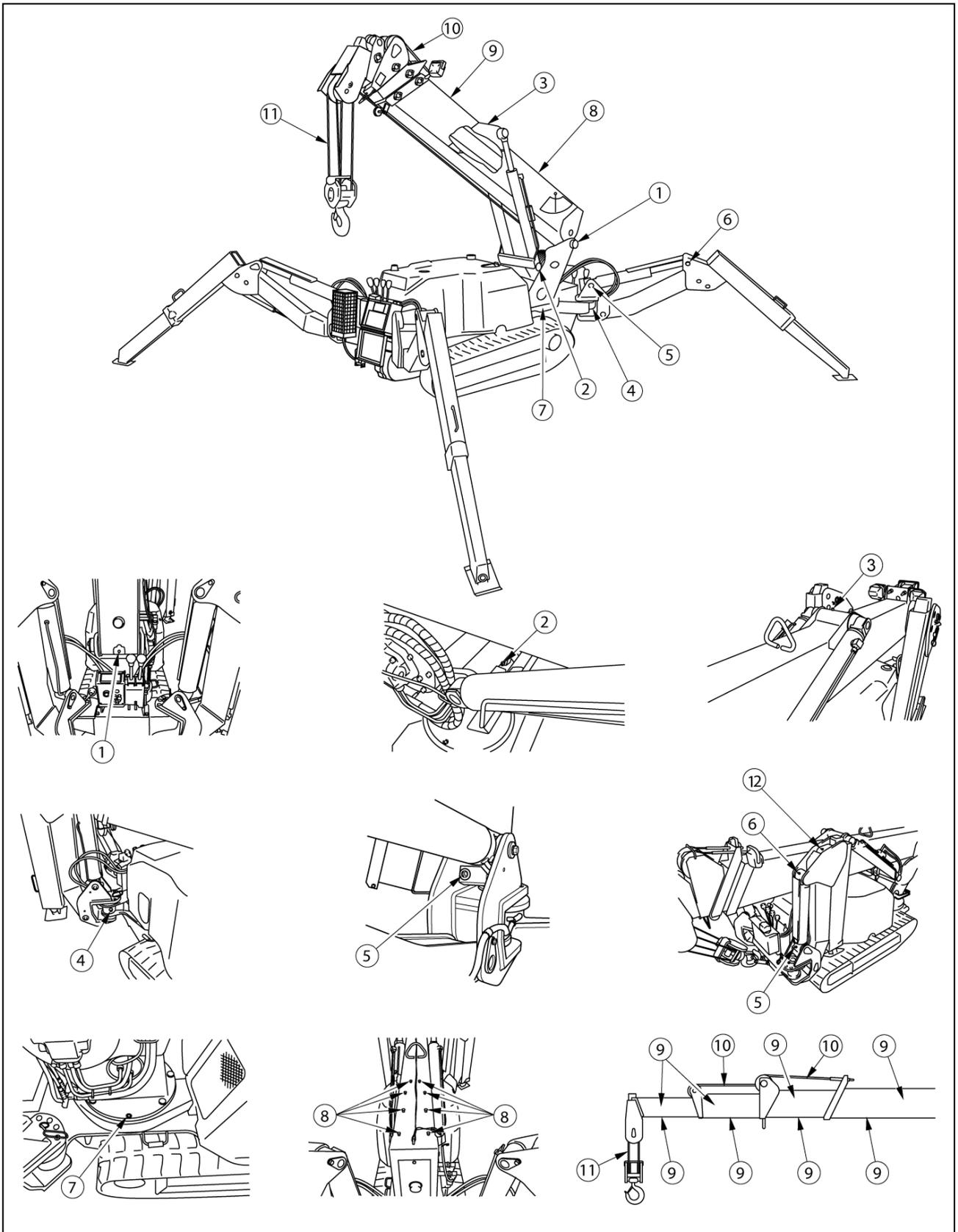
### CAUTION

- Grease type varies with greasing points. Failure to grease properly may cause the machine to shorten its useful life. See the following table for grease types.
- Greasing a new machine is required once every 10 hours until the machine attains the first 100 hours of operation that initial fit emerges.

- Use proper grease specified below according to the greasing points.

No	Greasing point		Grease type
1	Greasing of the boom mounting pin	1 place	Lithium grease
2	Greasing of the derricking cylinder bottom mounting pin	1 place	
3	Greasing of the derricking cylinder rod mounting pin	1 place	
4	Greasing of the outrigger rotary shaft	4 places	
5	Greasing of the mounting pin of the outrigger grounding cylinder bottom	4 places	
6	Greasing of the mounting pin of the outrigger grounding cylinder rod	4 places	
7	Greasing of the slewing gear	2 places	
8	Greasing of the boom slide plate	8 places	Molybdenum grease
9	Greasing of both sides and bottom of a boom	Each boom	
10	Greasing of the boom telescoping wire rope	4 pieces	Rope oil
11	Greasing of the winch wire rope	1 piece	
12	Greasing of the outrigger top box	4 piece	Lithium grease

1. With the use of the grease gun, grease the greasing points (No.1 to 9) specified in the above table through corresponding grease plugs. (See the following page)
2. Wipe off old grease squeezed out after greasing.
3. Place the outriggers when greasing the outrigger cylinders.
4. Place the boom derricking lever in the "Raise" position (pull it toward you) to raise the boom slightly for greasing the derricking cylinder mounting pin and slide plate that is located on top of the boom.
5. Place the boom telescoping lever in the "Extend" position (push it toward the front) to extend the boom for greasing both sides and bottom of the boom and wire rope.
6. Apply red rope grease to prevent wire rope abrasion and rust formation.  
With the rope surface cleaned, grease the rope with a brush.



## 8.8 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS

Perform this maintenance in tandem with maintenance every 30/50 hours.

### [1] CHECK OIL LEVEL IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE, AND ADD OIL

#### ⚠ WARNING

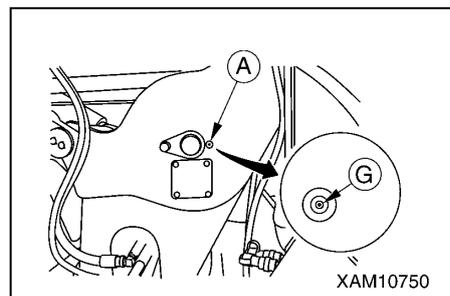
- Oil is extremely hot immediately after operation of engine. Wait until oil cools down before removing inspection port plug after operation.
- For inspection and replenishment of oil, be sure to stop engine.

#### CAUTION

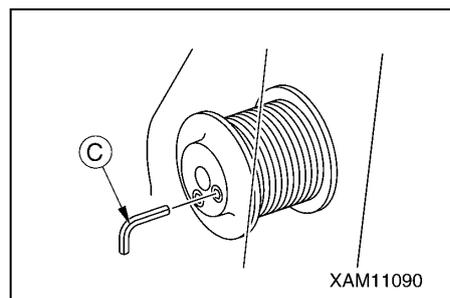
- For turning the winch, release housing of hook.
- Be sure to use oil specified in section 5.1 "Use of Lubricating Oil according to Temperatures" in Inspection and Maintenance. Failure to use proper oil may cause the engine life to shorten. Always use the specified oil for replenishment.
- After the inspection and replenishment of oil, prevent leakage from the threaded part of oil inspection plug with sealer tape and securely tighten it.

- Plug removal Allen key: 5mm

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. Turn the rotary of outrigger No. 4 outward so that the inspection part of winch reducer on the post side surface is visible.
3. Slowly turn the winch and stop it at a position where the oil inspection plug (G) is visible through the inspection hole (A) on the post side surface.

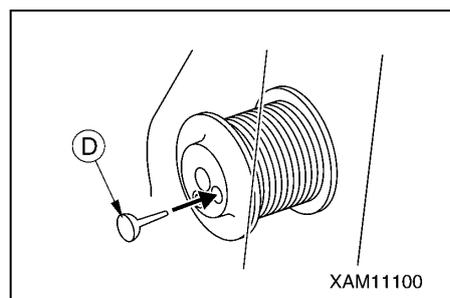


4. Loosen the oil inspection plug (G) by turning it with the Allen key (C) to check if gear oil oozes out.



5. If not, remove the oil inspection plug (G) by slowly turning it and add gear oil with an oil pump (D) or similar.

6. After the replenishment of oil, securely tighten the oil inspection plug (G).



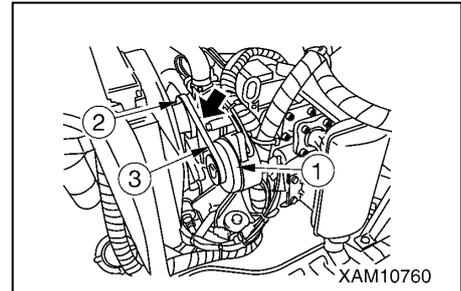
## 8.9 MAINTENANCE EVERY 250 HOURS

Perform this maintenance in tandem with maintenance every 30/50/100 hours.

### [1] CHECKING/ADJUSTING ALTERNATOR BELT TENSION

#### [TENSION CHECK]

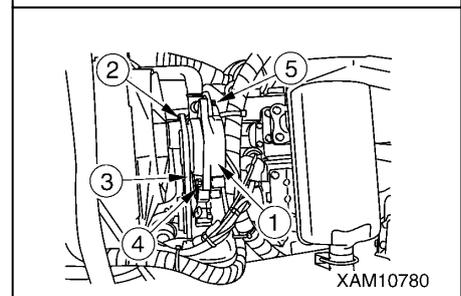
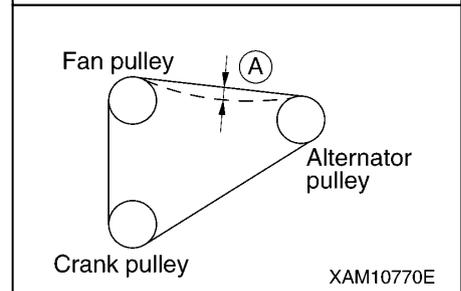
1. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and remove the machinery cover.
2. With fingers, push (by approximately 98N {10kgf}) the midpoint between the fan pulley (2) and alternator pulley (1) of the belt (3), and if the strain is between 7 and 10mm it is within standard.



#### [TENSION ADJUSTMENT]

- Have a wooden bar available.

1. Insert the bar between the alternator (1) and cylinder block.
2. Loosen the lower bolt (5) and adjusting bolt (4).
3. Pull back the bar and slide the alternator (1) so that the amount of slack (A) of the belt (3) is about 7 – 10mm.
4. Tighten the alternator lower bolt (4) and then the adjusting bolt (5) to secure the alternator (1).
5. Check pulley, V groove and belt for damage and wear. In particular, make sure that the belt is not in contact with the bottom of V groove.
6. If the belt has elongated to the extent that the adjusting allowance is lost or it has scar or crack on it, replace it with a new one.
7. When the belt has been replaced, check adjustment again after one hour of operation.
8. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and install the machinery cover.

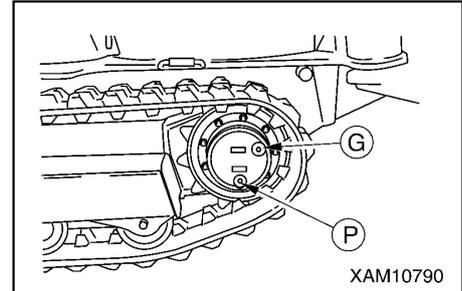


## [2] CHECKING / REFILLING OIL IN TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE

### CAUTION

- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the filler plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

1. Move the machine forward and backward so that drain plug (P) of the travelling motor reduction gear case will come to the bottom.
2. Remove the oil level check plug (G) of the travelling motor reduction gear case to check if the oil will come out of the plug hole.
3. If there is not sufficient oil, pour in engine oil from the plug hole (G).



### NOTES

Pour in the engine oil until the oil comes out of the oil level check plug (G).

4. Install the oil level check plug (G) and securely tighten them after checking and refilling with the oil.

## 8.10 MAINTENANCE EVERY 500 HOURS

Perform this maintenance in tandem with maintenance every 30/50/100/250 hours.

### [1] REPLACEMENT ENGINE OIL AND REPLACE FILTER CARTRIDGE

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- The drain plug of the engine oil pan is mounted at the cover under the control lever. When draining engine oil, use outriggers to raise the machine approximately 80mm. Always place timbers beneath right and left crawlers and ground for safety.
- After checking or replenishing the oil, tighten oil level gauge securely. It can come off during operation, causing hot oil to spray out and can cause scalding.
- Immediately after engine has been in operation, its various parts remain hot. Do not proceed with oil replacement immediately but wait for the engine to cool to the extent that you can touch it with your hand.

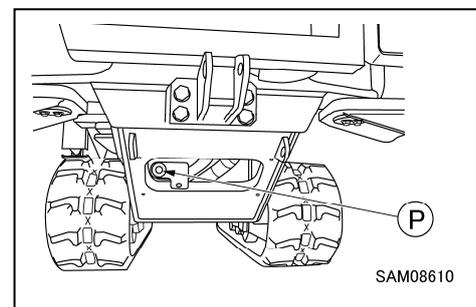
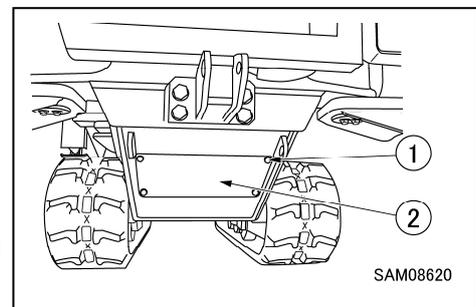
#### **CAUTION**

- Make sure that old packing is not stuck to filter base. If it is, it can cause oil leakage.
- For the type of oil to use, see “MAINTENANCE, 5.1 Use of lubricant according to ambient temperature”. Not using the recommended oil type can shorten the useful life of your engine. Be sure to replenish with the specified type of oil.
- The engine must not be run until piping and hydraulic equipment has been filled with oil after replacement of the hydraulic oil filter.
- Maintain the engine oil level properly.
- When the engine is cold, oil cannot be drained completely. Wait until the engine cools down to the extent that it is touchable and drain the oil.

- Have a container to collect the drained oil ready: 3 litres or greater capacity

- Volume of oil actually to be replaced in the oil pan: 2.3 litres

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to set the outriggers and raise the rubber tracks about 80mm from the ground.
3. Remove four mounting bolts (1) and the cover (2).
4. Place a container to collect the oil directly underneath the drain plug (P) of the oil pan.
5. Turn the drain plug (P) slowly to avoid splashing oil, before removing it for draining the oil.
6. Check the drained oil and if it contains an unacceptable amount of metal particles or foreign matter, contact your dealer.
7. Reinstall the drain plug (P) and the cover (2).
8. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.
9. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.



10. By means of filter wrench, turn filter cartridge (1) counterclockwise to remove it.

### NOTES

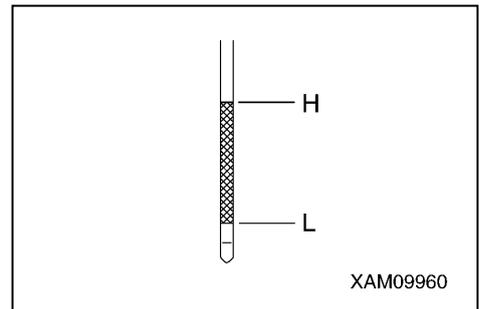
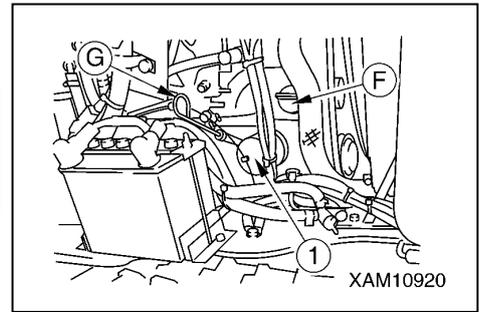
Wait for about 10 minutes before doing so because, plenty of oil will come out if it is done immediately after stopping the engine.

11. Clean the filter base and reinstall new filter cartridge (3) after coating its packing and threaded portion with clean engine oil (or lightly with grease).

### NOTES

When reinstalling the filter cartridge, tighten it one-half to three quarters of a turn after the packing surface touches the sealing surface of filter base. Be sure to do it manually.

12. After replacing the filter cartridge, feed engine oil through filler port (F) to the specified level.
13. Pull out oil level gauge (G) and wipe off oil with a cloth.
14. Insert the oil level gauge (G) and pull it out again.
15. Make sure that the level is between the markings (H and L) on the oil level gauge (G)
16. After changing the oil, tighten the oil level gauge (G) and filler port (F) securely.
17. Run the engine at idling speed for a while and stop engine.
18. Check that oil level is between the H and L marks on the oil level gauge G.
19. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and install the machinery cover.



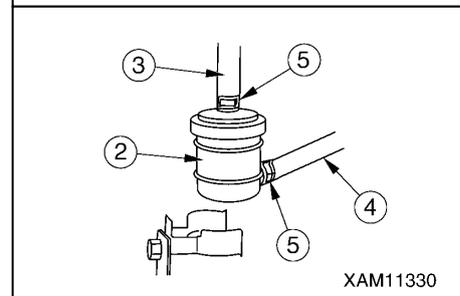
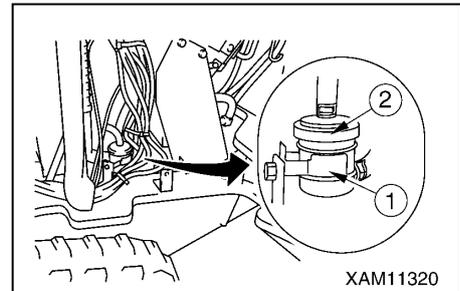
## [2] REPLACEMENT FUEL FILTER CARTRIDGE

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Keep away from heat and flame, including cigarettes, when replacing the fuel filter element.
- All the parts will be at elevated temperatures immediately after engine operation, which urges you not to replace the fuel filter element. Always perform replacement with the engine cold to touch.

• Have a container ready to collect the drained fuel: Minimum capacity of 1 litre.

1. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
2. Remove fuel filter (2) from holder (1).
3. Loosen clamps (5) at fuel hoses (3) and (4) connected to fuel filter, and then disconnect fuel hoses (3) and (4).
4. Connect fuel hoses (3) and (4) to the new fuel filter (2), and then secure clamps (5).
5. Insert new fuel filter (2) to the holder (1) to hold it secure.



### **NOTES**

After inserting the fuel filter into the holder, lightly shake the fuel filter to check it is firmly secured.

6. After replacing fuel filter, carry out air bleeding of fuel system.

### **NOTES**

Turn the key switch to “ON” to operate fuel pump and wait up to 5 minutes for the air to be released.

7. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.

### [3] REPLACEMENT HYDRAULIC OIL RETURN FILTER CARTRIDGE

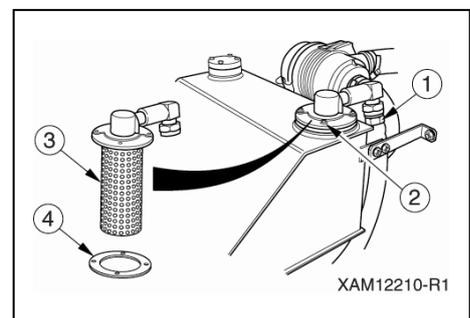
#### **⚠ WARNING**

- All the parts will be at elevated temperatures immediately after engine operation, which urges you not to replace the filter. Always perform replacement with the engine cold.
- The oil may spout out when the cap of the hydraulic oil tank is removed.  
Loosen the bolts so that the cap is raised a little to allow the release of inner pressure, then remove bolts and remove the cap
- Securely tighten mounting bolts of the oil filler cap after refilling with the oil. If the mounting bolts loose and then filler cap falls during the operation, the hot oil spouts out of the pan, causing burns. Also, when attaching the oil filler cap, always fit a rubber packing, otherwise, when the rubber packing is neglected, the hot oil may spout out of the filler cap fitting, causing burns.

#### **CAUTION**

- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Place the machine in travel position for oil quantity inspection. Oil quantity inspection with the machine in working position may deceive your eyes to deem the quantity of oil low. Owing to improper judgment, the oil may be supplied at an excessive amount.
- The engine must be at halt until piping and hydraulic equipment is filled with oil after replacement of the hydraulic oil.
- Never exceed the maximum oil amount, signified on the level gauge by the red point.  
When the oil goes beyond the correct level, it may spout out from the air breather, during travelling or crane operation.
- Keep impurities out of the filler cap when replenishing oil.
- Refer to “Operation 1.6 Machinery Cover” and remove the machinery cover in accordance with the instructions in it, when necessary.

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Position” and put the machine in the “travelling position”.
3. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
4. Disconnect the hose (1) and the elbow from the return filter housing.
5. Remove the four bolts (2) and remove the flange (2) and return filter (3) from the top surface of hydraulic oil tank.
6. Apply liquid packing to the rubber plate (4), mount a new hydraulic oil return filter (3), and securely tighten the four bolts (2).
7. Connect the hose (1) and the elbow to the return filter housing.



8. Remove the 4 mounting bolts (6) and detach the filler cup (5) on hydraulic oil tank.

9. While observing the oil gauge level (7) feed hydraulic oil up to the level point (red point) through the filler port (5).

### NOTES

Wipe off the oil completely if spilled.

10. After the replenishment of oil, set the cap of filler port (5) and securely tighten the four mounting bolts (6).

11. After the replacement of the hydraulic oil return filter, bleed the hydraulic circuit following the procedures below.

(1) Wait the piping and hydraulic system equipment is filled with oil and start the engine.

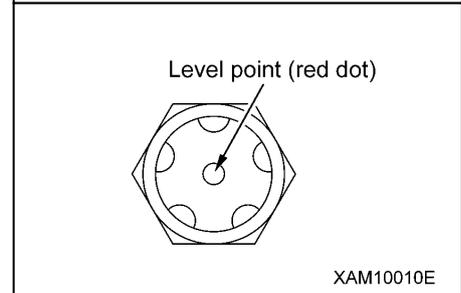
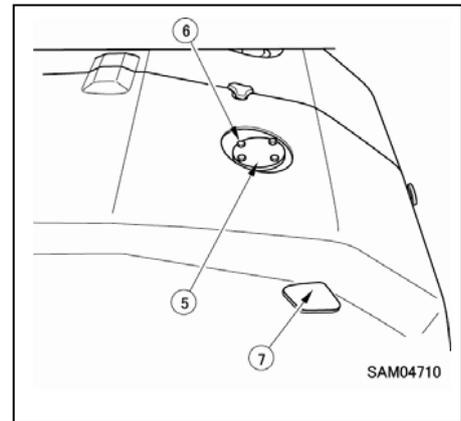
Continue to run the engine at low idling for 10 minutes.

(2) With the engine rpm keeping low, slightly operate each crane control lever to operate each cylinder and winch motor slowly. Do not operate the boom hoisting cylinder and telescopic boom cylinder to the stroke end, but stop them at a position approximately 100mm before the stroke end.

Repeat this four to five times.

(3) Extend the outriggers and make the outrigger cylinders telescope in the condition that the machine does not float.

When making the outrigger cylinder telescope, do not operate it to the stroke end, but stop it at a position approximately 100mm before the stroke end. Repeat this four to five times.



## 8.11 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS

Perform this maintenance in tandem with maintenance every 30/50/250/500 hours.

### [1] REPLACEMENT AIR CLEANER ELEMENT

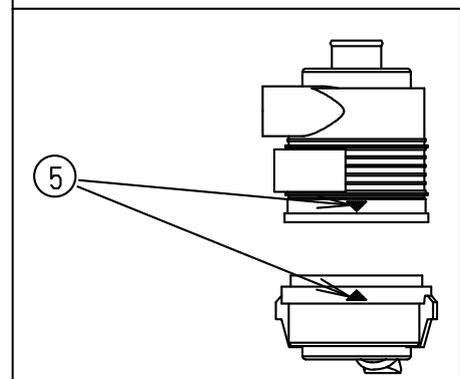
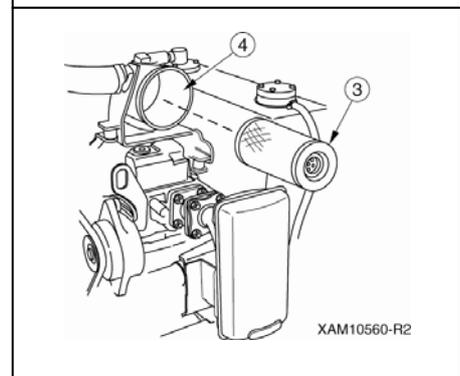
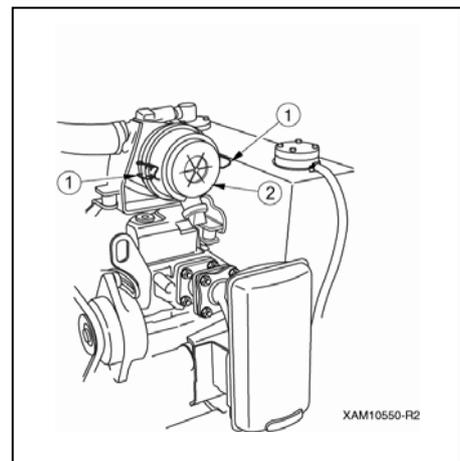
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Do not clean and replace the air cleaner when the engine is in rotation.  
Failure to do so may damage the engine.

#### **CAUTION**

- Avoid the use of an element if its groove, gasket, or sealing is damaged.
- Be sure to replace the element with a new one after 5 cleanings or a lapse of 1 year from initial use.
- Always use Maeda genuine elements.

1. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and remove the machinery cover.
2. Disengage the two clamps (1) and remove the dust pan (2).
3. Pull out the element (3).
4. Cover the duct entrance located at the back of the air cleaner body (4) with a clean cloth or tape, to keep impurities out of the duct entrance.
5. Clean the inside of the air cleaner body (4).
6. Remove the cloth or tape from the air connector at the back of the air cleaner body (4).
7. Insert a new element (3) into the air cleaner body (4).
8. Connect dust pan (2) and air cleaner body (4) by aligning the arrows (5). Securely fasten with clamps (1) in 2 places.
9. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and install the machinery cover.



## [2] CLEANING ENGINE COOLING SYSTEM

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Coolant will be at elevated temperatures immediately after engine operation, which urges you not to drain coolant. Always perform coolant draining with the engine cold.
- Do not remove the radiator cap if radiator coolant is hot. Potential gush of boiling water may occur if disregarded. Cap removal is allowed when the water drops in temperature. Be sure to relieve internal pressure by slowly rotating the filler cap before cap removal.
- Do not stand in front of and behind the machine when starting the engine for cooling system cleaning. Failure to stand aside of the machine may pose a danger in the event of a sudden movement of the machine.
- Keep antifreeze away from flame. Antifreeze is a flammable solution. Do not smoke when handling antifreeze.

### **CAUTION**

- Always use tap water for coolant. Contact us or our sales service agency if river water, well water, or water through the small water-supply system is necessarily substituted for tap water.
- A mixing ratio of antifreeze is to be controlled by the concentration meter.

Cooling system cleaning and antifreeze replacement should conform to the cycles specified in the following table.

Antifreeze type	Cooling system cleaning and antifreeze replacement
Anti-corrosive all-season type	Every other year (in fall) or every 4000 hours, whichever falls first
All-season type	Every year (in fall) or 2000 hours, whichever comes first
One winter season type	Biannually (spring and fall).

Perform cooling system cleaning and antifreeze replacement with the machine in a horizontal position. A mixing ratio of antifreeze varies with temperature. Antifreeze as a volume ratio is min. 30% to yield anticorrosive effect.

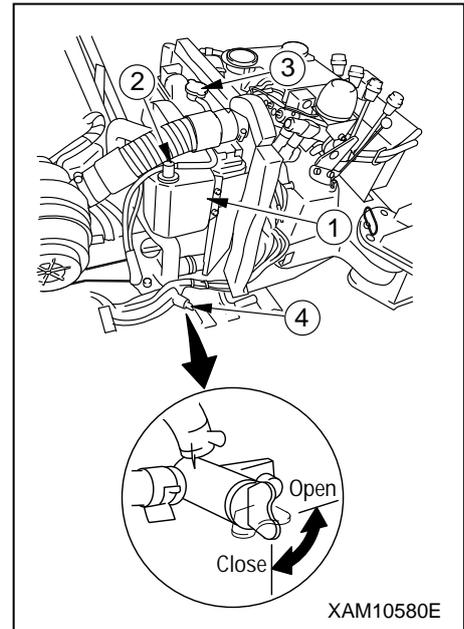
The mixing ratio between water and antifreeze is to be determined with respect to past minimum temperatures, in accordance with "Mixing ratio between water and antifreeze" shown below. For actual mixing, set temperature 10 degrees lower than minimum temperature.

### **[MIXING RATIO BETWEEN WATER AND ANTIFREEZE:YANMAR COOLANT]**

Min. temperature (°C) Mixed quantity (L)	Min. -15	-20	-24	-29
	Antifreeze	0.6	0.7	0.8
Water	1.5	1.4	1.3	1.2

- Antifreeze-mixed water drain pan: A 3-litre container
- Have a water filling hose available.

1. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
2. Turn the radiator cap (3) slowly until it comes into contact with the stopper to relieve internal pressure from the radiator.
3. With no pressure in the radiator, give further turning of the radiator cap (3) until it reaches the stopper while holding it down. Remove the radiator cap (3).
4. Place a drain pan under the drain valve (4) lying below the radiator to receive coolant (antifreeze-mixed water).
5. Open the drain valve (4) to drain coolant.  
Close the drain valve (4) upon completion of draining.
6. Supply tap water to the radiator through the radiator supply port.  
The radiator needs to be filled up to the supply port.
7. Start the engine with the drain valve (4) open, and ensure the engine runs at low idle. Conduct a 10-minute cleaning with running water.



### CAUTION

- **The radiator is to retain a high water level during cleaning with running water. Adjust the quantities of water supplied and drained as necessary.**
- **Ensure that the water filling hose stays connected to the radiator supply port properly during cleaning with running water.**

8. After cleaning, stop the engine and water supply and drain tap water. Close the drain valve (4) upon completion of draining.
9. Flush it with cleanser.

### NOTES

Cleaning with the cleaning agent must conform to instructions provided on the cleaning agent.

10. Open the drain valve (4) to drain the cleaning agent after cleaning with the agent. Close the drain valve (4) upon completion of draining.
11. Supply tap water to the radiator through the radiator supply port.  
The radiator needs to be filled up to the supply port.

12. Start the engine with the drain valve (2) open, and ensure the engine runs at low idle. Conduct a cleaning with running water until clean water flows out of the radiator.

### CAUTION

- The radiator is to retain a high water level during cleaning with running water. Adjust the quantities of water supplied and drained as necessary.
- Ensure that the water filling hose stays connected to the radiator supply port properly during cleaning with running water.

13. Once clean water has flowed out, stop the engine and water supply and drain tap water. Close the drain valve (4) upon completion of draining.

14. Supply coolant mixed of antifreeze and tap water to the radiator through the radiator supply port. The radiator needs to be filled up to the supply port.

### NOTES

See the above-mentioned table, "Mixing ratio between water and antifreeze", for the mixing ratio of antifreeze and tap water.

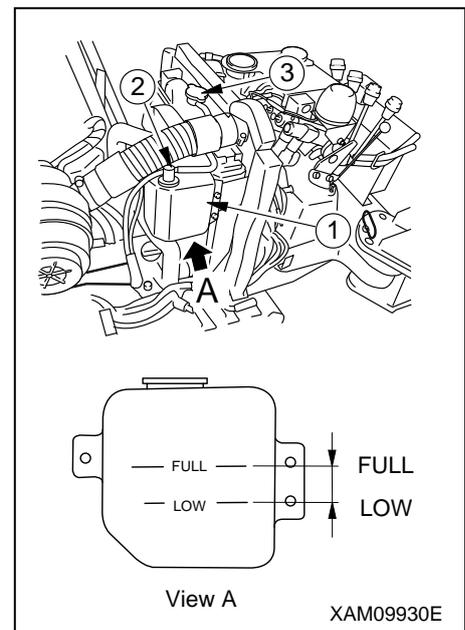
15. Start the engine with the radiator cap (3) removed, and ensure the engine runs at low idle for 5 minutes. Release air from the cooling system with the engine at high idle for 5 minutes.

16. Wait for 3 minutes after stopping the engine. Supply tap water to the radiator through the radiator supply port, up to the supply port. Close the radiator cap (3).

17. Remove the reserve tank (1). Clean the inside of the reserve tank with coolant drained from the tank.

18. Put the reserve tank (1) in place, supply tap water through the supply port to "FULL". Install the cap (2) properly.

19. See "Operation 1.6 Machinery cover" and install the machinery cover.



### [3] OIL REPLACEMENT IN HYDRAULIC OIL TANK

#### **⚠ WARNING**

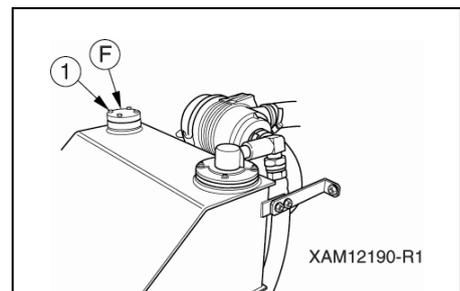
- All the parts will be at elevated temperatures immediately after engine operation, which urges you not to replace oil. Always perform replacement with the oil cold.
- Potential gush of oil may occur upon removing the filler cap of the hydraulic oil tank. Be sure to relieve internal pressure by slowly rotating the filler cap before cap removal.
- Make sure the filler cap is closed properly after replenishment of the oil. Potential fall of the filler cap during operation may occur if disregarded, which could cause boiling oil to gush that results in burns.

#### **CAUTION**

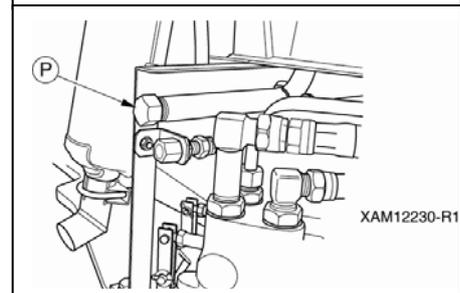
- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Place the machine in travel position for oil quantity inspection. Oil quantity inspection with the machine in working position may deceive your eyes to deem the quantity of oil low. Owing to improper judgment, the oil may be supplied at excessive amount.
- The engine must be at halt until piping and hydraulic equipment is filled with oil after replacement of the hydraulic oil.
- Oil replenished should remain below “H” (upper limit) on the level gauge. Excessive oil replenishment may cause the oil to gush from the air breather during machine travelling and crane operation, which could result in burns.
- Keep impurities out of the filler cap when replenishing oil.

- Oil drain pan: An 25-litre container
- Quantity of oil for replacement: 20L

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Position” and put the machine in the “travelling position”.
3. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.
4. Remove the 4 mounting bolts (1) and remove the filler cap (F) on top of the hydraulic oil tank.

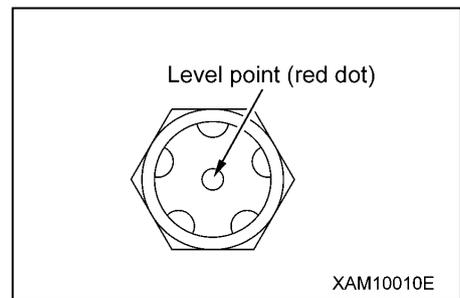


5. Place a drain pan directly underneath the drain plug (P) to receive drained oil.
6. Remove the drain plug (P) slowly to drain the oil, keeping from contact with draining oil.
7. Check the drained oil. If check finds a considerable amount of metal powder and foreign objects, contact us or our sales service agency.
8. Put in the drain plug (P) and secure it.



9. Check the oil level gauge and replenish the hydraulic oil until it reaches the level point (red point).

10. After refilling with oil, Set the filler cap (F) and rubber packing to the filler opening position and tighten the 4 mounting bolts (1) securely.



11. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.

12. Use the following procedure for air bleed.

(1) Start the engine with piping and hydraulic equipment filled with oil.

Make sure the engine runs at low idle for 10 minutes.

(2) Move the cylinders and winch motor slowly with a crane control lever at low idle speed.

Always stop the boom derricking cylinder and telescoping cylinder approx. 100mm back from the stroke end when operating the cylinders.

Repeat this task 4 to 5 times.

(3) Allow all the outriggers to be extended, referring to “Operation 2.13 Outrigger Set Up Operation”.

Extend and retract the outrigger cylinder, keeping the machine down on the ground.

Always stop the outrigger cylinder approx. 100mm back from the stroke end when operating the cylinder.

Repeat this task 4 to 5 times.

#### [4] OIL REPLACEMENT IN SLEWING REDUCTION GEAR CASE

### ⚠ WARNING

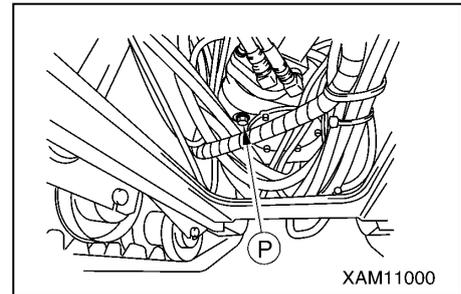
The drain plug of the slewing reduction gear case is located directly underneath the machine. Place the outriggers and raise the machine 80mm from the ground to allow a drain pan to be placed under the machine for draining oil. If the machine becomes unstable and wobbles, insert supports under the front and back of the machine to gain stability.

### CAUTION

- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the filler plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

- Oil drain pan: A 1-litre container
- Quantity of oil for replacement: 0.6L

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to set the outriggers and raise the rubber track again for about 80mm from the ground.
3. Place a drain pan directly underneath the drain plug (P) of the slewing reduction gear case to receive drained oil.
4. Remove the drain plug (P) slowly to drain the oil, keeping from contact with draining oil.
5. Check the drained oil. If check finds a considerable amount of metal powder and foreign objects, contact us or our sales service agency.
6. Put in the drain plug (P) and secure it.
7. See “Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.
8. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and remove the machinery cover.



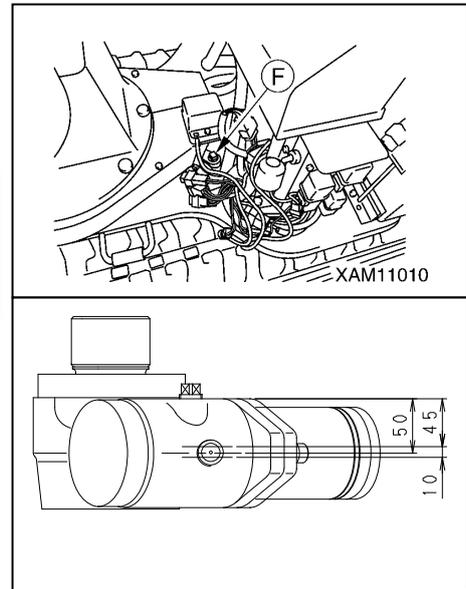
9. Remove the filler plug (F) at slewing reduction gear case. Fill with gear oil from the plug hole up to the middle of the gear case.

**NOTES**

The height at middle of gear case is 50 mm from the top of the filler plug. 50mm (±5mm) is the appropriate oil level. Do not allow ingress of dust or dirt when measuring or filling oil.

10. Put in the filler plug (F) and secure it after oil replacement.

11. See “Operation 1.6 Machinery cover” and install the machinery cover.



## [5] OIL REPLACEMENT IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE

### **⚠ WARNING**

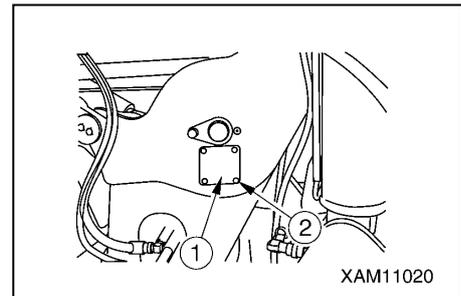
Oil will be at elevated temperatures immediately after engine operation, which urges you not to unplug the inspection port and drain port. Unplug the port with the oil cold.

### **CAUTION**

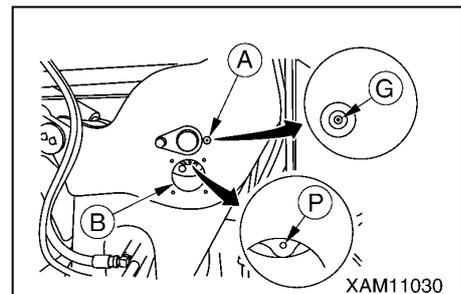
- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

- Oil drain pan: A 1-litre container
- Hexagonal wrench for plug removal: 5mm
- Quantity of oil for replacement: 0.5L

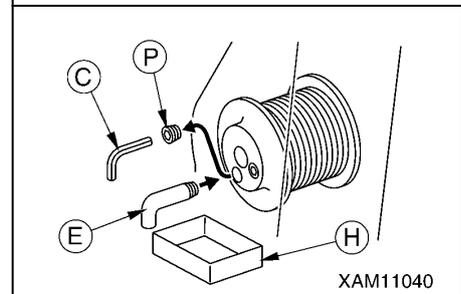
1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to rotate the rotary of the “outrigger (4)” outward.
3. Remove the 4 mounting bolts (2) and remove the inspection cover (1).



4. Slowly turn the winch to a position where both the oil inspection plug (G) and drain plug (P) are visible.
  - a. Stop the winch at a position where the oil inspection plug (G) is visible through the inspection hole (A).
  - b. Stop the winch at a position where the drain plug (P) of the reducer case is visible at the upper part of the inspection hole (B).

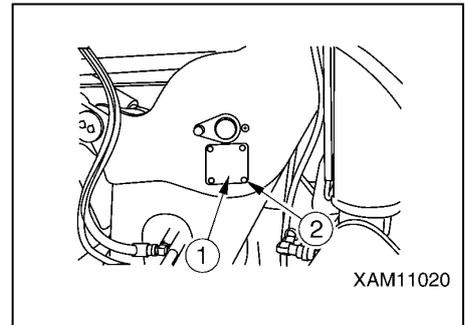


5. With the Allen key (C); turn the drain plug (P) to remove it.
6. Mount the elbow (E) for draining oil to the screw hole of the drain plug (P).
7. Place a container (H) to collect the drained oil just below the elbow (E).



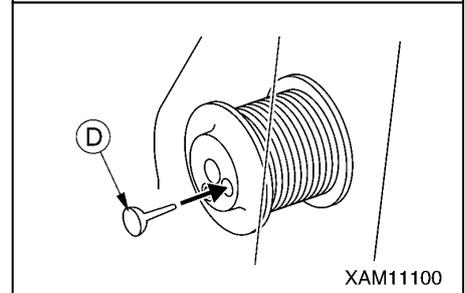
8. With the Allen key (C), turn the oil inspection plug (G) to remove it and drain the oil.
9. After it is completely drained, detach the elbow (E), and reinstall the drain plug (P) and securely tighten it.

10. Reinstall the inspection cover (1) and tighten the four mounting bolts (2).



11. Feed gear oil through the hole of the oil inspection plug (G) with an oil pump (D).

<b>NOTES</b>
Pour in the gear oil until the oil comes out of the oil level check plug (G).



12. After the replenishment of oil, securely tighten the oil inspection plug (G).

<b>NOTES</b>
After changing the oil, operate the winch for 5 minutes to lubricate all parts, without hoisting load.

## [6] OIL REPLACEMENT IN TRAVELLING MOTOR REDUCTION GEAR CASE

### CAUTION

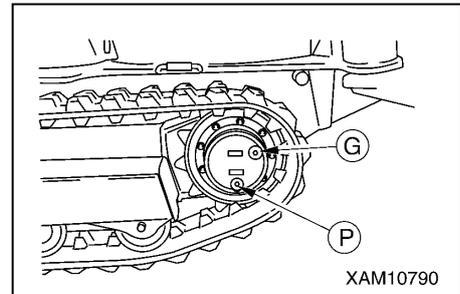
- See “Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the filler plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

- Oil drain pan: A 1-litre container
- Quantity of oil for replacement: 0.33L

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. Move the machine forward and backward to position it immediately above the drain plug (P) of the travelling motor reduction gear case.

### NOTES

This machine is equipped with two drain plugs (P). Either drain plug must be positioned directly underneath the machine.



3. Place a drain pan directly under the lower drain plug (P) to receive drained oil.
4. Remove the upper drain plug (P) and oil inspection plug (G).
5. Remove the lower drain plug (P) slowly to drain the oil, keeping from contact with draining oil.
6. Check the drained oil. If check finds a considerable amount of metal powder and foreign objects, contact our sales service agency.
7. Put in the lower drain plug (P) and secure it.
8. Supply the gear oil to the travelling motor reduction gear case through the upper drain plug hole (P).

### NOTES

Pour in the gear oil until the oil comes out of the oil level check plug (G).

9. Put in the upper drain plug (P) and oil inspection plug (G), and secure them after oil replenishment.

### NOTES

Wipe off the oil completely if spilled.

## 8.12 MAINTENANCE EVERY 2000 HOURS

Perform this maintenance in tandem with maintenance every 30/50/250/500/1000 hours.

### [1] INSPECTION/ADJUSTMENT ENGINE VALVE CLEARANCE

Inspection and adjustment of valve clearance require special tools.

Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection and repair.

### [2] CHECKING ALTERNATOR AND STARTER

#### **CAUTION**

**Inspection every 1000 hours is recommended in case of frequent engine starting.**

There may be a wearing down of the brush and insufficient grease.

Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection and repair.

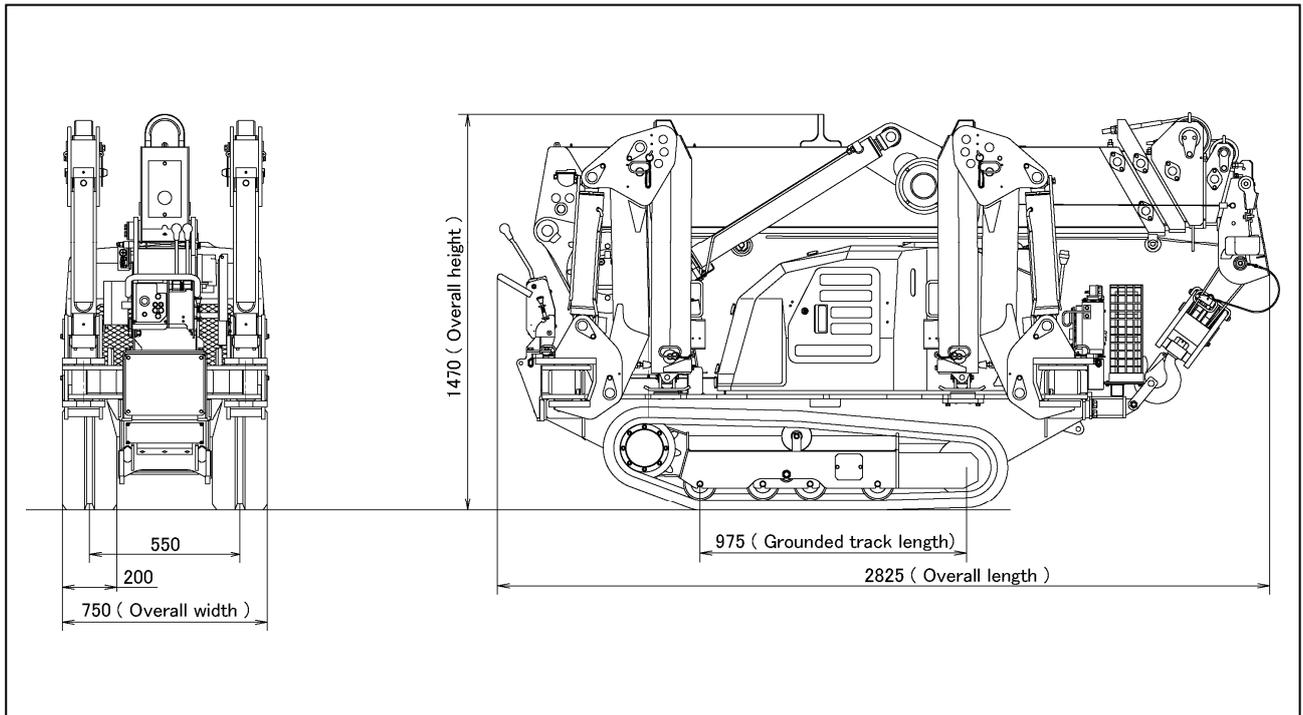
# SPECIFICATIONS

1. SPECIFICATIONS	5-2
2. SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING	5-3
3. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH	5-4
4. RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART	5-5
5. WORKING RANGE AND LIFTING HEIGHT	5-8

# 1. SPECIFICATIONS

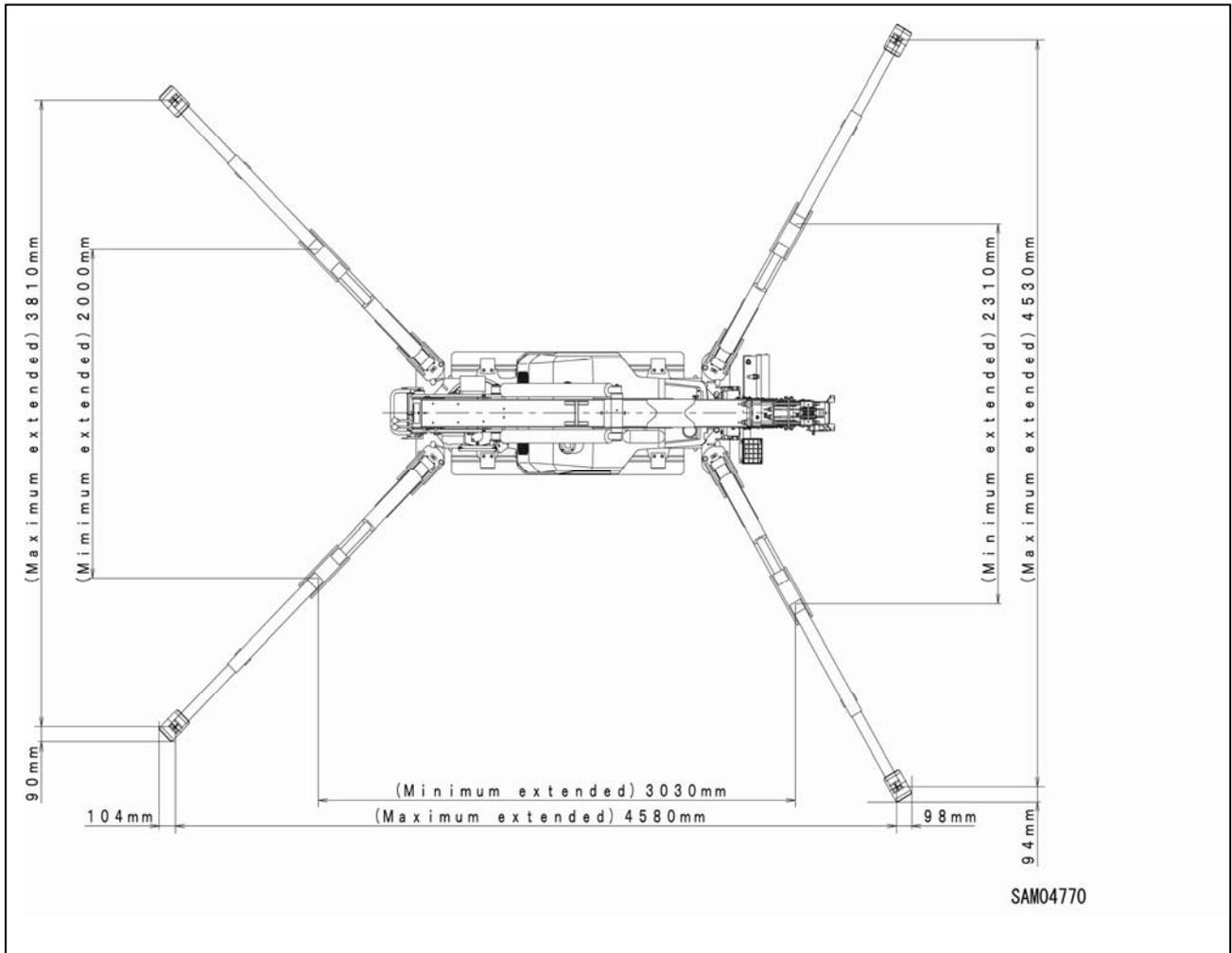
System and Item		MC285C-2
Weight and dimensions	Machine weight	1960kg
	Overall length × width × height	2825mm x 750mm x 1470mm
	Distance between center idler and sprocket	975mm
	Track gauge	550mm
	Width of crawler	200mm
Performance	Crane capacity	2.82t x 1.4m
	Maximum working radius	8.2m
	Maximum lifting height above ground	8.7m
Winch system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven with brake, differential planetary gear type, with counter balance valve(within drum type)
	Hook hoist speed	9.3 m/min (4 layers, 4 parts of line)
	Hoist wire rope	IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 7 mm x 48 m
Telescoping system	Type	Sequential hydraulic cylinders × 2 + wire rope telescoping systems × 2
	Type of boom	Fully automatic 5-section pentagonal telescopic (3 to 5 stage: simultaneous telescoping)
	Boom length	2.535m – 4.075m – 5.575m – 7.075m – 8.575m
	Boom telescoping stroke/ time	6.04 m/22 sec
Boom hoist system	Type	Hydraulic double acting cylinder, direct acting type × 2
	Derricking angle/ time	0 to 80° /14 sec
Slewing system	Type	Swing bearing support, hydraulic motor drive, worm and spur gears, worm self-lock
	Slewing angle/ speed	360° (continuous)/60 sec (1.0 RPM)
Outrigger system	Type	1st stage with flexible stay damper, 2nd stage manual pullout, hydraulic cylinder direct acting type
	Max extended width	(Front) 3810mm x (Right/left) 4580mm x (Rear) 4530mm
Travel system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven, Step-less speed changer
	Travel speed	Forward/backward: 0 – 2.2 km/h
	Grade ability	20°
	Ground pressure	49.3 kPa(0.497kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
Hydraulic system	Hydraulic pump	variable piston pump
	Rated pressure	20.6MPa (210kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
	Hydraulic oil tank capacity	20L
Engine	Model	Yanmar 2TNV70-NMBA
	Type	In-line 2-cylinder, water cooled, 4-cycle diesel
	Displacement	0.569L (569cc)
	Rated output (continuous)	7.4kW/2500min <sup>-1</sup> (10.1PS/2500rpm)
	Fuel tank capacity	Diesel 12L
Battery	Model	55B24R (DC12V x 1 piece)
Safety device	Over hoist detector, over un-winding detector, angle indicator, hydraulic safety valve, wire rope latch, level, machine body inclination alarm, EMO Switch, crane outrigger interlock device, moment limiter, outrigger setting light, working status light	
Classification	Mobile crane ISO4301/2 Group A1	

## 2. SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING



The above figure represents the travelling lever stand upright.

### 3. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH



## 4. RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART

★The Rated total load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook block (30kg) included.

### 4.1 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR 4 FALLS

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.4 or less	2820	3.0 or less	1220	3.6 or less	820	4.0 or less	550
1.50	2520	3.50	970	4.00	740	4.50	400
2.00	1920	4.00	780	4.50	580	5.00	340
2.50	1570	4.50	630	5.00	480	5.50	300
3.00	1220	5.00	530	5.50	430	6.00	270
3.50	970	5.205	530	6.00	380	6.50	230
3.705	920	--	--	6.50	350	7.00	200
--	--	--	--	6.705	330	7.50	180
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	150
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	150

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO OTHER THAN MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.5 or less	1720	3.0 or less	510	3.6 or less	400	4.0 or less	330
2.00	1070	3.50	410	4.00	330	4.50	280
2.50	630	4.00	330	4.50	280	5.00	230
3.00	520	4.50	280	5.00	230	5.50	180
3.50	390	5.00	200	5.50	180	6.00	160
3.705	350	5.205	200	6.00	160	6.50	130
--	--	--	--	6.50	130	7.00	100
--	--	--	--	6.705	120	7.50	80
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	70
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	60

★The Rated total load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook block (30kg) included.

## 4.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR 2 FALLS

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.4 or less	1410	3.0 or less	1220	3.6 or less	820	4.0 or less	550
1.50	1410	3.50	970	4.00	740	4.50	400
2.00	1410	4.00	780	4.50	580	5.00	340
2.50	1410	4.50	630	5.00	480	5.50	300
3.00	1220	5.00	530	5.50	430	6.00	270
3.50	970	5.205	530	6.00	380	6.50	230
3.705	920	--	--	6.50	350	7.00	200
--	--	--	--	6.705	330	7.50	180
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	150
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	150

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO OTHER THAN MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.5 or less	1410	3.0 or less	510	3.6 or less	400	4.0 or less	330
2.00	1070	3.50	410	4.00	330	4.50	280
2.50	630	4.00	330	4.50	280	5.00	230
3.00	520	4.50	280	5.00	230	5.50	180
3.50	390	5.00	200	5.50	180	6.00	160
3.705	350	5.205	200	6.00	160	6.50	130
--	--	--	--	6.50	130	7.00	100
--	--	--	--	6.705	120	7.50	80
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	70
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	60

★The Rated total load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook block (30kg) included.

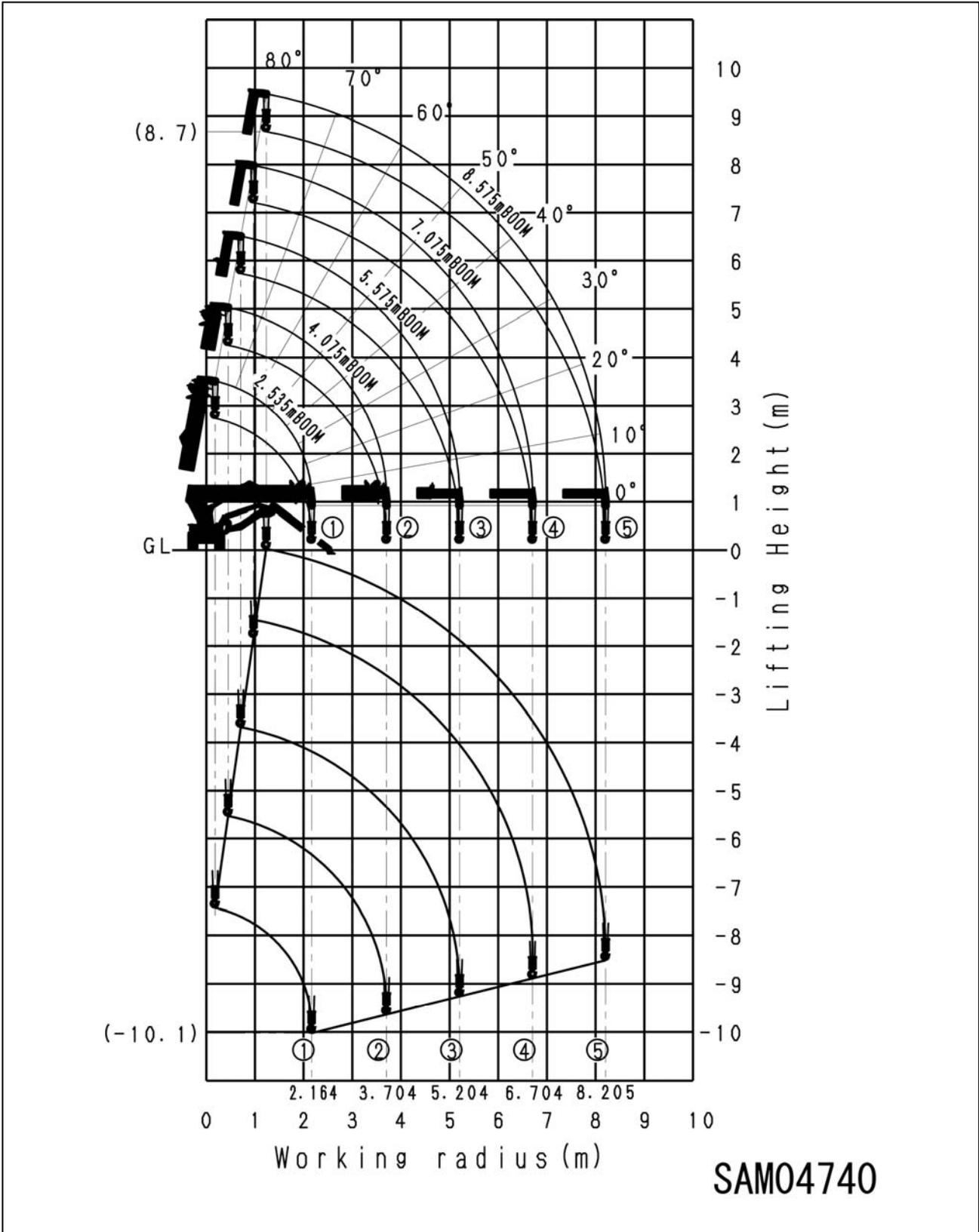
### 4.3 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SINGLE FALL

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.4 or less	710	3.0 or less	710	3.6 or less	710	4.0 or less	550
1.50	710	3.50	710	4.00	710	4.50	400
2.00	710	4.00	710	4.50	580	5.00	340
2.50	710	4.50	630	5.00	480	5.50	300
3.00	710	5.00	530	5.50	430	6.00	270
3.50	710	5.205	530	6.00	380	6.50	230
3.705	710	--	--	6.50	350	7.00	200
--	--	--	--	6.705	330	7.50	180
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	150
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	150

OUTRIGGER EXTENDED TO OTHER THAN MAXIMUM							
2.535m/4.075m BOOM		5.575m BOOM		7.075m BOOM		8.575m BOOM	
Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)	Working radius (m)	Rated total load (kg)
1.5 or less	710	3.0 or less	510	3.6 or less	400	4.0 or less	330
2.00	710	3.50	410	4.00	330	4.50	280
2.50	630	4.00	330	4.50	280	5.00	230
3.00	520	4.50	280	5.00	230	5.50	180
3.50	390	5.00	200	5.50	180	6.00	160
3.705	350	5.205	200	6.00	160	6.50	130
--	--	--	--	6.50	130	7.00	100
--	--	--	--	6.705	120	7.50	80
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.00	70
--	--	--	--	--	--	8.205	60

★The Rated total load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook block (10kg) included.

# 5. WORKING RADIUS AND LIFTING HEIGHT



# REMOTE CONTROL

1. OUTLINE OF REMOTE CONTROLLER	6- 2
2. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS	6- 4
3. LOCATIONS OF SAFETY LABELS	6- 8
4. COMPONENTS OF THE TRANSMITTER	6-10
5. COMPONENTS OF THE RECEIVER	6-15
6. MODE SETTING OF THE TRANSMITTER	6-19
7. CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION	6-27
8. OPERATION	6-38
9. TROUBLE SHOOTING	6-49
10.SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS	6-52

# 1. OUTLINE OF REMOTE CONTROLLER

## 1.1 FEATURE

This system is designed principally for the following purposes:

This Remote Controller includes both Transmitter and Receiver which facilitate remote control of the Crane which is purchased with this device.

This Remote Controller provides operation of the Crane at the most convenient place away from it within a range of the length of the connection cable.

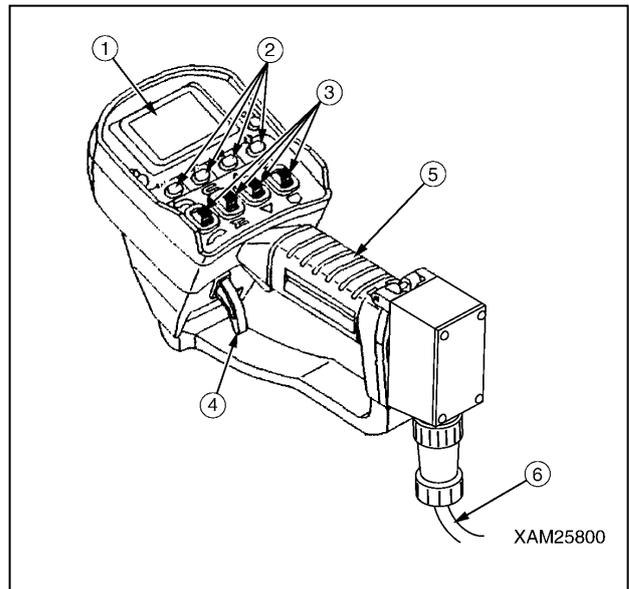
## 1.2 CONFIGURATION

The configuration of this system is as below:

### [1] TRANSMITTER

The Transmitter is equipped with LCD screen (1), six control buttons (2), four operation levers (3), accelerator lever (4), grip (5) and cable connection (6).

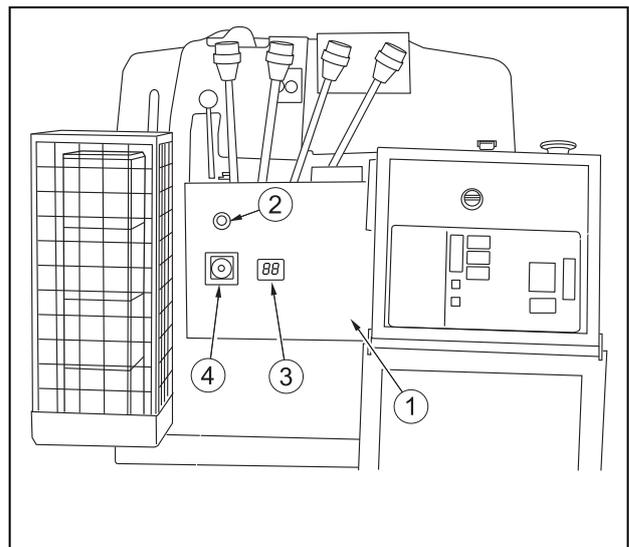
The Transmitter sends signals for crane operations to the Receiver through the connection cable so that remote operation of the Crane can be carried out.



### [2] RECEIVER

The Receiver which is installed in the Crane is equipped with Control box (1), Main switch (2), Monitor display (3), and Cable connector (4), etc.

The Receiver receives operation signals from the Transmitter through the connection cable which controls the Crane.



## 1.3 FUNCTIONS OF REMOTE CONTROL SYSTEM

- The Transmitter may be operated by one hand, enabling the operator to hold or sling the load with the other hand at the same time.
- The Accelerator lever controls the Crane operation speed from stand-by, up to maximum speed.
- The LCD screen of the Transmitter indicates operation status, such as “Crane operating”, “Speed control”, “Outrigger setting” and so on, to provide easy confirmation.

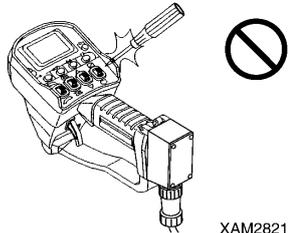
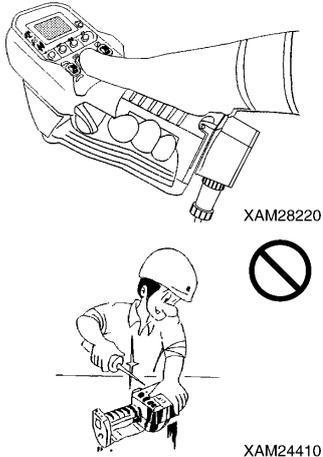
If there is a failure with the Transmitter, the LCD screen will show an error message for easier detection and correction of the fault.

Furthermore, the voice messages will notify the Transmitter conditions or warning alerts.

- In addition to handling the crane by remote control transmitter, manual operation of the console on the crane is advised, depending on the type of operation required.
- The connection via the cable between the Transmitter and Receiver allows secure communication between both.

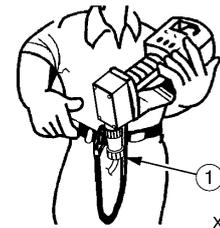
## 2. SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

### 2. 1 FOR SAFETY OPERATIONS

<b>NO MODIFICATION !</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Do not attempt to modify or dismantle the Transmitter and Receiver, or the accessories, as this may cause an electric shock or fire.</li></ul>	 <p>XAM28210</p>
<b>HOLDING THE TRANSMITTER</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The Transmitter is designed for one handed controls. Refer to the figure to the right shows basic usage of the Transmitter. Levers and buttons can be manipulated by the thumb, while the Accelerator lever can be triggered by the forefinger. Other fingers should grab the grip to hold the Transmitter.</li><li>• Always manipulate levers and switches by fingers. Do not attempt to operate it by any other method such as a screwdriver etc. It may make a hole in the Transmitter which allows water to enter inside the body causing problems or failures which could cause a serious hazard.</li></ul>	 <p>XAM28220</p> <p>XAM24410</p>
<b>NO WATER WASHING</b>	
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Always keep the Transmitter unsoiled, and clean it when necessary. Oil or mud on surface may cause miss-operation with slipping hands, which may result a serious hazard.</li><li>• Never attempt to wash the transmitter with water as this allows water to enter inside and may cause problems or failures which could cause a serious hazard.</li><li>• Scrub the Transmitter and Receiver with a damp cloth or diluted detergent to remove the dirt. Avoid alkaline or alcoholic cleaners or sprayer cleaners which deteriorate plastics and produce cracks.</li></ul>	

## NO SHOCK TO THE TRANSMITTER

- While using the Transmitter, always use a hook belt (1) to prevent accidental dropping of the unit.
- Try to avoid needless impact to the Transmitter, such as hitting it on any object.  
As this may result in damage to the enclosure or internal components which may cause a failure or malfunction including electrical shock or other serious hazard.
- In the event of such damages, call us or our agents for service.  
Using a damaged Transmitter will result in miss-operation and may cause an electrical shock or other serious hazard.



XAM28230



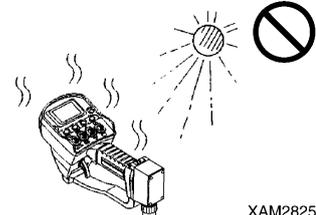
XAM24440

## PRECAUTION FOR OPERATIONS IN COLD SEASONS

- Avoid the use of the Transmitter in a condition where the ambient temperature makes a sudden change or becomes extremely low ( $-10^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below) or cold air is blowing  
Sudden change in temperature may cause dew formation inside the Transmitter and can cause failure or malfunction and leads to a serious hazard.
- In cold conditions, allow sufficient idling prior to starting crane operations as the low temperature causes higher viscosity of the hydraulic fluid. This can result in a delay in crane operations.
- When storing the Transmitter, make sure to keep it away from conditions listed below, as this will reduce the chances of deformity, discolouring or internal damage to components:
  - Extremely low temperature ( $-20^{\circ}\text{C}$  or below) or in direct cold air.
  - Direct sun light.
  - Adjacent to warm air outlets of vehicles.
  - Adjacent to housing heating system.
  - High humidity.



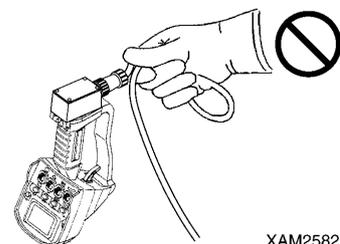
XAM28240



XAM28250

## PRECAUTIONS FOR HANDLING OF CONNECTION CABLE

Do not attempt to hang the Transmitter by the connection cable and fling it around, or bend the cable or thread on it. Poor handling will damage the internal wires or produce other failures.



XAM25820

## 2.2 PRECAUTIONS FOR CRANE OPERATION

### WARNING

As to matters to be taken care of during operation, refer to the section of “SAFETY”, in addition to the following clauses.

### 2.2.1 PRIOR TO STARTING ENGINE

#### INSPECTION PRIOR TO STARTING ENGINE

Prior to starting the machine, perform the opening inspection as specified for this machine. Failure to inspect the machine may result in serious injury or death. Any failure detected in the inspection must be properly corrected.

#### SAFETY MEASURES FOR STARTING ENGINE

- Ensure that no unauthorized personnel or obstacles are in the vicinity of the Crane prior to starting the engine.
- Sound the horn before turning the ignition key.
- Never attempt to short circuit the starter for the purpose of starting the engine as this may cause fire.

#### INSPECTION PRIOR TO TURN ON THE TRANSMITTER

- Check for any dirt, damage or cracks in the enclosure, control levers, operation buttons, or LCD screen.
- Ensure that the Transmitter’s control levers, operation buttons and the Accelerator lever move smoothly and properly.
- Check the connection cable for damage or crack when the Remote Control Transmitter is in use.

#### INSPECTION AFTER TURNING ON THE TRANSMITTER

Ensure that LCD screen of the Transmitter provides correct indications.

- Switch to each operation mode, i.e. CRANE MODE and OUTRIGGER MODE, then check that LCD screen displays proper indications when each lever and button is manipulated. Furthermore, verify that each applicable value of load in the Transmitter is identical to that of the Moment limiter display.

#### INSPECTION PRIOR TO TURNING ON THE RECEIVER

- Check for any dirt, damage or cracks in the Receiver’s Control box, Main switch and Monitor display etc.
- Ensure that the Receiver’s Main switch moves smoothly and properly.

## 2.2.2 SUBSEQUENT TO STARTING ENGINE

### FUNCTION CHECK OF OUTRIGGER MODE BY THE TRANSMITTER, AND NOTICES FOR OPERATION

- Switch the operation mode to the “OUTRIGGER MODE” and confirm that the mode is switched correctly.
- Activate “Start/Reset” button to assure that the engine starts correctly.
- Activate “Stop/EMO” button to assure the engine stops correctly.
- Operate the outrigger control switches to assure that the corresponding outrigger works correctly.
- Check that the position pins for outriggers and retainers are securely fixed.

### FUNCTION CHECK OF CRANE MODE BY THE TRANSMITTER AND NOTICES FOR OPERATION

- Before switching the operation mode to “CRANE MODE” make sure all the outriggers are extended and securely placed on the ground.
- Switch the operation mode to the “CRANE MODE” and confirm that the mode is switched correctly.
- Activate levers for crane operations and assure that the Crane functions correctly.
- Always refer to the portable rated total load chart and avoid over-loaded operations.
- Activate the control levers and Accelerator lever of the Transmitter slowly at all times.

## 2.2.3 TERMINATING THE OPERATION

### PRECAUTIONS FOR TERMINATING THE OPERATION BY THE TRANSMITTER

- Before stowing the boom, switch the operation mode to “CRANE MODE” and confirm that the mode is switched correctly.
- Before stowing the outriggers, ensure that the boom and the hook is stowed in the correct positions.
- Before stowing the outriggers, switch the operation mode to “OUTRIGGER MODE” and confirm that the mode is switched correctly.
- When all the operation of the Transmitter is complete, always turn OFF the power of both the Transmitter and Receiver.
- Under no condition will the Transmitter be ON unless the Crane is in operation, otherwise, unexpected touching or contact of operation levers or buttons of the Transmitter by any other object, may cause un-desired motion of the Crane and a serious accident such as tipping or collision may occur.
- Inspection may require the Transmitter to be turned ON, but as a precaution make sure to stop the engine and turn the Receiver OFF.

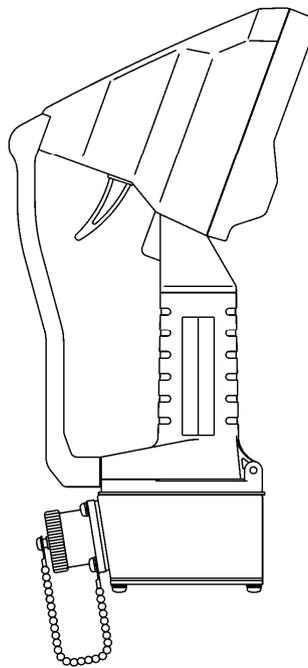
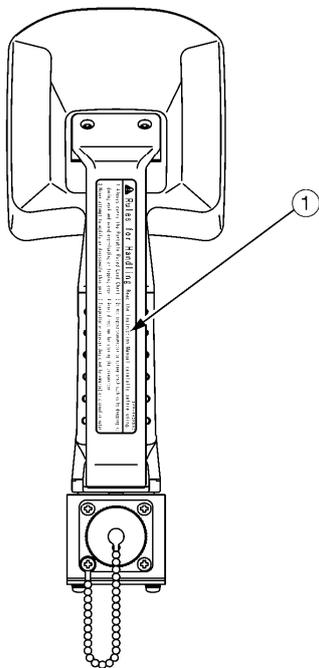
### 3. LOCATIONS OF SAFETY LABELS

Keep safety labels visible at all times.

When labels come off, stick them on again or replace with new ones.

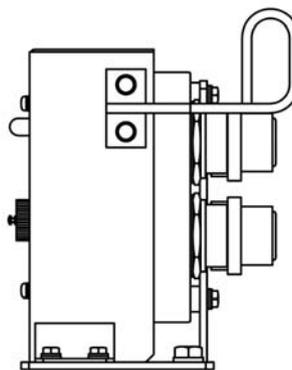
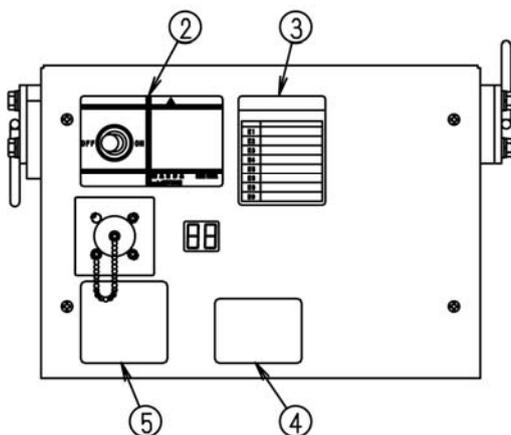
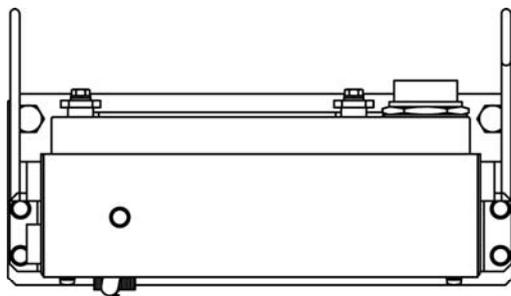
In addition to safety labels shown below, several other labels are requisite. Treat them in the same manner.

#### Transmitter



XAM28260

#### Receiver

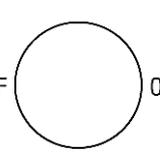


SAM04460E

(1) Precautions for remote control (Transmitter) (103-4592600)

<b>NOTICE</b>	
<b>RULES FOR HANDLING</b> Read the Operations Manual carefully before using.	
<p>1. Always carry the Portable Total Rated Load Chart during work and avoid over-loading or tipping over.</p> <p>2. Never attempt to modify or disassemble this unit.</p>	<p>3. Do not expose transmitter to strong shock such as dropping it.</p> <p>4. Avoid direct sun for storing the transmitter.</p> <p>5. Transmitter or receiver should not be immersed or cleaned in water.</p>
<small>103-4592600</small>	

(2) Caution for remote-control receiver (Receiver) (102-4598700)

MAIN SWITCH	NOTICE
<p>OFF  ON</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Be sure to read the operation manual before operating this machine.</li> <li>• Modification or disassembly of the machine is strictly prohibited.</li> <li>• Turn off the remote control power supply when it is not in use.</li> <li>• Do not clean unit with direct stream of water or immerse in water.</li> <li>• Cover the receptacle with watertight cap supplied whenever remote control is not in use.</li> </ul>
<b>RECEPTACLE</b>	<p> <b>MITSUBISHI</b> REMOTE CONTROL</p> <p>Model: MCT310N      102-4598700</p>

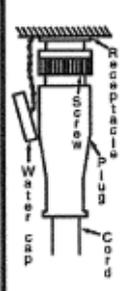
(3) Error Codes List (Receiver) (102-4598800)

<b>ERROR CODES</b>	
If a problem is detected one of the following codes will be shown.	
Error Code	Trouble
E1	Emergency stop activated.
E2	Receiver or Transmitter unit fault.
E3	Transmitter internal cable broken.
E4	For starting, transmitter volume position incorrect.
E5	For resetting, transmitter volume position incorrect.
E6	Problem with receiver EEPROM.
E9	For starting, transmitter switch position incorrect.
E0	Transmission error.
<small>102-4598800</small>	

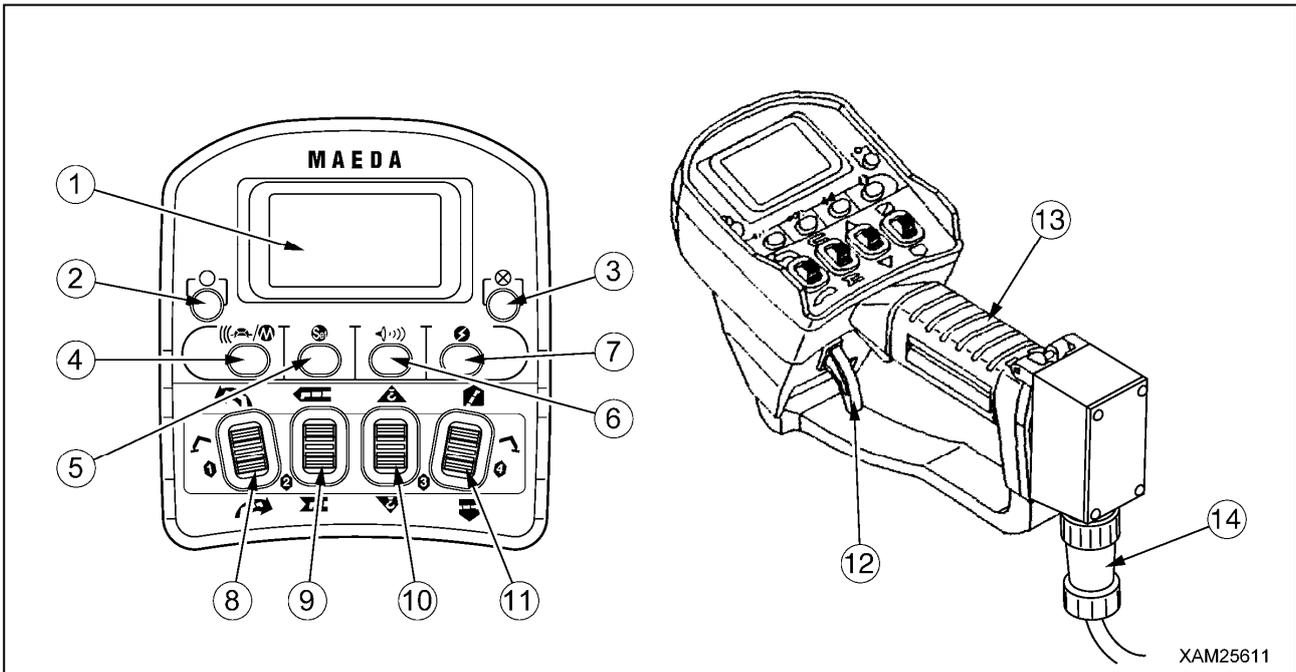
(4) Do Not Pressure Wash (Receiver) (350-4539700)

**DO NOT  
PRESSURE  
WASH!**

(5) Remote Control Receiver plug caution (Receiver) (103-4591500)

<b>NOTICE</b>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• To insert plug, hold it in line with receptacle guide, push it in and tighten screw.</li> <li>• To pull plug out, do not pull cord, but pull the plug itself. After removing plug, be sure to cover receptacle with water cap.</li> </ul>
<small>103-4591500</small>	

## 4. COMPONENTS OF THE TRANSMITTER



- |                        |   |
|------------------------|---|
| (1) LCD Screen         | (8) Slewing/No.1 Outrigger Operation Lever                    |
| (2) Start/Reset Button | (9) Boom Telescoping/No.2 Outrigger Operation Lever           |
| (3) Stop/EMO Button    | (10) Hook Raising and Lowering/No.3 Outrigger Operation Lever |
| (4) Speed/Mode Button  | (11) Boom derricking/No.4 Outrigger Operation Lever           |
| (5) Setting Button     | (12) Accelerator Lever  |
| (6) Horn Button        | (13) Grip   |
| (7) Power Switch       | (14) Connection Cable   |

### CAUTION

The remote control system provides the following safety functions:

- **Abnormal Signal Detector Circuit**

When the Main switch of the Receiver is turned ON, this circuit checks the dispatch of Crane operation signals for 3 to 4 seconds. Thus, the Crane will not be immediately ready for operations.

When dispatch of any crane operation signals are noticed, power will automatically turn OFF and the Crane stops.

To resume, push the Reset button of the Transmitter.

- **Automatic Power OFF Circuit**

Power of the Transmitter will automatically turn OFF when the remote control of crane operations is discontinued for the specific time.

To resume, push the Power switch of the Transmitter to ON.

- **Voltage Drop Limiter (for the Receiver)**

The Receiver will automatically shut down in the event whereby the voltage of the battery drops below DC 9 volts.

This prevents malfunctions of the Crane due to voltage drop and the operation will resume automatically when the voltage is restored to DC 9 volts or higher.

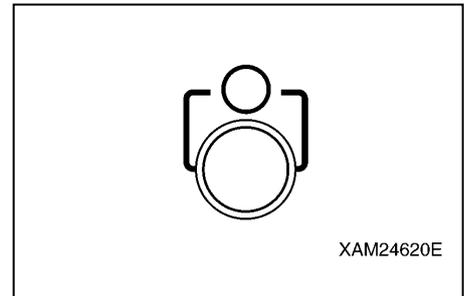
## [1] LCD SCREEN

The LCD screen displays the status of the Transmitter in operation, the established values for each mode, or error messages by symbols, comments or signs.

## [2] START/RESET BUTTON

This button has two usages:

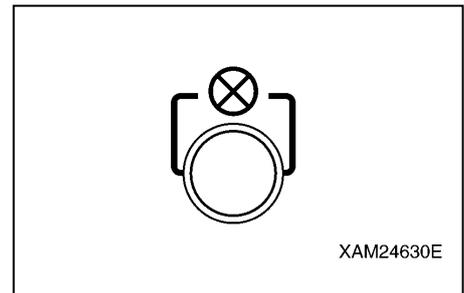
- Push button to start the engine.
- This button resets the “Emergency Stop” and “Abnormal Signal Detect” conditions.



## [3] STOP/EMO BUTTON

This button has two usages:

- Push button to stop the engine.
- In an emergency event where the Crane does not stop by normal operations, this button provides the forced stop function.

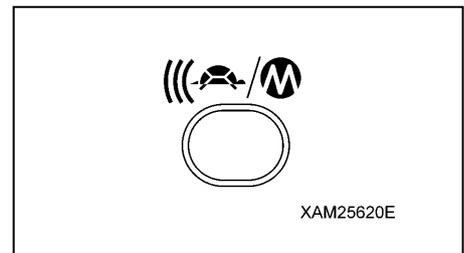


## [4] SPEED/MODE BUTTON

This button also provides two usages as below:

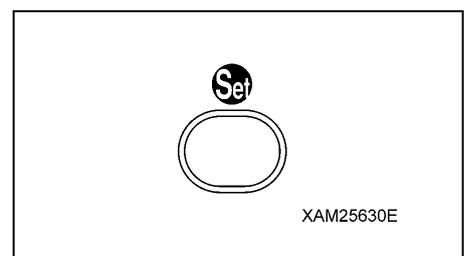
- During crane operations, to push this button decelerates the operation speed.
- Whilst the crane operation is paused, this button provides the selection of the Transmitter operation modes.

The current active mode will be displayed in the LCD screen.



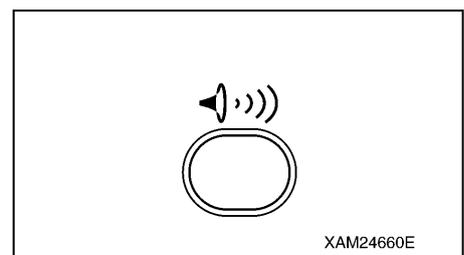
## [5] SETTING BUTTON

- For each of the setting modes, use this button to select one from the menu on the LCD screen.



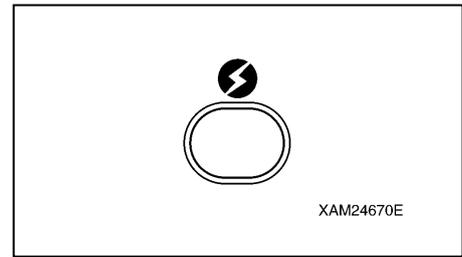
## [6] HORN BUTTON

Push this button to sound the horn.



### [7] POWER SWITCH

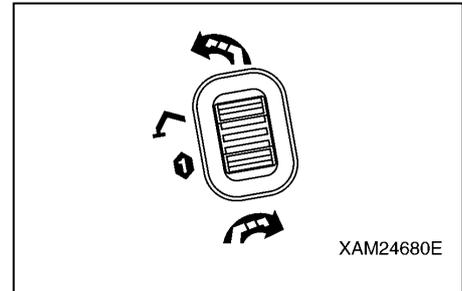
Push button to switch Transmitter power ON and OFF. Each push will turn ON or OFF alternately.



### [8] SLEWING/No.1 OUTRIGGER OPERATION LEVER

This operation lever functions in two ways:

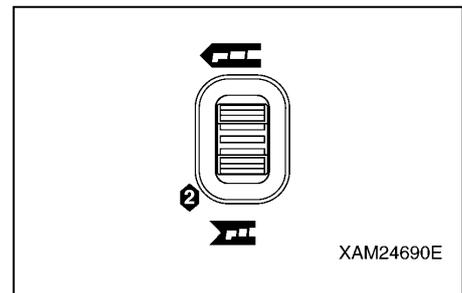
1. In the CRANE MODE, this lever controls slew of the Crane structure:
  - Counterclockwise: Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Clockwise: Push the lower end of the lever.
2. In the OUTRIGGER MODE, this lever controls extension (setting) and retraction (stowing) of either only No.1 or all of the outriggers at once:
  - Retraction (stowing): Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Extension (setting): Push the lower end of the lever.



### [9] BOOM TELESCOPING/No.2 OUTRIGGER OPERATION LEVER

This operation lever functions in two ways:

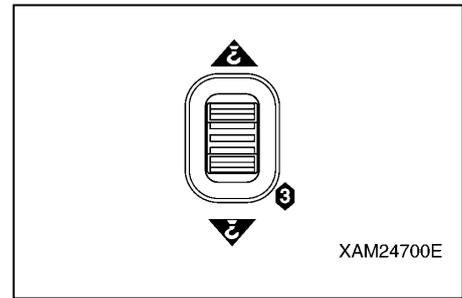
1. In the CRANE MODE, this lever controls the telescopic boom length:
  - Boom extension: Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Boom retraction: Push the lower end of the lever.
2. In the OUTRIGGER MODE, this lever controls extension (setting) and retraction (stowing) of either only No.2 or all of the outriggers at once:
  - Retraction (stowing): Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Extension (setting): Push the lower end of the lever.



### [10] HOOK RAISING AND LOWERING/No.3 OUTRIGGER OPERATION LEVER

This operation lever functions in three ways:

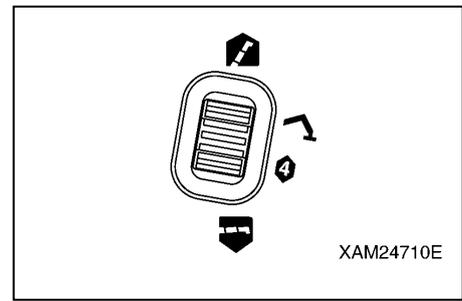
- In the CRANE MODE, this lever controls raising and lowering the hook:
  - Raise: Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Lower: Push the lower end of the lever.
- In the OUTRIGGER MODE, this lever controls extension (setting) and retraction (stowing) of either only No.3 or all of the outriggers at once:
  - Retraction (Stowing): Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Extension (setting): Push the lower end of the lever.
- In the A MODE and OPERATION MODE, this lever is used as a cursor key by “▲ and ▼”.



### [11] BOOM DERRICKING/No.4 OUTRIGGER OPERATION LEVER

This operation lever functions in two ways:

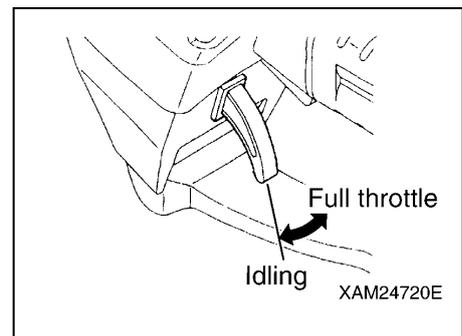
- In the CRANE MODE, this lever controls the boom derricking angle:
  - Boom raising: Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Boom lowering: Push the lower end of the lever.
- In the OUTRIGGER MODE, this lever controls extension (setting) and retraction (stowing) of either only No.4 or all of the outriggers at once:
  - Retraction (stowing): Push the upper end of the lever.
  - Neutral: Release your finger from the lever.
  - Extension (setting): Push the lower end of the lever.



### [12] ACCELERATOR LEVER

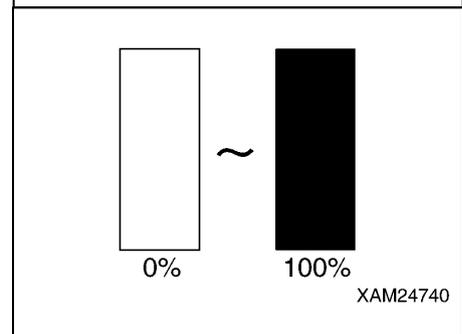
The Accelerator lever controls the flow rate of the control valves and the engine speed or output.

- Low idling: Release your finger from the Accelerator lever.
- Full throttle: Squeeze the accelerator lever to the full.



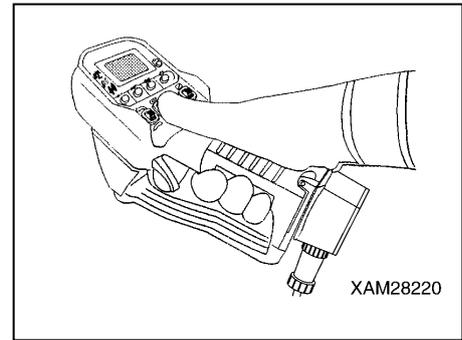
#### NOTES

- The Accelerator lever itself cannot control either flow rate of the control valves or the engine speed when it is manipulated alone. When used in conjunction with any of the other operation levers, the Accelerator lever launches the specified operation of the Crane in the idling state of the engine, then when it is manipulated further the engine speeds up. This is progressive until the full throttle position is reached.
- The Accelerator lever does not control outriggers.
- The acceleration rate is always indicated in the right part of the LCD screen during crane operations. (See right-hand figure.)



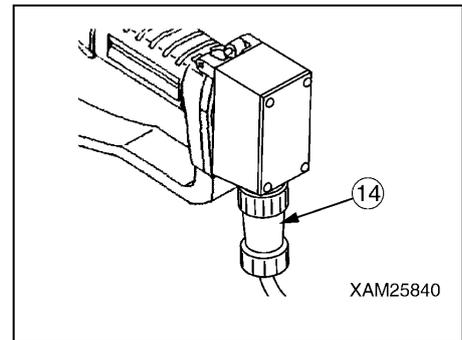
### [13] GRIP

Primarily the Transmitter is designed for one-handed control. Levers and buttons can be manipulated by the thumb, while the accelerator lever can be triggered by the index finger. Other fingers should grab the grip to hold the Transmitter.



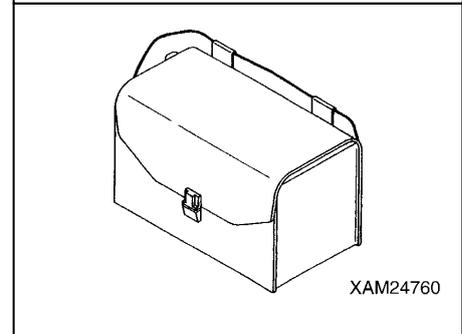
### [14] CONNECTION CABLE

The connection cable links the Transmitter and Receiver. Before and after the operation, always check this connection cable for any cracks, damage, or bending. Also check the receptacle for any damage.



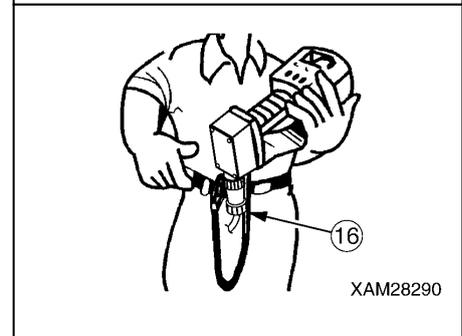
### [15] STORAGE CASE

The Storage case is a compact bag to protect the Transmitter. Ensure that the power of the Transmitter is OFF before storing it in the case.



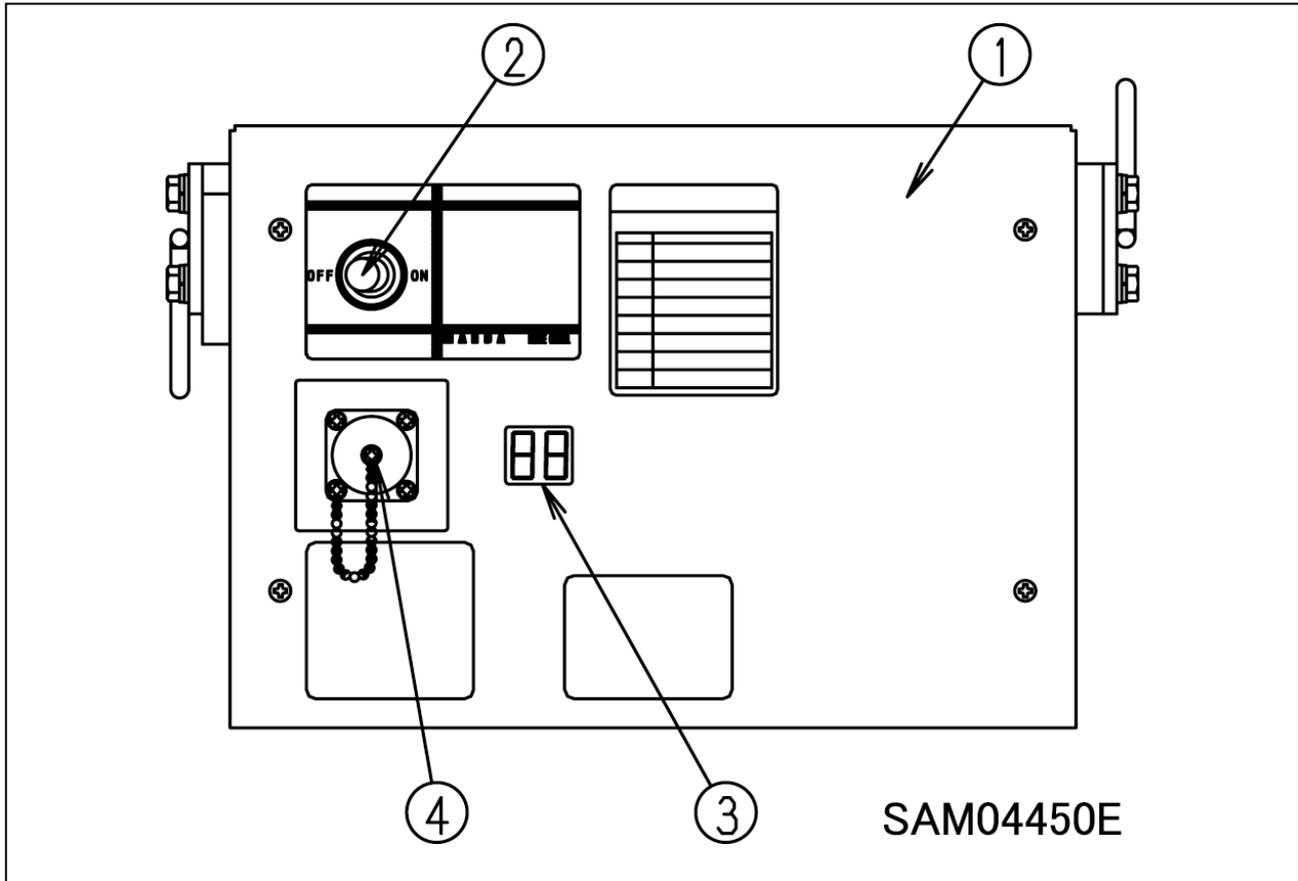
### [16] HOOK BELT

During the operation, this belt prevents the Transmitter from falling down to the ground, when the operator drops it by mistake. Hook one end of the hook belt (16) to the Transmitter and attach another end to the operator's waist belt etc.



## 5. COMPONENTS OF THE RECEIVER

### 5.1 COMPONENTS OF THE RECEIVER



(1) Control Box  
(2) Main Switch

(3) Monitor Display  
(4) Cable Connector

### CAUTION

The remote control system provides the following safety functions:

- **Abnormal Signal Detector Circuit**

When the Main switch of the Receiver is turned ON, this circuit checks the dispatch of crane operations signals for 3 to 4 seconds. Thus, the Crane will not be immediately ready for operations.

When dispatch of any crane operation signals are noticed, power will automatically turn OFF and the Crane stops. To resume, push the Reset button of the Transmitter.

- **Automatic Power OFF circuit**

Power of the Transmitter will automatically turn OFF when the remote control of the crane operation is discontinued for a specific time.

To resume, push the Power switch of the Transmitter to ON.

- **Voltage Drop Limiter (for the Receiver)**

The Receiver will automatically shut down in the event whereby the voltage of the battery drops below DC 9 volts.

This prevents malfunctions of the Crane due to voltage drop and the operation will resume automatically when the voltage is restored to DC 9 volts or higher.

## [1] CONTROL BOX

The Control box contains the receiver devices and control devices.  
Never attempt to dismantle this Control box.

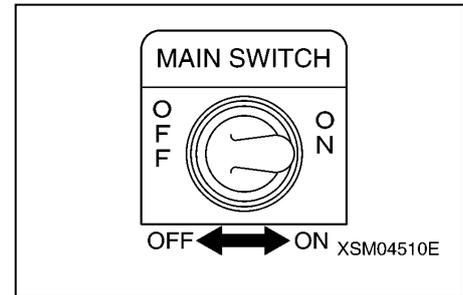
## [2] MAIN SWITCH

The Main switch is a toggle switch to turn the receiver ON or OFF.

- ON: Turn the toggle to ON to start the Receiver.
- OFF: Turn the toggle to OFF to terminate the Receiver.

### CAUTION

- Before starting the engine, always turn this Main switch of the Receiver to OFF.
- Where the remote control is not in use, always turn the main switch of the Receiver to OFF.



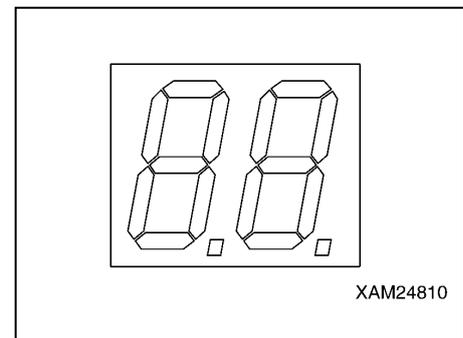
## [3] MONITOR DISPLAY

In the event that the abnormal signal detector of the controller serves, the Monitor display indicates error codes.

### CAUTION

In the event that the monitor display (3) indicates an error code, settle the error as follows:

1. Push the Reset button of the Transmitter.
  2. When the practice as above 1 results in another error code, turn the Receiver OFF, then start it again.
  3. When the practice as above 2 results in a further error code, it is suspected that the Transmitter or Receiver has faults; contact us or our agents for services.
- ★ For detail of error codes, refer to “10. TROUBLE SHOOTING”.

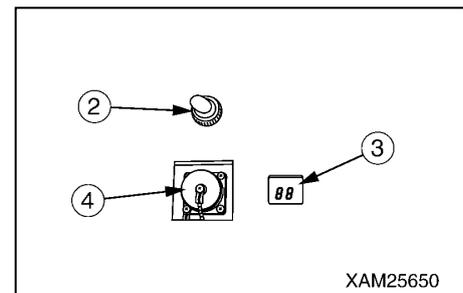


## [4] CABLE CONNECTOR

Connect the connection cable from the Transmitter, here.

### CAUTION

- Before attaching the connection cable to the cable connector (4), always confirm that the Main switch (2) is in the OFF position. After insertion, secure the plug with the screw.
- Always apply the water proof cap while the remote control is not in use.
- In the condition where the remote control is not provided, this cable connector is redundant. Always keep the water proof cap attached.



## 5.2 FUSE IN THE RECEIVER

### ⚠ CAUTION

- For any tests or replacement of a fuse, always turn OFF the Main switch of the Control box, before removing it.
- The fuse must be replaced with the same type of glass tube fuses, and of the same rating.

### CAUTION

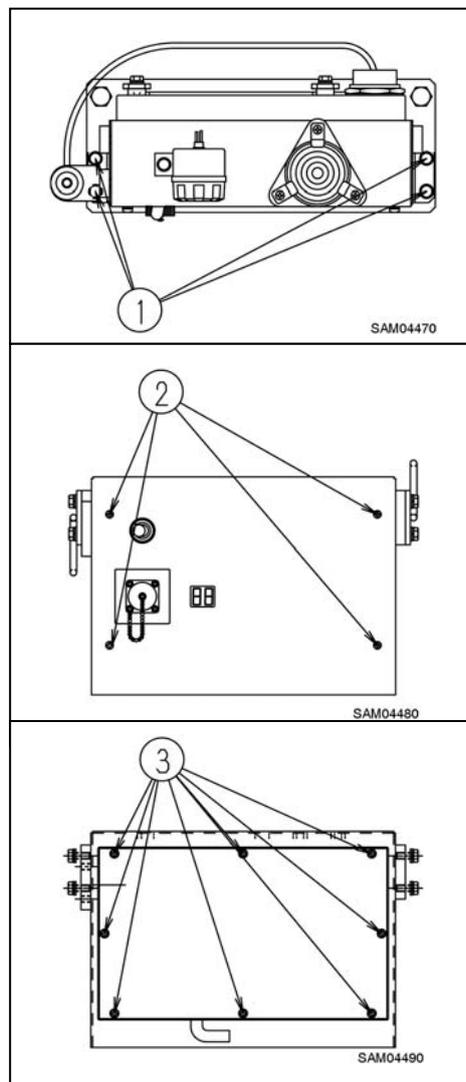
A fuse is inserted in the (+) line of the main power supply of the Receiver as a protective circuit of internal devices and prevents circuits from burning out.

- A glass tube fuse is employed. In the event where the fuse is corroded and shows white dust, or when a loose condition is recognized, always replace it with a new one.
- When the fuse is blown, always to examine the circuit for the cause and repair it before replacing the fuse.
- The fuse must be replaced with the same type of glass tube fuses, and of the same rating.

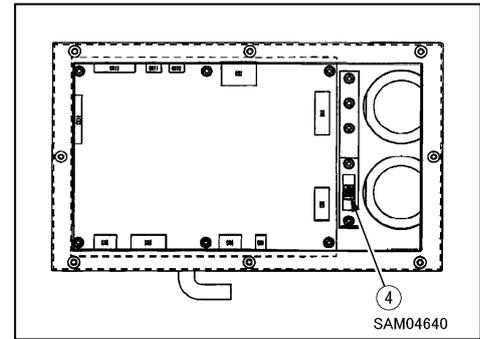
The fuse is placed inside the Receiver.

Test and replacement of the fuse shall be practiced as follows:

1. Remove 4 bolts (1) securing the receiver.
2. Remove 4 screws (2), and detach the receiver cover.
3. Remove 8 screws (3), and take off the internal cover.



4. Insert a new fuse or the examined fuse to its original position.



## [2] INSERTION OF A FUSE

After the fuse is examined or replaced, restore the Receiver by following the previous steps in reverse order.

### CAUTION

- Care should be exercised so that the cover of the Receiver does not catch wires when it is reattached.

#### [Fuse class]

Type : Grass tube fuse

Rating: 10A

## 6. MODE SETTING OF THE TRANSMITTER

This device provides the “A MODE” in which the initial values of the Transmitter are established, the “OUTRIGGER MODE” in which the outriggers are set or stowed, and the “CRANE MODE” where the Crane is operated. This device is designed to switch to the applicable mode for the operation by the Transmitter.

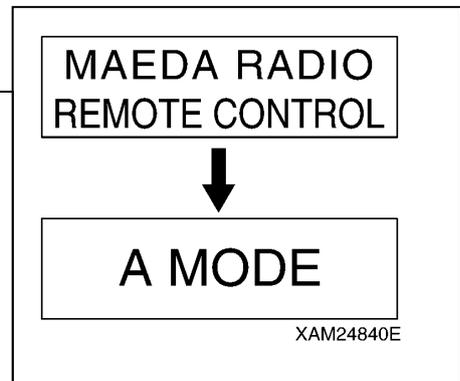
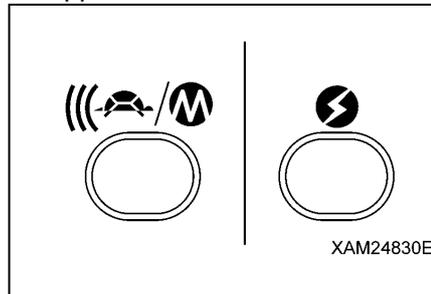
### 6.1 A MODE

#### ⚠ WARNING

- To perform A Mode setting, turn the starter switch ON in the machine body first, set the Travelling lever stand to "Crane Operation" Position next, then turn the main switch of the Receiver to ON.
- Before the setting of values for A MODE, ensure that “A MODE” is correctly indicated in the LCD screen. Otherwise, un-expected motion of the Crane may result in a serious accident, due to entry of values in the other mode by mistake.

#### 6.1.1 OPENING A MODE SCREEN

Push the Speed/Mode button and Power switch jointly for 2 seconds. The message “A MODE” appears on the LCD screen for 2 seconds.

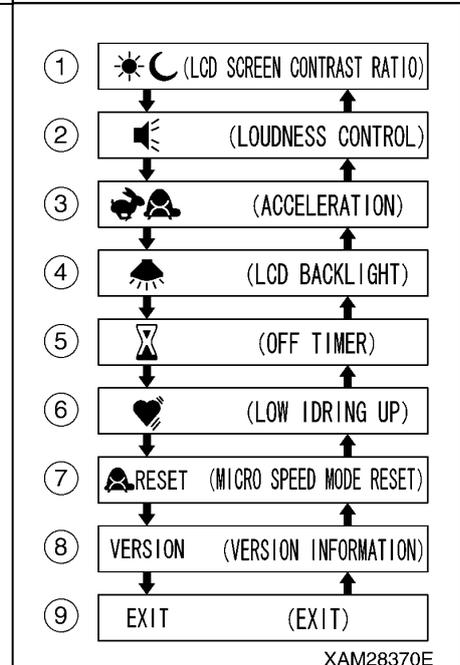


#### 6.1.2 MESSAGES IN THE A MODE SCREEN

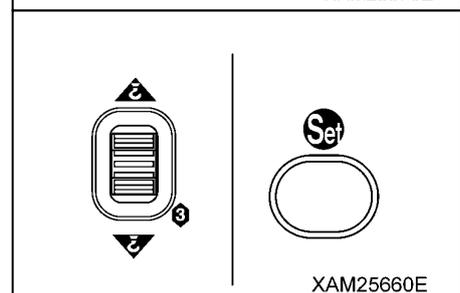
Refer to the figure on the right for the “A MODE” screen:

It contains eight function items ((1) to (8)) and the Exit command ((9)).

NOTES	
In the “A MODE” following applicable items are adjustable, as required:	
(1)	“Contrast ratio” of LCD screen
(2)	“Loudness control”
(3)	The “Engine speed limit”, controllable by the Accelerator lever.
(4)	LCD backlight, “Time for lighting, until the auto-cut”.
(5)	“Auto Shut-OFF time” of the Transmitter power.
(6)	“Low idling rate” of the engine. (Idling only while the crane operation levers are manipulated.)
(7)	Reset of “user values” by the speed set-up mode.
(8)	Version information of the Transmitter hardware.



To switch the function item to another, or to change the setting value of the function, use the Hook raising and lowering lever. Then, to fix the value in the function, push the Setting button.



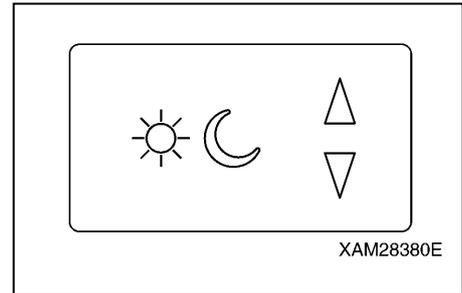
## [1] LCD SCREEN CONTRAST RATIO

### CAUTION

Adjust the brightness and darkness settings on the LCD screen if operations are illegible.

Adjust the contrast ratio of the LCD screen:

- Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever.
  - To darken: Push the upper end of the Hook raising and lowering lever.
  - To lighten: Push the lower end of the Hook raising and lowering lever.
- When the desired contrast is obtained, push the Setting button. The setting condition will then be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



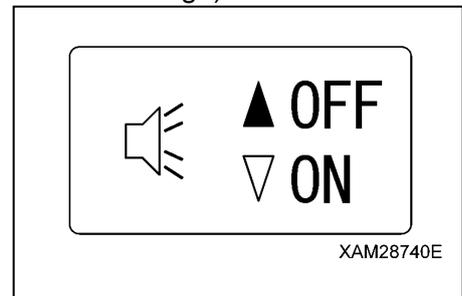
## [2] LOUDNESS CONTROL (available only for units with optional voice message)

Select either to use or to cancel the voice message.

- Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select "ON" or "OFF".

When the voice message is required, select "ON", otherwise, select "OFF" to cancel it.

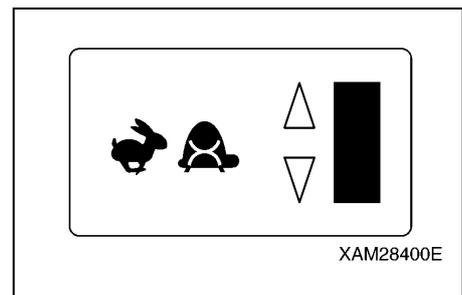
The factory setting for this function is "OFF".
- When the mode of the voice message is determined, push the Setting button. The setting condition will then be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



## [3] ACCELERATION

Adjust the engine speed limit, controllable by the Accelerator lever:

- Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever. When all the bars light, the speed limit is at maximum, otherwise, when the all are OFF, it is at minimum.
- When the suitable rev limit is obtained, push the Setting button. The value will then be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



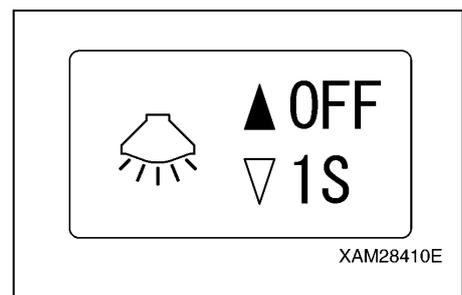
## [4] LCD BACKLIGHT

Adjust the length of time in which the LCD backlight is lit, after your finger is released from each lever.

- Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select the preferred time.

The elapse time adjust options are: OFF, 1 sec., 3 sec., or 4 sec.

The factory setting for this function is "1 sec".
- When the desired time is obtained, push the Setting button. The elapse time will then be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



## [5] OFF TIMER

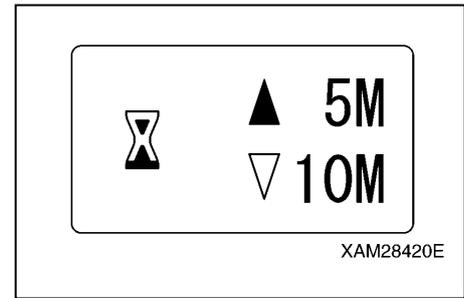
Adjust the Auto shut-OFF time of the Transmitter power.

1. Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select the preferred time.

The Auto shut-OFF adjusts options are: 5 min., 10 min., or 15min.

The factory setting for this function is "5 min".

2. When the desired time is obtained, push the Setting button. The time will then be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



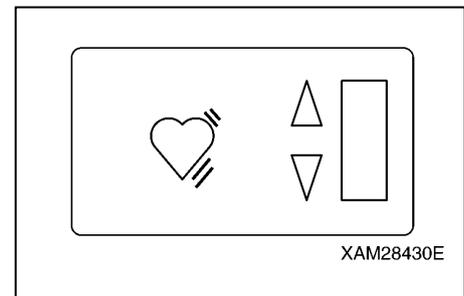
## [6] LOW IDLING UP

### CAUTION

**The low idling rate regulated by the idling-up function is valid only during crane operation when levers are manipulated. Once the lever is released, the low idling rate is reset to the normal rate.**

Adjust the engine's low idling rate to higher than the normal rate, whilst the crane operation levers are manipulated.

1. Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever. When all the bars light, the idling up is in the maximum, otherwise, when the all are OFF, the idling up is cancelled.
2. When the suitable idling up rate is obtained, push the Setting button. The value obtained in step 1 shown above will be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



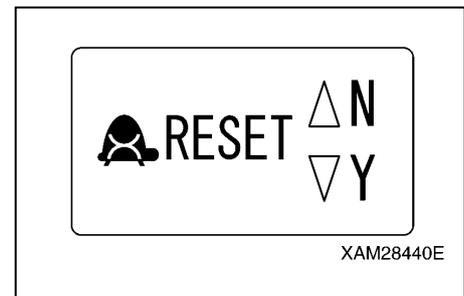
## [7] MICRO SPEED MODE RESET

Select either to reset or preserve the value at the micro speed mode.

1. Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select "N" or "Y".

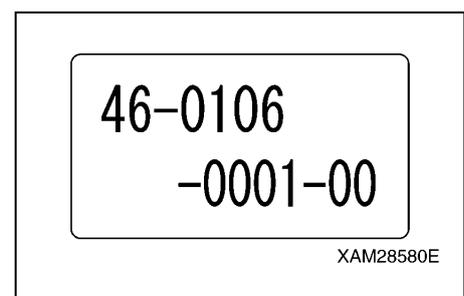
To reset, select "Y", otherwise, select "N" to preserve.

2. Whether reset is fixed or not, push the Setting button. The status in step 1 shown above will be fixed and the display returns to the "A MODE" screen.



## [8] VERSION INFORMATION

Push the Setting button, so that version information of the Transmitter hardware is displayed. Another push of the same button makes the display return to the "A MODE" screen.

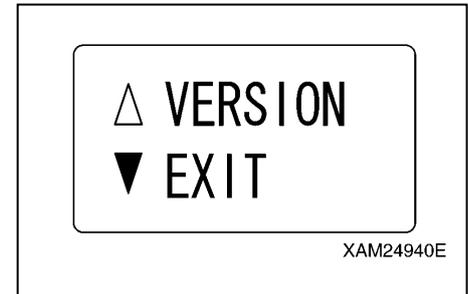


## [9] EXIT

### CAUTION

Once setting-up the desired function items are completed, do not forget to practice the termination procedure, outlined below. Otherwise, when this process is not correctly terminated, the latest setting will not become valid.

1. Once setting-up the desired function items are completed, ensure that the display has returned to the "A MODE" screen.
2. Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select "EXIT".
3. Push the Setting button, which will terminate the "A MODE" and turn the mode to the "CRANE MODE".



### 6.1.3 AN EXAMPLE FOR SETTING IN THE A MODE

Hereunder is a procedure to change the time of the "OFF timer", from "5 minutes" of the factory setting, to 10 minutes:

1. Use the Hook raising and lowering lever and shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) to the side of the function item to be changed.

2. When the cursor appears at the side of the "OFF timer", push the Setting button.

Now, the "OFF timer" is selected and the cursor (▲) appears next to "5 mins", as the current value.

3. Use the Hook raising and lowering lever so that the cursor (▼) comes to the side of "10 mins", then push the Setting button.

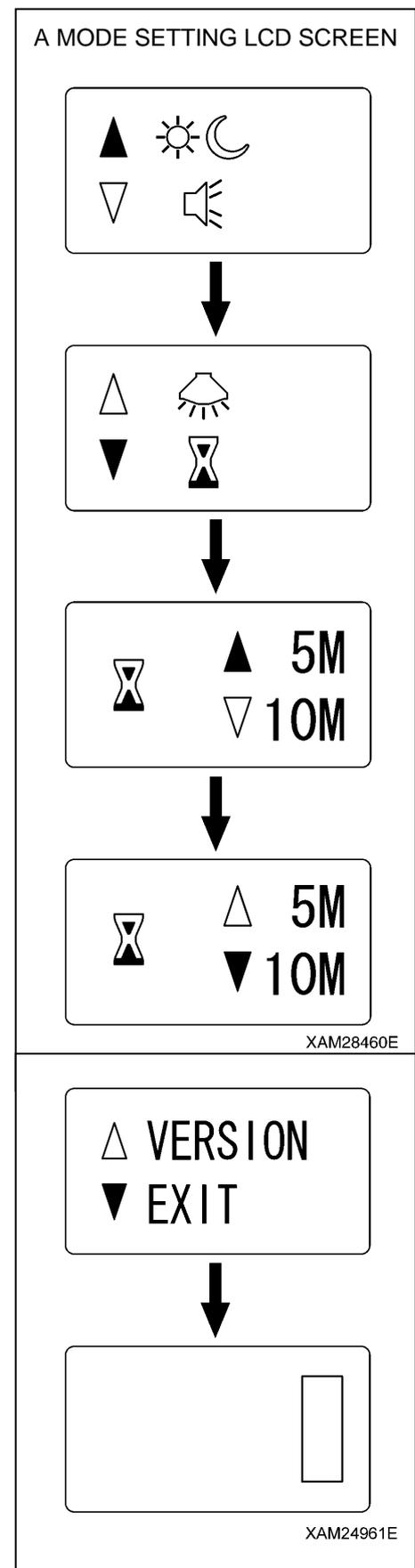
Now, the "OFF timer" setting is 10 mins.

4. Shift the cursor (▲ or ▼) using the Hook raising and lowering lever and select "EXIT", then push the Setting button.

Now the setting mode changes from the "A MODE" to the "CRANE MODE".

#### CAUTION

- Once setting-up the desired function item are completed, do not forget to practice the termination procedure, outlined above. Otherwise, when this process is not correctly terminated, the latest setting will not be valid.
- Change of the other function item setting is available by the same procedure. In such event, correctly exit from the "A MODE", without fail.



## 6.2 PROCEDURE IN THE OPERATION MODE

### CAUTION

When the Main switch of the Receiver is turned ON, its abnormal signal detector automatically starts. Do not use levers, buttons or the Accelerator lever for 3 – 4 seconds.

### NOTES

- For changes between the modes, always turn OFF the power, once, then push the Power button again to power ON.
- While using a mode other than the “CRANE MODE”, when you turn OFF the power by the Power switch and turn it ON, again (i.e., you keep waiting for 2 seconds or more), the mode is automatically set to “CRANE MODE”.  
When you want to continue the operation in the previous mode, call the appropriate mode, again.

### 6.2.1 CALL OUT CRANE MODE

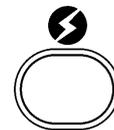
1. Push the Power button to turn ON the Transmitter.

The “Crane mark” is displayed in the LCD screen for about 2 seconds.

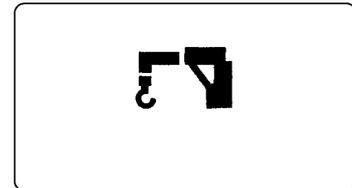
#### NOTES

In case the power is already ON, turn OFF once, and then push the Power button ON again.

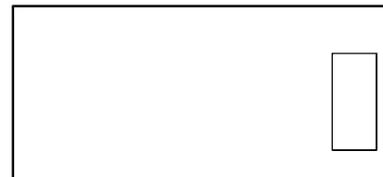
2. When the “Crane mark” in the LCD screen disappears in 2 seconds, the “CRANE MODE” is automatically called out.



XAM24670E



XAM24980E



XAM24991

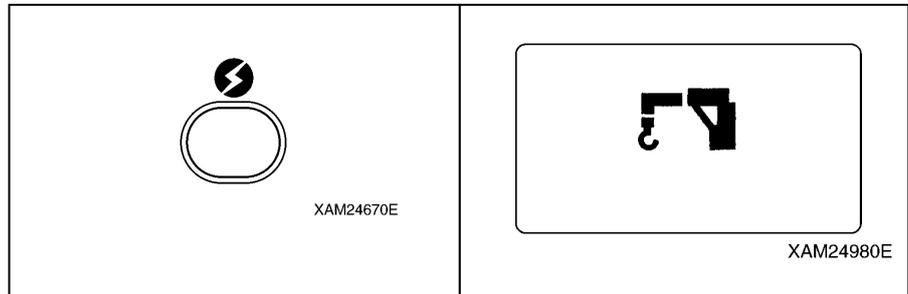
## 6.2.2 CALL OUT OUTRIGGER MODE

1. Push the Power button to turn ON the Transmitter.

The “Crane mark” is displayed in the LCD screen for about 2 seconds.

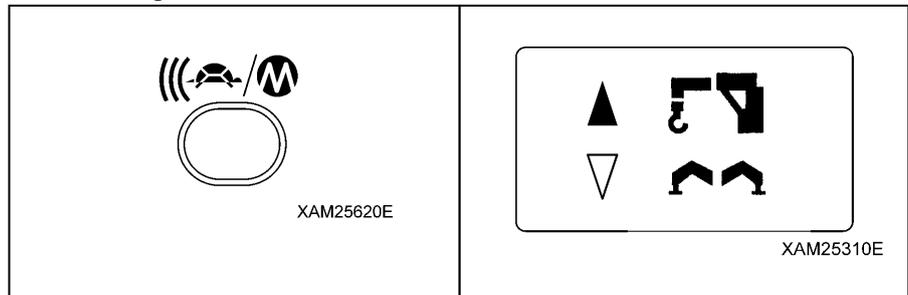
### NOTES

In case the power is already ON, turn OFF once, and then push the Power button ON again.

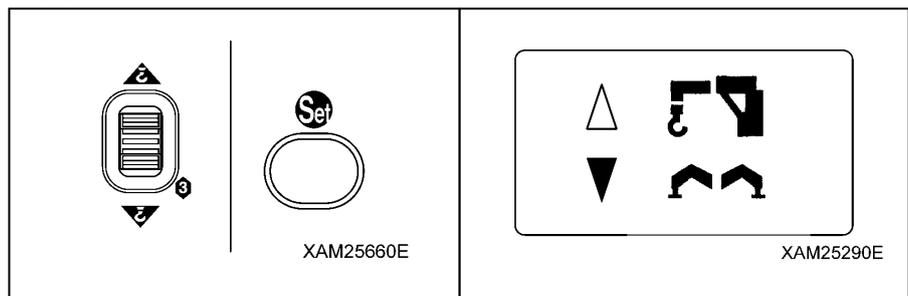


2. While the “Crane mark” is shown in the LCD screen (for about 2 seconds), push and hold the Speed/Mode button for 2 seconds.

The LCD provides the screen for selecting “CRANE MODE” or “OUTRIGGER MODE”.

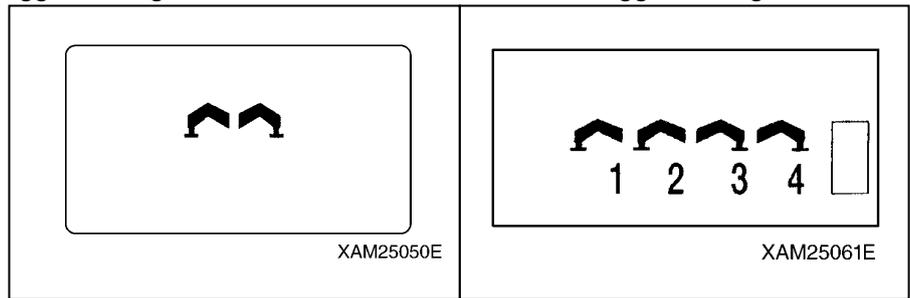


3. Use the Hook raising and lowering Lever to shift the cursor (▲ or ▼), and push the Setting button when the cursor points to the “OUTRIGGER”.



4. The operation mode is already switched to the “OUTRIGGER MODE”, thus the “Outrigger mark” is exhibited.

Soon after, it enters into “Outrigger setting mode”, then the mark turns to “Outrigger setting mode “.



## 7. CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION

### WARNING

Precautions shown in this section must be practiced prior to starting work, without fail. Serious injury or death may arise when these checks are neglected. Also refer to the section “OPERATION 2.1 Checking before Operation” for checking of the crane structure. In the event where any failure is revealed during checking, repair it, or contact us or our agents for services.

## 7.1 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE

### 7.1.1 CHECKING BEFORE TURNING ON THE TRANSMITTER

#### WARNING

For checking before Turning ON the Transmitter, ensure that the engine starter key is in the OFF position, and also the Receiver main switch is OFF. Otherwise, the engine may un-expectedly start and cause serious injury or death.

Perform the following inspections while the Transmitter power is OFF:

- Check the control levers, operation buttons, LCD screen, Accelerator lever and Grip for oily dirt or other contaminants.

Scrub away any dirt with a clean cloth.

- Also check for small particles such as stones, grit or sand that may have been caught in small gaps near the control levers and/or Accelerator lever.

If found, remove such particles completely. In the event where offending particles are caught in the small openings near the control levers and/or acceleration lever, they may disturb correct operations, causing un-expected movement of the Crane and resulting in a serious accident.

- Check for any cracks and/or damage to the Transmitter enclosure, or impairment to the rubber cover of the operation levers and control buttons.

If damage is found, repair immediately.

Cracks or damage to the Transmitter may allow water to enter inside, causing a malfunction and creating a serious hazard.

- Make sure the operation lever, control button and Accelerator lever all operate smoothly and return to the neutral position automatically.

If the operation levers, Accelerator lever or control buttons show any sign of a fault or malfunction, repair immediately.

Failure to repair faults may cause a serious hazard.

- Check the connection cable for any cracks, damage, bent or loose connection or damage in the connector section.

Repair or replace with a new cable, where such cracks, damages, or loose connection are present.

### 7.1.2 CHECKING AFTER TURNING ON THE TRANSMITTER

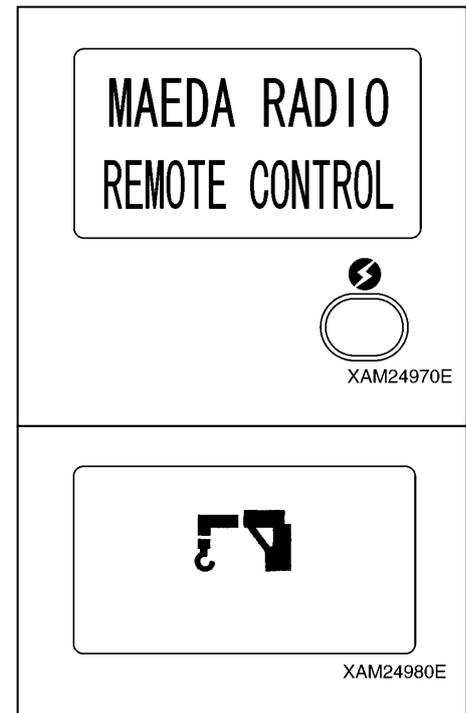
When the Transmitter is turned ON, check the following items:

#### [1] VERIFICATION OF THE LCD SCREEN SIGN AT POWER-ON

Push the Power switch to turn ON the Transmitter.

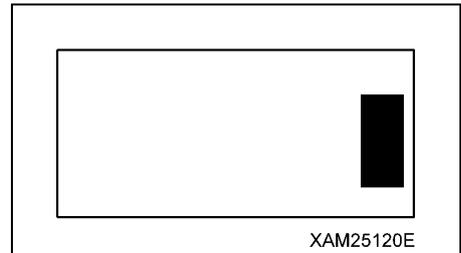
Confirm the mark, pictured right, in the LCD screen.

NOTES
Within 2 seconds upon start-up, the machine will automatically enters into the "CRANE MODE".

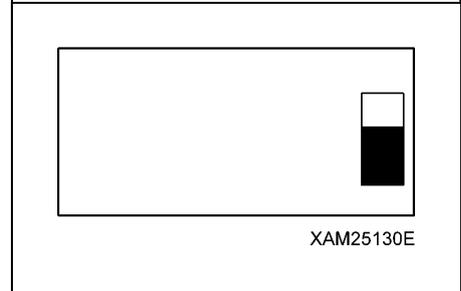


**[2] VERIFICATION OF THE LCD SCREEN SIGN AT THE “CRANE MODE”**

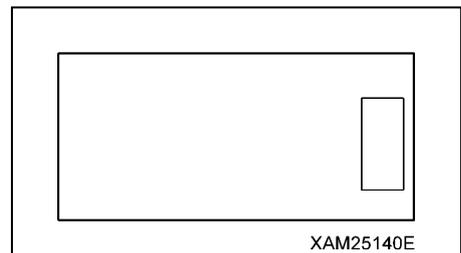
1. Check Accelerator lever corresponds to LCD screen by pulling lever to full throttle and checking for all bars to be present.



2. Slowly decrease the pressure on the Accelerator lever and check the bars also decrease on the LCD screen.



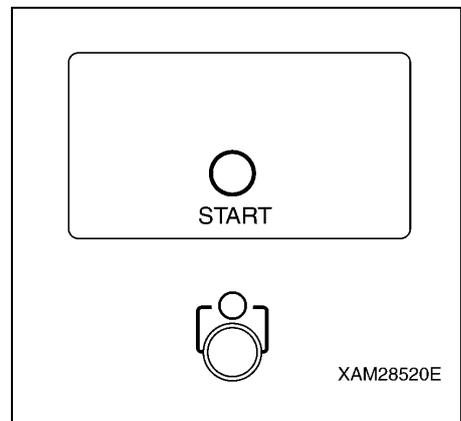
3. Release all pressure on the Accelerator lever to check idling, where all bars on the LCD screen are absent.



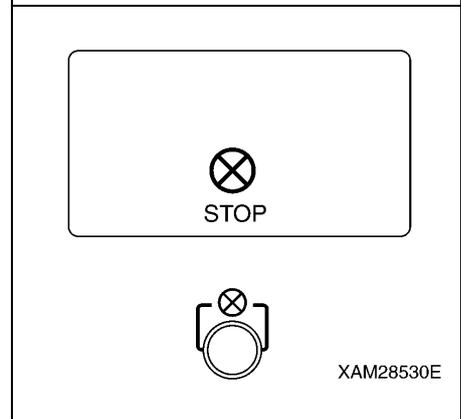
4. Manipulate each operation lever and verify that each indication on the LCD screen is correct.

5. Manipulate each operation button and verify that each indication on the LCD screen is correct.

6. Verify that “START” is correctly displayed on the LCD screen when the Start/Reset button is pushed.



7. Also, verify that “STOP” is correctly displayed on the LCD screen when the Stop/EMO button is pushed.

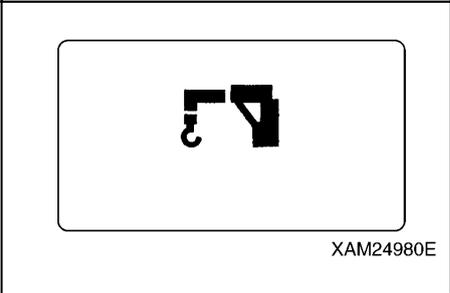
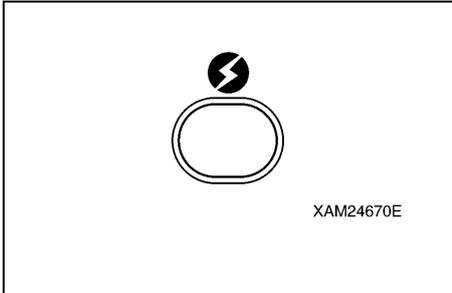
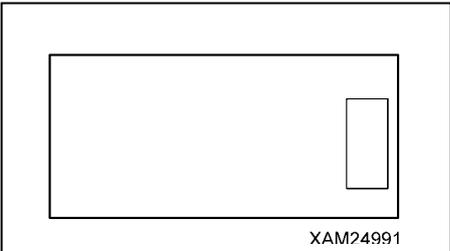


**[3] VERIFICATION OF THE LCD SCREEN SIGN AT THE “OUTRIGGER MODE”**

1. Push the Power switch once to turn OFF the Transmitter.

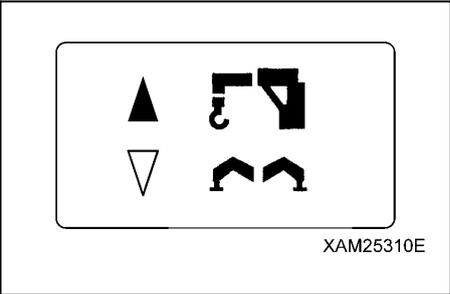
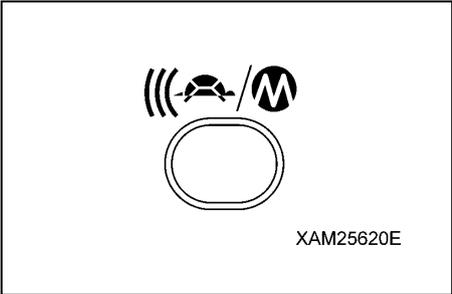
2. Push the Power switch again to turn ON the Transmitter.

The “Crane mark” is displayed in the LCD screen for about 2 seconds.

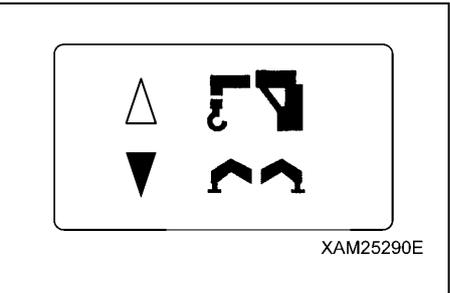
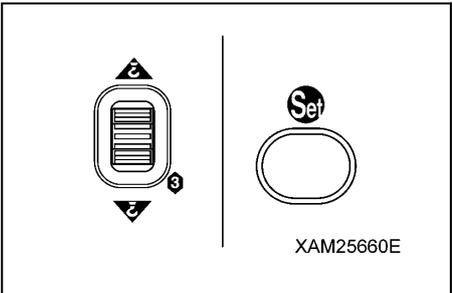


3. While the “Crane mark” is shown in the LCD screen (for about 2 seconds), push the Speed/Mode button for 2 seconds.

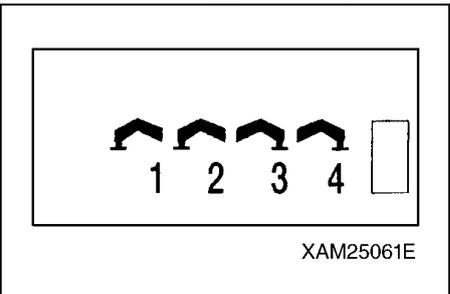
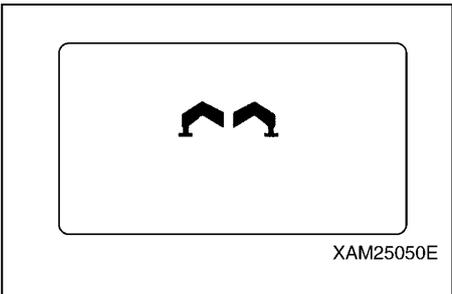
The LCD provides the screen for selecting “CRANE MODE” or “OUTRIGGER MODE”.



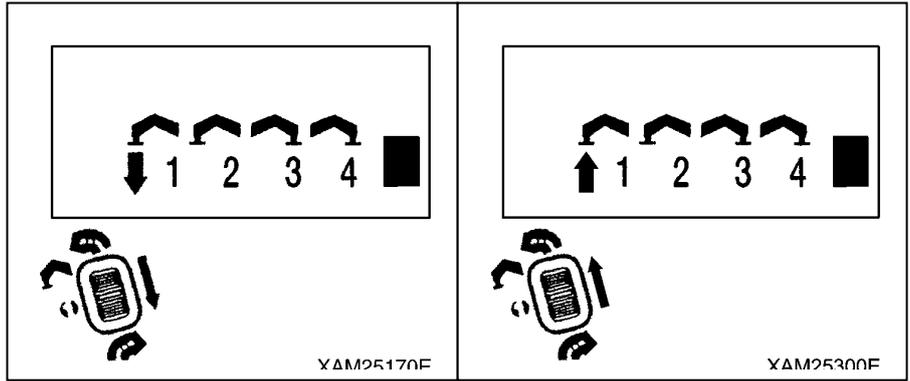
4. Use the Hook raising and lowering Lever and shift the cursor (▲ or ▼), and push the Setting button when the cursor points to the “OUTRIGGER”.



5. Here, confirm that the “Outrigger mark” is exhibited, and then it enters into the “Outrigger setting mode”, soon after.



6. Manipulate each operation lever and verify that each indication in the LCD screen is correct.



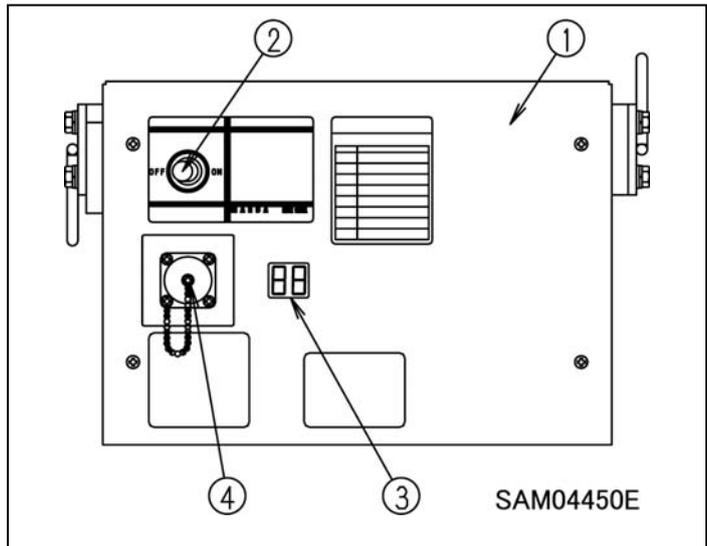
### 7.1.3 CHECKING RECEIVER

Perform the following inspections:

- Check the Control Box (1), Main Switch (2), Monitor display (3), and Cable Connector (4) for oily dirt or other contaminants.

Scrub away the dirt with a clean cloth.

- Check for any cracks and/or damages to the Control Box (1) or Monitor display (3). Repair any cracks or damage immediately. Cracks or damage may allow water to enter inside and cause malfunctions to the Receiver, creating a serious hazard.



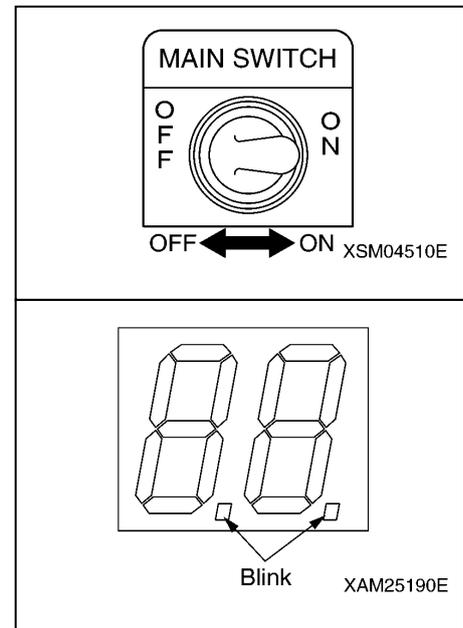
- Check the Main switch (2) and Cable Connector (4) for the loose conditions or damages.

Repair immediately when any such loose conditions or damages are found.

Such loose conditions or damages may cause errors or faults to the Receiver, which may result in a serious hazard.

- Toggle the Main switch (2) to ON and OFF alternately to verify that power is correctly turned ON or OFF.

- Turn the Transmitter ON, and then toggle the Main switch (2) to the ON position. Confirm that the two dots, pictured right, blink.



#### NOTES

In the condition that the Transmitter is not powered ON , or reception has an error, the Monitor display shows the error code, "E2", when the Receiver is turned ON.

## 7.2 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE

### **! WARNING**

Precautions shown in this section must be practiced prior to starting work, without fail. Serious injury or death may arise when these inspections are neglected.

Refer to the section "OPERATION 2.1 Checking before Operation" for checking of the crane structure.

Whenever any failures are revealed during such inspections, repair them, or contact us or our agents for services.

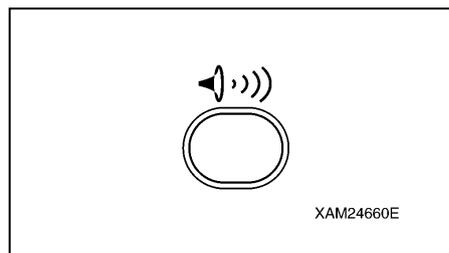
### 7.2.1 VERIFICATION FOR THE ENGINE START AND STOP

### **! WARNING**

- Ensure that the boom and outriggers are all stowed in the correct positions. If they are not in the correct positions, use the applicable levers to stow them correctly. Otherwise, the Transmitter operation may cause damage to the Crane or tipping that results in serious injury or death.
- If the Transmitter LCD screen shows an error message or the Receiver Monitor display shows an error code, the crane will not operate. Examine the cause of the error and perform appropriate service when any fault is identified, or contact us or our agents for services.

#### [1] CHECKING ENGINE START OPERATION

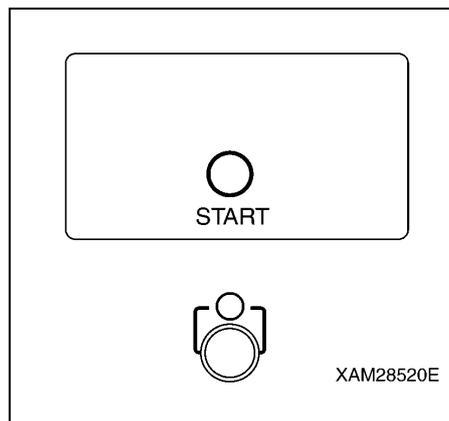
1. Position the Starter Switch of the Crane to ON.
2. Set the travelling stand of the Crane to CRANE position.
3. Turn ON the main switch of the Receiver.
4. Push the Power switch of the Transmitter, to ON.
5. Then push the Horn button and confirm the horn sound.
6. Use the Start/Reset button to check that the engine starts properly.
7. Check whether the indication "START" appears on the LCD screen.



### **CAUTION**

Prior to starting the engine, perform the following:

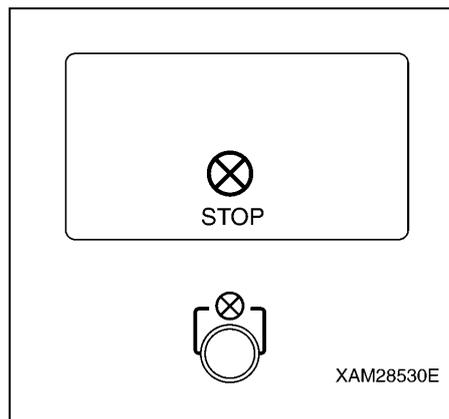
1. Set the Acceleration Lever to the medium speed (nealy middle in its stroke).
2. Pull out the choke knob.
3. Return the choke knob to its initial position, when the engine starts.



#### [2] CHECKING ENGINE EMERGENCY STOP OPERATION

1. When the engine is started as outlined above [1], try the Stop/EMO button to confirm that the engine absolutely stops instantly.
2. Then check whether the indication "STOP" appears on the LCD screen.

Also confirm that the Monitor display in the Receiver shows the error code, "E1".

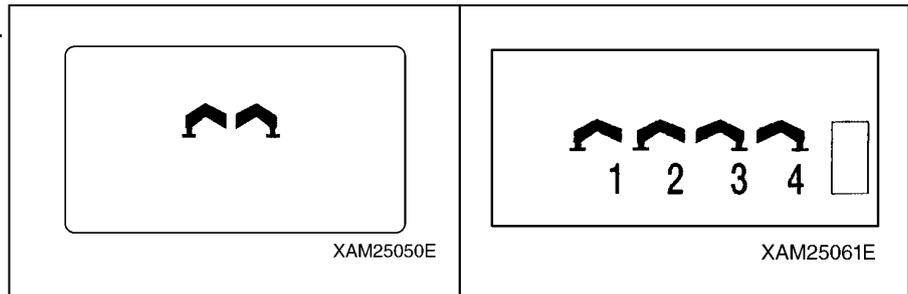


## 7.2.2 CHECKING “OUTRIGGER MODE” OPERATION

### **⚠ WARNING**

If the Transmitter LCD screen shows an error message or the Receiver Monitor display shows an error code, the crane will not operate. Examine the cause of the error and perform appropriate service when any fault is identified, or contact us or our agents for services.

1. Position the Starter switch of the Crane to ON.
2. Set the travelling stand of the Crane to CRANE position.
3. Turn ON the Main switch of the Receiver.
4. Push the Power switch of the Transmitter, to ON.
5. Switch the operation mode to the “OUTRIGGER MODE” and confirm that “OUTRIGGER MODE” is indicated on the LCD screen.

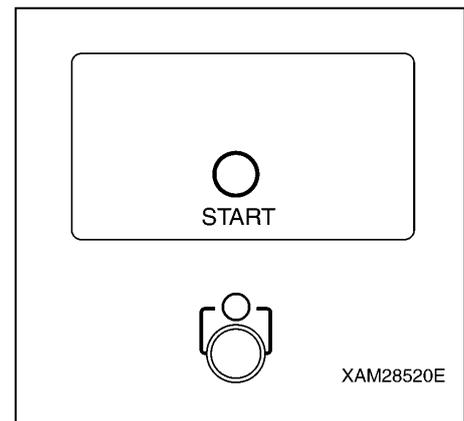


6. Push the Start/Reset button and start the engine.

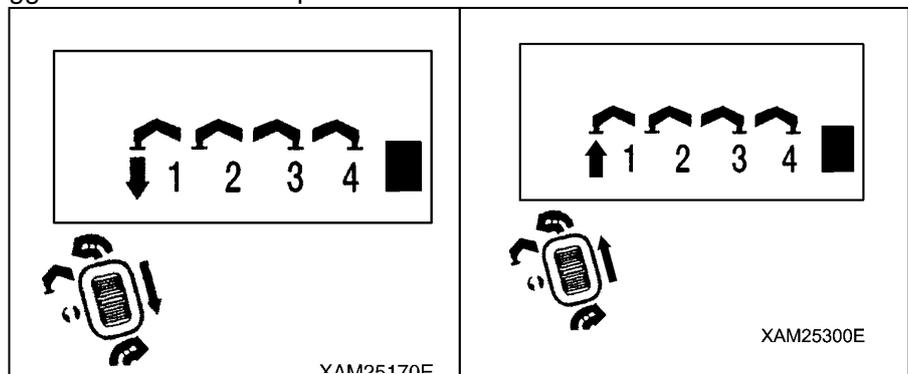
### **CAUTION**

Prior to starting the engine, perform the following:

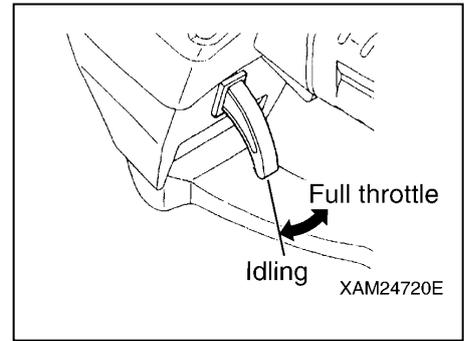
1. Set the Acceleration Lever to the medium speed (nearly middle in its stroke).
2. Pull out the choke knob.
3. Return the choke knob to its initial position, when the engine starts.



7. Use the Slewing/No.1 Outrigger operation lever, to both the “Extend (lower)” and “Retract (upper)” area, and check that the No. 1 outrigger follows the lever operation.



8. Try the other outrigger operation levers with the same manipulation and confirm that the outriggers correctly respond to the lever control.



## CAUTION

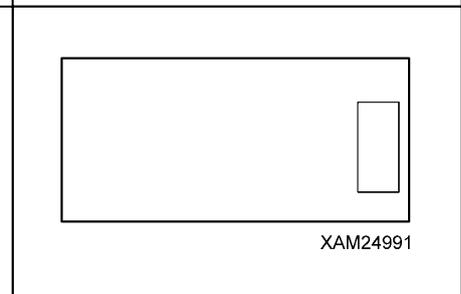
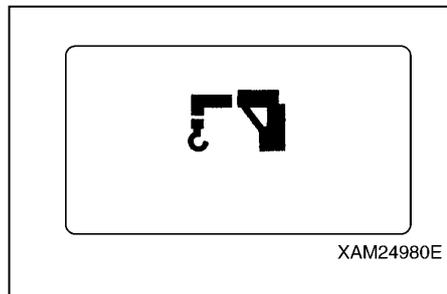
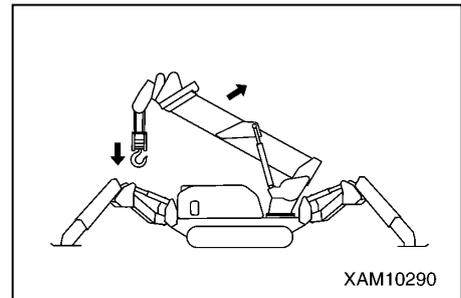
To change from "OUTRIGGER MODE" to "CRANE MODE", turn OFF the power using the Power switch and turn it ON again. Then the mode is automatically set to "CRANE MODE".

### 7.2.3 CHECKING “CRANE MODE” OPERATION

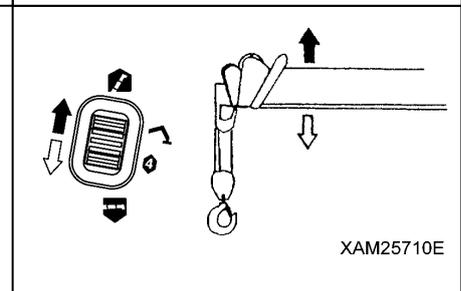
#### **⚠ WARNING**

- Ensure that all the outriggers are securely settled, before starting crane operations. Any crane operations where outriggers are improperly used may cause the crane to tip over or other serious accidents.
- If the Transmitter LCD screen shows an error message or the Receiver Monitor display shows an error code, the crane will not operate. Examine the cause of the error and perform appropriate service when any fault is identified, or contact us or our agents for services.

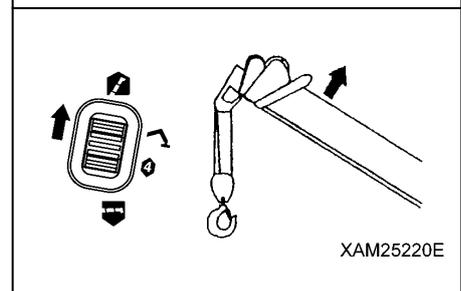
1. Start the engine by the Starter switch of the Crane.
2. Refer to the contents of “OPERATION 2.14 Operations before Crane Operations” and “OPERATION 2.15 Crane Operation Position” and configure the Crane as shown in the figure, right.
3. Then turn ON the Main switch of the Receiver.
4. Push the Power switch of the Transmitter to ON.
5. Enter into “CRANE MODE”; confirm that the indication as “CRANE MODE” is displayed on the LCD screen.



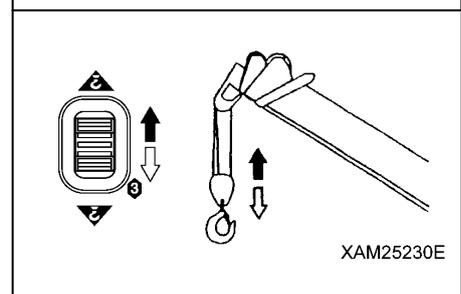
6. Use the Boom derricking lever to the both “Raise (upper)” and “Lower (lower)” area, pull the Accelerator lever and check that the boom follows the lever operation.



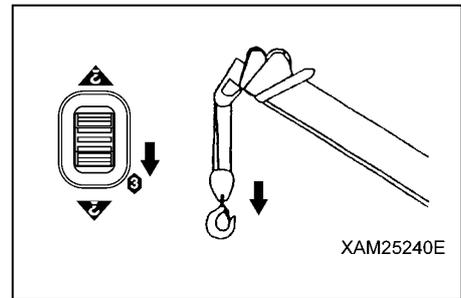
7. Raise the boom to a sufficient angle (approximately 60 degree) using the Boom derricking lever, pushing to the “Raise (upper)” area.



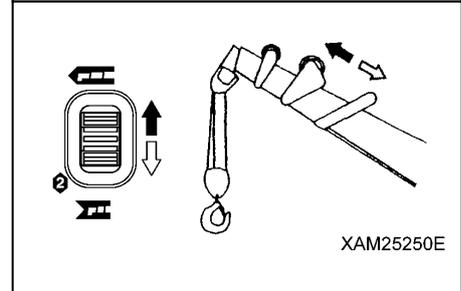
8. During the Hook raising and lowering lever manipulation, of the “Raise (upper)” and “Lower (lower)” area respectively, pull the Accelerator lever and check that the hook follows the lever operation.



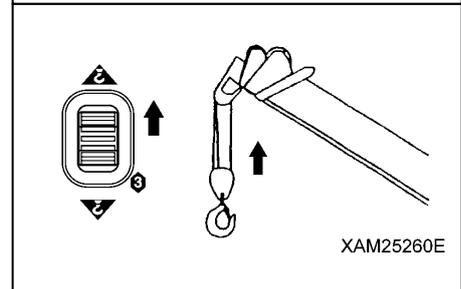
9. Using the Hook raising and lowering lever to the “Lower (lower)” area, lower the hook as much as possible.



10. During the Boom telescoping lever manipulation, to the “Extend (upper)” and “Retract (lower)” area respectively, pull the Accelerator lever and check that the boom follows the lever operation.

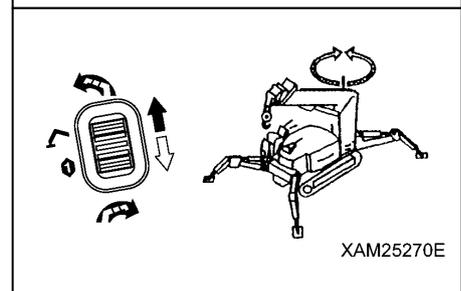


11. Using the Hook raising and lowering lever to the “Raise (upper)” area, hoist the hook.

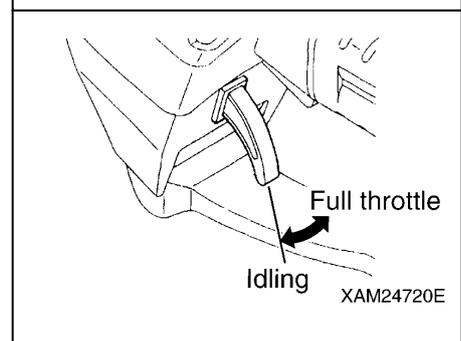


12. During the Slewing lever manipulation, to the “Counter clockwise (upper)” and “Clockwise (lower)” area respectively, pull the Accelerator lever and check that the Crane follows the lever operation.

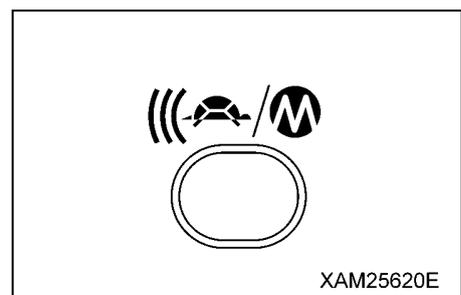
In addition, practice a slew around 360 degrees or more to check for any abnormal conditions



13. During each control lever manipulation of stages (6). through to (12), listed above, slowly pull and release the Accelerator lever and confirm that the speed of each action follows the acceleration ratio.



14. During each control lever manipulation of step 6 through step 12, above, push the Speed/Mode button, then try both “Micro speed command” and “Enhanced speed command” and confirm the speed of each operation corresponds to respective controls of “Micro speed command” and “Enhanced speed command”.



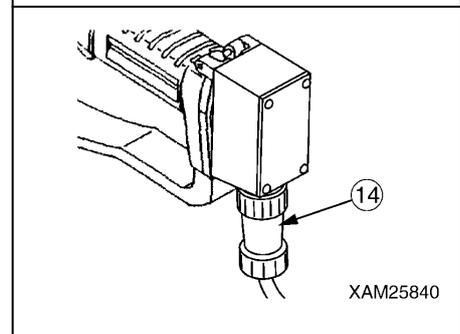
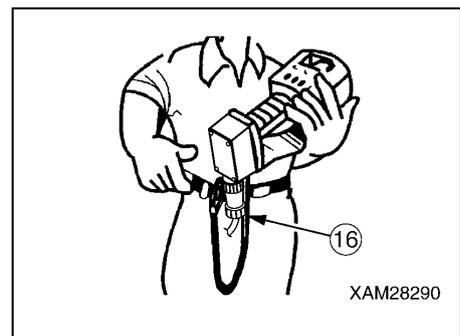
## 8. OPERATION

### **⚠ WARNING**

- Never attempt to dismantle or modify the Transmitter or Receiver, as this may cause an electrical shock or a fire.
- Avoid dropping or hitting the Transmitter. A damaged part of the enclosure allows water to enter inside that can cause trouble or failures and may result in a serious hazard, such as a malfunction or electrical shock.  
In the event of dropping and damage, send the Transmitter to us or our agents for services.
- Never water-wash the Transmitter or Receiver; that allows water to enter inside and can cause trouble or failures and may result in a serious hazard, such as a malfunction or electrical shock.
- Both remote control operation and manual operation at the same time are not allowed.  
That may cause un-expected behaviour of the Crane and result in a serious hazard. The Crane must be operated by one method only. (Manual operation is not available when the remote control is active.)
- Prior to starting the remote control operations, always conduct inspections of both the Transmitter and Receiver, in accordance with “INTERACTIVE REMOTE CONTROL 7. Checking before Operation”.

### 8.1 CAUTIONS BEFORE OPERATION

1. To prevent the Transmitter from being accidentally dropped, hook one end of the hook belt (16) to the Transmitter and attach another end to the operator's waist belt & etc.
2. Always conduct inspections of both the Transmitter and Receiver, in accordance with “REMOTE CONTROL 7. Checking Before Operation”.
3. Make sure that the receptacles (14) at the both ends of the connection cable are secured to both the Transmitter and Receiver, respectively.



### NOTES

- When it is required to change the initial values of settings such as the contrast of the Transmitter LCD screen, the light, or the OFF timer, switch to “A MODE”.
- In the event that the remote control operation is discontinued for the length of the “Auto shut -OFF time” or longer during the crane operation, the Transmitter power will be automatically cut. To resume the remote control operation, turn ON the Transmitter and set each item of the operation mode again.

## 8.2 OPERATION IN OUTRIGGER MODE

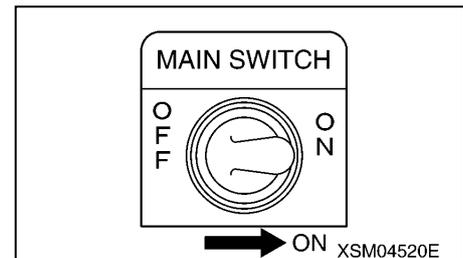
### ⚠ WARNING

- Make sure the Transmitter operation levers all operate smoothly and return to the neutral position automatically.
- Each operation lever of the Transmitter will be blocked by its stopper when it is moved fully. When it is blocked, do not attempt to push further, otherwise it may damage the Transmitter and cause faults and result in a serious accident.
- To toggle each operation lever to the opposite side, or to use another lever, always release the Accelerator lever every time. To operate the outriggers, manipulate the operation lever first, then pull the Accelerator lever. To stop the actuation of outriggers, release your finger from the Accelerator lever first and then discharge the operation lever.
- For the outrigger operations, always keep the engine speed in the low or middle range. Such operation in the high speed range makes the outriggers actuate too quickly, which may tip the Crane and result in a serious hazard.
- For the outrigger operations, always configure the Crane to the stow position. In the condition that the boom is raised or any load is lifted, it may cause a serious accident, such as tipping of the Crane.
- For the outrigger operations, always ensure that the position pin of each outrigger is securely inserted. In the event where the pins are missing, the Crane may be tipped over and cause a serious hazard.

1. Ensure that the Main switch of the Receiver is in the OFF position.
2. Start the engine by the Starter switch of the Crane.
3. Then turn ON the Main switch of the Receiver.

### NOTES

When the Main switch of the Receiver is turned ON, the abnormal signal detector circuit works for 3 to 4 seconds. During this time the Crane is not ready for operation.

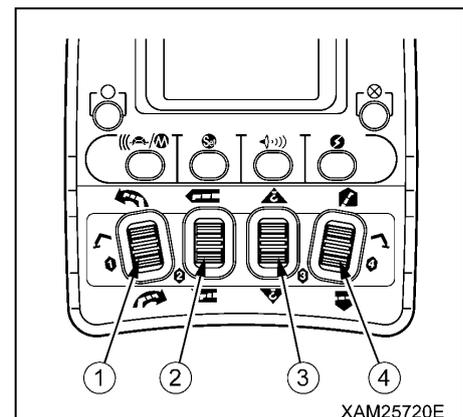


4. Push the Power switch of the Transmitter to ON.  
Confirm that the LCD screen shows the mark, illustrated in the figure on the right, and the "CRANE MODE" setting is selected automatically.



### NOTES

This Crane is equipped with four sets of outriggers and number labels (1) to (4) are fixed on each. These labels correspond to the number of each operation lever in the Transmitter. (See right-hand figure.)

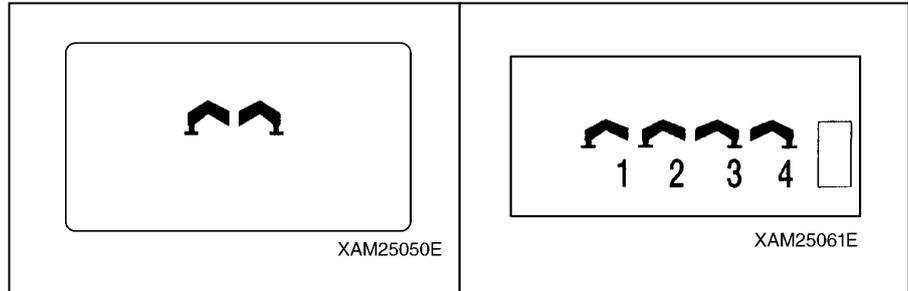


## 8.2.1 OUTRIGGER SETTING

### **⚠ WARNING**

Avoid controlling outriggers collectively on ground conditions that are not flat or level. Otherwise, 4 outriggers will not touch the ground consistently which makes the machine inclined and may result in tipping.

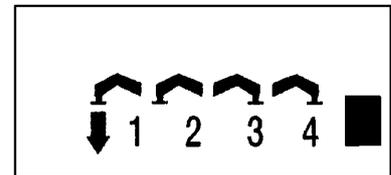
1. In accordance with "REMOTE CONTROL 6.2 Procedure in the Operation Mode", enter into the "OUTRIGGER MODE".



2. Turn one of the outrigger operation levers to "Extend (lower)" and pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

### **NOTES**

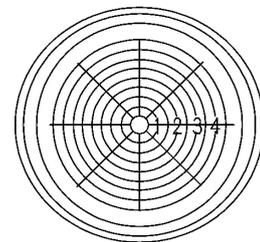
Repeat the same process for the other three outriggers and make sure all the four outriggers make contact with the ground.



3. When the Crane is elevated "approximately 50mm", slowly release the Accelerator lever, then release the outrigger operation lever to return to the neutral position.
- 4 Use the level gauge on the machine body and check the levelness of the machine.  
When the machine is not level, operate each outrigger individually so that the machine is set level.



XAM25170E



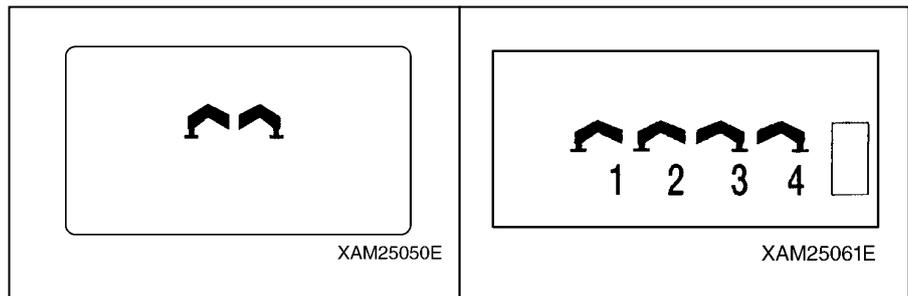
XAM00140

### **CAUTION**

To change from "OUTRIGGER MODE" to "CRANE MODE", turn OFF the power using the Power switch and turn it ON again. Then the mode is automatically set to "CRANE MODE".

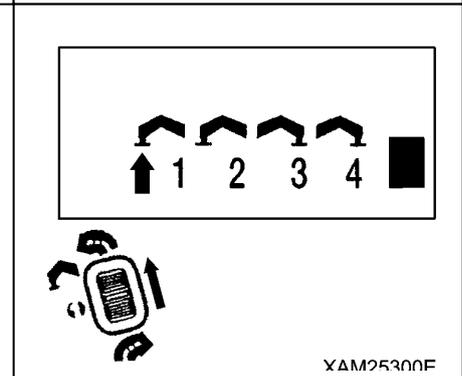
## 8.2.2 OUTRIGGER STOWING

1. In accordance with "REMOTE CONTROL 6.2 Procedure in the Operation Mode", enter into the "OUTRIGGER MODE".



2. Move one of the outrigger operation levers to "Retract (upper)" and pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

3. If the outrigger operation stops, slowly release the acceleration lever, then release the outrigger operation lever to return to its neutral position.



### NOTES

- Repeat the same process to the other three outriggers and lower all the four outriggers equally and gradually, so that the Crane is grounded.
- After the Crane is grounded, lower all the four outriggers completely.

### CAUTION

To change from "OUTRIGGER MODE" to "CRANE MODE", turn OFF the power using the Power switch and turn it ON again. Then the mode is automatically set to "CRANE MODE".

## 8.3 OPERATION IN CRANE MODE

### ⚠ WARNING

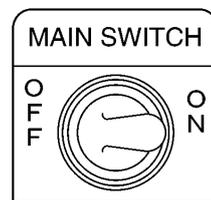
- Ensure that all the outriggers are properly installed. Where outriggers are improperly installed, it may result a serious hazard, such as the Crane tipping.
- During crane operations, always refer to the portable rated total load chart and avoid over-loaded operations. Operations in over-loaded conditions may damage or tip the Crane, resulting in a serious hazard.
- Check for smooth and correct actions of each operation lever of the Transmitter, and that they smoothly return to the neutral position when the finger is released.
- Each operation lever of the Transmitter will be blocked by its stopper when it is moved fully. When it is blocked, do not attempt to push further, otherwise it may damage the Transmitter and cause a fault resulting in a serious accident.
- To toggle each operation lever to the opposite side, or to use another lever, always release the Accelerator lever, each time. To operate the Crane, manipulate the operation lever first, then pull the Acceleration lever. To stop the operation of the Crane, release your finger from the Accelerator lever, and then release the operation lever.
- Always actuate the Accelerator lever with caution to the acceleration rate. Crane operation speed must be controlled to avoid abrupt movement. Any abrupt acceleration or deceleration especially while a load is hung will make a large impact to the Crane and may result a serious hazard such as Crane tipping or damage.
- While hoisting a load, do not attempt to perform multiple operations such as raising the hook and lowering the boom simultaneously. That may cause an abrupt change of the load condition and cause a serious hazard such as the Crane tipping or damage.

1. Ensure that the main switch of the Receiver is in the OFF position.
2. Start the engine at the Starter switch of the Crane.
3. Then turn ON the Main switch of the Receiver.

### NOTES

When the main switch of the Receiver is turned ON, the abnormal signal detector circuit works for 3 to 4 seconds. During this time, the Crane is not ready for operation.

4. Push the Power switch of the Transmitter to ON.  
Confirm that the LCD screen shows the mark as the figure on the right and the “CRANE MODE” is automatically provided.
5. In accordance with “REMOTE CONTROL 6.2 Procedure in the Operation Mode”, enter into the “CRANE MODE”.



ON XSM04520E

MAEDA RADIO  
REMOTE CONTROL



XAM24970E



XAM24980E

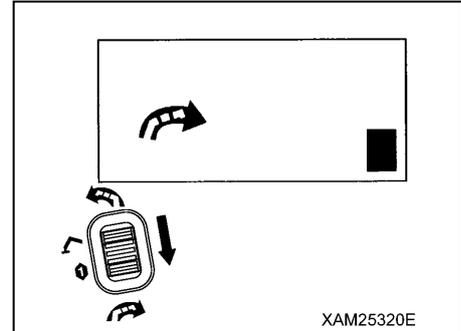
### 8.3.1 SLEWING OPERATION

#### **⚠ WARNING**

When performing slew operations, actuate the Accelerator lever carefully and always keep to a low speed.  
To avoid abrupt slewing, actuate the Accelerator lever slowly and carefully.  
Any abrupt acceleration or deceleration, especially while a load is hung will make a large impact to the Crane and may result in a serious hazard such as Crane tipping or damage.

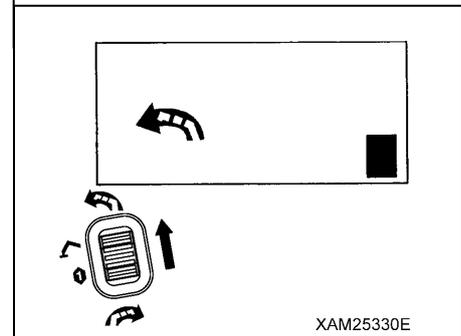
#### **[1] SLEW CLOCKWISE**

Push the Slewing/No.1 outrigger operation lever “Clockwise (lower)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.  
The boom slews clockwise, looking down at the Crane from the sky.



#### **[2] SLEW COUNTERCLOCKWISE**

Push the Slewing/No.1 outrigger operation lever “Counter clockwise (upper)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.  
The boom slews counterclockwise, looking down at the Crane from the sky.



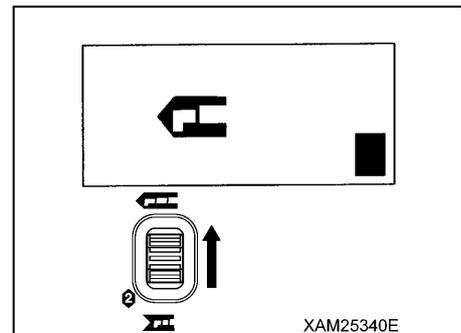
#### **[3] STOP SLEWING**

Release the Accelerator lever slowly, then release the Slewing/No.1 outrigger operation lever to return it to its neutral position.  
The boom stops slewing.

### 8.3.2 BOOM TELESCOPING

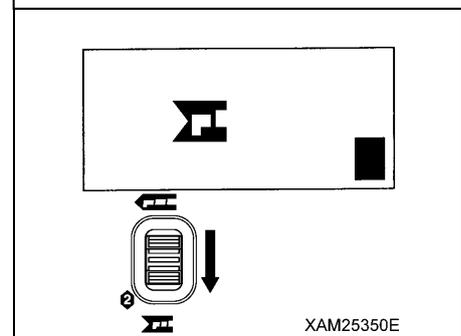
#### **[1] BOOM “EXTENDING”**

Push the Boom telescoping/No.2 outrigger operation lever to “Extend (upper)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.  
The boom extends.



#### **[2] BOOM “RETRACTING”**

Push the Boom telescoping/No.2 outrigger operation lever to “Retract (lower)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.  
The boom retracts.



#### **[3] STOP TELESCOPING**

Release the Accelerator lever slowly, then release the Boom telescoping/No.2 outrigger operation lever to return it to the neutral position.  
The boom stops telescoping.

### 8.3.3 HOOK RAISING AND LOWERING

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- In the event of “Over-hoist alarming” or “Automatic cut out” during the hook raising operation, stop winding immediately. Otherwise, it may break a wire-rope or cause damage to the Crane, resulting in a sudden drop of the hook or load.
- When the load has reached the ground, additional lowering of the hook may cause random winding and damage the wire rope, thus shortening its life. There is also a risk of the wire rope becoming entangled, preventing further winching. Take care to wind the wire rope correctly.
- The hook is also raised or lowered by boom telescoping or derricking.  
The same attention must be paid to the hook raising and lowering as in the winching operation.

#### **[1] HOOK RAISING**

Push the Hook raising and lowering/No.2 outrigger operation lever to “Raise (upper)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

The hook starts to rise.

#### **[2] HOOK LOWERING**

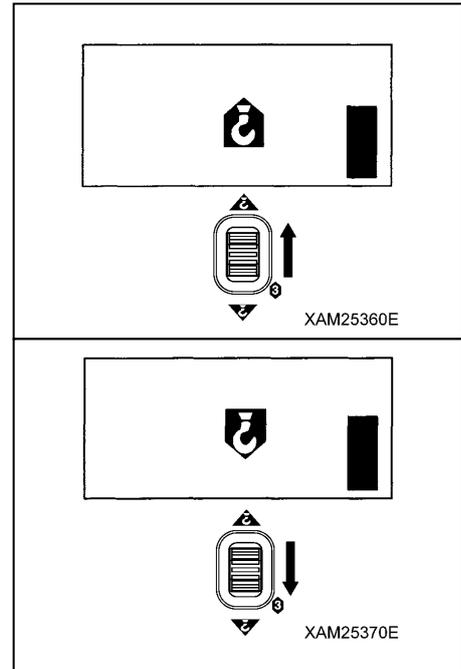
Push the Hook raising and lowering/No.2 outrigger operation lever to “Lower (lower)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

The hook starts to lower.

#### **[3] STOP RAISING OR LOWERING**

Release the Accelerator lever slowly, then release Hook raising and lowering/No.2 outrigger operation lever to return it to the neutral position.

The hook stops raising or lowering.



### 8.3.4 BOOM DERRICKING

#### **[1] BOOM RAISING**

Push the Boom derricking/No.4 outrigger operation lever to “Raise (upper)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

The boom will rise.

#### **[2] BOOM LOWERING**

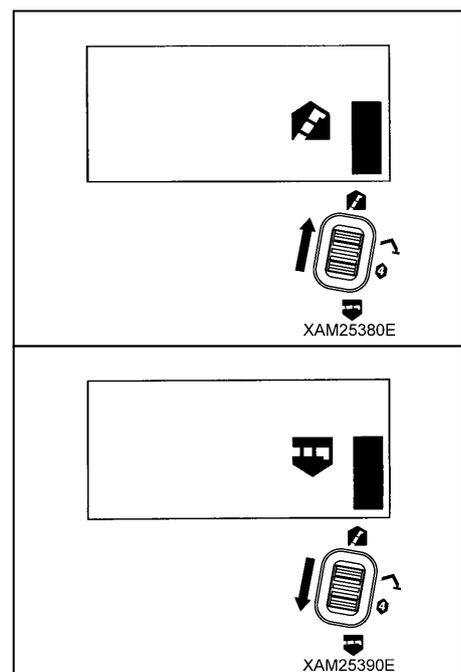
Push the Boom derricking/No.4 outrigger operation lever to “Lower (lower)”, then pull the Accelerator lever slowly.

The boom will lower.

#### **[3] STOP BOOM DERRICKING**

Release the Accelerator lever slowly, then release the Boom derricking/No.4 outrigger operation lever to return it to the neutral position.

The boom stops derricking.



### 8.3.5 SET-UP AND CANCEL MICRO SPEED

When it is required to operate the Crane in low speed, use the Micro speed mode, which limits the maximum speed of the Crane and facilitates the smoother control in the low speed range.

This machine offers 2 modes for limiting the maximum speed of the Crane: "MICRO SPEED MODE" and the "USER MICRO SPEED MODE", which the user can select their own setting.

"MICRO SPEED MODE" is available by user selection.

#### NOTES

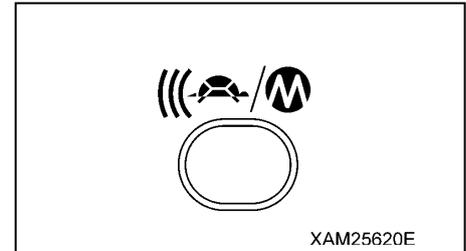
"MICRO SPEED MODE" is valid only in the "CRANE MODE".

#### [1] SETTING THE MICRO SPEED MODE

Push the Speed/Mode button.

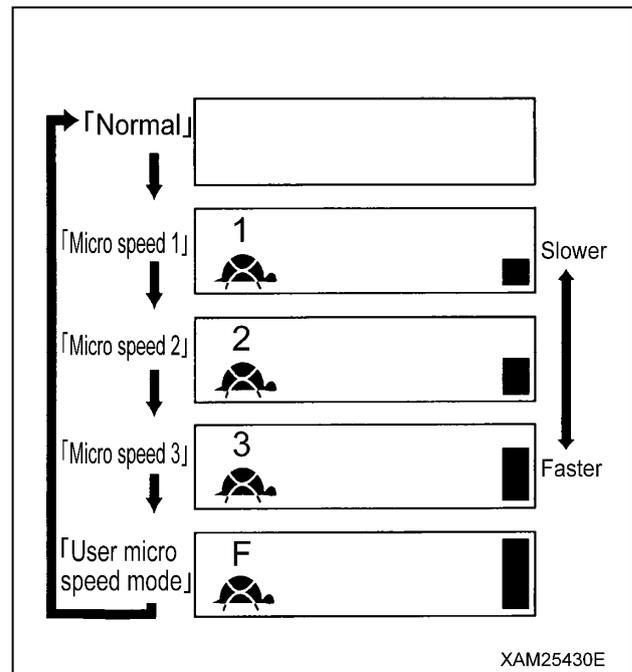
Each push will forward the LCD screen indication as shown in the diagram, below:

When the indicated mode fits your requirement, carry on the Crane operation in that condition.



#### [2] CANCEL THE MICRO SPEED MODE

Push the Speed/Mode button several times, until LCD screen indication is shown as "Normal".

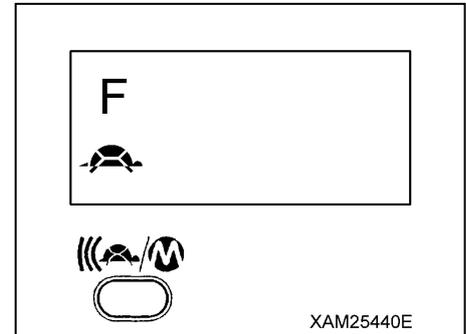


### [3] SETTING TO THE USER MICRO SPEED MODE

## ⚠ WARNING

Setting to the User micro speed mode requires actual crane operations with the engine running. Before starting the User micro speed mode setting, always ensure that nobody other than authorized personnel are within the working area.

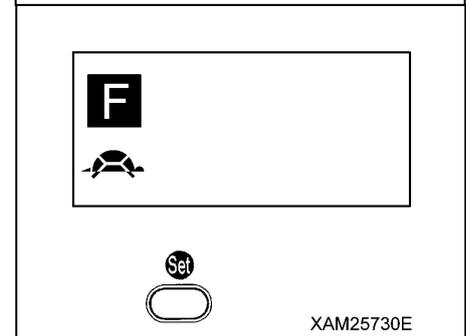
1. Push the Speed/Mode button several times so that the LCD screen indicates the "USER MICRO SPEED MODE".



2. Push the Setting button for at least 2 seconds. Indication of "F" on the LCD screen is highlighted and it enters into the "USER MICRO SPEED MODE" setting screen.

**NOTES**

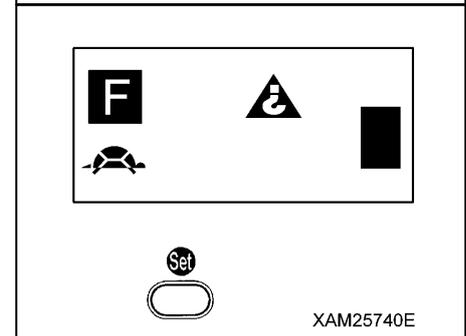
The "USER MICRO SPEED MODE" setting is available while the "F" on the LCD screen is highlighted.



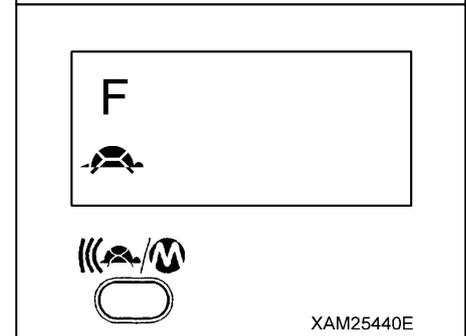
3. Push the operation lever to be adjusted and pull the Accelerator lever slowly. When the operation speed reaches the desired maximum speed, push the Setting button.

**NOTES**

Please understand that in the "USER MICRO SPEED MODE", when you set two or more control levers at the same time and pull the Accelerator lever, the crane operation speed follows the operation which is set to the fastest operation



4. When the settings for all the required operation levers are complete push the Speed/Mode button. Now the setting is established and the Micro speed mode is available.



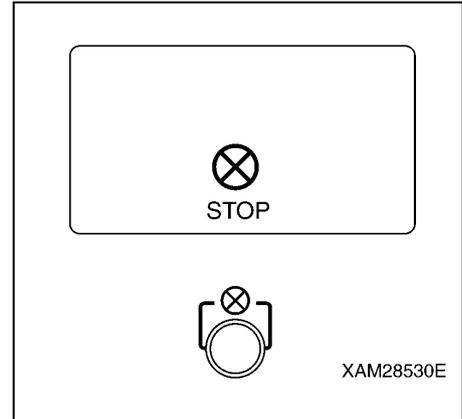
### 8.3.6 ENGINE STOP AND EMERGENCY STOP PROCEDURE

#### ⚠ WARNING

- For any abnormalities in crane operations, immediately push the Stop/EMO button to stop the engine. Abnormal cases include: continuation of crane operations even after the release of operational levers or the Accelerator lever, or automatic crane operation before the operation levers are used.
- In the event of an emergency, stop the engine and turn OFF the Transmitter power. Only check and repair the fault to the machine after the engine has stopped.
- The Stop/EMO button is also able to stop the engine in normal conditions.

Push the Stop/EMO button to stop the engine from the Transmitter or in case of emergency.

The engine stops.



### 8.3.7 ENGINE START AND RESET PROCEDURE

#### [1] ENGINE START PROCEDURE

#### CAUTION

- Follow the procedure below for use of the Start/Reset Button to start the engine:
  1. Position the Starter switch of the Crane to ON.
  2. Set the travelling stand of the Crane to CRANE position.If the Starter switch of the Crane is OFF, or the travelling stand of the Crane is in the TRAVELLING position, you can not start the engine.
- Prior to starting the engine, perform the following practices on the Crane.
  1. Set the Acceleration Lever to the medium speed (about middle of its stroke).
  2. Pull out the choke knob.
  3. Return the choke knob to its initial position when the engine starts.

When it is required to start the engine from the Transmitter, push the Start/Reset button. The engine starts.

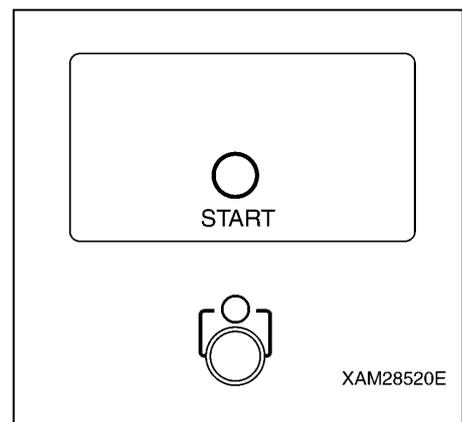
#### [2] RESET PROCEDURE

To release the emergency stop equipment or abnormal signal detector, push the Start/Reset button.

Power of the Receiver will be reset.

#### NOTES

- While the engine runs, the engine starter will not work even though the Start/Reset button is used.
- When the Start/Reset button is used, firstly push the Power switch of the Transmitter to turn it ON.
- When the Start/Reset button is pushed, the abnormal signal detector circuit starts working. Wait for 3 to 4 seconds until it completes.



## 8.4 CHECKING AFTER CRANE OPERATION

### **WARNING**

- When the operation of the Crane is finished, always turn OFF the Transmitter and Receiver power.
- On no occasion except for Crane operations, must the power of the Transmitter be turned ON. This could cause unexpected movement of the Crane resulting in a serious hazard, such that the Crane hitting someone or an object, or the Crane could tip.
- When it is required to turn ON the Transmitter for the purpose of inspection or such, ensure first that the engine is not running, then shut down the Receiver by turning OFF its main switch.

1. Enter into the “CRANE MODE” of the Transmitter operation mode.
2. Use the operation levers and retract the boom to its shortest condition and lower it to the base position.

### **NOTES**

Stowing the hook block is available only by using the control lever and switch on the crane.

3. Enter into the “OUTRIGGER MODE” of the Transmitter operation mode.
4. Use the operation levers and stow all the outriggers so that the Crane is configured to the travelling position.
5. Stop the engine and turn OFF the Transmitter power.
6. Shut down the power of the Receiver by turning its Main switch to the OFF position.
7. Maintain the Transmitter and Receiver as follows:
  - (1) Check operation levers and the Accelerator lever for any faults.
  - (2) Remove oil or dirt with a clean cloth.
  - (3) Repair all cracks or damages without fail.
8. Put the transmitter into the accessory storage case and keep it in the dry and cool place where the wind and rain or direct sun light is sheltered.

## 9. TROUBLE SHOOTING

### 9.1 BEFORE TROUBLE SHOOTING

“While the Crane operates perfectly under manual control, part or whole functions are inoperable from the remote control.”

In the event of failure as above, perform the DIAGNOSIS shown in the following pages.

#### CAUTION

First, check in accordance with the table below before you start the diagnosis, based on the following pages.

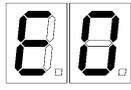
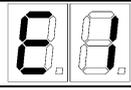
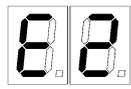
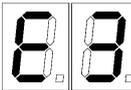
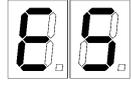
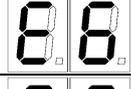
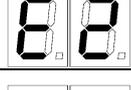
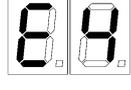
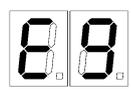
Such an error may be occasionally fixed by simple practice, such as applying another operation procedure.

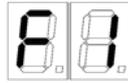
If the fault persists, contact us or our agents for services.

Check Points	Cause and Action
The Crane is operable under the manual control from the Crane.	When the Crane operates, this remote control device has a failure. Otherwise, if the Crane does not operate, perform diagnosis of the Crane.
Power of the Transmitter and Receiver is ON.	If not, turn ON the power.
The fuse in the Receiver is blown.	Check whether the fuse is blown or not; check the cause when blown, then replace with a new one.
The Transmitter enclosure is deformed or damaged.	Where the Transmitter enclosure is deformed or damaged, repair or replace it.
Each operation lever of the Transmitter is in its neutral position. The Accelerator lever is completely returned.	In any event of operation levers or control button failure, repair or replace.
Manipulation began just after the Power switch of the Transmitter is turned ON.	Allow 3 to 4 seconds after the Transmitter power is turned ON, with no operations.
The LCD screen in the Transmitter or the Monitor display in the Receiver shows error messages or error codes.	In the event where the error messages or error codes are indicated, first power OFF the Transmitter and turn it ON again.

## 9.2 ERRORS IN THE REMOTE CONTROL DEVICES.

- When diagnosing the error, always verify on the monitor display of the Receiver and the LCD screen on the Transmitter. Then, match the error with a suitable description from the table below.
- First, perform the “Remedy 1” in the table, then continue to “Remedy 2” if the error persists.
- Remedies marked with ★ - You must contact us or our service agents.
- When any other causes are suspected, other than listed below, contact us or our service agents.

Error display		Main cause	Remedy	
Transmitter	Receiver		Remedy 1	Remedy 2
—	—	Receiver printed circuit board (PCB) input voltage dropped. • Relay PCB defective. • Power line wire harness defective between relay PCB and Receiver PCB.	★ Maintenance/replace for Receiver printed circuit board (PCB) or internal wiring	
		Receiver PCB defective	★ Maintenance/replace for Receiver printed circuit board (PCB)	
—		Disconnection of the cable. • Communication data from Moment limiter is not received by receiver.	• Turn off main switch once, and turn it on again.	★ Maintenance/replace for the cable between the Moment limiter display unit and the Receiver.
STOP		The Transmitter is in emergency stop	• Use the Reset button to release the emergency stop.	★ Maintenance/replace for Receiver and Transmitter
—		The Transmitter defective • The Transmitter power is not ON. • The Transmitter PCB defective. • Wire cut in the Connection cable.	• Power ON again the Transmitter ★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter ★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter
		The Receiver defective. • The Receiver PCB defective. • Wiring problem in the Receiver	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter	
E3		The Transmitter defective • Wire cut within accelerator section in the Transmitter, or potentiometer failure.	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter	
—		The Transmitter defective • The potentiometer for accelerator lever in the transmitter failed during receiving signal. • A control lever switch in the transmitter failed during receiving signal.	• Release the Control Lever or Accelerator Lever, and push Power Switch.	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter
—		The Receiver PCB defective • Data error in the memory.	• Power on the Receiver, again.	★ Maintenance/replace for Receiver
E6		The Transmitter defective • Data error in the memory.	• Power on the Transmitter, again.	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter
E4		The Receiver defective • Accelerator Lever of the Transmitter was pulled when the power is turned ON.	• Release the Accelerator Lever and push Power Switch.	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter
E9		The Transmitter defective • Any control lever in the Transmitter was not return to neutral position when the power is turned ON.	• Release the Control Lever, and push Power Switch.	★ Maintenance/replace for Transmitter

Error display		Main cause	Remedy	
Transmitter	Receiver		Remedy 1	Remedy 2
—		Disconnection of the cable between the flow control valve solenoid and the Receiver.	★Maintenance/replace for the cable of the flow control valve.	
—		Leak from cable or solenoid of the flow control valve.	★Maintenance/replace for the solenoid and the cable of the flow control valve.	
—		Disconnection of the cable between the accelerator control valve solenoid and the Receiver.	★Maintenance/replace for the cable of the accelerator control valve.	
—		Leak from cable or solenoid of the accelerator control valve.	★Maintenance/replace for the Solenoid and the cable of the accelerator control valve.	
The Crane operates perfectly under the manual mode but some functions are not available in the remote control mode.		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The Receiver PCB defective.</li> <li>• Cable failure between the Receiver PCB and the control valve solenoids.</li> <li>• Electromagnetic proportional control reducing valve error.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>★Maintenance/replace for Receiver PCB</li> <li>★ Maintenance/replace for cable between the Receiver PCB and the control valve solenoids</li> <li>★ Maintenance/replace for Electromagnetic proportional control reducing valve</li> </ul>	

## 10. SYSTEM SPECIFICATIONS

Items		MCT300N	
Waterproof protection		IP65	
System configuration		Manual and Remote control, both-way	
Operation monitor		LCD monitor panel • Operation status monitor • Message • Error code	
Safety devices		Emergency stop equipment	
		Abnormal signal detector unit at the engine start	
		Automatic power cut unit (Automatic Power-OFF)	
		Voltage drop limiter	
		Warning switch	
Receiver unit voltage		Power for the Crane (DC 12V)	
Receiver unit power consumption		Approximately 70 watts (maximum, per single function)	
Operating ambient temperature		-10°C to +60°C	
Storage ambient temperature		-20°C to +70°C	
Transmitter weight		600g	
Transmitter functions	Lever switches	Boom raise/lower	Raising and lowering
		Hook raise/lower	Raising and lowering
		Boom telescoping	Extending and retracting
		Slewing	Counterclockwise/clockwise
	Push button switches	Power	ON/OFF
		Horn	Warning signal
		Setting	Mode setting
		Speed/Mode	Speed control/Mode selection
		Start/Reset	Engine start/Reset
		Stop/EMO	Engine stop/Emergency stop
	Trigger type accelerator	Hydraulic control + Engine control	

# ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SPECIFICATIONS

1. PRECAUTIONS (FOR ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SPECIFICATION)	7- 2
2. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS	7- 3
3. MACHINE EACH SECTION	7- 5
4. OPERATION	7-12
5. LONG-TERM STORAGE	7-19
6. ELECTRIC MOTOR TROUBLESHOOTING	7-20
7. PRINCIPLE SPECIFICATION LIST	7-21
8. SPECIFICATION DIMENSINAL DRAWING	7-22
9. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH	7-23

# 1. PRECAUTIONS (FOR ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SPECIFICATION)

## ⚠ WARNING

The following precautions should always be observed when using this machine. If these, or the engine and electric motor specifications are disregarded, a serious accident may occur.

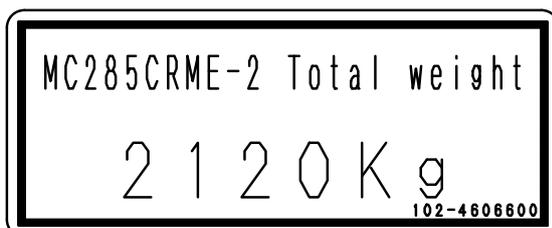
- Installation of this machine must comply with laws and regulations of your country. Contact us or our sales service agency if no laws and regulations are applied.
- Only personnel qualified according to laws and regulations of your country are allowed to establish power connection of the power supply equipment or inspect and repair the electric system. Contact us or our sales service agency if no laws and regulations are applied.
- Operation and storage of this machine must satisfy the requirements listed below:
- Operating temperature: -10 to 40°C (no frost)
- Storage temperature: -20 to 60°C
- Operating humidity: Max. 90%RH (no condensation)
- Atmosphere: Outdoor environment free from explosive, flammable, and corrosive gases, moisture, and excessive dust particles
- Altitude: Max. 1000m
- Vibration: Max. 0.5G
- Turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker promptly in the event of anything abnormal on the machine during operation. The potential of fire or an electric shock may occur if disregarded.
- Turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker promptly in the event of a power failure during operation, otherwise the machine may inadvertently operate upon energization.
- Always turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker before performing inspection and maintenance of the electric system. The potential of a electric shock may occur during work if disregarded. Before inspection and maintenance, inform all personnel to alert them of your action. Be sure to attach a warning tag, "Do Not Touch", to the power supply equipment breaker for the prevention of accidental breaker operation conducted by other personnel.
- Always turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker and wait for at least 10 minutes before performing inspection and maintenance of the electric system. Ensure that no voltage is applied to the power supply box with a tester.
- All the parts will be at elevated temperatures immediately after machine operation. For safety only perform inspection and maintenance of the electric system according to the procedure provided in this manual and only after the parts drop in temperature. Potential burns may occur if disregarded.
- Keep the power supply box and inverter board away from water. The machine may malfunction if the electric system is wet. Exercise due caution when handling the electric system.
- Contact us or our sales service agency to request repair of the inside of the inverter board, when necessary.

## CAUTION

See "Safety" for safety precautions that are not provided in this section.

The weight (mass) of a machine varies with machine types between a standard specification machine and a machine fitted with both engine and electric motor specifications.

See the following figure for the weight (mass) of the machine described in "Safety 2.3 WORKING WITH CRANE".

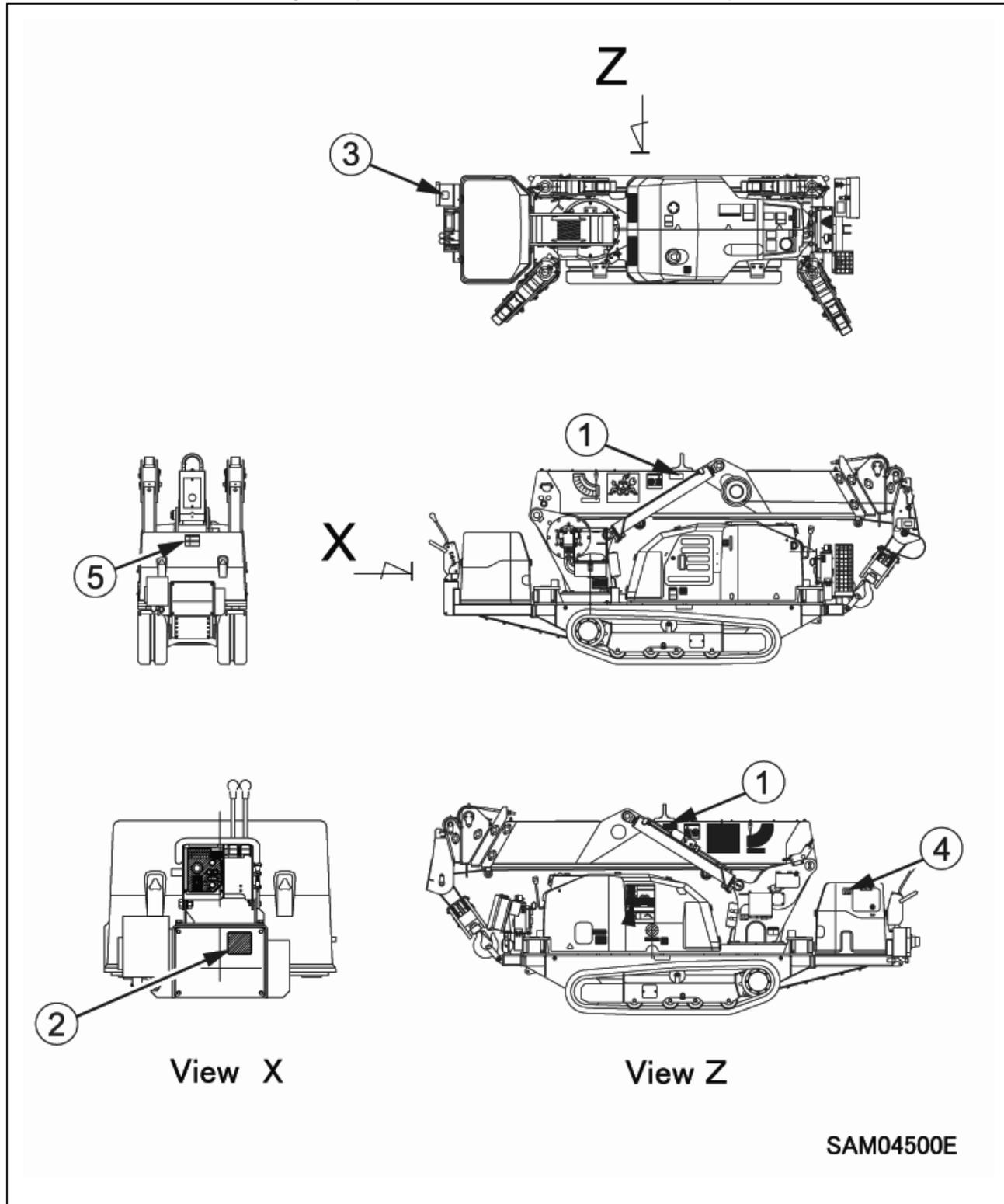


## 2. SAFETY LABEL LOCATIONS

Keep these labels clean at all times.

If lost, apply again or replace with a new one.

Labels other than the following safety labels are fitted, treat in the same way.

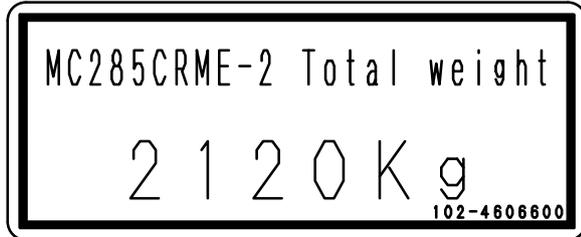


## CAUTION

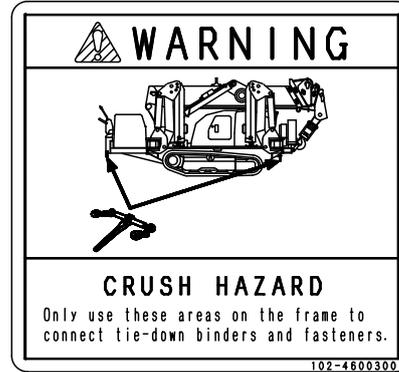
Different and supplementary labels are applied to the machine according to the engine and electric motor specifications, compared with the standard specification machine. This section describes the labels designed for the machine fitted with the engine and electric motor specifications.

See "Safety 6. Safety Label Locations" for the safety labels that are not described in this section.

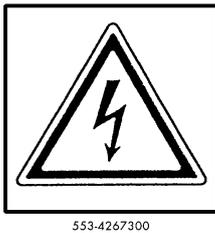
(1) Total machine weight (103-4552000)



(2) Loads on 4-rope machine hoisting (103-4552200)



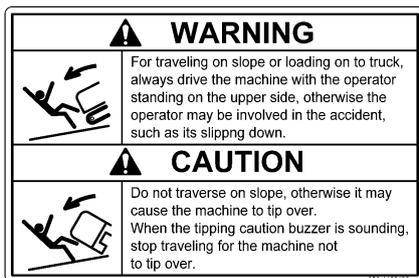
(3) Electric shock caution (553-4267300) (2 pieces)



(4) Washing caution (350-4539700)

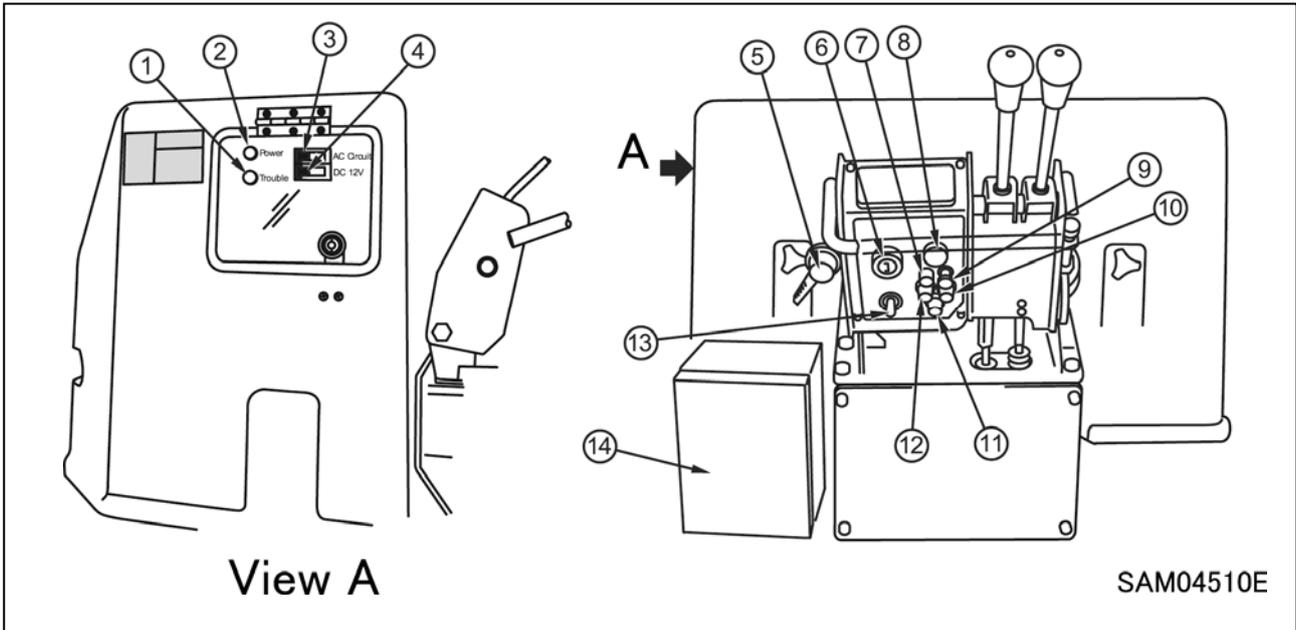


(5) Caution when travelling on slope (353-4488400)



### 3. MACHINE EACH SECTION

#### 3.1 TRAVELLING UNIT



- |                             |                                       |
|-----------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| (1) Power lamp (white)      | (9) Headlight switch                  |
| (2) Trouble lamp (red)      | (10) Fuse (10A)                       |
| (3) DC12V power switch      | (11) Fuse (10A)                       |
| (4) AC circuit power switch | (12) Fuse (30A)                       |
| (5) Acceleration lever      | (13) Engine and electric motor switch |
| (6) Starter switch          | (14) Power supply box                 |
| (7) Emergency stop switch   |                                       |
| (8) Horn switch             |                                       |

#### CAUTION

This section describes only the switches and monitors that become available when the machine is powered by electric motor.

- This section describes the 4 switches and monitors listed below.

Starter switch (6), engine and electric motor switch (13), emergency stop switch (8), hour meter.

See "Operation 1.3 TRAVELLING AND CRANE OPERATION UNITS" for other switches and monitors.

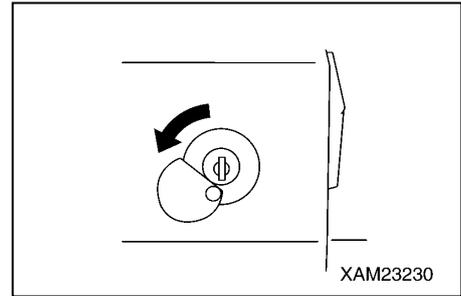
### [1] STARTER SWITCH (6)

#### CAUTION

Always turn the starter switch to the "OFF" position after completing the work.

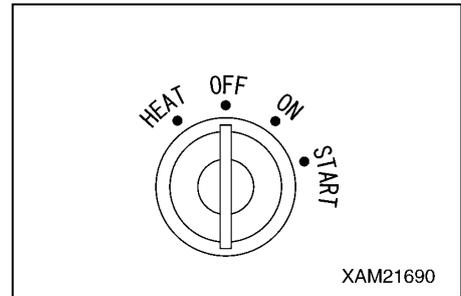
#### NOTES

When inserting the key for the starter switch, slide the cover to the left so that you can see the keyhole of the switch, and then insert the key.



Use this switch to start and stop the electric motor.

- HEAT : Not used
- OFF : You can insert/remove the key at this position. All the switches in the electrical system are turned off and the electric motor stops.
- ON : Electricity runs into the Inverter unit..
- START: When the electric motor has started, release your hand from the key. The key automatically returns to the "ON" position.



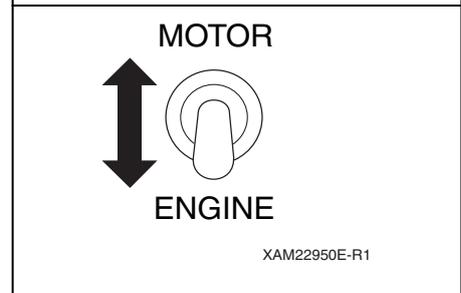
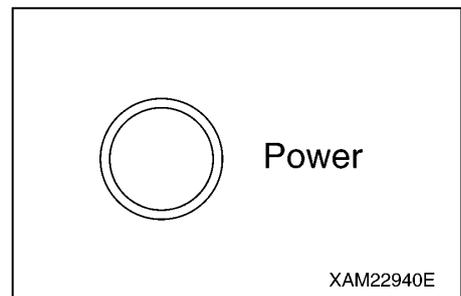
### [2] ENGINE AND ELECTRIC MOTOR SWITCH (13)

#### CAUTION

Ensure that the Inverter unit power lamp is ON when switching the engine and electric motor switch to "Electric Motor". Electric operation is permitted only when the power lamp is ON.

Use this switch to switch the power output source of the machine.

- Engine : Push the switch down.  
The engine is designated as a power output source.
- Electric motor : Push the switch up.  
The electric motor is designated as a power output source.



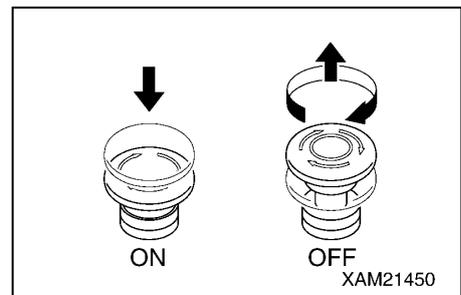
### [3] EMERGENCY STOP SWITCH (7)

Use this switch in case of an error with the machine. It will stop the machine in case of an emergency.

- ON: Press the switch. The electric motor stops.
- OFF: Turn the switch clockwise (direction of the arrow in the right figure). The switch returns to the original position.

#### NOTES

When restarting the electric motor after an emergency stop, be sure to turn the emergency stop switch to the "OFF" position before starting the electric motor.



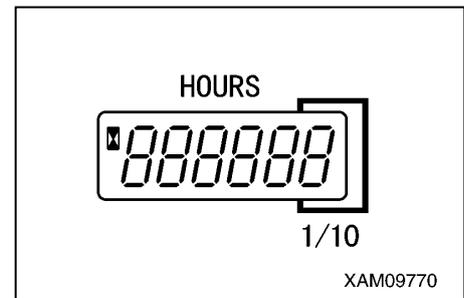
#### [4] HOUR METER

This meter shows the total running hours of the machine.

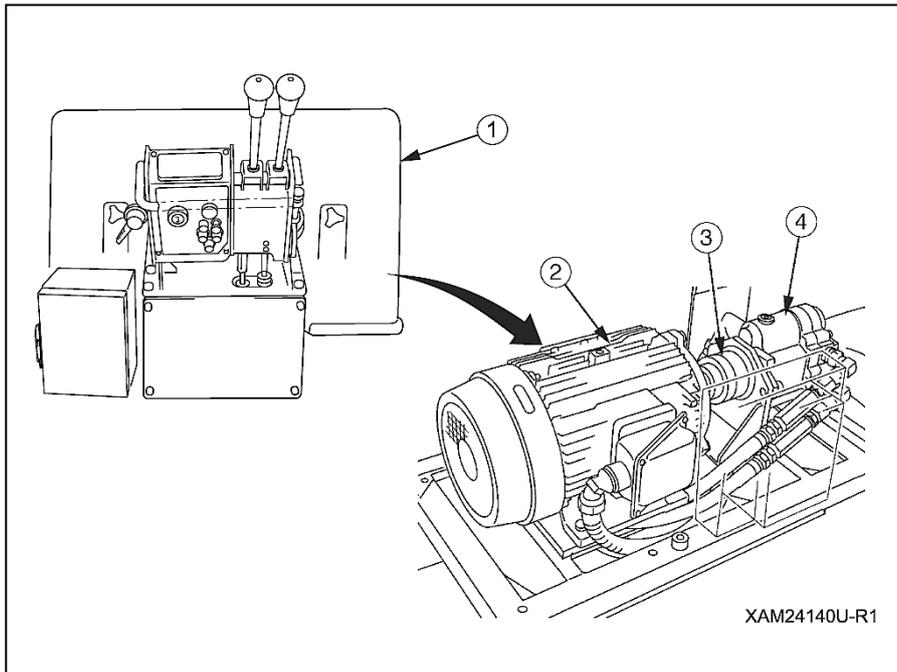
Use this value as the reference for periodical check intervals.

With the power lamp of the Inverter unit ON, the meter gives continuous readings upon switching the engine and electric motor switch to "Electric Motor" and turning the starter switch to the ON position, even if the electric motor and machine are at a halt.

The meter indication advances "1" when the machine has been running for 1 hour regardless of the engine rotation speed.

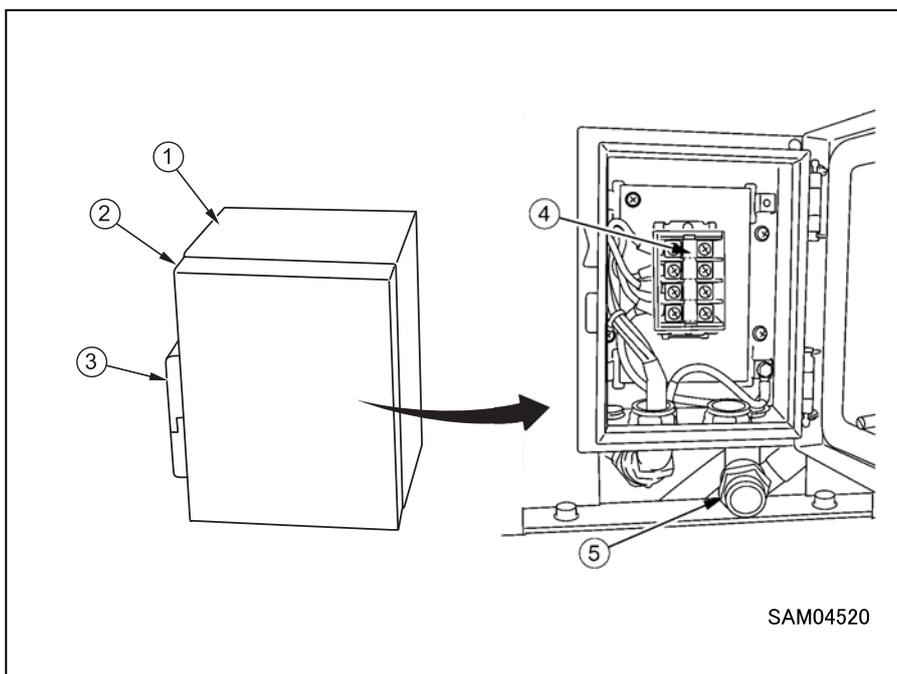


### 3.2 POWER UNIT



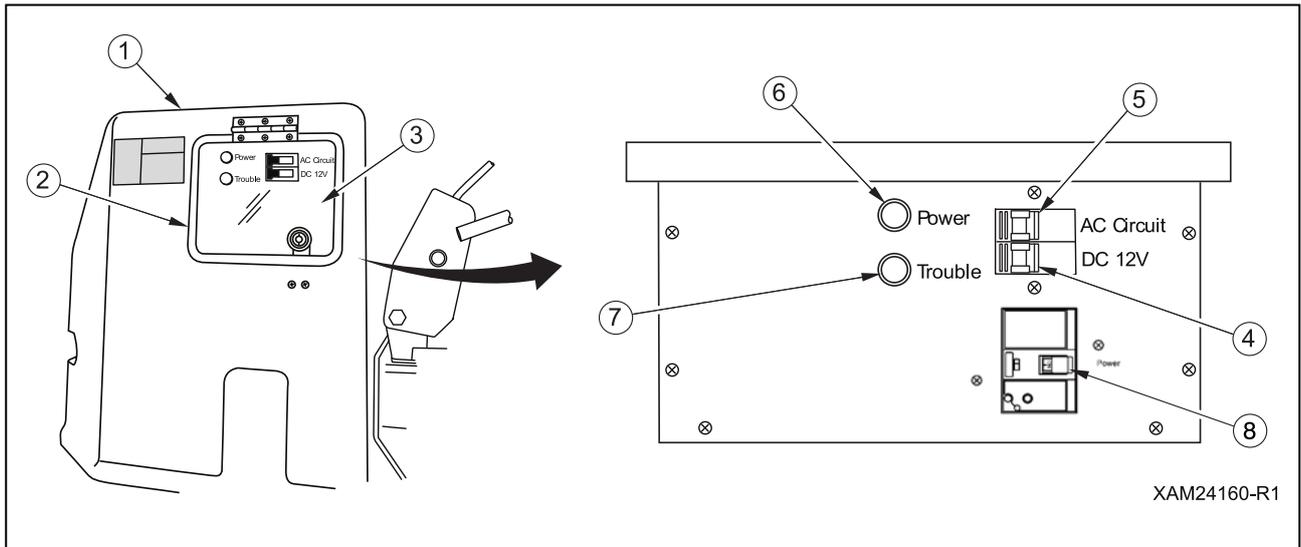
- (1) Power unit cover
- (2) Electric motor
- (3) Coupling
- (4) Hydraulic pump

### 3.3 POWER SUPPLY BOX



- (1) Power supply box
- (2) Power supply box door
- (3) Door handle
- (4) Terminal block
- (5) Cable inserting hole

### 3.4 INVERTER UNIT



- (1) Electric motor unit cover
- (2) Protective cover
- (3) Inverter unit
- (4) DC12V power switch

- (5) AC circuit power switch
- (6) Power lamp (white)
- (7) Trouble lamp (red)
- (8) Main breaker (with a leak detector)

## [1] MAIN BREAKER (WITH A LEAK DETECTOR)

### ⚠ WARNING

- Make sure the breaker is OFF when this machine is receiving no power from power supply equipment and when work is completed.
- Abnormal conditions are encountered around the Inverter unit, electric motor, or electric wiring when the breaker is automatically turned OFF during operation. Be sure to locate failures and check for burning smell and faulty parts. Promptly contact us or our sales service agency to request an inspection or repair.
- Inspections and repairs must be completed before turning ON the breaker to re-supply power. Potential fire or machine failure may occur if disregarded.

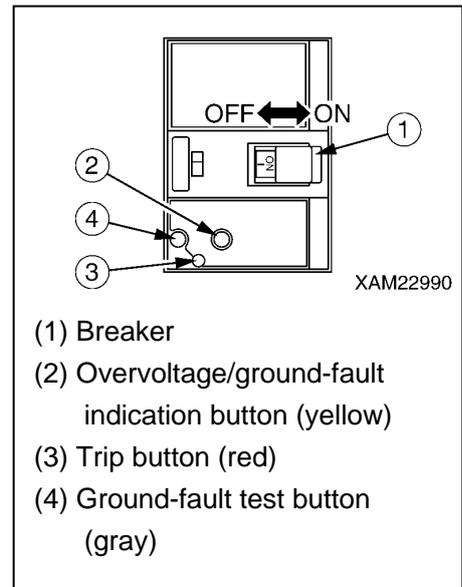
The main breaker is equipped with the parts shown in the figure to the right.

- The breaker (1) is designed to provide automatic shutoff of the power that is supplied from the Inverter unit to the electric motor, in the event of an error including overvoltage, to prevent fire and machine failure.

The breaker (1) also controls the supply of power to the electric motor and Inverter unit.

- ON : Power is supplied.
- OFF: No power is supplied.
- The overvoltage/ground-fault indication button (2) on the cover is designed to eject in the event of an overvoltage or ground fault. To reset, press the breaker to turn ON.
- The trip button (3) is designed to mechanically trip the breaker as an external control.
- The ground-fault test button (4) is used to test tripping in response to a ground fault.

Proper tripping is assured if the overvoltage/ground-fault indication button (2) on the cover ejects.



### CAUTION

**Periodic (biannual) ground fault test is recommended. The test button should be controlled at 10-second or longer intervals and not be pressed more than required. If an indication of a ground fault remains on after the overvoltage/ground-fault indication button (2) is reset, contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection or repair.**

## [2] DC12V POWER SWITCH

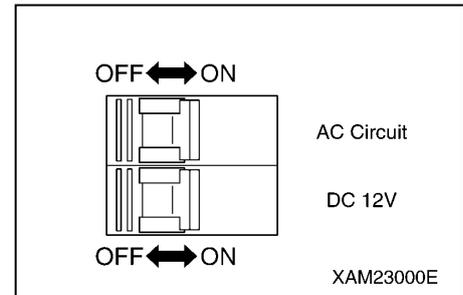
The DC12V power switch is used to switch the DC power output source for the crane operation system.

- ON: Power is supplied to the crane operation system.
- OFF: No power is supplied to the crane operation system.

## [3] AC CIRCUIT POWER SWITCH

The AC circuit power switch is used to switch the AC power output source for the Inverter unit and inverter cooling fan.

- ON: Power is supplied to the Inverter unit and inverter cooling fan.
- OFF: No power is supplied to the Inverter unit and inverter cooling fan.



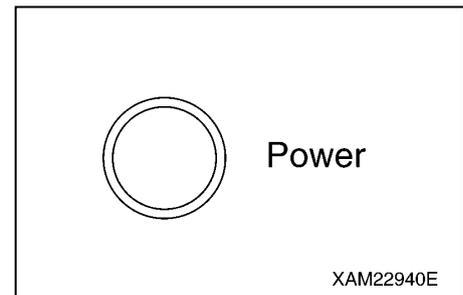
### NOTES

- No safety hazard is posed even if the DC12V power switch and AC circuit power switch remain on.
- The AC circuit power switch is illustrated in the upper figure to the right, and the DC12V power switch is illustrated in the lower figure.

## [4] POWER LAMP (WHITE)

The power lamp is designed to indicate the presence of energization to this machine from power supply equipment.

- ON: This machine is receiving power from power supply equipment.
- OFF: This machine is not receiving power from power supply equipment.



### NOTES

If the power lamp remains off despite the power supply equipment breaker being turned ON with power supply assured between power supply equipment and this machine, check the power supply on power supply equipment.

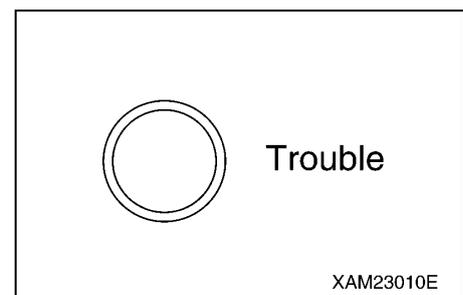
## [5] TROUBLE LAMP (RED)

### ⚠ WARNING

**The Trouble lamp (Red) will turn ON when An error occurs in the Inverter unit.  
Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection or repair in this event.**

The trouble lamp is designed to indicate the presence of an error in the Inverter unit.

- ON: An error is detected in the Inverter unit.
- OFF: The Inverter unit is in normal operation.



## 4. OPERATION

### 4.1 CHECKING BEFORE OPERATION

#### 4.1.1 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR (VISIBLE CHECKS)

##### **WARNING**

For details of checking before starting engine (visible checks), see “Operation 2.1.1 visible checks”.

As to the machine conforming to engine and electric motor specifications, potential fire in the machine may occur if flammable materials and oil leaks are present around the hot sections such as the Inverter unit, power supply box, and power unit.

Carefully check around these areas. If there is any abnormality, be sure to fix it or contact us or our sales service agency.

#### 4.1.2 CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR

##### **CAUTION**

For details of checking before starting electric motor, see “Operation 2.1.2 Checking Before Starting Engine”.

#### 4.1.3 CHECKING AFTER STARTING ELECTRIC MOTOR

##### **CAUTION**

For details of checking after starting electric motor, see “Operation 2.1.3 Checking After Starting Engine”.

## 4.2 POWER SUPPLY CONNECTION

### (BETWEEN POWER SUPPLY EQUIPMENT AND MACHINE)

#### ⚠ WARNING

The following precautions should always be observed. Potential serious accidents may occur if disregarded.

- Installation of this machine must comply with laws and regulations of your country. Contact us or our sales service agency if no laws and regulations are applied.
- Only personnel qualified according to laws and regulations of your country are allowed to establish the power connection between power supply equipment and this machine. Contact us or our sales service agency if no laws and regulations are applied.
- Be sure to supply the machine specifications-compliant power (AC 380V,400V) to this machine.

Power supply voltage (V)	Power current (A)	Power supply frequency (Hz)
380,400	11.5	50

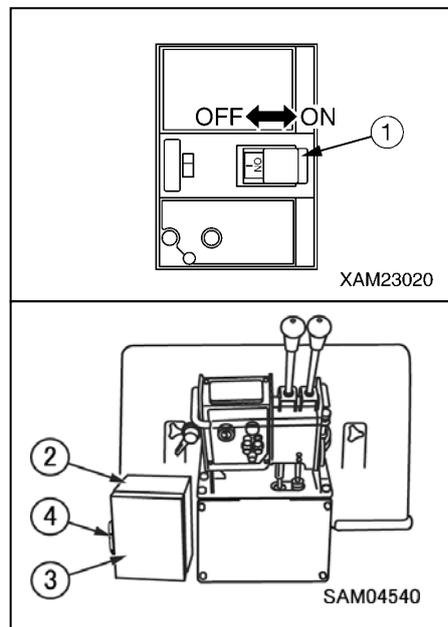
- A cabtyre cable must adhere to the specifications of this machine (AC 380, 400V).

Motor voltage (V)	Cable spec. (sq)	Cable length (m)
380,400	3.5	20
	5.5	40

- Always use a dry cabtyre cable.  
Potential electric shocks may occur if the cabtyre cable terminal is wet or power connection is performed with moist hands.
- Always turn OFF the main breakers of power supply equipment and this machine before connecting the cabtyre cable to this machine.
- Keep the cabtyre cable free of flaws and bends.  
Be sure to replace a damaged cabtyre cable with a new one.
- Ensure that no sharp protrusion is present at an area where the cabtyre cable is routed.  
Failure to follow the above precaution may cause the cable to get snagged on the protrusion and becoming damaged or broken.
- To connect the cabtyre cable to the terminal block in the power supply box, torque the screw to the specified value. Potential fire or electric shock may occur if the screw comes loose and could develop a short circuit.
- To connect the cabtyre cable to the terminal block in the power supply box, tighten the cable ground screw properly for the prevention of water entry and cable protection.
- The ground wire of the cabtyre cable must be properly connected to the “PE terminal” at the bottom of the terminal block in the power supply box.
- Always close the power supply box door completely after work, and attach the Inverter unit cover properly.

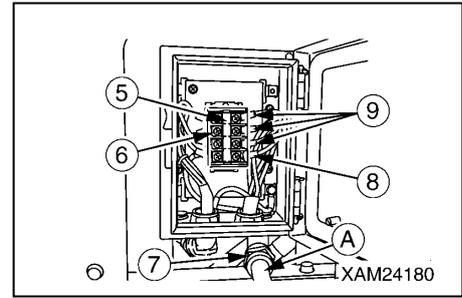
Use the following procedure for establishing power connection between power supply equipment and this machine.

1. Make sure the breakers of power supply equipment and Inverter unit are OFF.
2. Unlock the door (3) of the power supply box (2) by pulling the handle (4) toward you to open it.



3. Remove the cover (6) of the terminal block (5) in the power supply box, holding the top and bottom of the cover (6) with fingers and pulling it toward you.

4. Draw the machine specifications-compliant cabtyre cable (A) through a hole of the cable ground (7) at the bottom of the power supply box to connect it to the terminal block (5).



### CAUTION

- The length of a cabtyre cable varies with cable specifications. Any cable length should conform to values listed below.

Motor voltage (V)	Cable spec. (sq)	Cable length (m)
380,400	3.5	20
	5.5	40

- The ground cable (8) of the cabtyre cable must be properly connected to the “PE terminal” on the terminal block . Inverter-driven three cables (9) other than the ground cable are capable of being connected to any of "L1, L2, and L3 terminals”.

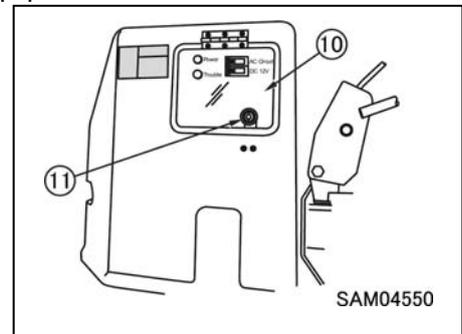
5. Upon completion of connection of the power supply box cabtyre cable (A), replace the cover (6) of the terminal block (7) and close the door (3) of the power supply box (2).

6. Move and connect the cable terminal block to the power supply equipment breaker without undue strain on the cabtyre cable (A).

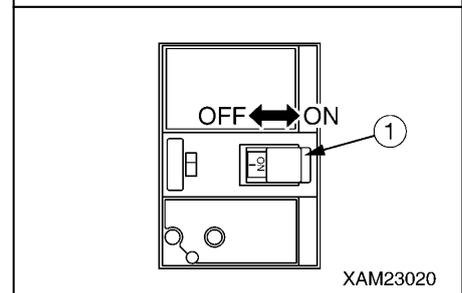
7. Turn ON the power supply equipment breaker.

8. Remove the four mounting screws (11) and remove the protective cover (10).

9. Turn ON the breaker (1).

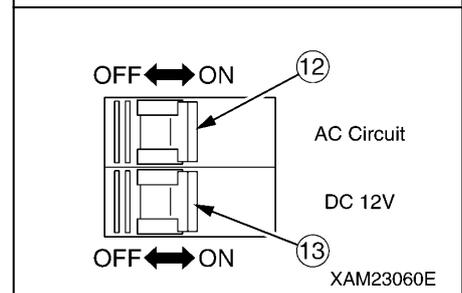


10. Turn ON the AC circuit power switch (12) and DC12V power switch (13).



**NOTES**  
No safety hazard is posed even if the AC circuit power switch (12) and DC12V power switch (13) remain ON.

11. Replace the protective cover (10) to its original position and securely tighten the four mounting screws (11).



## 4.3 OPERATION AND CHECKING AFTER POWER CONNECTION

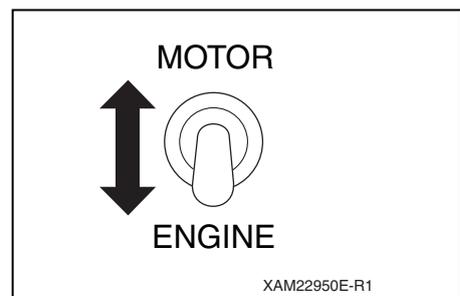
### ⚠ WARNING

- Before starting the electric motor, make sure no personnel or impediments are close to the machine and sound the horn.
- Warm-up time is required. The motor needs adequate warm-up time especially in cold climates.  
Failure to warm the motor may result in a serious accident on account of slow reaction of the travelling gear and crane from the operating lever.
- Ensure that no abnormal noise, odor, or vibration is present in and around the Inverter unit and power unit during warm-up. If abnormal conditions are encountered, immediately turn the starter switch to the OFF position to bring the machine to a halt. Turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker accordingly to shut off the supply source.  
Check the Inverter unit and electric motor, surrounding items and electric wiring for burning smells or damaged parts. Promptly contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection or repair.
- Crane operational check is necessary after motor warm-up.  
Keep the hook block away from the boom to avoid interference or collision.
- Exercise caution to avoid contact between the boom, the operator and any personnel whilst slewing it.
- If crane operational check detects an abnormal event, make an emergency stop promptly and repair any relevant part. A potential serious accident may occur if disregarded.
- Exercise caution not to drive on or entangle the cable during crane travelling.  
A member of staff should guide the way as necessary and follow their lead.
- Keep the Inverter unit cover away from flammable materials.  
The inside of the Inverter unit will rise in temperature and that could lead to fire if disregarded.

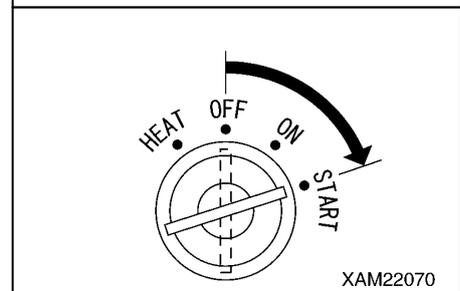
### CAUTION

- Normal temperature of the hydraulic oil is: 50 to 80°C  
The hydraulic oil minimum temperature should be around 20°C regardless of the operational environment such as low-temperature operation.
- Ensure that the main switch of the remote control box is turned OFF.

1. Set the engine and electric motor switch to the "Elec. Motor" position.

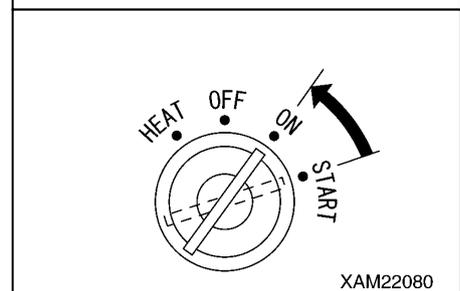


2. Insert the key into the starter switch and turn the key to the "START" position.



3. Release your hand from the key once the electric motor has started.

The key will automatically return to the "ON" position.



4. Conduct a 5-minute warm-up after the electric motor is started.

## NOTES

This machine is designed to switch to the energy-saving mode if no lever operation is attempted within 5 minutes after the electric motor is started.

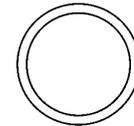
Once the energy-saving mode has been entered, the electric motor undergoes an extreme reduction in rotational speed. Operate any lever for recovery from the energy-saving mode. The electric motor comes to a stop if no lever operation is attempted within further 30 minutes after being started. Turn the starter switch to the "START" position again for recovery.

5. Visually check through the access protective cover of the Inverter unit to check that the trouble lamp remains OFF.

## CAUTION

**An error occurs in the Inverter unit, which causes the trouble lamp to light up in red.**

**Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection or repair in the above event.**



Trouble

XAM23010E

6. Use the following procedure for checking the power unit if an abnormal noise, odor, or vibration is present in and around the power unit.

(1) Turn the starter switch key to the "OFF" position.

The electric motor comes to a stop.

(2) Remove the four mounting bolts (2) securing the bottom of the electric motor unit cover (1) and remove the electric motor unit cover (1).

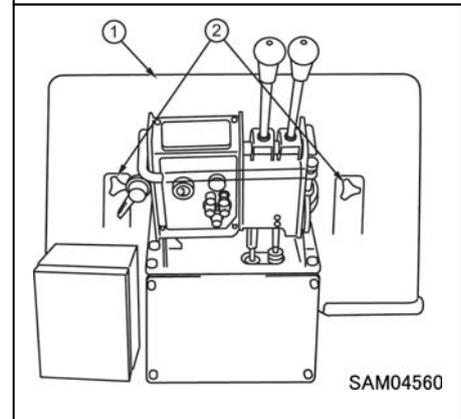
(3) Check the mounting bolts securing the electric motor (3) and hydraulic pump (4) for loose or missing bolts. Check the coupling (5) for looseness.

If checks find loose bolts, retighten the bolts to the specified torque value.

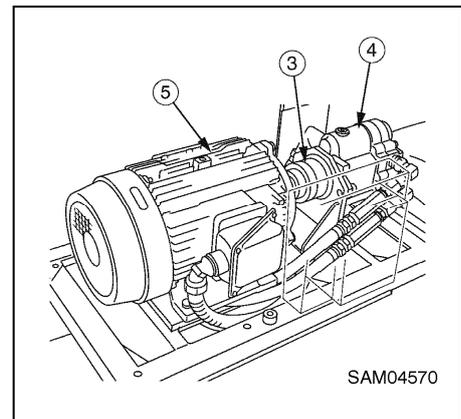
(4) Keep the area around the power unit free of dead leaves, paper waste, and dust etc.

Remove any dead leaves, paper, or dust etc.

(5) Install the electric motor unit cover (1) in reverse order of their removal upon completion of inspection and cleaning.



SAM04560



SAM04570

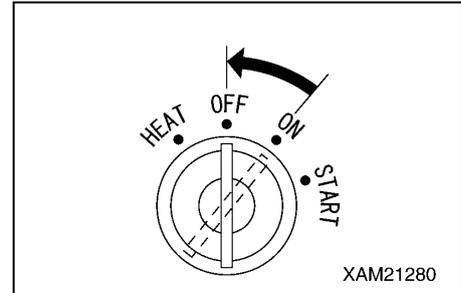
## 4.4 MACHINE OPERATION

### CAUTION

Perform crane operation referring to “Operation 2.5 Machine Travelling Posture” as specified in “Operation 2.23 Dos and Don’ts during Crane Operations” after motor warm-up is completed.

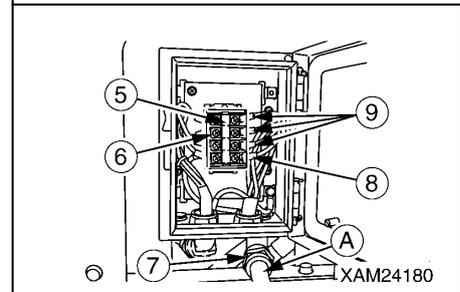
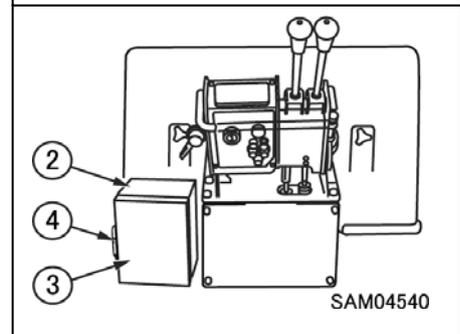
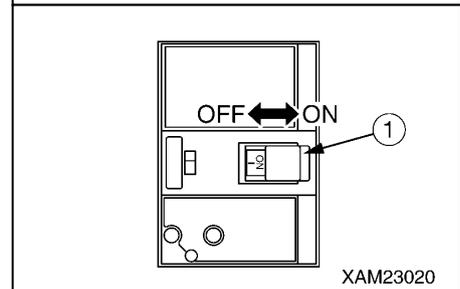
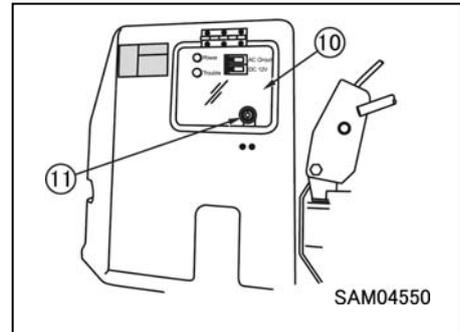
## 4.5 MACHINE STOP AND CHECKS AFTER STOPPING MACHINE

1. Turn the starter switch key to the “OFF” position.  
The electric motor comes to a stop.
2. Remove the starter switch key.
3. Visibly check for oil leakage, and check around the crawlers, crane, and exterior of the machine. If you find any leakage or abnormality, fix the problem.
4. Clean off the crawlers and outriggers, removing mud.
5. Keep the area around the inverter unit free of dead leaves and paper waste. A potential fire could occur if disregarded.



## 4.6 POWER SUPPLY SEPARATION (BETWEEN POWER SUPPLY EQUIPMENT AND MACHINE)

1. Turn OFF the power supply equipment breaker.
2. Remove the four mounting screws (11) and remove the protective cover (10).
3. Turn OFF the main breaker (1).
4. Replace the protective cover (10) to its original position and securely tighten the four mounting screws (11).
5. Unlock the door (3) of the power supply box (2) by pulling the handle (4) toward you to open it.
6. Remove the cover (6) of the terminal block (5) in the power supply box, holding the top and bottom of the cover (6) with fingers and pulling it toward you.
7. Disconnect the cable (8) and three cables (9) of the cabtyre cable (A) from the terminal block (5).



### CAUTION

- Clean off the cabtyre cable and check it for damage or bend. If check finds damage, replace the cable with a new one.
- Always return the cabtyre cable to a designated place after performing inspection and cleaning.

8. Replace the cover (6) of the terminal block (5) to its original position and close the door (3) of the power supply box (2).

## 5. LONG-TERM STORAGE

### CAUTION

- See “Operation 7. Long-Term Storage” for long-term storage.
- This section describes only the long-term storage method that is not defined in standard specifications.

Use the following procedure for storing the machine for 6 months or longer (3 months or longer if stored in hot and humid surroundings).

- Cover the electric motor and hydraulic pump of the power unit with a plastic sheet. Keep the machine dry with a dehumidifying agent in the covered sheet.
- Conduct 5-minute idling of engine quarterly during long-term storage.

### CAUTION

- Quarterly, insulation resistance test of the electric motor wiring is required during long-term storage.  
Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection in the above event.
- Insulation resistance test of the electric motor wiring is required before resuming use of the machine after long-term storage.  
Contact us or our sales service agency to request inspection in the above event.

## 6. ELECTRIC MOTOR TROUBLESHOOTING

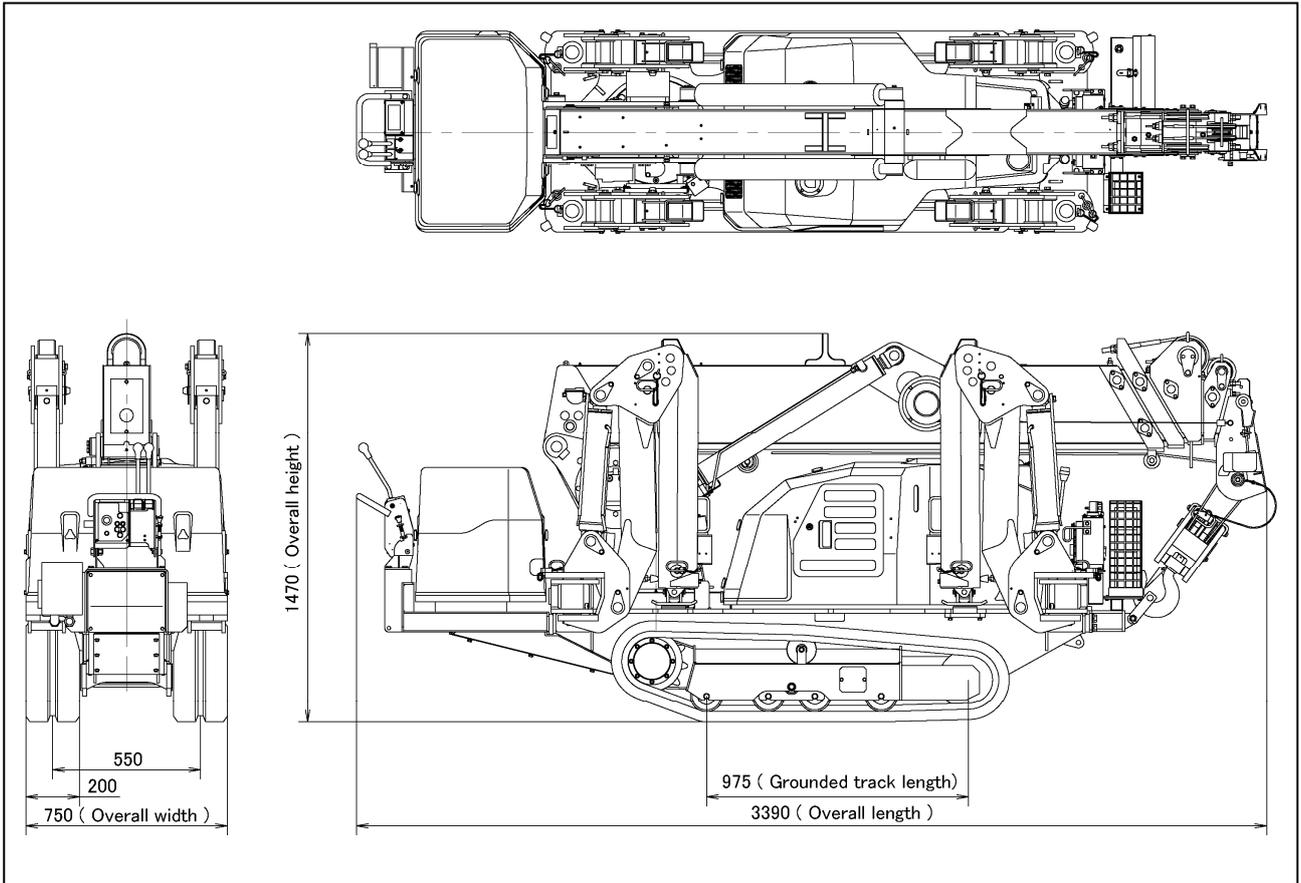
- Make sure that you contact us or our sales service agency for the actions indicated in the Actions fields.
- Ask our sales service agency for repair if you suspect any other abnormalities or causes than those given below.

Abnormal Phenomenon	Major Cause(s)	Actions
The motor remains off despite the switch being turned to the "START" position.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Improper wiring and power supply error</li> <li>• The Inverter unit breakers: OFF</li> <li>• A break in stator winding</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check wiring, see "Engine &amp; Electric Motor Spec. 4. Operation".</li> <li>• Turn ON the breakers.</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> </ul>
The motor comes to a stop during use.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inverter unit error (Red lamp: ON)</li> <li>• Failure in the Inverter unit</li> <li>• Failure in the power unit</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the power supply source (voltage and phase interruption).</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> </ul>
The power output of the motor reaches zero or undergoes gradual decrease.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Phase interruption in the power source of power supply equipment</li> <li>• Slack in motor wiring</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the power source of power supply equipment (voltage and phase interruption).</li> <li>• Inspect connection with the motor Terminal block .</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> </ul>
The cabtyre cable rises in temperature.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Considerable voltage drop</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ensure that the power supply voltage of power supply equipment is at a specified value.</li> <li>• Replace the cabtyre cable with one adhering to specifications.</li> </ul>
An abnormal noise and vibration are present in the power unit during operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A break in motor winding</li> <li>• Loose fixing bolts on the motor and pump.</li> <li>• Loose coupling fixing bolts</li> <li>• Impurities on the coupling</li> <li>• Clogging in the hydraulic oil tank strainer and element</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Inspect the motor Terminal block .</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> <li>• Perform inspection, repair, and cleaning. See "Engine &amp; Electric Motor Spec. 4. Operation" .</li> <li>(• Replacement)</li> <li>• Clean and replace the strainer and element according to periodic inspection.</li> </ul>
The power unit rises in temperature during operation.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High ambient temperature</li> <li>• Poor ventilation</li> <li>• Considerable voltage drop</li> <li>• Overload</li> <li>• High number of starts</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure the power unit is complying with the environmental specifications.</li> <li>• Perform inspection and cleaning, See "Engine &amp; Electric Motor Specifications 4. Operation".</li> <li>• Replace the cabtyre cable with one adhering to specifications.</li> <li>• Reduce loads.</li> <li>• Reduce the number of starts.</li> </ul>
The leak detector of the Inverter unit main breaker is tripped.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• High humidity</li> <li>• Presence of water droplets</li> <li>• Poor grounding</li> <li>• A break in stator winding</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the leak detector in environment compliant with specifications.</li> <li>• Attach the cover properly.</li> <li>• Adhere to grounding standards.</li> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> </ul>
The trouble lamp (red) of the Inverter unit comes on.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Failure in the Inverter unit</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(• Inspection, repair, replacement)</li> </ul>

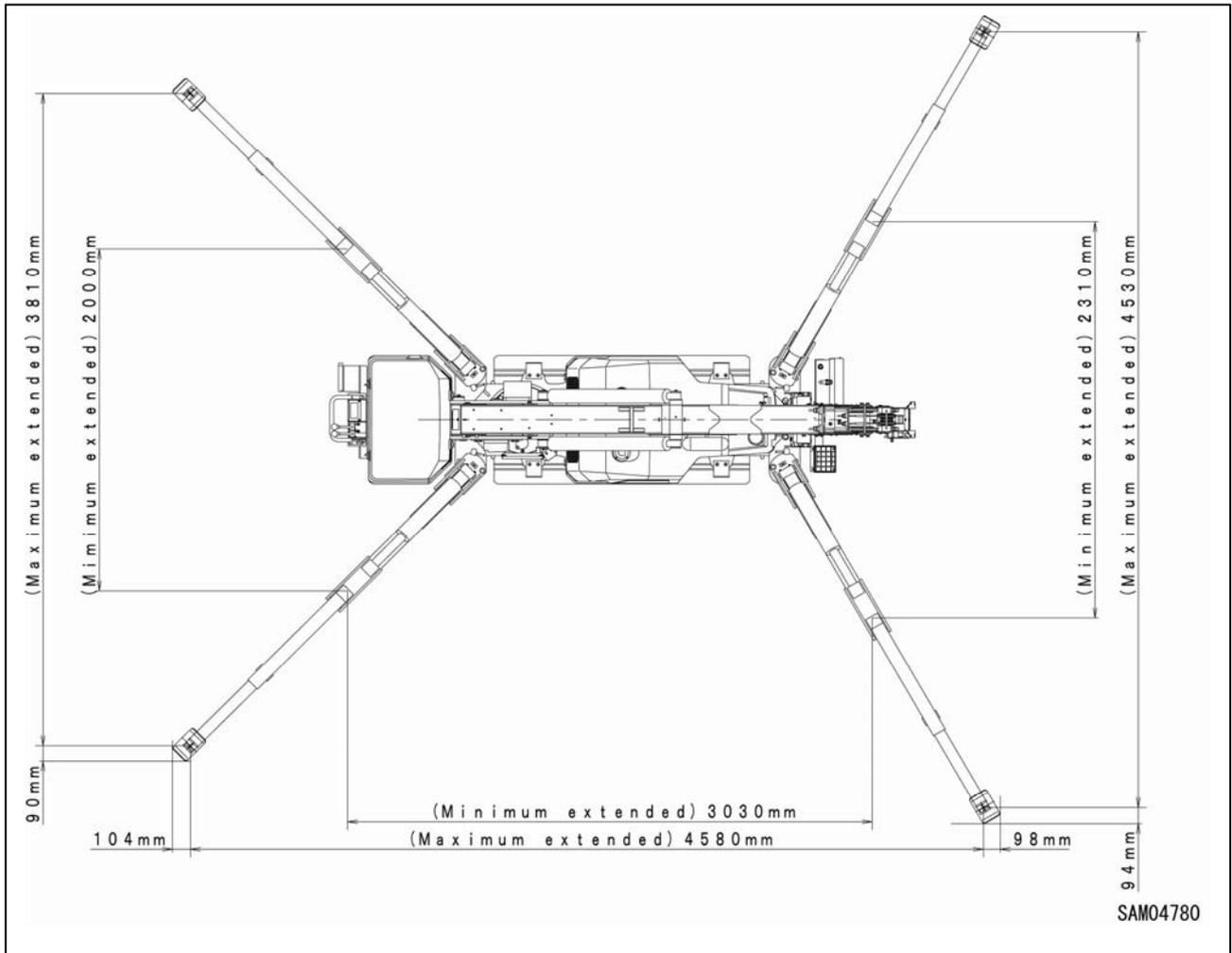
## 7. PRINCIPLE SPECIFICATION LIST

System / Item		MC285C-2E (Engine and Electric Motor Specifications)
Weight and dimensions	Machine weight	2120kg
	Overall length × width × height	3390mm x 750mm x 1470mm
	Distance between center idler and sprocket	975mm
	Track gauge	550mm
	Width of crawler	200mm
Performance	Crane capacity	2.82t x 1.4m
	Maximum working radius	8.2m
	Maximum lifting height above ground	8.7m
Winch system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven with brake, differential planetary gear type, with counter balance valve(within drum type)
	Hook hoist speed	Engine: 9.3 m/min (4 layers, 4 parts of line)
	Hoist wire rope	IWRC 6 x Fi (29) 7 mm x 48 m
Telescoping system	Type	Sequential hydraulic cylinders × 2 + wire rope telescoping systems × 2
	Type of boom	Fully automatic 5-section pentagonal telescopic (3 to 5 stage: simultaneous telescoping)
	Boom length	2.535m – 4.075m – 5.575m – 7.075m – 8.575m
	Boom telescoping stroke/ time	Engine: 6.04 m/22 sec
Boom hoist system	Type	Hydraulic double acting cylinder,direct acting type × 2
	Derrick angle/ time	Engine: 0 to 80° /14 sec
Slewing system	Type	Swing bearing support, hydraulic motor drive, worm and spur gears, worm self-lock
	Slewing angle/ speed	Engine: 360° (continuous)/60 sec (1.0 RPM)
Outrigger system	Type	1st stage with flexible stay damper, 2nd stage manual pullout, hydraulic cylinder direct acting type
	Max extended width	(Front) 3810mm x (Right/left) 4580mm x (Rear) 4530mm
Travelling system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven, Step-less speed changer
	Travel speed	Forward/backward: 0 – 2.2 km/h
	Grade ability	20°.
	Ground pressure	53.3 kPa(0.537kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
Hydraulic system	Hydraulic pump	Engine: Double-throw variable piston pump Electric: Double-throw variable piston pump
	Rated pressure	20.6MPa (210kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )
	Hydraulic oil tank capacity	20L
Engine	Model	Yanmar 2TNV70-NMBA
	Type	In-line 2-cylinder, water cooled, 4-cycle diesel
	Displacement	0.569L (569cc)
	Rated output (continuous)	7.4kW/2500min <sup>-1</sup> (10.1PS/2500rpm)
	Fuel tank capacity	Diesel 12L
Battery	Model	55B24R (DC12V x 1 piece)
Electric motor	Motor specifications	Three-phase induction motor: 5.5kW 4P 380V 50Hz
	Starting method	Inverter-controlled (30 to 60Hz)
Safety device	Over hoist detector, over un-winding detector, angle indicator, hydraulic safety valve, wire rope latch, level, machine body inclination alarm, EMO Switch, crane outrigger interlock device, moment limiter, outrigger setting light, working status light	
Classification	Mobile crane ISO4301/2 Group A1	

# 8. SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING



# 9. DIMENSIONAL DRAWING OF OUTRIGGER WIDTH

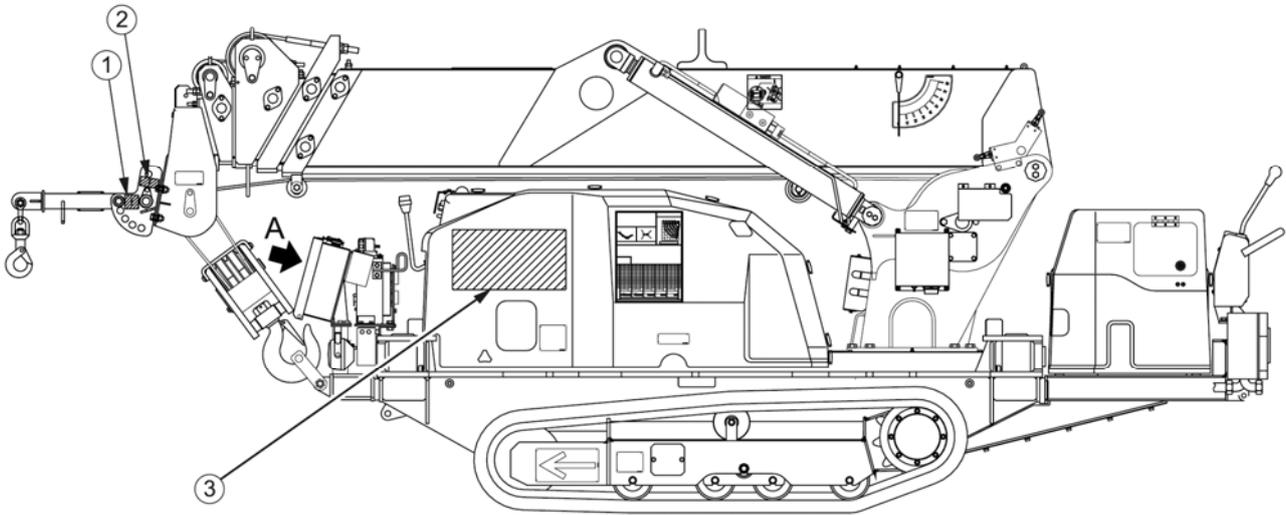




# SEARCHER HOOK

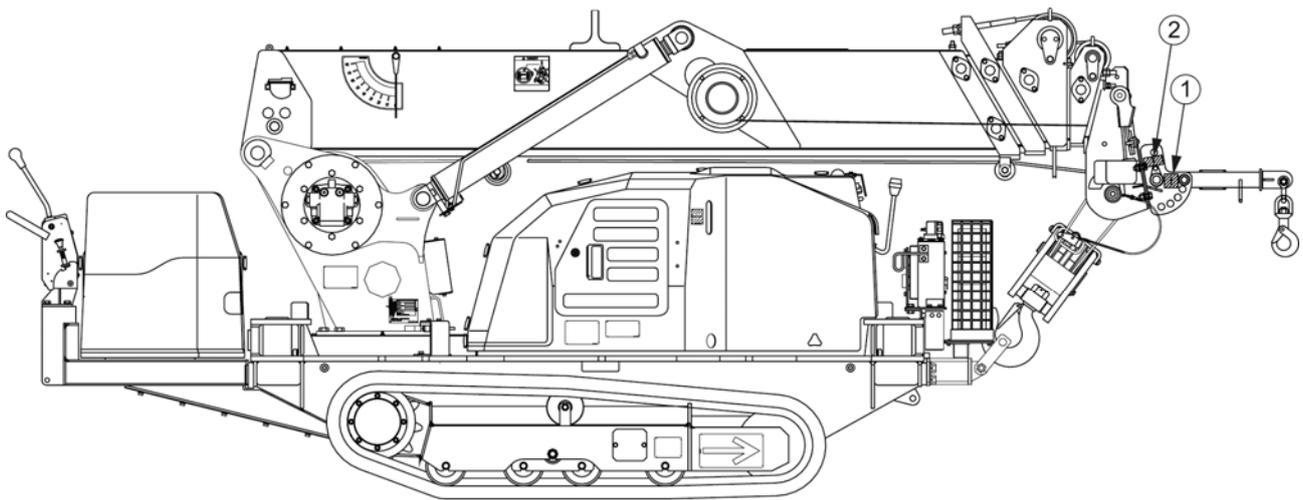
1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	8- 2
2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION	8- 4
3. NAMES OF MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	8- 6
4. OPERATION	8- 8
5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	8-10
6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD	8-13

# 1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS



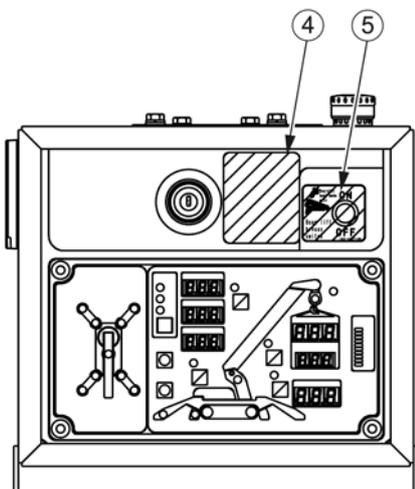
Left Side View

SAM04600E



Right Side View

SAM04610E



View A (ML Display)

SAM04620E



102-4608500

① 102-4608500



101-4608700

② 101-4608700

**Operating Range for Searcher Hook**

Working Radius (m)

Lifting height above ground (m)

MC285C-2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART															
Searcher Hook Mode															
Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to maximum				Rated Total Load Chart with outrigger extended to other than maximum											
2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom		2.535m/4.075m Boom		5.575m Boom		7.075m Boom		8.575m Boom	
Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)	Working Radius (m)	Max Total Load (k ea)
1.4orless	300	3.0orless	300	3.6orless	300	4.0orless	300	1.5orless	300	3.0orless	300	3.6orless	300	4.0orless	250
1.5	300	3.5	300	4.0	300	4.5	300	2.0	300	3.5	300	4.0	250	4.5	200
2.0	300	4.0	300	4.5	300	5.0	250	2.5	300	4.0	250	4.5	200	5.0	150
2.5	300	4.5	300	5.0	300	5.5	250	3.0	300	4.5	200	5.0	150	5.5	100
3.0	300	5.0	300	5.5	300	6.0	200	3.5	300	5.0	150	5.5	100	6.0	100
3.5	300	5.205	300	6.0	300	6.5	150	3.705	300	5.205	150	6.0	100	6.5	50
3.705	300			6.5	300	7.0	150					6.5	50	7.0	50
				6.705	250	7.5	100					6.705	50	7.5	0
						8.0	100							8.0	0
						8.205	100							8.205	0

**Notes:**

- This Rated Total Load Chart shows maximum allowable capacities. These rated total loads are based on the machine standing level on a firm ground supporting surface, under ideal job conditions and a freely suspended load.
- Sufficient design tolerance must be used to ensure adequate ground support surface design. The rated total loads are for static conditions only, and do not include dynamic effects of swinging, extending, retracting, lowering, raising, wind or adverse conditions. Crane users must reduce rated total loads ratings to take all conditions into account.
- The load radius shown in the Rated Total Load Chart is based on practical working radius including boom deflection due to loading. The crane user must calculate and compensate for boom deflection as the load is lifted.
- Deductions from Searcher Hook Rated Total Load must be made for the weight of the searcher hook (100lb. block/ball) and all rigging.
- Crane users must consult the Operator's Manual for complete details about assembly, operation, maintenance, configuration and its limitations. Modifications to the crane, other than what is specified or supplied by the original equipment manufacturer, can result in a reduction of rated total load ratings.
- This operating range chart does not include boom deflections.

**DANGER**  
**TIPPING HAZARD**  
When using searcher hook, Moment limiter "FALL MODE" must be set to searcher hook mode.  
Do not use searcher hook and main hoist hook block/ball simultaneously.

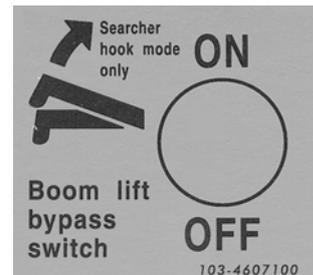
CF 102-2150000

③ 102-2150000



US 102-4608000

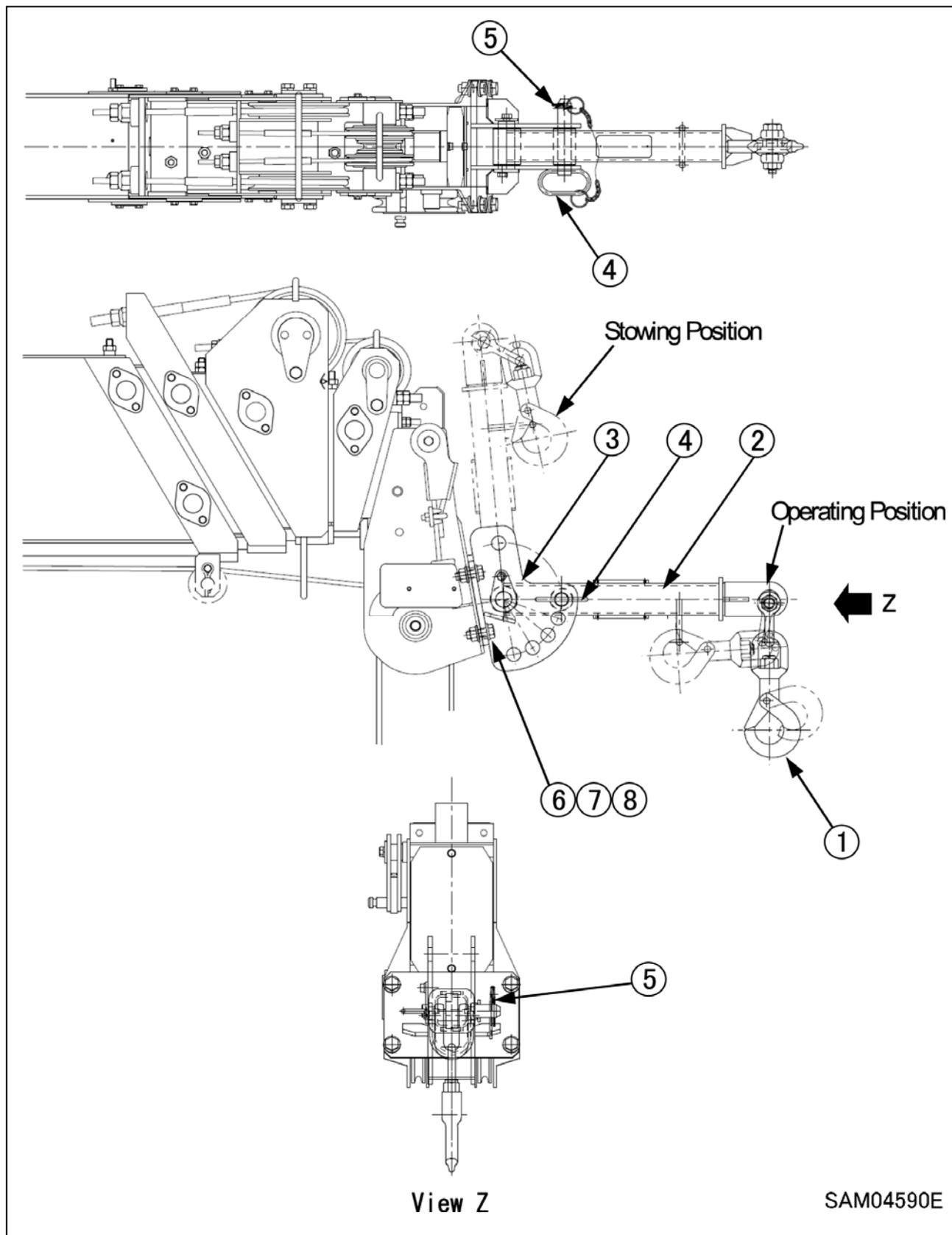
④ 102-4608000



103-4607100

⑤ 103-4607100

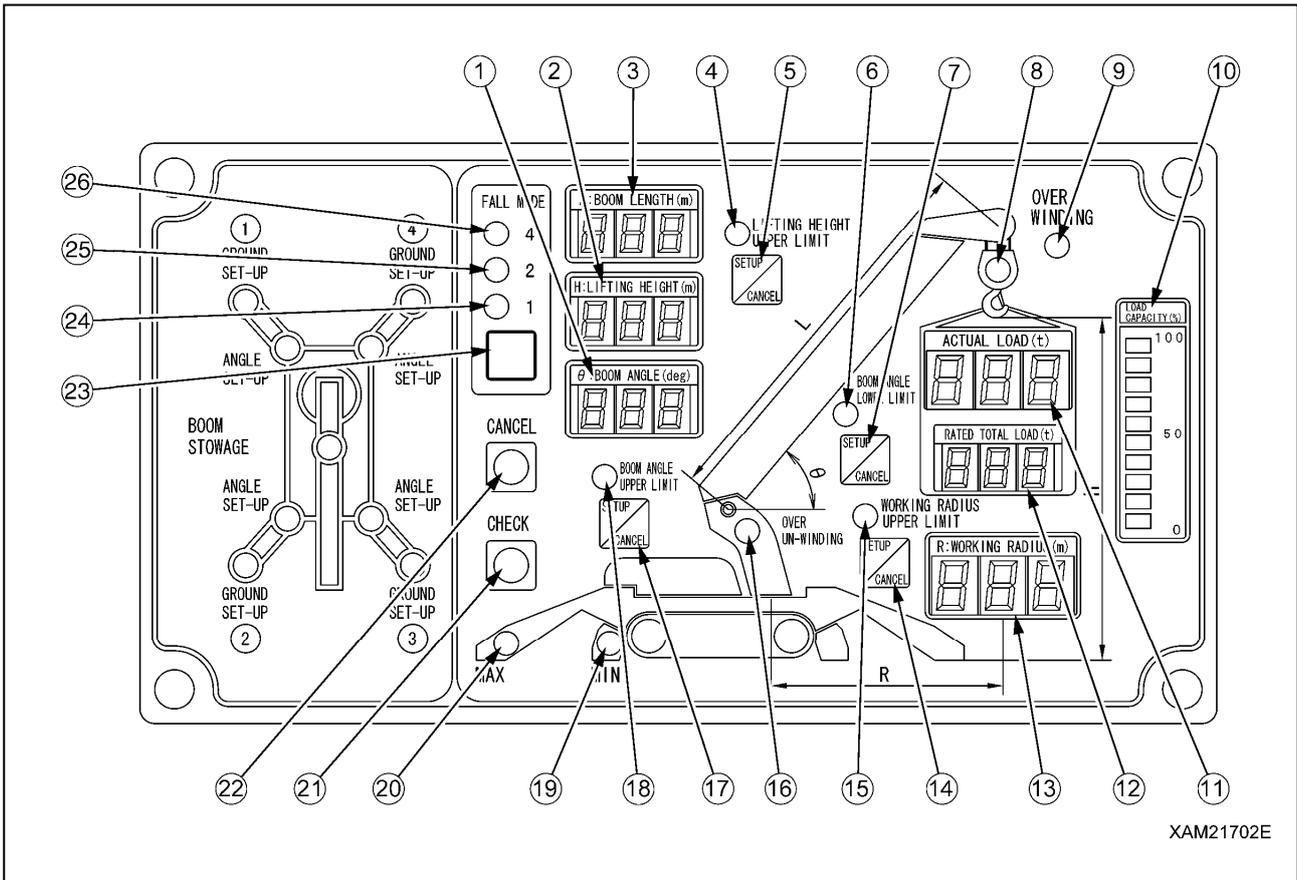
## 2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION



- (1) Hook
- (2) E-Boom
- (3) Bracket
- (4) Position pin

- (5) Snap pin
- (6) Hex. head bolt
- (7) Hex. head nut
- (8) High tension washer

### 3. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT



- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (1) Boom angle display                                     | (14) Working radius upper limit switch    |
| (2) Lifting height display                                 | (15) Working radius upper limit LED (Red) |
| (3) Boom length display                                    | (16) Over un-winding LED (Red)            |
| (4) Boom lifting height upper limit LED (Orange)           | (17) Boom angle upper limit switch        |
| (5) Boom lifting height upper limit switch                 | (18) Boom angle upper limit LED (Orange)  |
| (6) Boom angle lower limit LED (Orange)                    | (19) Outrigger MIN. extension LED (Blue)  |
| (7) Boom angle lower limit switch                          | (20) Outrigger MAX. extension LED (Blue)  |
| (8) Load factor LED<br>(Changes to green, yellow, and red) | (21) Check switch                         |
| (9) Two Block LED (Red)                                    | (22) Cancel switch                        |
| (10) Load capacity display (Yellow)                        | (23) Fall mode selector switch            |
| (11) Actual load display                                   | (24) 1-fall LED (Blue)                    |
| (12) Rated total load display                              | (25) 2-fall LED (Blue)                    |
| (13) Working radius display                                | (26) 4-fall LED (Blue)                    |

## [1] DESCRIPTIONS OF SWITCHES ON MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT

### CAUTION

See “Operation 1.5 Moment Limiter (Overload Detector)” section for switches other than “WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED” shown in the next section.

### 1. WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED (BLUE)

#### ⚠ DANGER

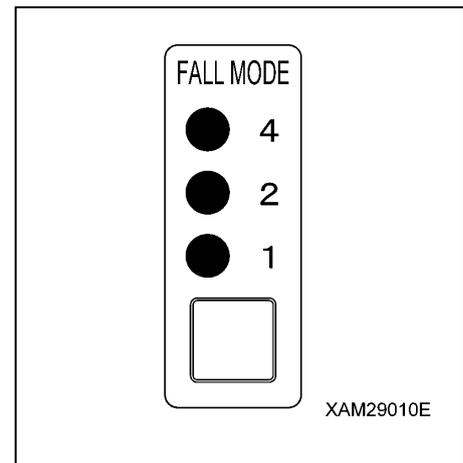
Fall mode must be set as “Searcher hook mode” when operating searcher hook. Using searcher hook other than in “Searcher hook mode” may prevent display of the pre-warnings and boom auto-stop even when approaching overload, and thus may result in crane damage or the machine tipping over resulting in a serious accident.

Use this switch to change the number of falls.

- Keep pressing the switch for 2 seconds or more.  
The setting changes from “4-falls” to “Searcher hook mode”. At the same time, the wire falls display LED changes from “4-falls” to “Searcher hook mode (all lights ON)”, indicating that the setting has changed.
- Then each time you press the switch for 2 seconds or more, the setting of the wire falls changes from “Searcher hook mode” to “1-fall”, then “1-fall” to “2-falls”, and then “2-falls” to “4-falls”.

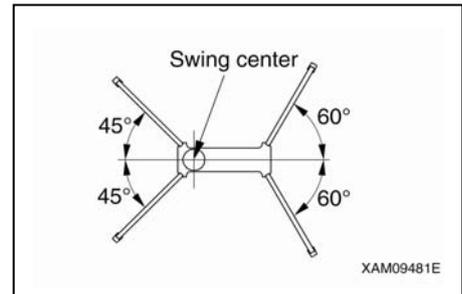
#### NOTES

When changing the setting right after doing so, release your hand from the switch, and then press the switch again.

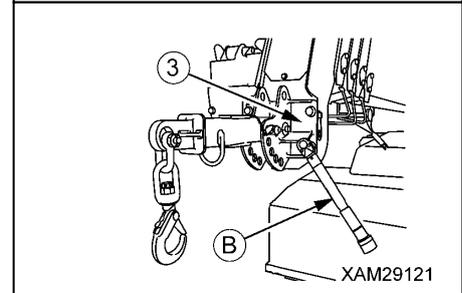


## 4. OPERATION

1. See "Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting" and set the outrigger.



2. Fasten searcher bracket (3) to main-boom using 4 sets of M12 bolts and nuts. Tighten the bolts with torque wrench (B) then to a torque of 93Nm [ $\pm 13$ Nm].



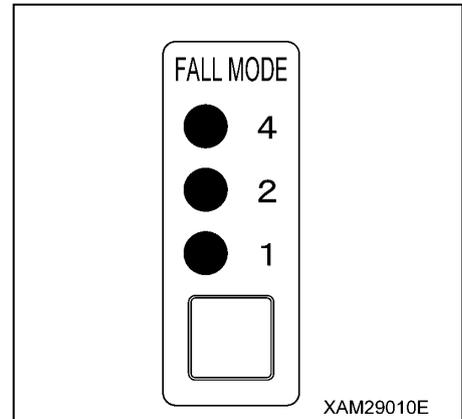
### **! WARNING**

**Torque Searcher Hook mounting plate bolts to 93Nm. Use new nuts, bolts and washers every time mounting plate is installed. Refer to the Operation Manual for complete details.**

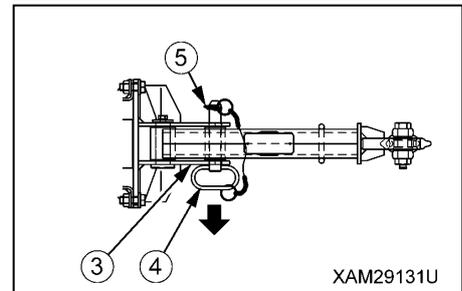
3. Shift the wire falls selector switch on moment limiter display unit to "Searcher hook mode" (all LED ON).

### **! DANGER**

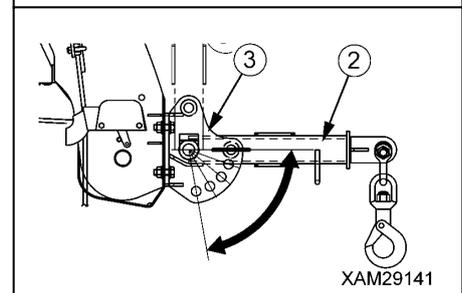
**Fall mode must be set as "Searcher hook mode" when operating searcher hook. Using the searcher hook other than in "Searcher hook mode" may prevent display of the pre-warnings and boom auto-stop even when approaching overload, and thus may result in crane damage or the machine tipping over resulting in a serious accident.**



4. Remove the snap pin (5) from the end of position pin (4) of bracket (3), and remove the position pin (4).

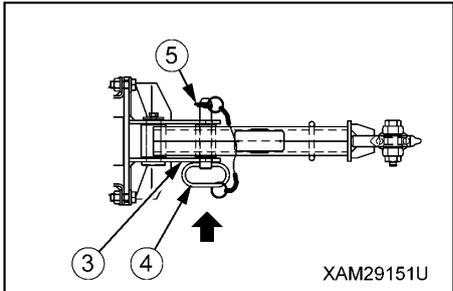


5. Move E boom (2) to the required angle for the work, and line up the holes in the E boom (2) and bracket (3).



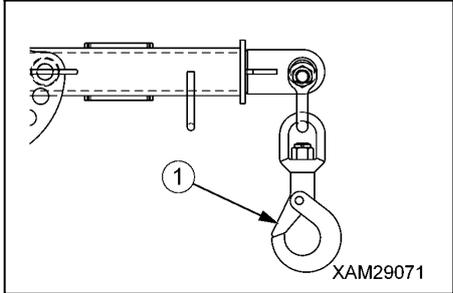
6. Insert the position pin (4) through the hole of bracket (3), and secure it with the snap pin (5) to the tip of position pin (4).

**⚠ DANGER**  
**Always secure the position pin (4) with the snap pin (5). If the snap pin falls out during operations, serious injury or damage to the machine may occur.**



7. Attach the load securely to the hook (1) and start operations.

**⚠ WARNING**  
**Always work in accordance with all appropriate local regulations concerning your own and others' safety.**



**NOTES**

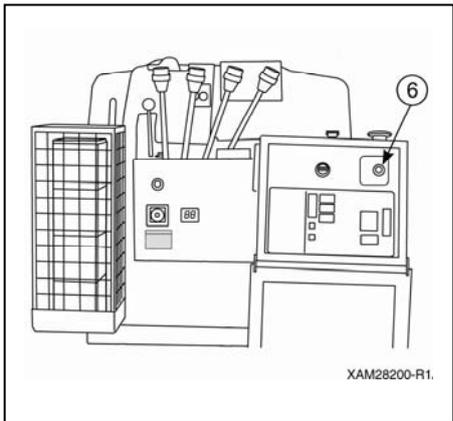
- Characteristic of the moment limiter display
- (1) Actual load reading may be higher than actual value and it may display as overload when "right after boom raising operation" or "boom angle is more than 60 degrees".
- (2) Faster movement of boom derricking causes more error in reading load value. For derricking operation, move the lever slowly to avoid sudden boom movement.

8. In case machine is automatically stopped in overload condition, boom can be lifted using the boom lift by-pass switch (6).

To operate boom lifting using this boom lift bypass switch(6), keep pressing the switch to upper side and operate boom lift at the same time.

After the work, release the switch and it automatically turns off.

**⚠ DANGER**  
**The boom lift auto stop bypass switch is to be used only when in searcher hook mode.**  
**The boom lift function is stopped automatically when overloaded.**  
**Use this switch to enable the boom lift function for safety.**  
**This switch is for emergency use only. Never use this for normal lifting of loads clear of ground.**

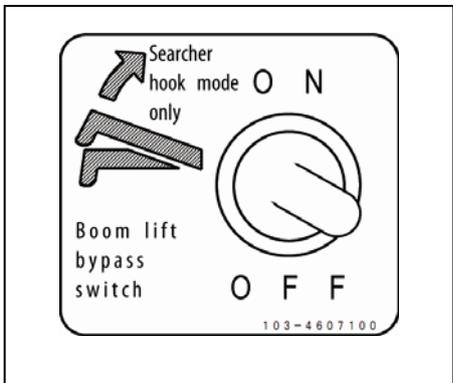


**NOTES**

In case machine is automatically stopped by entering overload area by boom lowering or boom extending operation, recover from the overload area by retracting boom, or lifting boom by keeping the boom lift by-pass switch to ON side.

**NOTES**

When working envelope is set, and operation automatically stops at the boom upper angle limit or hook height upper limit, boom can be lifted beyond the limit by using this boom lift bypass switch. The boom lift bypass switch is to be used only when in searcher hook mode.



## 5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

### 5.1 LEGAL INSPECTION

If a periodic safety inspection is required by the laws and regulations of your country, perform that inspection in addition to the inspection items listed below.

1. Verify that all safety devices are operating properly.
2. Check the hoist accessories, including the hook block, for problems or damage.
3. Check the structural parts of the machine, including the frame and boom, for cracks, deformation and damage.
4. Check for loose or missing mounting bolts and joints.
5. Verify that the boom operates properly by stopping, extending, retracting, raising, lowering and swinging the boom.

Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency to request inspection and repair service as needed.

### 5.2 CONSUMABLES

Parts for mounting searcher hook are consumption articles. Replace it at periodic inspection or before it reaches abrasion limits. Replace consumption articles regularly, which shall produce economical use of this machine. Always replace with a Maeda genuine item. Check parts catalog for correct part number for parts request.

#### [CONSUMABLES LIST]

Part	Replacement cycle
Searcher hook fix bolt M12x35L (4pcs)	★ Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found
Searcher hook fix nut M12x1grade (4pcs)	★ Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found
Searcher hook fix washer M12x3.2t (high tension)(8pcs)	★ Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found

★ Items include a halt period. Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency for part replacement information.

### 5.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST

This document only covers searcher hook kit. For crane body, please refer to “Inspection and Maintenance” and follow its precautions.

Inspection and maintenance items	Page
<b>5.4.1 INSPECTION OF BEFORE OPERATION</b>	8-10
<b>[CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]</b>	8-10
[1] CHECKING BOOM AND BRACKET	8-10
[2] CHECKING SEARCHER HOOK FIX BOLTS	8-10
[3] CHECKING ELECTRICAL WIRING FOR DAMAGE	8-10
<b>[CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]</b>	8-11
[1] CHECKING FUNCTIONS OF BOOM	8-11
[2] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (SEARCHER HOOK MODE)	8-11

## 5.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

### 5.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION

#### [CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]

Check the following in this section without starting the engine and before starting work every day.

#### [1] CHECKING BOOM AND BRACKET

- Check each part of the boom and bracket for cracks, excessive deformation and contamination etc. In addition, check bolts, nuts and pins for any looseness, drop and damage etc. If you find any abnormality, repair.

#### [2] CHECKING SEARCHER HOOK FIX BOLTS

### **⚠ DANGER**

If any damage is found on searcher hook fixing bolts, please exchange for new one's right away.

Breakage of bolts will cause the searcher hook to fall off.

- Check for cracks, damage, or squashed screw threads on threaded portion of bolts.  
If cracked, damaged or squashed is found on the screw thread, change the bolt to new one even if it is earlier than expected bolt life.

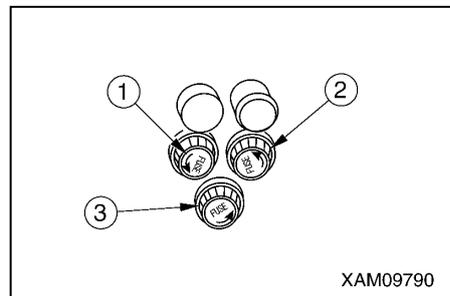
#### [3] CHECKING ELECTRICAL WIRING (FUSE BOX) FOR DAMAGE

### **⚠ WARNING**

If fuses are blown frequently or if you find the trace of a short circuit created in the electrical wiring, be sure to find the cause and fix the problem.

Check the fuse at the lower section of the instrument panel for damage and meltdown and if the fuse of specified capacity is being used.

If a fuse has melted down or the trace of an open/short circuit is found in the electrical wiring, ask us or our sales service agency for repair.



XAM09790

## [CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]

Check the following in this section after starting the engine and before starting work every day.

### CAUTION

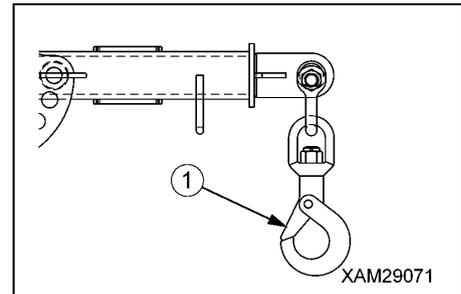
The checkups described in this section should be carried out after starting the machine. See "Operation 2.2 Starting the Engine" and later to execute the engine startup, travelling operations, outrigger operations and crane operations.

## [1] CHECKING FUNCTIONS OF BOOM

### WARNING

At the performance of function check for boom, safety ensure that hook and boom do not come into contact with any personnel or objects.

1. Check for abnormal noise from boom and searcher hook during crane operation.
2. Operate crane without load and check each bolt so that none are missing or loose.
3. Check hook for deformation, abnormal noise from bearing and correct function of wire rope latch (1).



## [2] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (SEARCHER HOOK MODE)

### WARNING

If you find any abnormality with the moment limiter, immediately contact us or our sales service agency.

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
2. Check with the working status lamp. The red of the lamp lights up for 2 seconds and then the green lights up.
3. Check the moment limiter display unit.  
Verify that no error code is displayed at the "RATED TOTAL LOAD" display on the display panel.
4. Shift the part of line selector switch on moment limiter display unit to "Searcher hook mode" (all LED ON).
5. Start the engine and operate the crane as follows to verify if the moment limiter properly displays the value.

Crane Operation and Displayed Parameter	Value Displayed on Moment Limiter
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at minimum	2.5 m
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at maximum	8.6 m
Displayed "working radius" with the boom length of "4.4 m" and boom angle of "29.2 °"	3.5 ± 0.1 m
Displayed "ACTUAL LOAD" when the weight of a known weight is hoisted ★Must be equal to the total weight of weight + lifting equipment ★Note that it may show some errors depending on the boom conditions.	Actual load

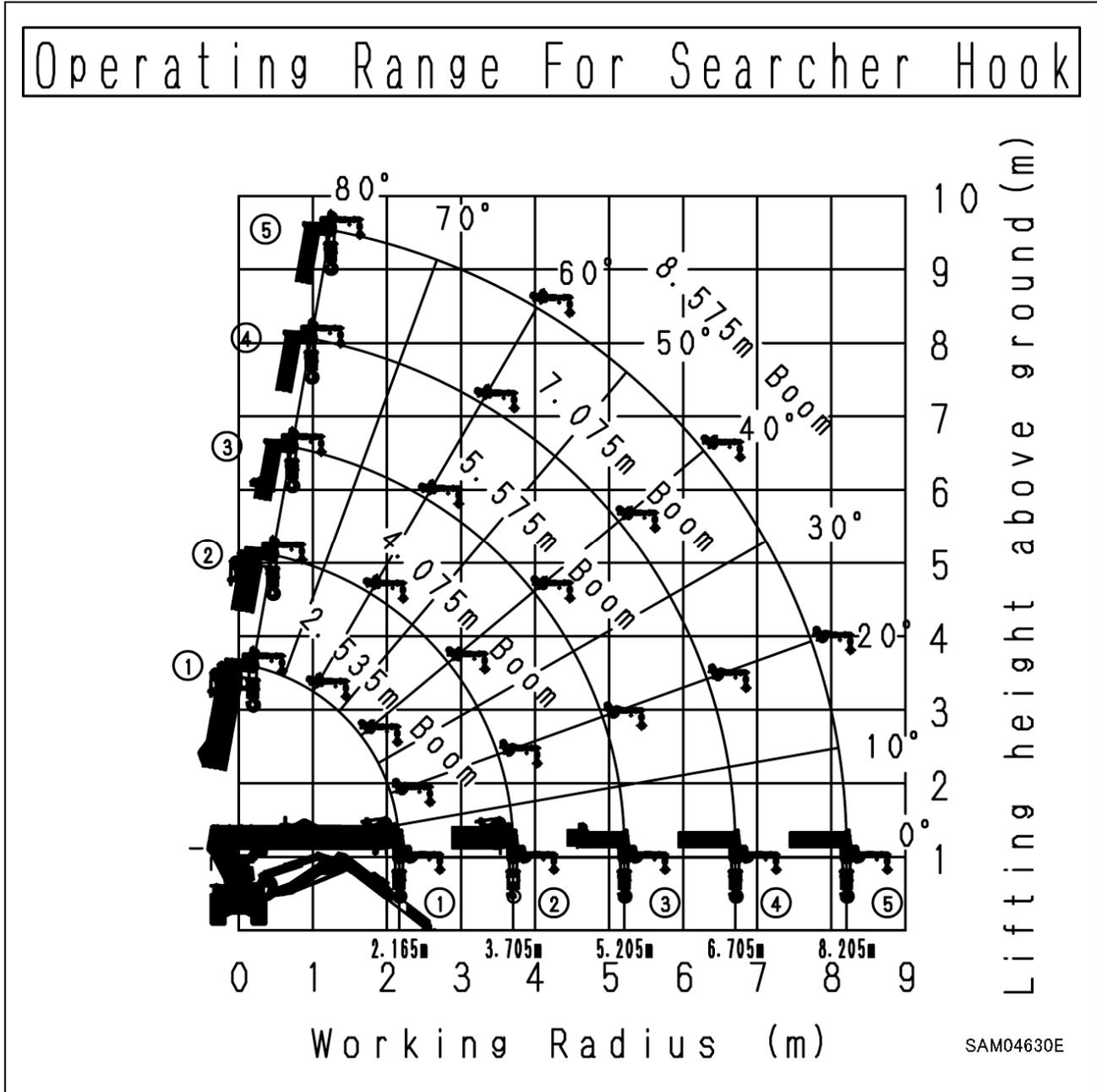
6. Operate the crane until the moment limiter display indicates the boom length is "4.4 m" (booms (1) + (2)) and boom angle is "29.2 degrees", then measure the "boom angle" and "working radius. If the measured value(s) differ from the moment limiter display value, contact MAEDA or MAEDA sales agency.

## 6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD

### ⚠ DANGER

- When using the searcher hook, be sure to set searcher hook mode for moment limiter.
- Never use the searcher hook and the crane hook simultaneously.

### 6.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR SEARCHER HOOK



## 6.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SEARCHER HOOK

Outrigger extended to maximum							
2.535m/4.075mBoom		5.575mBoom		7.075mBoom		8.575mBoom	
Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)
1.4 or less	300	3.0 or less	300	3.6 or less	300	4.0 or less	300
1.5	300	3.5	300	4.0	300	4.5	300
2.0	300	4.0	300	4.5	300	5.0	250
2.5	300	4.5	300	5.0	300	5.5	250
3.0	300	5.0	300	5.5	300	6.0	200
3.5	300	5.205	300	6.0	300	6.5	150
3.705	300			6.5	300	7.0	150
				6.705	250	7.5	100
						8.0	100
						8.205	100

Outrigger extended to other than maximum							
2.535m/4.075mBoom		5.575mBoom		7.075mBoom		8.575mBoom	
Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)	Working Radius(m)	Rate Total Load(kg)
1.5 or less	300	3.0 or less	300	3.6 or less	300	4.0 or less	250
2.0	300	3.5	300	4.0	250	4.5	200
2.5	300	4.0	250	4.5	200	5.0	150
3.0	300	4.5	200	5.0	150	5.5	100
3.5	300	5.0	150	5.5	100	6.0	100
3.705	300	5.205	150	6.0	100	6.5	50
				6.5	50	7.0	50
				6.705	50	7.5	0
						8.0	0
						8.205	0

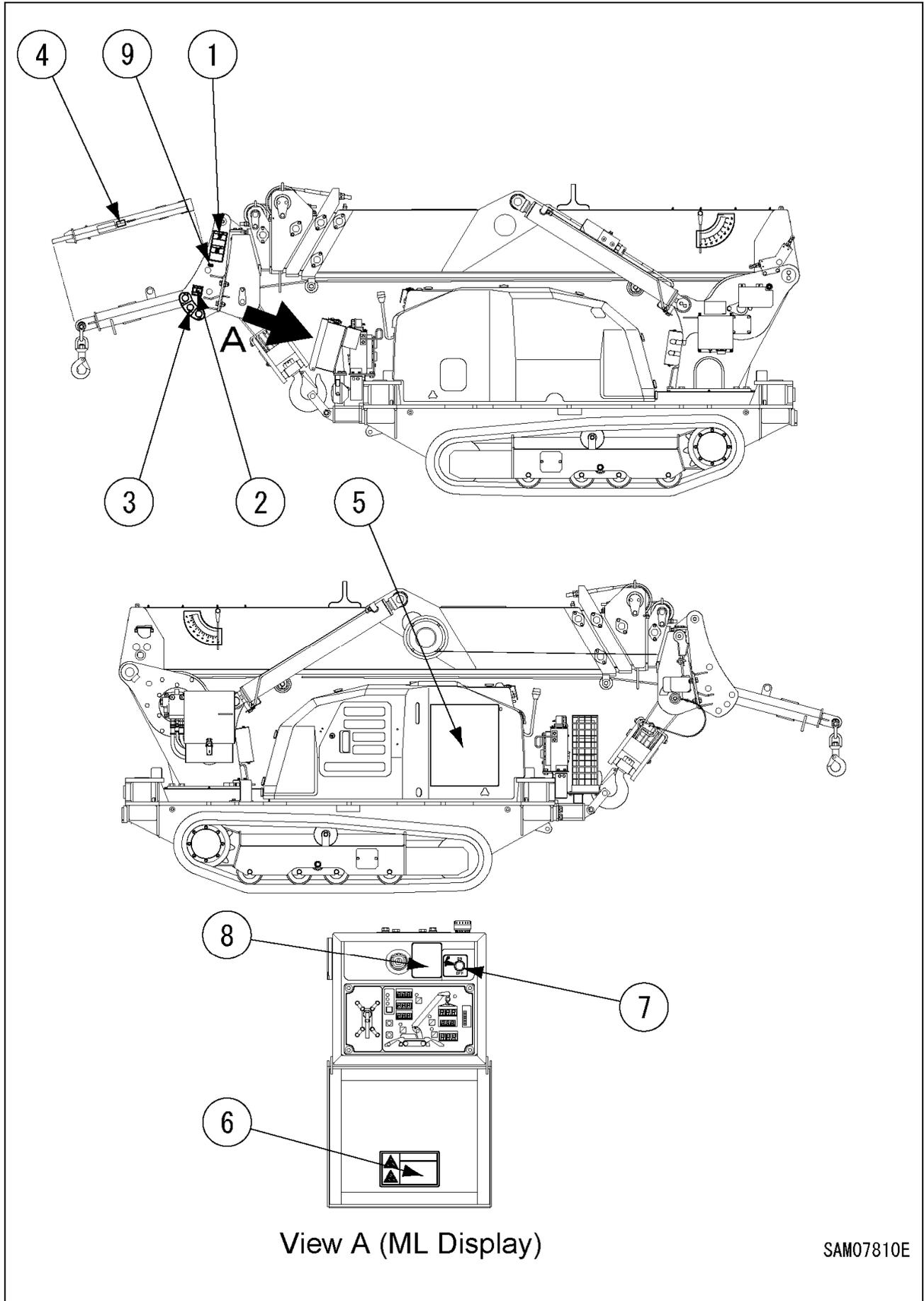
1. This Rated Total Load Chart shows maximum allowable capacities. These rated total loads are based on the machine standing level on a firm ground supporting surface, under ideal job conditions and a freely suspended load.
2. Sufficient design tolerance must be used to ensure adequate ground support surface design. The rated total loads are for static conditions only, and do not include dynamic effects of swinging, extending, retracting, lowering, raising, wind or adverse conditions. Crane users must reduce rated total loads ratings to take all conditions into account.
3. The load radius shown in the Rated Total Load Chart is based on practical working radius including boom deflection due to loading. The crane user must calculate and compensate for boom deflection as the load is lifted.
4. Deductions from Searcher Hook Rated Total Load must be made for the weight of the searcher hook (10kg), block/ball and all rigging.
5. Crane users must consult the Operators Manual for complete details about assembly, operation, maintenance, configuration, and its limitations. Modifications to the crane, other than what is specified or supplied by the original equipment manufacture, can result in a reduction of rated total load ratings.
6. This operating range chart does not include boom deflections.



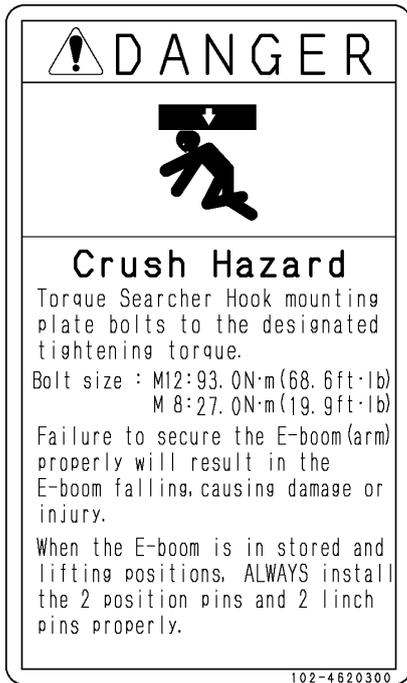
# 850kg SEARCHER HOOK

1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	9-2
2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION	9-6
3. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	9-7
4. OPERATION	9-11
5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	9-15
6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD	9-19

# 1. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS



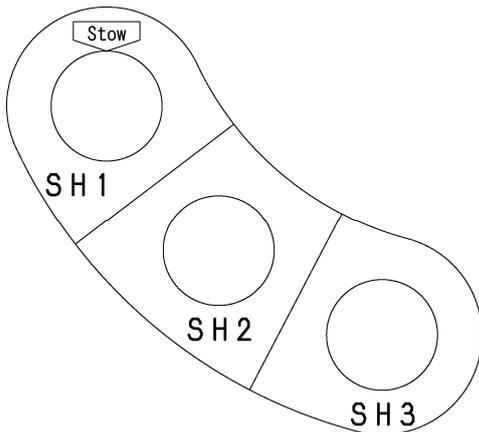
SAM07810E



①102-4620300



②102-4608500



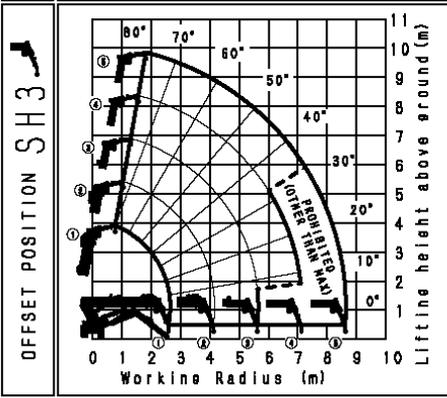
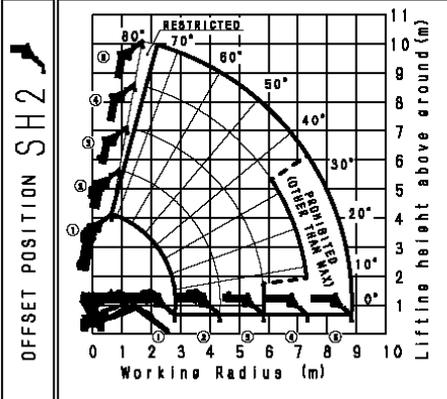
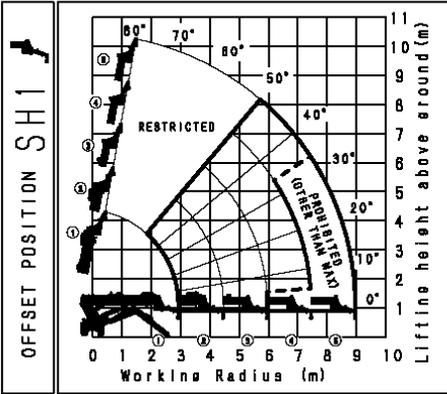
③Right side 102-4618700  
 Left side 102-4618800



④102-4621200

MC285C-2 OPERATING RANGE for 850k<sub>w</sub> SEARCHER HOOK

RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART for 850k<sub>w</sub> SEARCHER HOOK The unit of loads:kg



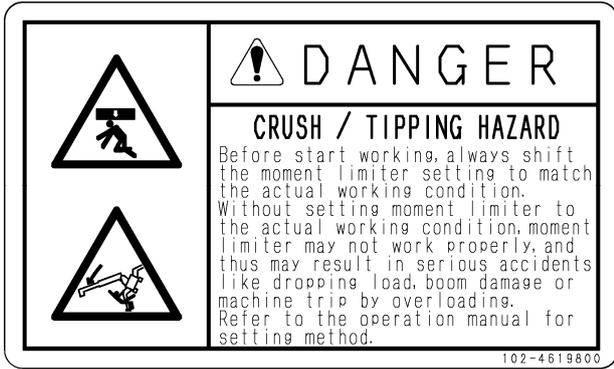
Lifting Height (m)	① 2.535m BOOM		② 4.075m BOOM		③ 5.575m BOOM		④ 7.075m BOOM		⑤ 8.575m BOOM	
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)
2.0	48.0	850	48.0	850	48.0	850	48.0	850	48.0	850
2.5	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850
3.0	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
3.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
4.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
4.4			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.9			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
6.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
6.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.4			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.6			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.95			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850

Lifting Height (m)	① 2.535m BOOM		② 4.075m BOOM		③ 5.575m BOOM		④ 7.075m BOOM		⑤ 8.575m BOOM	
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)
1.5	59.5	850	59.5	850	59.5	850	59.5	850	59.5	850
2.0	47.5	850	47.5	850	47.5	850	47.5	850	47.5	850
2.5	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850	31.0	850
2.8	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
3.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
3.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
3.8			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
4.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
4.3			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
5.8			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
6.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
6.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.3			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
7.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.0			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.5			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850
8.84			19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850	19.0	850

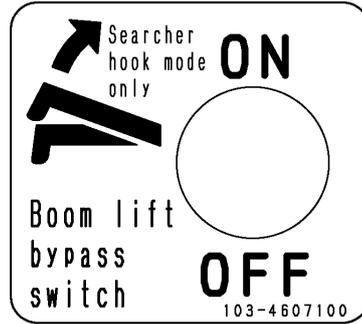
Lifting Height (m)	① 2.535m BOOM		② 4.075m BOOM		③ 5.575m BOOM		④ 7.075m BOOM		⑤ 8.575m BOOM	
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (Deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION (m)
1.5	60.0	850	60.0	850	60.0	850	60.0	850	60.0	850
2.0	46.5	850	46.5	850	46.5	850	46.5	850	46.5	850
2.5	35.0	850	35.0	850	35.0	850	35.0	850	35.0	850
2.8	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
3.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
3.5			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
3.8			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
4.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
4.1			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
5.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
5.5			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
5.6			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
6.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
6.5			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
7.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
7.1			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
7.5			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
8.0			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
8.5			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850
8.84			20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850	20.0	850

**⚠ DANGER**  
**TIPPING HAZARD**  
 When using searcher hook. Moment limiter "number of fall" must be set to 850k<sub>w</sub> searcher hook mode, and select searcher hook offset position.  
 Before start working, always make sure moment limiter is correctly set to the actual working condition.  
 Do not use searcher hook and main hoist hook block/ball simultaneously to hoist load.

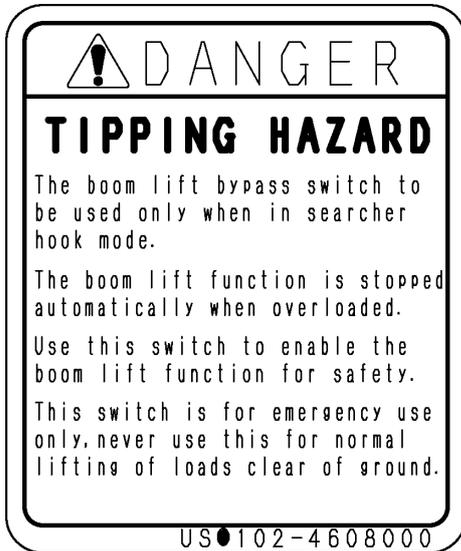
**Notes:**  
 1. This Rated Total Load Chart shows maximum allowable capacities. These rated total loads are based on the machine standing level on a firm ground supporting surface under ideal job conditions and a freely suspended load.  
 2. Sufficient design tolerance must be used to ensure adequate ground support surface design. The rated total loads are for static conditions only and do not include dynamic effects of slewing, extending, retracting, lowering, raising, wind or adverse conditions. Crane users must reduce rated total loads further for full site conditions into account.  
 3. The working radius shown in the Rated Total Load Chart is based on practical working radius including boom deflection due to loading. The crane user must calculate and compensate for boom deflection as the load is lifted.  
 4. Deductions from Searcher Hook Rated Total Load must be made for the weight of the searcher hook, block/ball and all risers.  
 5. All capacities above the bold line are based on structural strength and other limitations. All other rated total loads are based on stability, not exceeding 70% of tipping loads.  
 6. Crane users must consult the Operator's Manual for complete details about assembly, operation, maintenance configurations and its limitations. Modifications to the crane other than what is specified or supplied by the original equipment manufacturer can result in a reduction of rated total load ratings.  
 7. This operating range chart does not include boom deflection.  
 8. At certain working conditions, moment limiter may display higher load value than actual load.  
 9. RESTRICTED AREA: At high boom angles, E-boom (arm) and the hook will interfere with each other.  
 To avoid this interference: In SH1 position, do not operate above 50 degree boom angle. In SH2 position, do not operate above 75 degree boom angle.



⑥102-4619800



⑦103-4607100

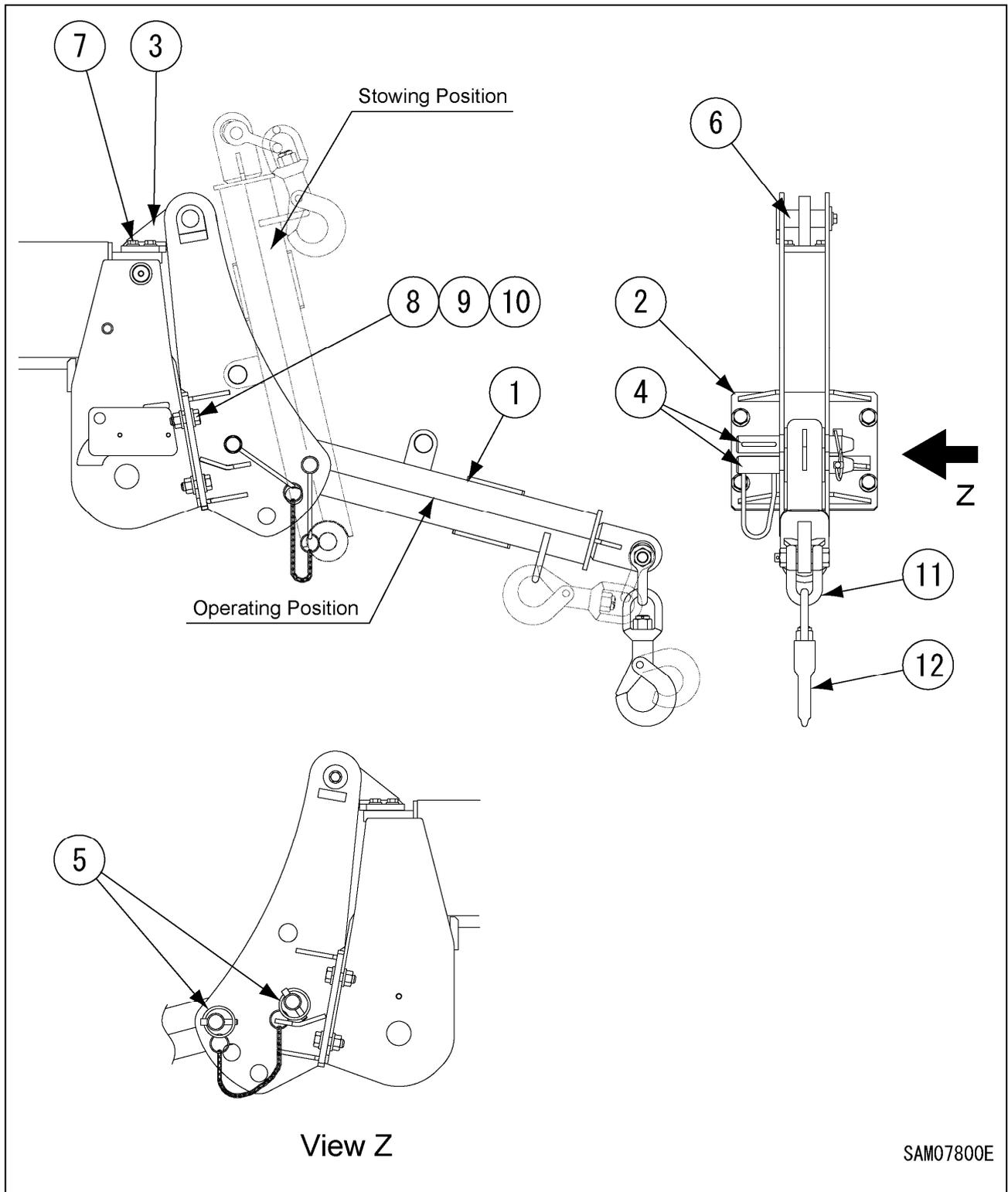


⑧102-4608000



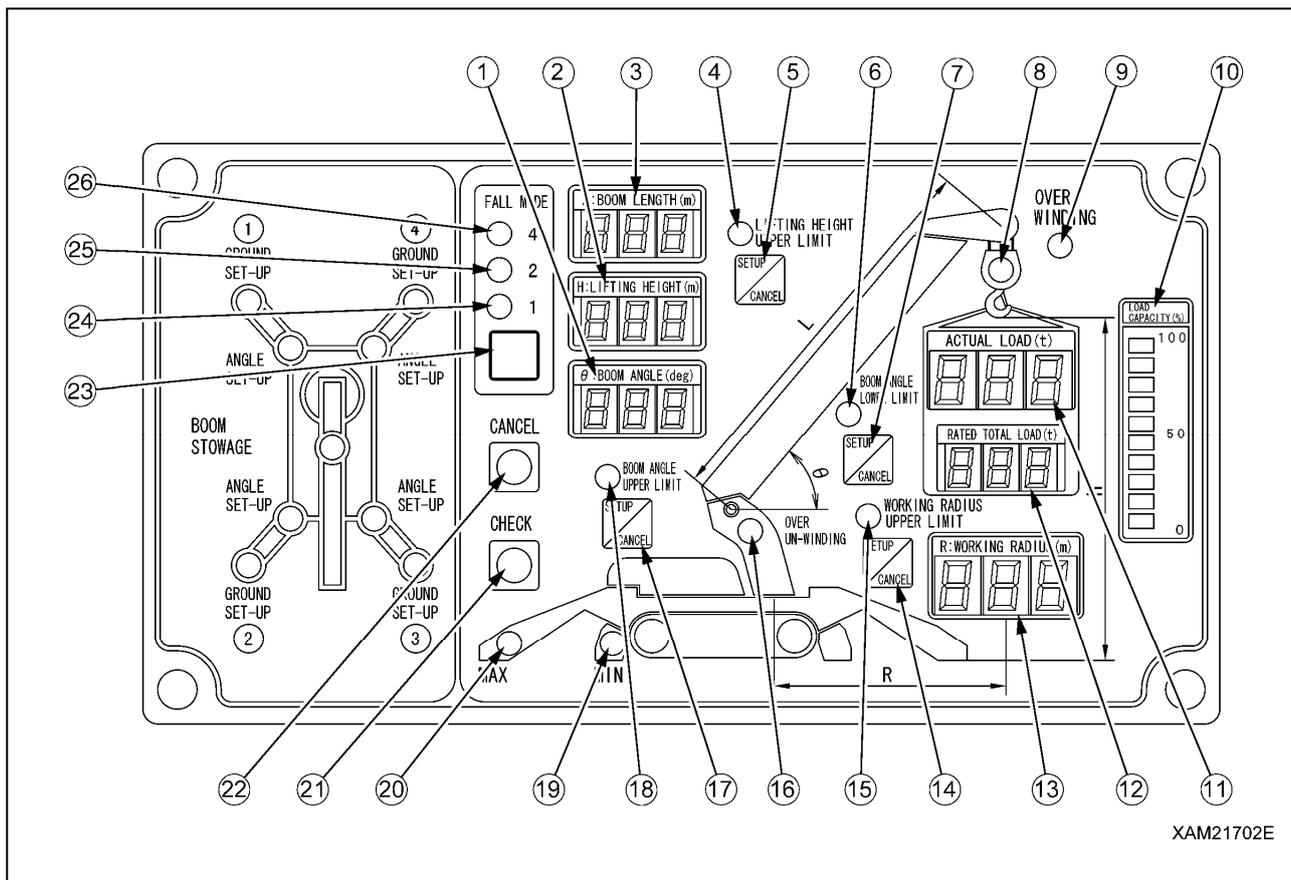
⑨350-4431400

## 2. SEARCHER HOOK EACH SECTION



- |                  |  |
|------------------|--|
| (1) E-Boom       | (7) Hexagonal bolt with washer (M8x25L strength 10.9)  |
| (2) Bracket1     | (8) Hexagonal bolt with washer (M12x35L strength 10.9) |
| (3) Bracket 2    | (9) Nut (M12x grade 1, strength 10)                    |
| (4) Position pin | (10) High tension washer (M12x26x3.2t)                 |
| (5) Linch pin    | (11) Shackle   |
| (6) pin          | (12) Hook  |

### 3. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT



- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (1) Boom angle display                                     | (14) Working radius upper limit switch       |
| (2) Lifting height display                                 | (15) Working radius upper limit LED (Orange) |
| (3) Boom length display                                    | (16) Over un-winding LED (Orange)            |
| (4) Boom lifting height upper limit LED (Orange)           | (17) Boom angle upper limit switch           |
| (5) Boom lifting height upper limit switch                 | (18) Boom angle upper limit LED (Orange)     |
| (6) Boom angle lower limit LED (Orange)                    | (19) Outrigger MIN. extension LED (Blue)     |
| (7) Boom angle lower limit switch                          | (20) Outrigger MAX. extension LED (Blue)     |
| (8) Load factor LED<br>(Changes to green, yellow, and red) | (21) Check switch                            |
| (9) Two Block LED (Red)                                    | (22) Cancel switch                           |
| (10) Load capacity display (Yellow)                        | (23) Fall mode / Option selector switch      |
| (11) Actual load display                                   | (24) 1-fall LED (Blue)                       |
| (12) Rated total load display                              | (25) 2-fall LED (Blue)                       |
| (13) Working radius display                                | (26) 4-fall LED (Blue)                       |

### 3.1 DESCRIPTIONS OF SWITCHES MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT

#### ⚠ CAUTION

See “Operation 1.5 Moment Limiter in Operation Manual” for how to operate the moment limiter.

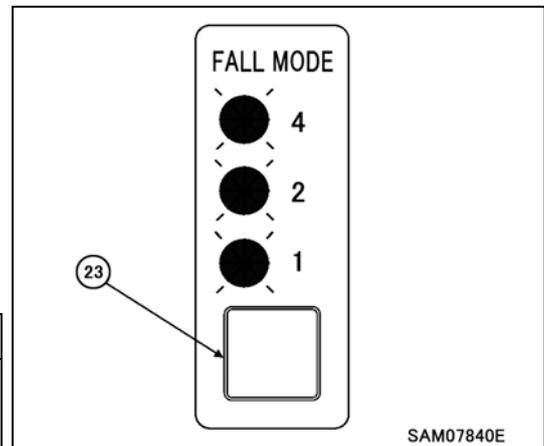
#### 3.1.1 WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED (BLUE)

#### ⚠ DANGER

Fall mode/option mode and searcher hook offset position must be set as “850kg searcher hook mode”. Using 850kg searcher hook other than in 850kg searcher hook mode may prevent issuance of the pre-warnings and boom auto-stop even when the overload is near happening, and thus may result in crane damage or machine trip that may result in serious accidents.

Use this switch to change the number of falls.

- Shift the fall mode/option selector switch (23) on moment limiter display unit to “850kg searcher hook mode” (all LED flashes). Each time you press the switch for 2 seconds or more, the setting of the fall mode changes in the order of “4 falls → searcher hook mode (all LED ON) → 850kg searcher hook (all LED flashes) → single fall → 2 falls → 4 falls ...”.



#### NOTES

When changing the setting, right after doing so, release your hand from the switch, and then press the switch again.

### 3.1.2 CANCEL SWITCH

## **⚠ DANGER**

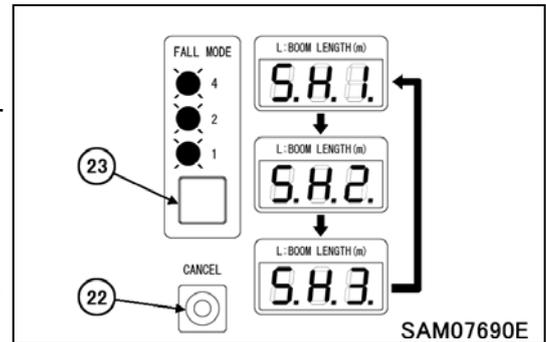
**Do not use 850kg searcher hook if actual searcher hook offset position and display of boom length window do not match. Without setting moment limiter to the actual searcher hook offset position, moment limiter may not work properly and thus may result in crane damage and machine trip that may result in serious accidents.**

Use this switch and fall mode/option selector switch to set searcher hook offset position shown in the boom length window.

- With fall mode set as 850kg searcher hook mode, press fall mode/option selector switch (23) and cancel switch (22) at the same time for 2 seconds or more and shift to set actual searcher hook offset position.

See “Searcher Hook offset position and boom length window display” on page 9-10 for correct setting.

Pressing fall mode/option selector switch (23) and cancel switch (22) at the same time for 2 seconds or more shifts boom length display in order of “SH1 → SH2 → SH3 → SH1 ...”

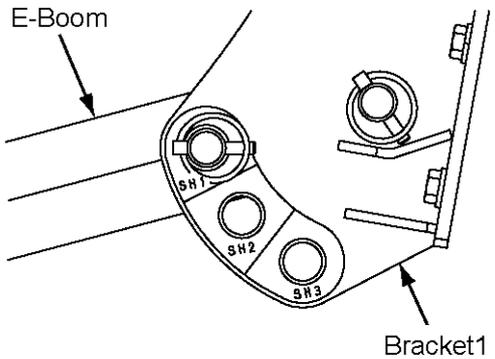
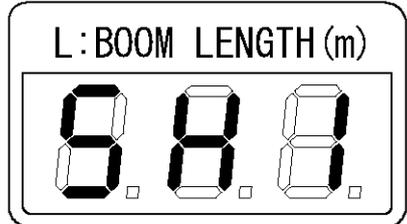
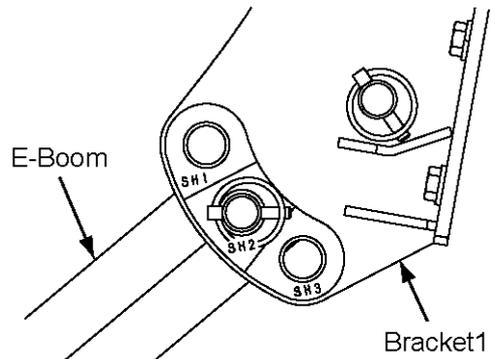
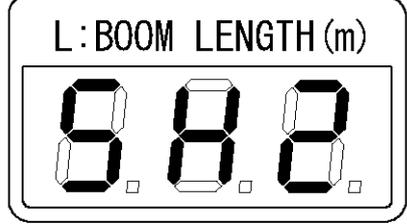
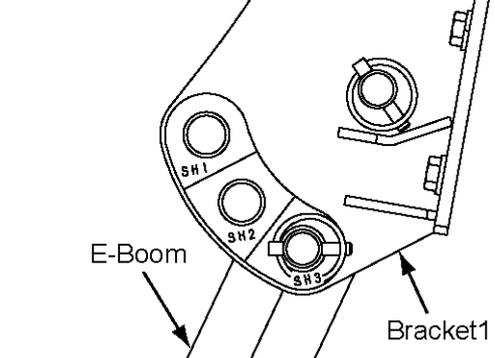
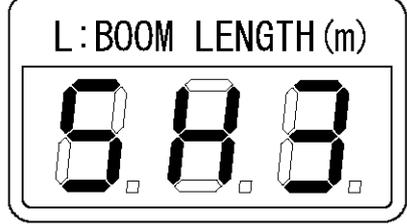


## **NOTES**

When changing the setting, right after doing so, release your hand from the switch, and then press the switch again.

When in 850kg searcher hook mode, searcher hook position mode display and actual boom length value are shown alternately.

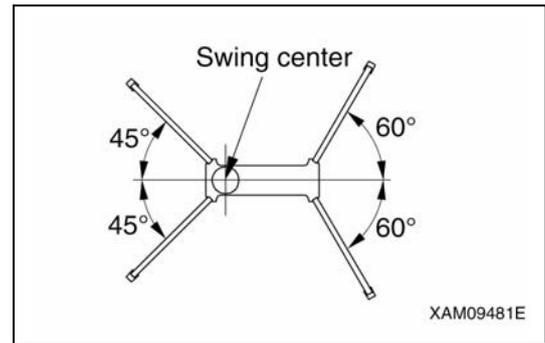
Searcher Hook offset position and mode display in boom length window

SEARCHER HOOK OFFSET POSITION	MOMENT LIMITER BOOM LENGTH
 <p>E-Boom</p> <p>SH1</p> <p>SH2</p> <p>SH3</p> <p>Bracket1</p> <p>When a E-Boom is set SH1</p>	 <p>L: BOOM LENGTH (m)</p> <p>8.8.8</p>
 <p>E-Boom</p> <p>SH1</p> <p>SH2</p> <p>SH3</p> <p>Bracket1</p> <p>When a E-Boom is set SH2</p>	 <p>L: BOOM LENGTH (m)</p> <p>8.8.8</p>
 <p>E-Boom</p> <p>SH1</p> <p>SH2</p> <p>SH3</p> <p>Bracket1</p> <p>When a E-Boom is set SH3</p>	 <p>L: BOOM LENGTH (m)</p> <p>8.8.8</p>

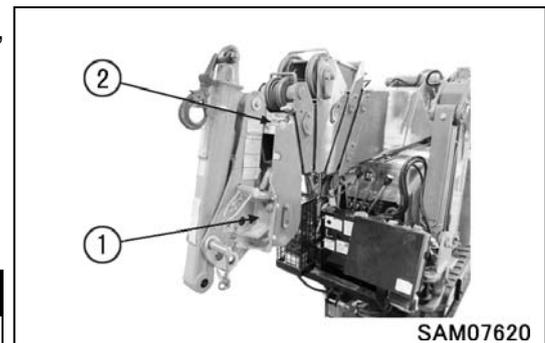
SAM07820E

## 4. OPERATION

1. See "2.12 Outrigger Setting" and set the outrigger



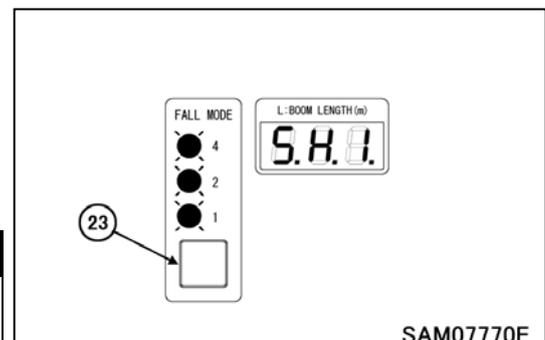
2. Install bracket (1) using M12 bolts with washers (strength 10.9), nuts, and washers to main boom, and install bracket (2) using M8 bolts with washers (strength 10.9) to main boom. Using torque wrench, tighten M12 bolts at  $93\text{N}\cdot\text{m}(\pm 14\text{N}\cdot\text{m})$ , and M8 bolts at  $27\text{N}\cdot\text{m}(\pm 8\text{N}\cdot\text{m})$ .



### **⚠ DANGER**

**Crash Hazard. Make sure to torque searcher hook mounting plate bolts to the designated tightening torque. To install searcher hook, always use new genuine Maeda bolts, nuts, and washers.**

3. Using fall mode/option selector switch (23), set moment limiter to 850kg searcher hook mode (all LED flashes). Also make sure the boom length display changes to either SH1, SH2, or SH3.



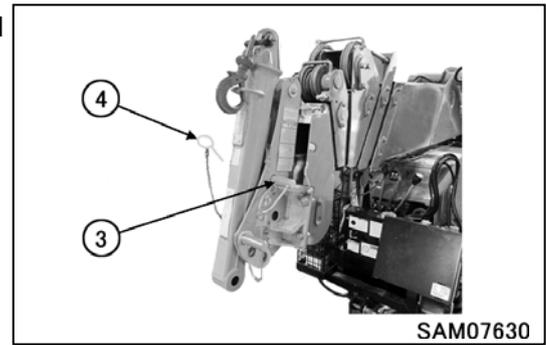
### **⚠ DANGER**

**Do not operate 850kg searcher hook without setting moment limiter as "850kg searcher hook mode". Without setting in correct mode, moment limiter will not work properly, and thus may result in crane damage or serious accident.**

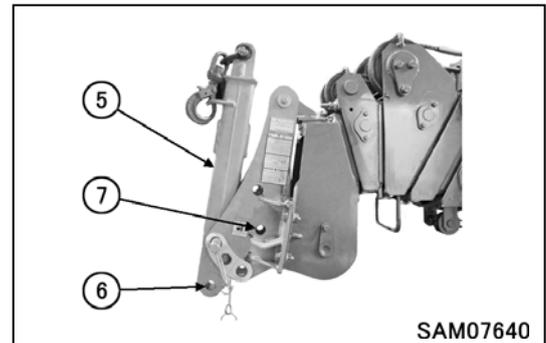
### **⚠ CAUTION**

**The last status of fall mode/option mode is memorized even after starter switch is turned to the OFF position**

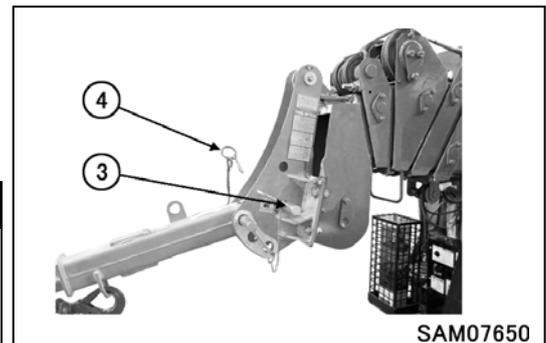
- Remove the Linch pin (4) from the end of position pin (3), and remove the position pin (3).



- Line up the hole (6) in E-boom (5) tip and hole (7) in bracket.



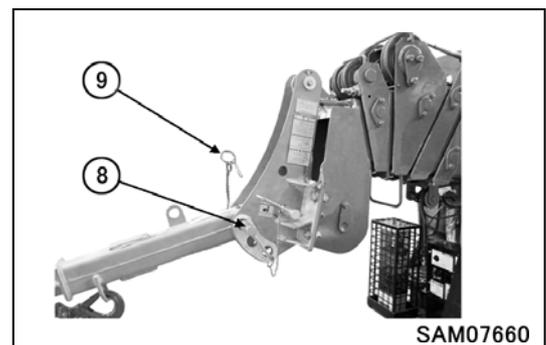
- Insert the removed position pin (3) (in procedure 4.) through the hole of bracket (7), and secure with lynch pin (4) to the tip of position pin (3).



**⚠ DANGER**

Always secure the position pin (3) with the lynch pin (4). If the position pin falls out during operations, serious injury or damage to the machine may result.

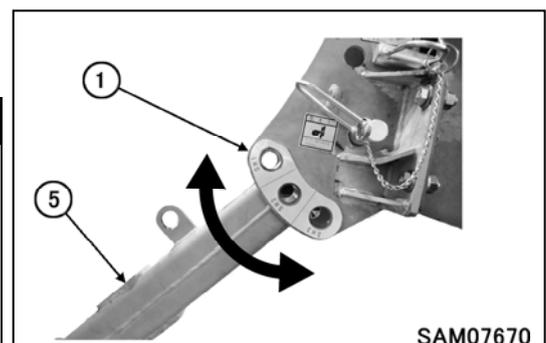
- Remove lynch pin (9) from the tip of position pin (8), and remove the position pin (8).



- Move E-boom (5) to the required angle for the work, and line the holes (1) in the E-boom (5).

**⚠ DANGER**

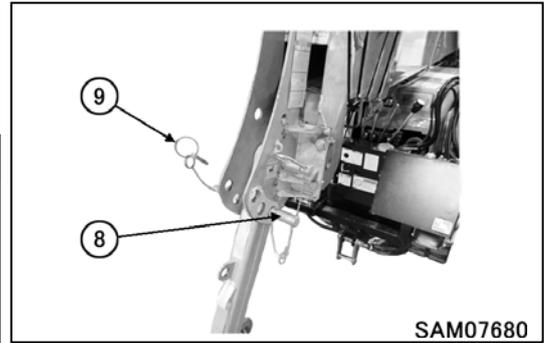
E-boom and hook may interfere with each other in RESTRICTED AREA on Rated Total Load chart, and it may cause a serious accident. Always adjust boom angle to proper position for the work.



9. Insert the position pin (8) through the hole of bracket, and secure with lynch pin (9) to the tip of position pin (8).

**⚠ DANGER**

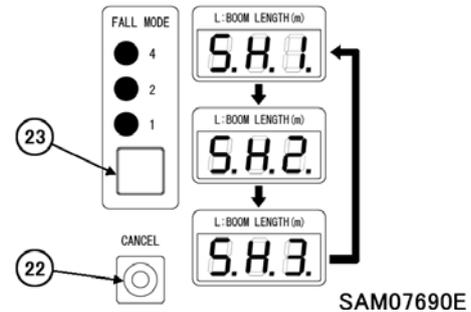
Always secure the position pin (8) with the lynch pin (9). If the position pin falls out during operations, serious injury or damage to the machine may result.



10. With fall mode set as 850kg searcher hook mode, press fall mode/option selector switch (23) and cancel switch (22) at the same time for 2 seconds or more and shift to set actual searcher hook offset position.

See “Searcher Hook offset position and boom length window display” on page 9-10 for correct setting.

Pressing fall mode/option selector switch (23) and cancel switch (22) at the same time for 2 seconds or more shifts boom length display in order of “SH1 → SH2 → SH3 → SH1 ...”



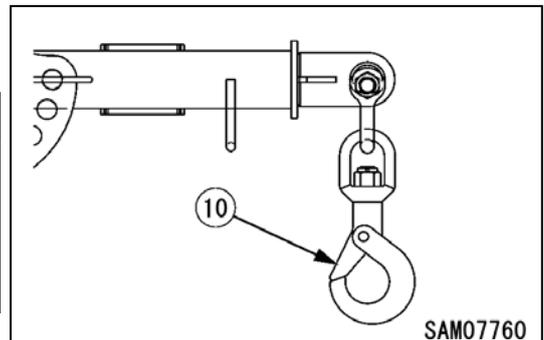
**⚠ DANGER**

Do not use 850kg searcher hook if actual searcher hook offset position and display of boom length window do not match. Without setting moment limiter to the actual searcher hook offset position, moment limiter may not work properly and thus may result in crane damage and machine trip that may result in serious accidents.

11. Attach the load securely to the hook (10) and start operations.

**⚠ DANGER**

When hoisting a load in 850kg searcher hook mode, raise boom to hoist the load off the ground, and stop for a while to check if the load is safe to hoist.



**NOTES**

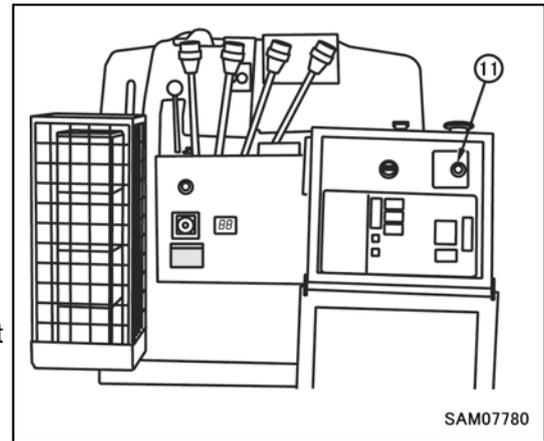
- Characteristic of moment limiter display
    - At certain working conditions, moment limiter may display bigger load value than actual load.
    - Sudden lever operation increases error in reading load.
- When operating boom derricking lever, move the lever slowly.

12. When operation is auto-stopped by reaching overload during boom lowering or extending operation, first retract boom to recover into safe load range, and then lower boom to ground load.

If boom lift must be operated in a situation, use boom lift bypass switch (11) to enable the boom lift function.

To operate boom lifting using this boom lift bypass switch (11), keep pressing the switch to upper side and operate boom lift at the same time.

After the work, release the switch and it automatically turns off.



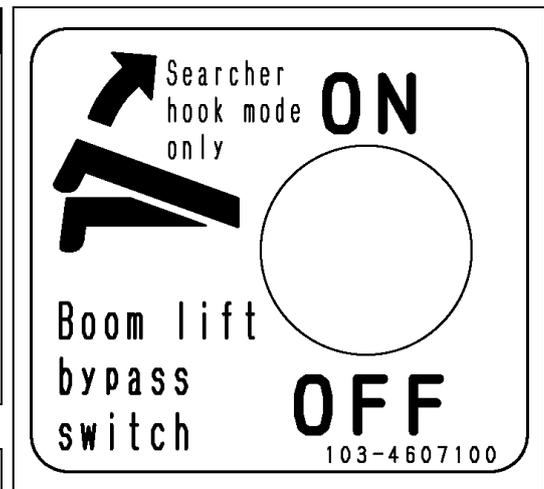
**⚠ DANGER**

**The boom lift bypass switch is to be used only when in searcher hook mode.**

**The boom lift function is stopped automatically when overloaded.**

**Never use this for normal lifting of loads clear of ground.**

**Hoisting a load off ground by using this switch may cause damage to the machine and serious accident.**



**NOTES**

In case machine is automatically stopped by entering overload area by boom lowering or boom extending operation, recover from the overload area by retracting boom, or lifting boom by keeping the boom lift bypass switch to ON side.

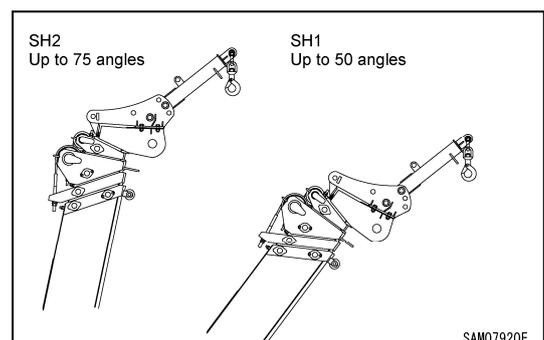
**NOTES**

When working envelope is set, and operation automatically stops at the boom upper angle limit or hook height upper limit, boom can be lifted beyond the limit by using this boom lift bypass switch. The boom lift bypass switch is to be used only when in searcher hook mode.

**[Caution]**

E-boom and hook may interfere with each other in RESTRICTED AREA on Rated Total Load chart.

Do not exceed 50 degrees of boom angle when E-boom offset position is in SH1, and do not exceed 75 degrees of boom angle when E-boom offset position is in SH2.



## 5. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

### 5.1 LEGAL INSPECTION

If a periodic safety inspection is required by the laws and regulations of your country, perform that inspection in addition to the inspection items listed below.

1. Verify that all safety devices are operating properly.
2. Check the hoist accessories, including the hook block, for problems or damage.
3. Check the structural parts of the machine, including the frame and boom, for cracks, deformation and damage.
4. Check for loose or missing mounting bolts and joints.
5. Verify that the boom operates properly by stopping, extending, retracting, raising, lowering and swinging the boom.

Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency to request inspection and repair service as needed.

### 5.2 CONSUMABLES

Parts for mounting searcher hook are consumable items. Replace them at periodic inspection or before they reach abrasion limits. Replace consumable items regularly, which will produce economical use of this machine. Always replace with a Maeda genuine item. Check parts catalog for correct part number for parts request.

#### [CONSUMABLES LIST]

Part	Replacement cycle
Searcher hook fix bolt M12x35L strength 10.9 (4pcs)	Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found
Searcher hook fix nut M12x1grade (4pcs)	Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found
Searcher hook fix washer M12x3.2t (high tension)(4pcs)	Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found
Searcher hook fix bolt M8x25L strength 10.9 (4pcs)	Every 6 months or when damage, crack, or squash is found

Items include a halt period. Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency for part replacement information.

## 5.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST

This document only covers 850kg searcher hook kit. For crane body, please refer to “Inspection and Maintenance” and follow its precautions.

Inspection and maintenance items	Page
5.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION	9-16
[CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]	9-16
[1]CHECKING E-BOOM, FRAME AND HOOK	9-16
[2]GREASING	9-16
[3]CHECKING SEARCHER HOOK FIX BOLTS	9-16
[4]INSTALLATION CHECK OF POSITION PIN AND LYNCH PIN	9-16
[CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]	9-17
[1]CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (850kg SEARCHER HOOK MODE)	9-17

## 5.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

### 5.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION

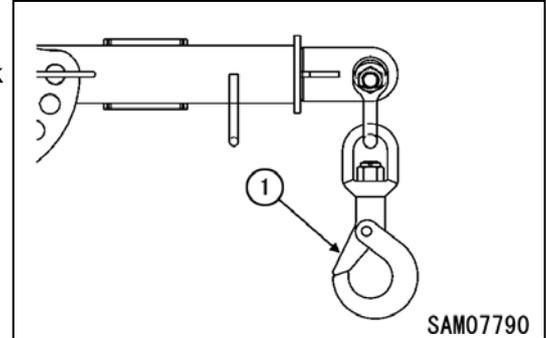
#### [CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]

Check the following in this section without starting the engine and before starting work every day.

#### [1] CHECKING E-BOOM, FRAME AND HOOK

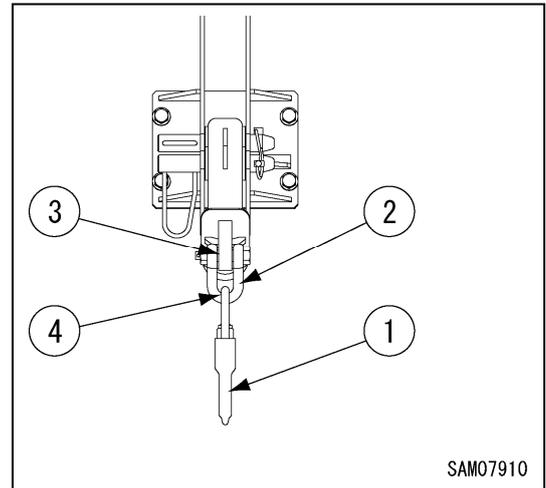
Check each part of the E-Boom, frame and Hook for cracks, excessive deformation and contamination etc. In addition, check bolts nuts and pins for any looseness, drop and damage etc. If you find any abnormality, repair.

Check hook for deformation, abnormal noise from bearing and correct function of wire rope latch (1).



#### [2] GREASING

Wipe off and clean old grease from contact point (3) of shackle (2) and E-boom hole, and contact point (4) of hook (1) and shackle (2), then apply new lithium grease.



#### [3] CHECKING SEARCHER HOOK FIX BOLTS

### **⚠ DANGER**

**If any damage is found on searcher hook fixing bolts, please exchange for new one's right away.  
Breakage of bolts will cause the searcher hook to fall off.**

Check if bolts used are the designated type.

Also check if there are cracks, damage, squashing, heavy dirt, or rust on bolt.

If any abnormality is found, change the bolt for a new one even it is earlier than expected bolt life.

#### [4] INSTALLATION CHECK OF POSITION PIN AND LYNCH PIN

Check if position pin is surely secured with lynch pin.

## [CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]

### CAUTION

The checkups described in this section should be carried out after starting the machine.  
See "Operation 2.2 Starting the Engine" and later to execute the engine startup, travelling operations, outrigger operations and crane operations.

## [1] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (850kg SEARCHER HOOK MODE)

### WARNING

If you find any abnormality with the moment limiter, immediately contact us or our sales service agency.

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
2. Check with the working status lamp. The red of the lamp lights up for 2 seconds and then the green lights up.
3. Check the moment limiter display unit.  
Verify that no error code is displayed at the "RATED TOTAL LOAD" display on the display panel.  
Check if moment limiter is set as 850kg searcher hook mode, and display in boom length window matches actual searcher hook offset position.  
See "Searcher Hook offset position and boom length window display" on page 11 for correct setting.
4. Shift the part of line selector switch on moment limiter display unit to "850kg Searcher hook mode".
5. Start the engine and operate the crane as follows to verify if the moment limiter properly displays the value.

Crane Operation and Displayed Parameter	Value Displayed on Moment Limiter
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at minimum	2.5 m
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at maximum	8.6 m
Displayed "working radius" with the boom length of "4.4 m" and boom angle of "29.2 °"	SH1 4.2 ± 0.1 m
	SH2 4.2 ± 0.1 m
	SH3 4.1 ± 0.1 m

6. Check if displayed actual load value is equal to the total weight of the load + the hoisting accessory, when the weight of the known load is hoisted. There may be slight error in accuracy depending on boom condition.
7. Operate the crane until the moment limiter display indicates the boom length is "4.4 m" and boom angle is "29.2 degrees", then measure the "boom angle" and "working radius".  
If the measured value(s) differ from the moment limiter display value, contact MAEDA or MAEDA sales agency.
8. Lift up load and check if boom extending or boom lowering operation is auto-stopped when overloaded. If the operation is not auto-stopped in overloaded condition, please contact us or our sales service agency and do not use the machine.  
This checking operation must be operated slowly, and if machine does not auto-stop by overloading, immediately stop the operation, and perform recovery operation caused by overloading.

### NOTES

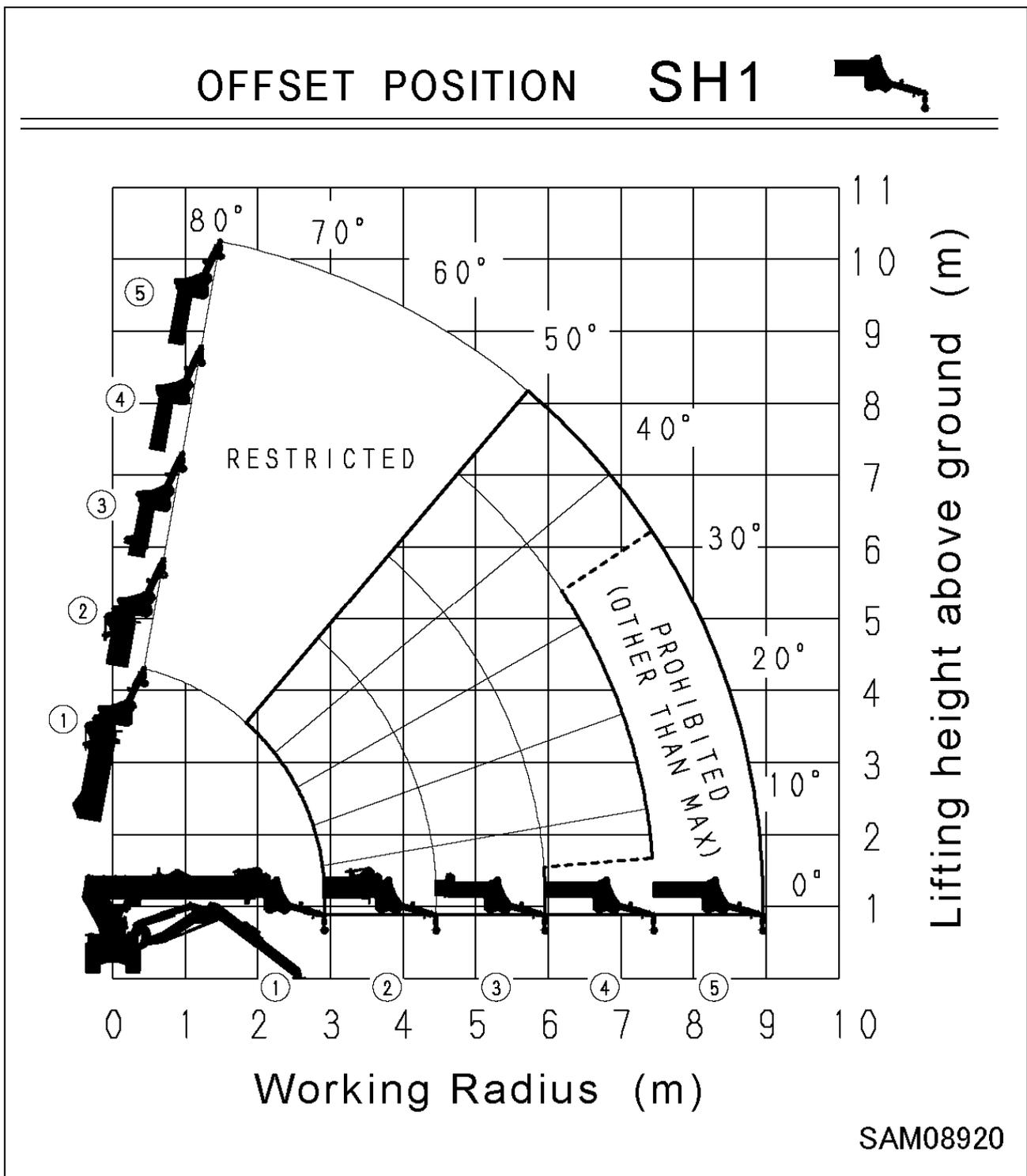
When measuring actual working radius, measure from hook position of searcher hook.

## 6. WORKING RANGE AND RATED TOTAL LOAD

### ⚠ DANGER

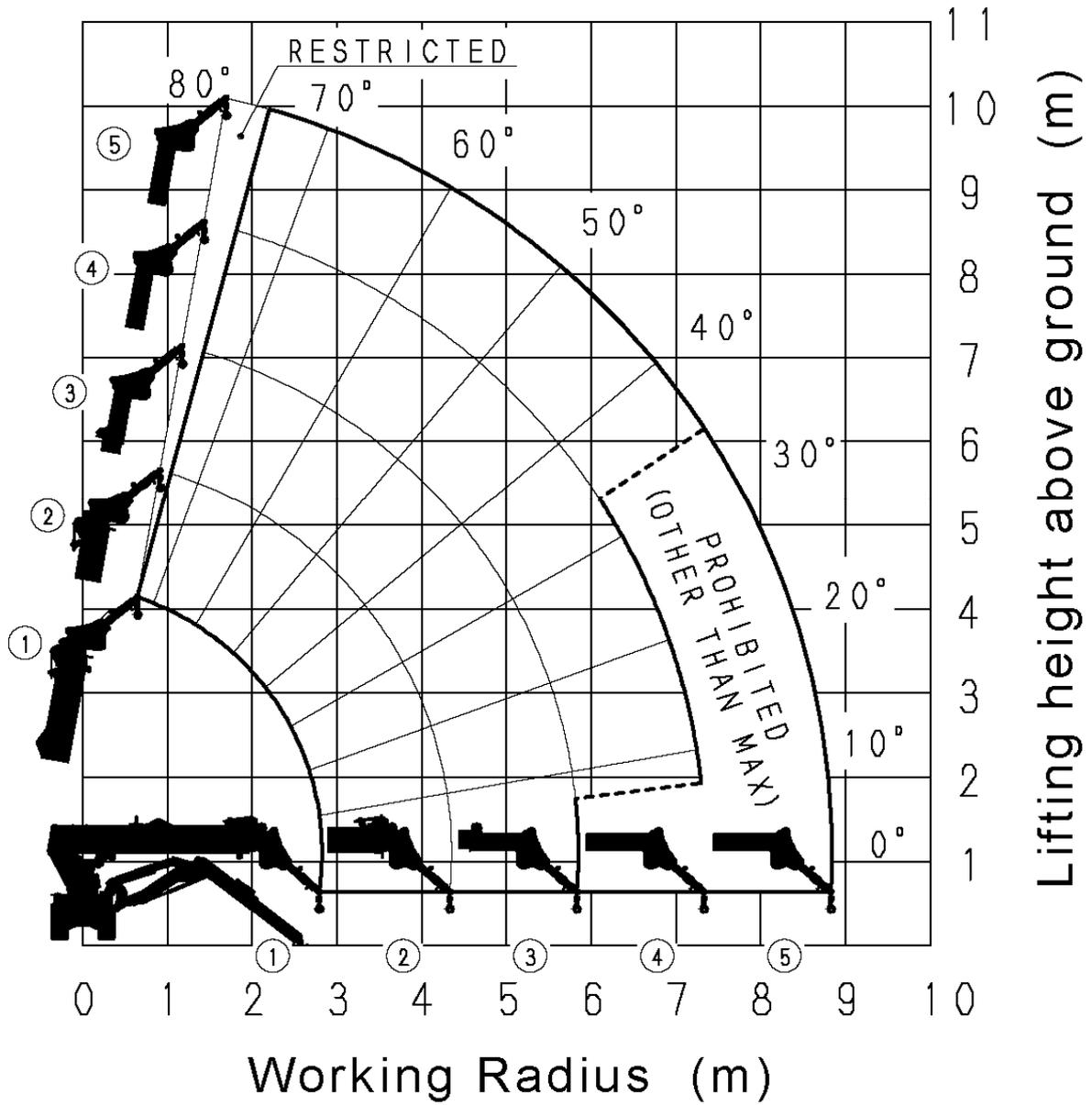
- When using the searcher hook, be sure to set searcher hook mode for moment limiter.
- Fall mode/option mode and searcher hook position must be set as “850kg searcher hook mode” when 850kg searcher hook is used. Searcher hook position must be displayed on moment limiter boom length window..
- Never use the searcher hook and the crane hook simultaneously.

### 6.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR SEARCHER HOOK



# OFFSET POSITION

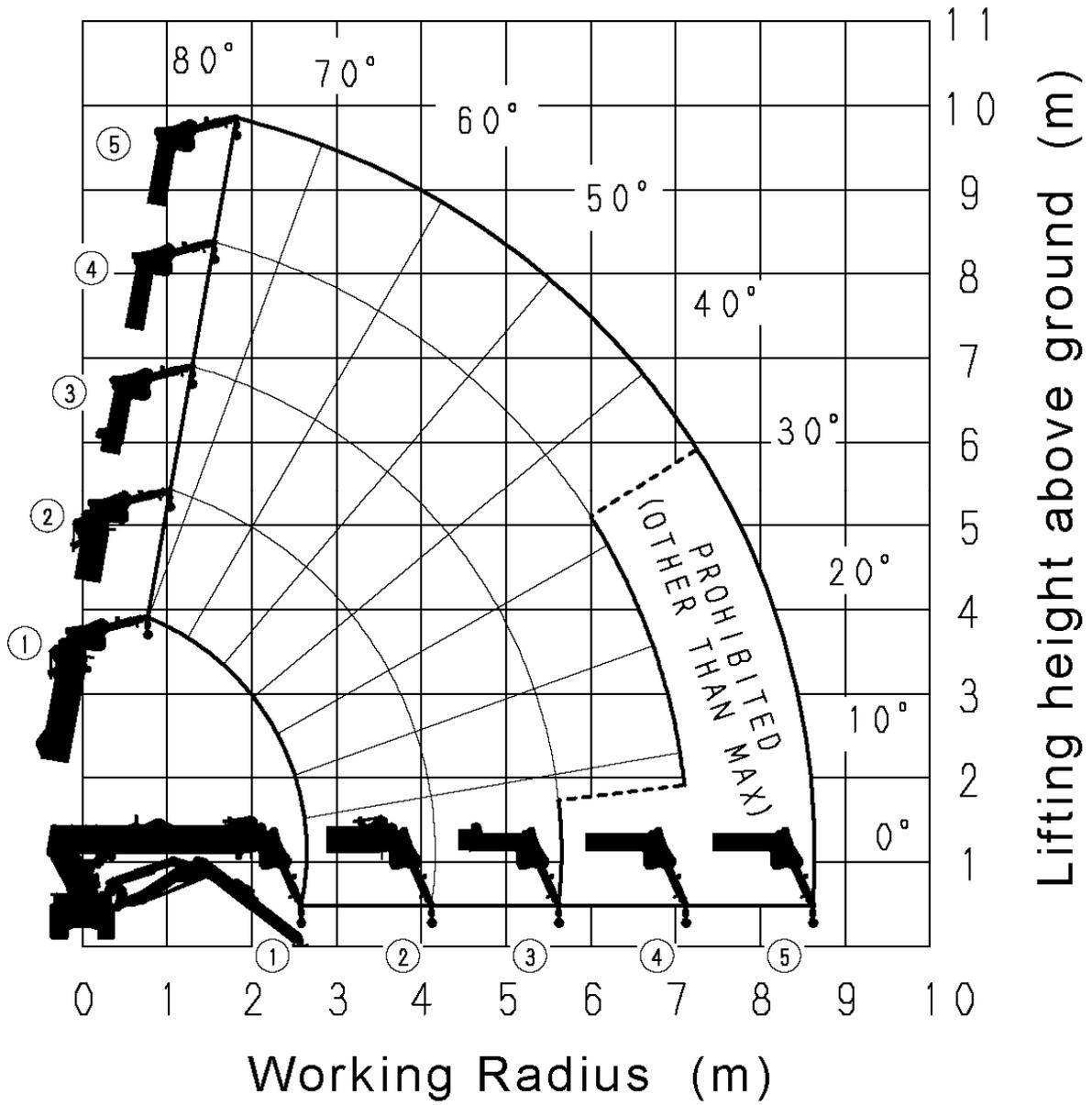
# SH2



SAM08930

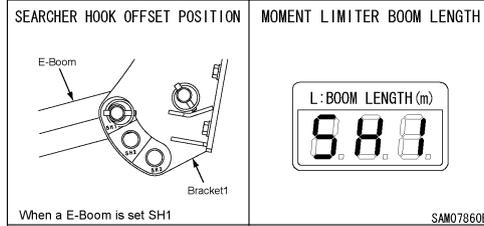
# OFFSET POSITION

# SH3



SAM08940

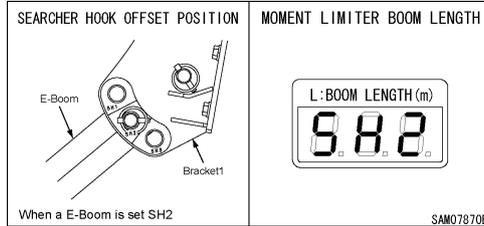
# 6.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR SEARCHER HOOK



**MC285C-2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART**  
OFFSET POSITION SH1

The unit of rated total loads are in kg

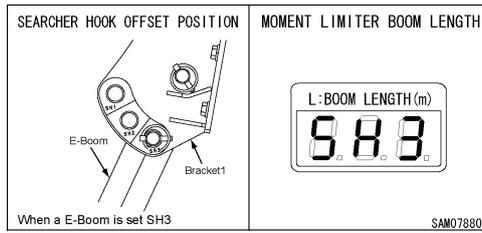
Working Radius (m)	2.535m Boom			2.536-4.075m Boom			4.076-5.575m Boom			5.576-7.075m Boom			7.076-8.575m Boom			Working Radius (m)
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		
		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX													
2.0	50.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		2.0												
2.5	46.0	850	820													2.5
2.9	31.0	850	740													2.9
3.0	10.0	850	610	48.5	850	580										3.0
3.5				46.5	850	540										3.5
3.6				37.0	850	400										3.6
4.0				35.5	830	380										4.0
4.4				25.0	830	290	46.5	850	300							4.4
5.0				5.0	730	210	41.0	730	240							5.0
5.5							31.5	540	180	47.5	500	180				5.5
5.9							21.0	440	150	42.0	420	160				5.9
6.0							7.0	380	110	37.0	370	140	48.5	280	130	6.0
6.5										36.0	360	140	47.5	270	130	6.5
7.0										29.0	320	110	43.0	230	110	7.0
7.4										19.5	290	100	38.0	200	100	7.4
7.5										5.0	250	PROHIBITED	34.0	180	PROHIBITED	7.5
8.0													32.5	170	PROHIBITED	8.0
8.5													26.5	150	PROHIBITED	8.5
8.95													17.5	130	PROHIBITED	8.95
													3.0	110	PROHIBITED	



**MC285C-2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART**  
OFFSET POSITION SH2

The unit of rated total loads are in kg

Working Radius (m)	2.535m Boom			2.536-4.075m Boom			4.076-5.575m Boom			5.576-7.075m Boom			7.076-8.575m Boom			Working Radius (m)
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		
		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX													
1.5	76.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		76.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		75.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		75.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		75.0 OR MORE	RESTRICTED		1.5
2.0	59.5	850	850	70.5	850	850										2.0
2.5	47.5	850	820	63.5	850	820										2.5
2.8	31.0	850	740	56.5	850	740										2.8
3.0	12.0	850	630	50.0	850	580										3.0
3.5				48.0	850	540	58.0	850	400							3.5
3.6				38.0	850	400	52.5	850	350							3.6
4.0				36.0	830	380	51.0	850	340	61.5	690	310				4.0
4.3				24.5	830	290	46.0	850	300	58.0	690	270	64.0	480	260	4.3
5.0				5.0	760	240	41.0	730	240	54.5	640	240	61.0	430	230	5.0
5.5							31.5	540	180	48.0	500	180	56.5	350	190	5.5
5.9							21.0	440	150	42.5	420	160	52.5	310	150	5.9
6.0							5.0	380	110	37.6	370	140	49.0	280	130	6.0
6.5										36.5	360	140	48.0	270	130	6.5
7.0										29.0	320	110	43.5	230	110	7.0
7.3										18.5	290	100	38.5	200	100	7.3
7.5										7.0	260	PROHIBITED	34.0	180	PROHIBITED	7.5
8.0													33.0	170	PROHIBITED	8.0
8.5													26.0	150	PROHIBITED	8.5
8.82													18.0	130	PROHIBITED	8.82
													3.0	110	PROHIBITED	



**MC285C-2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART**  
OFFSET POSITION SH3

The unit of rated total loads are in kg

Working Radius (m)	2.535m Boom				2.536-4.075m Boom				4.076-5.575m Boom				5.576-7.075m Boom				7.076-8.575m Boom				Working Radius (m)
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE (deg)	OUTRIGGER POSITION				
		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX			
1.5	60.0	850	850	71.5	850	850														1.5	
2.0	46.5	850	820	64.5	850	820														2.0	
2.5	25.0	850	740	56.5	850	740														2.5	
2.6	2.0	850	700	49.5	850	580														2.6	
3.0				47.5	850	540	60.0	850	400											3.0	
3.5				36.0	850	400	54.0	850	350											3.5	
3.6				34.0	830	380	53.0	850	340	62.0	690	310								3.6	
4.0				17.5	830	290	47.5	850	300	58.0	690	270	64.0	460	260					4.0	
4.1				11.0	820	270	41.5	730	240	54.0	640	240	61.0	430	230					4.1	
5.0							30.0	540	180	48.0	500	180	56.5	350	190					5.0	
5.5							11.5	440	150	42.0	420	160	52.5	310	150					5.5	
5.6							8.0	420	140	41.0	400	140	51.5	300	140					5.6	
6.0										35.5	360	140	48.0	270	130					6.0	
6.5										27.0	320	110	43.0	230	110					6.5	
7.0										13.0	290	100	38.0	200	100					7.0	
7.1										7.0	280	PROHIBITED	33.0	180						7.1	
7.5												PROHIBITED	32.0	170						7.5	
8.0													24.0	150	PROHIBITED					8.0	
8.5													10.0	130						8.5	
8.61													0.0	120						8.64	

1. This Rated Total Load Chart shows the maximum allowable capacities. These rated total loads are based on the machine standing level on a firm ground supporting surface, under ideal job conditions and a freely suspended load.
2. Sufficient design tolerance must be used to ensure adequate ground support surface design. The rated total loads are for static conditions only, and do not include dynamic effects of slewing, extending, retracting, lowering, raising, wind or adverse conditions. Crane users must reduce rated total loads ratings to take all conditions into account.
3. The Working radius shown in the Rated Total Load Chart is based on practical working radius including boom deflection due to loading. The crane user must calculate and compensate for boom deflection as the load is lifted.
4. Deductions from Searcher Hook Rated Total Load must be made for the weight of the 850kg searcher hook (20kg), block/ball and all rigging.
5. All capacities above the bold line are based on structural strength and other limitations. All other rated total loads are based on stability not exceeding 75% of tipping loads.
6. Crane users must consult the Operators Manual for complete details about assembly, operation, maintenance, configuration, and its limitations. Modifications to the crane, other than what is specified or supplied by the original equipment manufacture, can result in a reduction of rated total load ratings.
7. This operating range chart does not include boom deflections.
8. At certain working conditions, moment limiter may display bigger load value the actual load.
9. RESTRICTED AREA : At high boom angles, E-Boom (arm) and the hook will interfere with each other.  
To avoid this interference : In SH1 position, do not operate above 50 degree boom angle.  
In SH2 position, do not operate above 75 degree boom angle.



# AUXILIARY WINCH

1. SAFETY OF AUXILIARY WINCH	10- 2
2. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS	10- 4
3. EACH SECTION	10- 6
4. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT	10- 7
5. HOW TO INSTAL AND DETACH BOOM HEAD	10- 9
6. MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE AND HOISTING METHOD	10-16
7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE	10-19
8. SPECIFICATIONS	10-32

# 1. SAFETY OF AUXILIARY WINCH

## 1.1 CAUTIONS BEFORE OPERATION

### INSPECTION BEFORE STARTING WORK

Do the following before starting work.

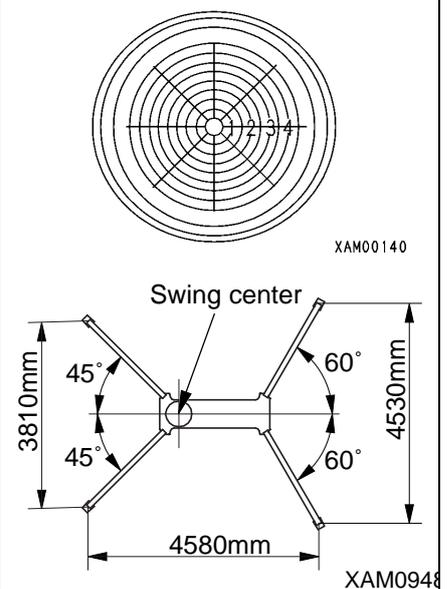
- Shift the select valve to auxiliary winch side.
- Shift the moment limiter to auxiliary winch mode.
- Check that the safety devices such as the moment limiter, outrigger safety device, and over hoist detector / automatic stop device activate properly.

## 1.2 CAUTIONS DURING OPERATION

### CHECK OUTRIGGER PLACEMENT CONDITION

Always observe followings to prevent serious injuries and death accidents when placing the outriggers.

- Always set the outrigger horizontally to the ground while looking at the level gauge.
- Always place the outriggers at maximum extension.
- When setting outriggers, insert lynch pins to secure position pins.



### BE CAREFUL FOR TIPPING BY SWAYING LOAD

Underground lifting can be effected by swaying load more than it of above ground lifting.

Be careful of crane tipping by swaying load.

### PAY ATTENTION TO WEATHER INFORMATION

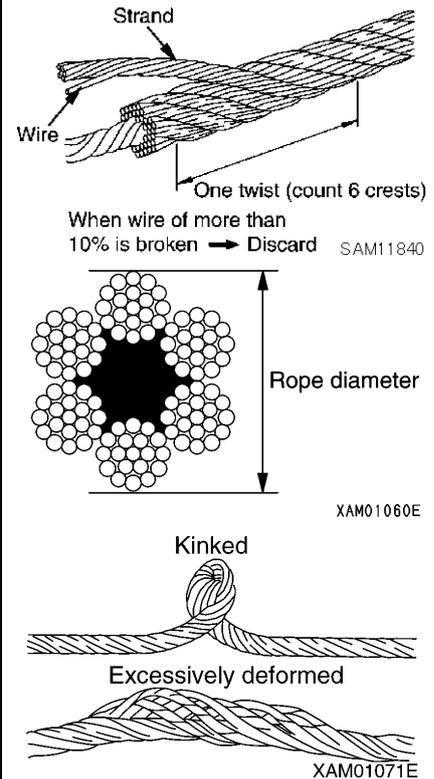
If the maximum instantaneous wind speed is 10 m/s or greater, abort working with crane, immediately lower the load and contain the boom. When lifting underground or lifting large area load, stop operation even if wind speed is less than 10m/s depending on situation.

## CAUTIONS WHEN HANDLING WIRE ROPE

- Wire ropes can wear out from constant use or old age, so be sure to inspect every time before work, and replace immediately if at or beyond the replacement standard.

At the same time, inspect the sheave at the tip of the boom and the sheave of the hook block. Damaged sheaves accelerate the damage of the wire ropes.

- Use the wire ropes specified by us.
- Always put on leather gloves when handling the wire rope.
- Handling worn and damaged wire may cause injury from wire splinter.
- Do not use any wire rope of which any of the following applies:
  - 10% or more of the wires (except the filler wires) in one twist of the wire rope are snapped.
  - The wire rope diameter abrasion is beyond 7% of the nominal diameter.
  - Wire rope is kinked.
  - Wire rope is excessively deformed or corroded.
  - Affected by heat or sparks.



## CAUTIONS HIGH TEMPERATURE OIL WHEN WORKING WITH CRANE

Hook raising and lowering operation at underground lifting can cause rapid raising of hydraulic oil temperature. If temperature of hydraulic oil exceeds 80 degrees, stop operation and wait until the oil cools down.

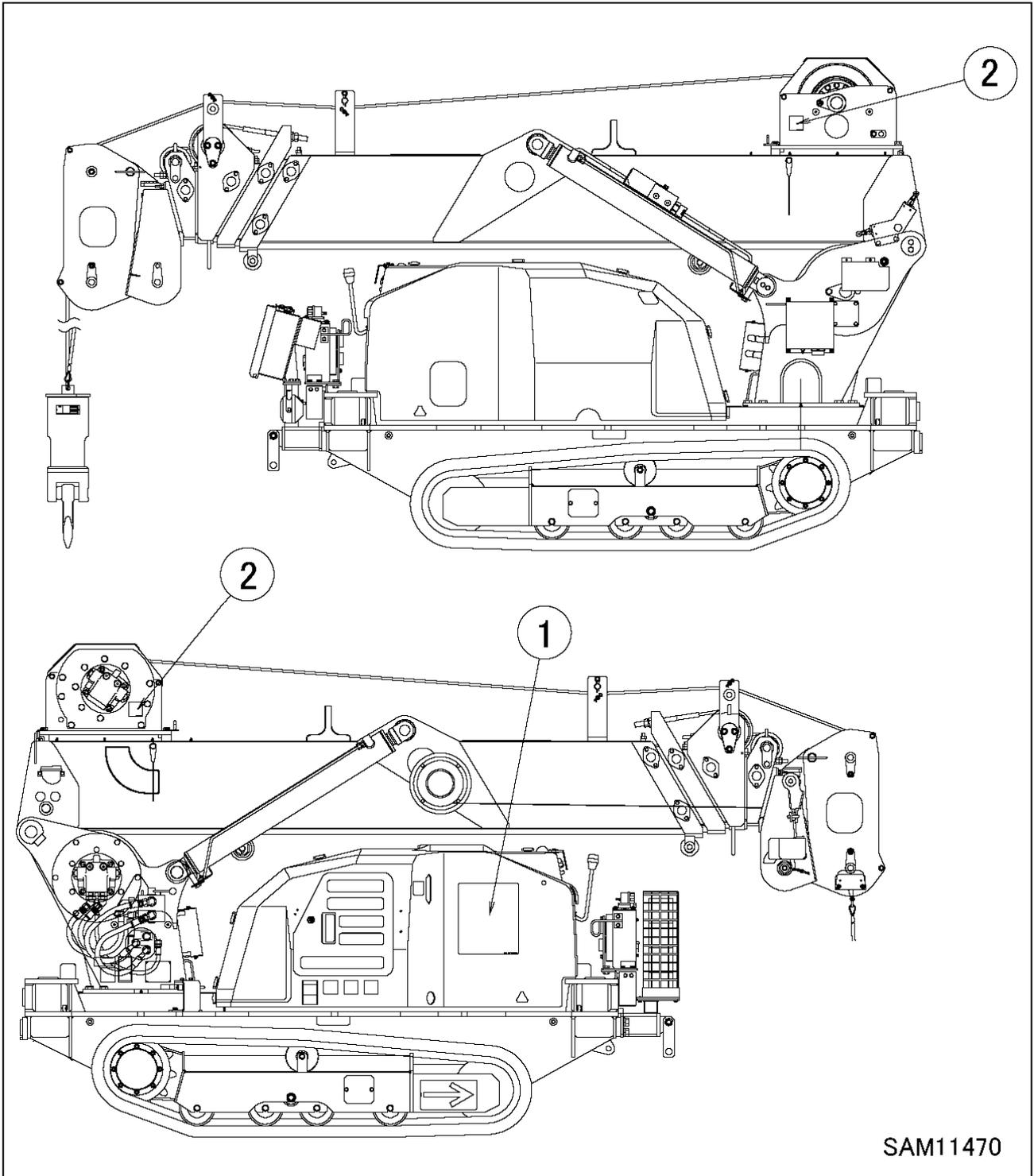
## CAUTIONS WHEN OPERATING WINCH

- Do not use the winch drum wire rope in random condition. If random, not only the wire rope suffers damage and shortens the lifetime, but the wire rope may snap and causes serious accidents. Observe following precautions to avoid wire rope from becoming random.
- Do not let the hook block hit the ground.
- Before leaving the hook block lowered for a long time for instance when working below ground, leave at least three loops of wire rope on the winch drum.

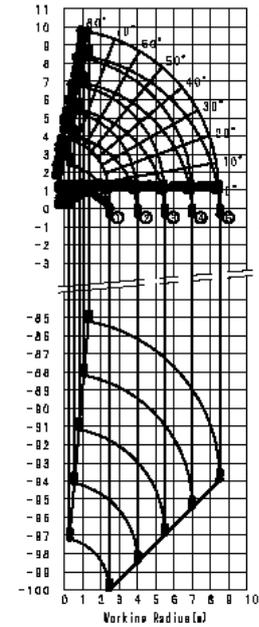
## WORKING AT THE SITE WITH UNDERGROUND LIFTING

At the site with underground lifting, perform the operation by having bigger margin to crane capacity than above ground lifting work.

## 2. SAFETY DECAL LOCATIONS



MC285C-2 Auxiliary Winch Working Range Chart



Notes:

- This chart does not reflect any bending of boom.
- Curve represents the case where one-half of mark is exposed from 2st stage boom.
- Curve represents the case where second of mark is exposed from 2st stage boom.

MC285C-2 Auxiliary Winch Rated Total Load Chart

The unit of loads: kg

Working Radius (m)	① 2.95m BOOM		② 4.97m BOOM		③ 5.97m BOOM		④ 7.07m BOOM		⑤ 8.57m BOOM		Working Radius (m)		
	BOOM FULLY RETRACTED		OUTRIGGER POSITION		OUTRIGGER POSITION		OUTRIGGER POSITION		OUTRIGGER POSITION				
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE	MAX	OUTRIGGER POSITION	MAX	OUTRIGGER POSITION	MAX	OUTRIGGER POSITION	LOADED BOOM ANGLE	MAX	OUTRIGGER POSITION		MAX	
1.0	52.5°	900	900	73.5°	900	900					1.0		
1.5	50.0°	900	900	71.5°	900	900					1.5		
2.0	45.5°	900	900	67.0°	900	900					2.0		
2.5				60.0°	850	580					2.5		
3.0				49.5°	850	440					3.0		
3.5				47.5°	800	320					3.5		
3.8				44.0°	800	320	58.0°	770	350		3.8		
3.9				41.5°	800	280	55.5°	710	290		3.9		
4.0				42.5°	730	280	54.5°	680	280	11.0°	500	280	4.0
4.5				34.0°	580	200	49.5°	530	220	57.5°	350	210	4.5
5.0				24.0°	480	140	44.0°	430	170	53.5°	290	160	5.0
5.4				3.1°	480	100	38.0°	380	120	50.0°	250	130	5.4
5.6							37.5°	360	110	48.0°	250	130	5.6
6.0							30.5°	330	100	44.5°	220	110	6.0
6.5							21.0°	300	70	38.5°	180	80	6.5
6.8							6.0°	280	50	35.5°	150	50	6.8
7.0										34.0°	150	50	7.0
7.6										27.5°	130		7.6
8.0										18.0°	100	PROHIBITED	8.0
8.4										5.5°	100		8.4

Notes:

- The Rated Total Load Chart is based on actual working radius with the bending of boom attributable to load reflected and is shown with the mass of hook (30kg) included when.
- If third stage boom is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 5.97m".
- If one half or more of the mark is exposed from second boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 7.07m".
- If one half or more of the second mark is exposed from second stage boom, work should be performed within the capacity for "Boom 8.57m".
- Rough operation of crane is extremely dangerous. Stick to safe operation.

**⚠ DANGER**  
**TIPPING HAZARD**

- Use the level indicator to set machine horizontally on firm level ground.
- Set outriggers to max extended position whenever possible.
- When setting outriggers, insert snap a pin into each position pins to prevent position pins to come out.
- Carry out following work before operation.
  - Set winch shift valve lever to the auxiliary winch side.
  - Set moment limiter mode to auxiliary winch mode.
  - Check that all safety devices are operating correctly.
- Underground hoisting work can be affected more by load shake compared to above ground hoisting work. Operate carefully to avoid crane to fall by load shake.
- When hoisting from underground or hoisting a large area load, even if the maximum instantaneous wind speed is below 10m/s, stop work, put load on the ground and stow booms depending on situation.
- Hoisting from underground can cause hydraulic oil temperature to raise. If hydraulic oil temperature is above 80°C, stop work until the temperature drops to normal level.
- For underground hoisting work, have enough margin to the rated capacity than above ground hoisting work.

WAGDA SETSAKISHO CO., LTD.

EU 102-2161400

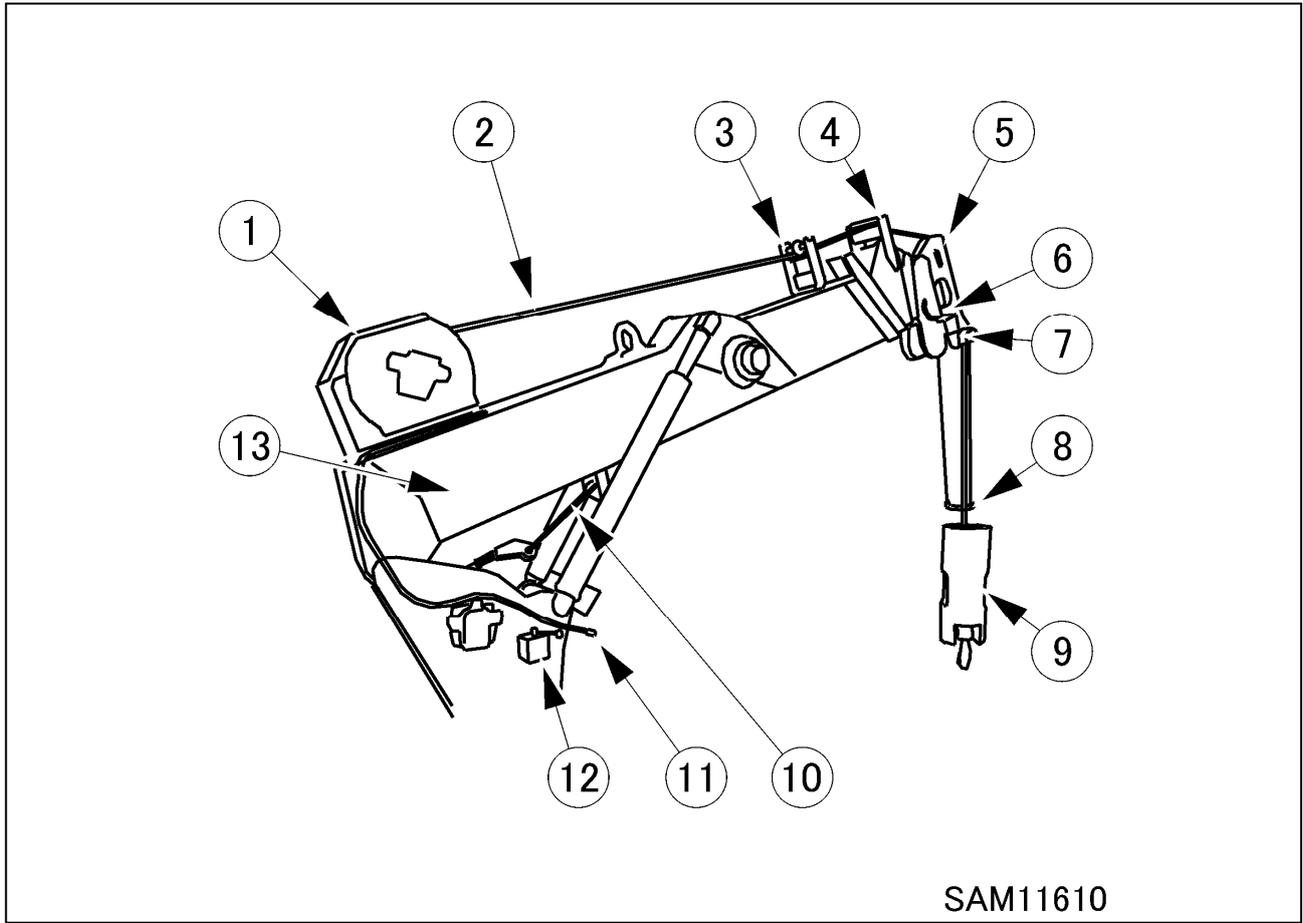
① 102-2161400



553-4267500

② 553-4267500

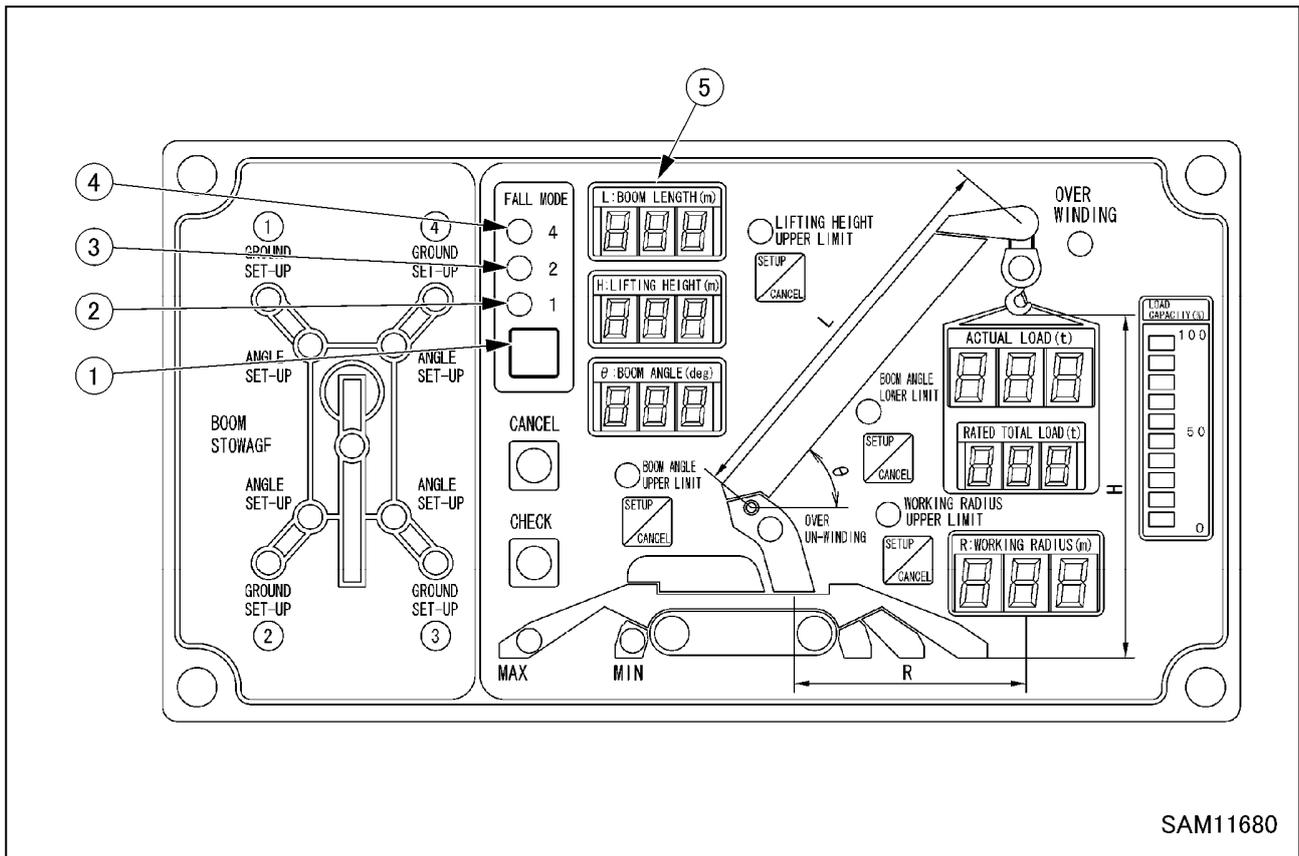
### 3. EACH SECTION



SAM11610

- (1) Winch unit (Auxiliary winch)
- (2) Wire rope (Auxiliary winch)
- (3) Snap sheave bracket
- (4) Idler bracket
- (5) Boom head
- (6) Bullet connector
- (7) Over hoist detector (Auxiliary winch)
- (8) Protect Weight (Auxiliary winch)
- (9) Single fall hook block
- (10) Rubber rope for stowage
- (11) Hoist down stop harness
- (12) Select valve
- (13) Boom

## 4. MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT



- (1) Fall mode / Option selector switch
- (2) 1-fall LED (Blue)
- (3) 2-fall LED (Blue)
- (4) 4-fall LED (Blue)
- (5) Boom length display

## 4.1 SETTING CHANGE OF SWITCHES MOMENT LIMITER DISPLAY UNIT

### CAUTION

See “MC285C-2 Operation 1.5 Moment Limiter in Operation Manual” for how to operate the moment limiter.

### 4.1.1 WIRE FALLS SELECTOR SWITCH AND WIRE FALLS DISPLAY LED (BLUE)

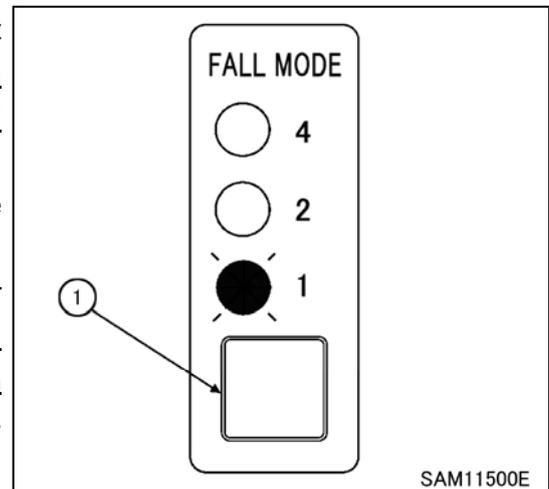
#### ! DANGER

When using auxiliary winch, fall mode and option mode must be set to “Auxiliary winch mode”. Using auxiliary winch other than in auxiliary winch mode may prevent issuance of the pre-warnings and boom auto-stop even when the overload is near happening, and thus may result in crane damage or machine trip that may lead to serious accidents.

Use this switch to change the number of falls.

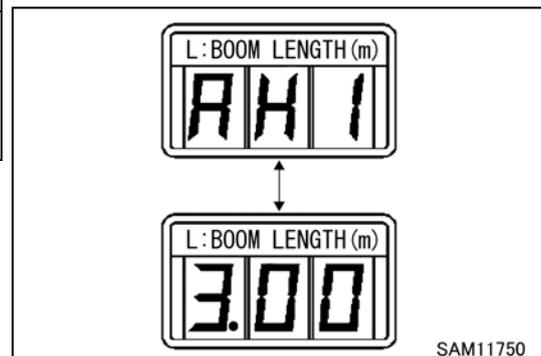
- Shift the fall mode/option selector switch (1) on moment limiter display unit to “Auxiliary winch mode” (**LED1: flash / Boom length window : “AH1” and “boom length” alternately**).

Each time you press the switch for 2 seconds or more, the setting of the fall mode changes in the order of “4 falls → searcher hook mode (all LED ON) → 850kg searcher hook (all LED flashes) → Auxiliary winch mode (LED1: flash / Boom length window : “AH1” and “boom length” alternately) → single fall → 2 falls → 4 falls ...”.



#### NOTES

When changing the setting, right after doing so, release your hand from the switch, and then press the switch again.



## 5. HOW TO INSTALL AND DETACH BOOM HEAD

### **WARNING**

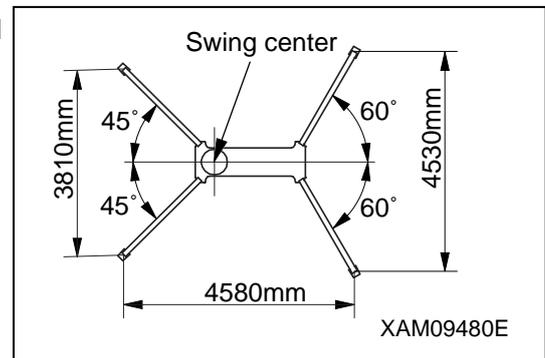
- If installation or detaching work is carried out by two people, make sure of work detail each other and use designated signs for mutual communication during the work. If signs are not enough, it may cause serious accident, such as being hit by moving part.
- When installing or removing boom head, carry out the work on level and firm ground to avoid loosing balance during the work. Boom head may rotate by its own weight and it can lead to a serious accident. (Refer to page 13)
- When installing or detaching boom head, use stable work stand with enough height. Using unstable work stand can cause falling from high place, leading serious accident.
- When installing or detaching boom head, set main boom angle to “0 degree”. If main boom angle is bigger than “0 degree”, proper installing and detaching work may be interfered and it can cause serious accident.
- Boom head is fixed to boom by hitch part and position pin.  
Surely set the hitch part to the boom.  
Insert position pin to correct position, and secure with lynch pin.  
If position pin comes off, it causes boom head to fall off, leading to a serious accident.
- When boom head is installed, change electrical wiring from boom side of over winding detector to boom head side of over winding detector. If over winding detector doesn't work properly, it causes hook or load to fall and may result in a serious accident.
- When boom head is installed, always change electrical wiring from over un-winding detector of main winch to over un-winding detector of auxiliary winch. If over un-winding detector does not work properly, it may cause wire rope to fall off, which can result in a serious accident.

## 5.1 INSTALLING BOOM HEAD

### ⚠ WARNING

Stop the engine during operating machine. If you operate crane without stopping engine, the machine will suddenly move to resort in a serious hazard.

1. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting” and set the outrigger.

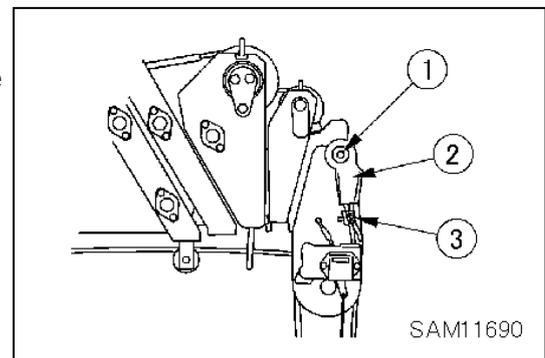


2. Remove wire rope from main winch on crane.

### [REMOVAL WINCH WIRE ROPE]

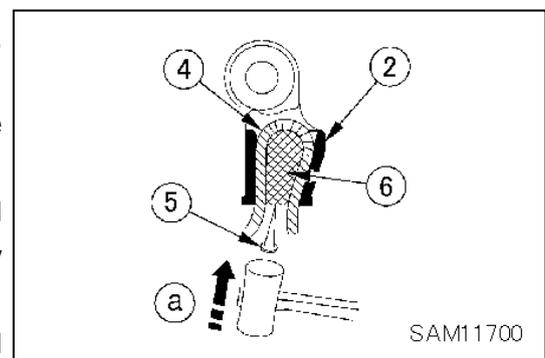
Use the following procedure to remove the wire rope.

- (1) Place the boom telescoping lever in the “Extend” position (push it toward the front) to extend the boom slightly.
- (2) Place the winch lever in the “Down” position (push it toward the front) to lower the hook block on the ground.
- (3) Undo the wedge socket fixing bolt (1) and remove the wedge socket (2).
- (4) Remove the wire clip (3).



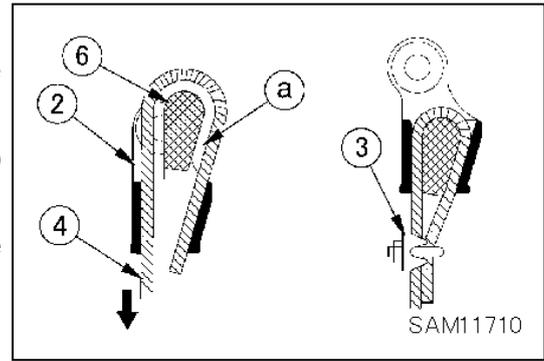
### [Dismantling wedge socket]

- (5) Pull the wire rope (4) out of the wedge socket (2), following the procedure provided below.
  - a. Bring a 4 to 6mm round bar (5) into contact with the rope wedge (6).
  - b. Remove the rope wedge (6), lightly tapping the round bar (5) with a hammer in the direction indicated by the arrow (a).
- (6) Place the winch lever in the “Up” position (pull toward you) to wind up the wire rope (4) from the winch drum.



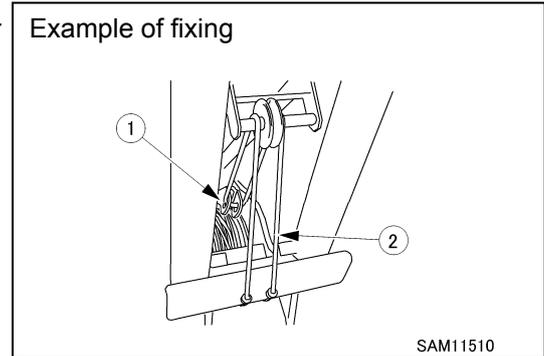
[Assembling wedge socket]

- (7) Secure the end of the wire rope (4) to the wedge socket (2), following the procedure provided below.
- Draw the wire rope (4) through the wedge socket (2) as shown in the diagram (right).
  - With the rope wedge (6) in position (a), pull the wire rope (4) in direction indicated by the arrow.
- (8) Attach the rope clip (3) to the wire rope (4).



3. Fix the removed wedge socket (1) with stowage rubber band (2) for auxiliary winch.

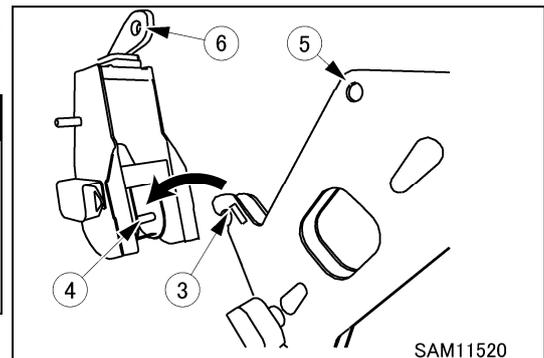
Example of fixing



4. Set the boom head hitch part (3) to point pin (4) at boom tip, and align hole (5) and bracket hole (6).

**⚠ DANGER**

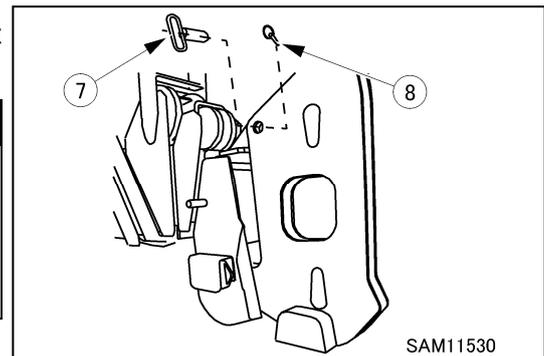
Securely hold boom head until position pin (7) is inserted. If hand is released, hitch part (3) may rotate, leading boom head to fall off, and may result in a serious accident.



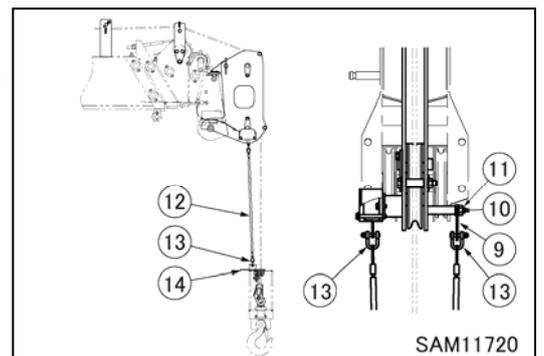
5. Insert position pin (7) to the aligned holes, and secure it with lynch pin (8).

**⚠ DANGER**

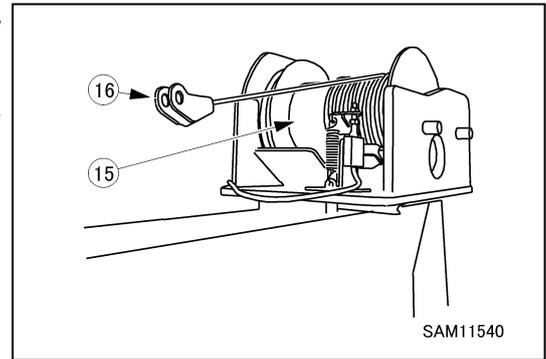
Position pin (7) must be secured with lynch pin (8). If position pin comes off during work, it may cause a serious accident.



6. Fix plate (9) to boom head with plain washer (10) and U nut (11). Then connect plate (9), protective rope (12) and protect weight (14) using shackle (13).

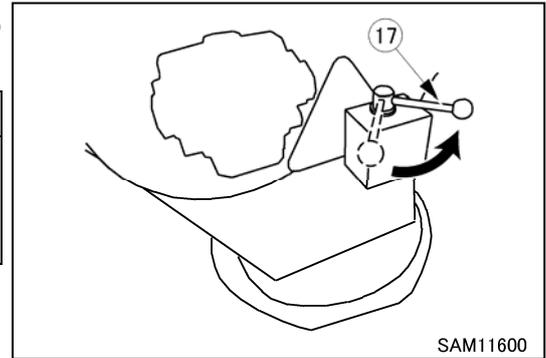


7. Take out wedge socket (16) for wire rope for auxiliary winch unit (15).  
Refer to “Dismantling wedge socket” (P.12) and dismantle wedge socket (16).



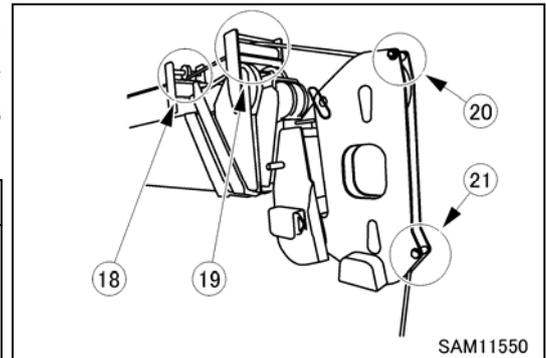
8. Shift the manual shift valve (17) from regular side to auxiliary winch side.

<b>NOTES</b>
If valve is not shifted, main winch activates causing random winding.



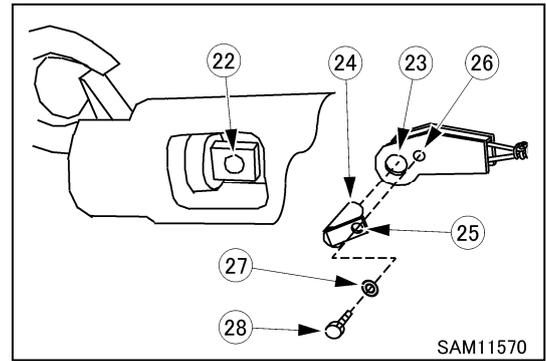
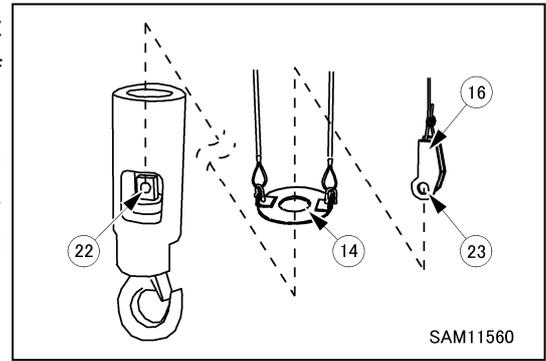
9. Hold wire rope end and operate hook lowering. Holding with hand, pass the running rope through snap sheave bracket (18) of No.1 boom, idler bracket (19) of No.3 boom, (20) and (21) of boom head.

<b>NOTES</b>
Before passing the wire rope through above mentioned parts, run the wire rope out for about the length necessary for passing through those parts.
Pulling by hand, run out the wire rope to keep tension and avoid random winding.

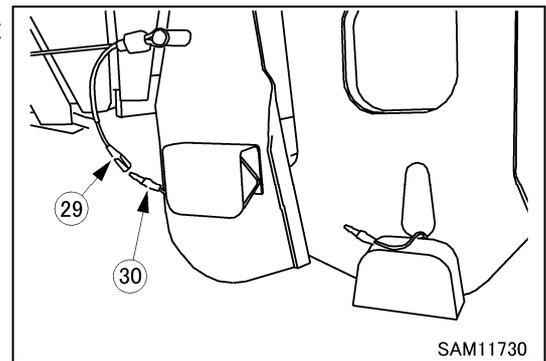


10. Refer to “Assembling wedge socket” (P.13), and fix the wedge socket (16) to the wire rope.

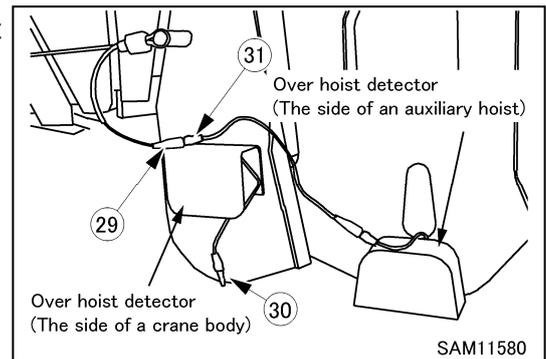
11. Hold the wedge socket (16) and put it through protect weight (14) and then insert to hook to align holes of connection base (22) and wedge socket (23). Insert wedge socket pin (24) to the aligned holes, and align hole of wedge socket pin (25) and hole of wedge socket (26), then secure with spring washer (27) and bolt (28).



12. Separate length sensor bullet connector (29) and bullet connector (30) on machine side.

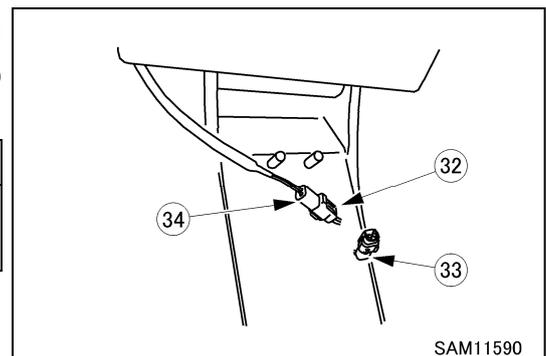


13. Connect the length sensor bullet connector (29) to bullet connector (relay harness) (31) on boom head side.



14. Disconnect hook lowering stop harness (32) from harness (33) on machine body side and connect to harness (34) for auxiliary winch.

<b>NOTES</b>
Put dummy plug to the disconnected harness.



15. Raise hook block by operating boom derricking lever to raise boom (pull) or boom telescoping lever to extend boom (push forward).

<b>NOTES</b>
--------------

Winch operation is allowed only after the hook block is raised.
---

16. Fully extend and fully raise boom, and operate hook lowering (push winch lever forward) to run out wire rope on auxiliary winch unit (15) as close as to the ground.

<b>NOTES</b>
--------------

Do not let hook block to touch the ground.
--

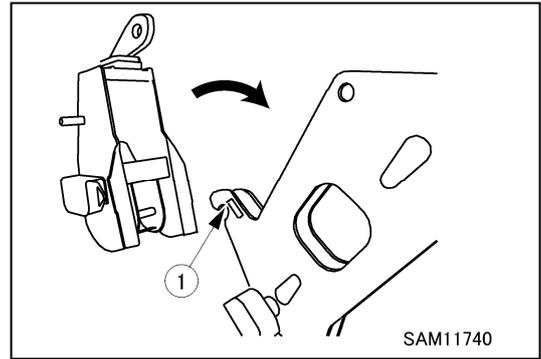
17. Keep wire rope at tension and operate hook raising (pull winch lever) to wind wire rope on auxiliary winch unit (15).

## 5.2 DETACHING BOOM HEAD

1. Take off boom head in reverse order of installation process.

### **⚠ DANGER**

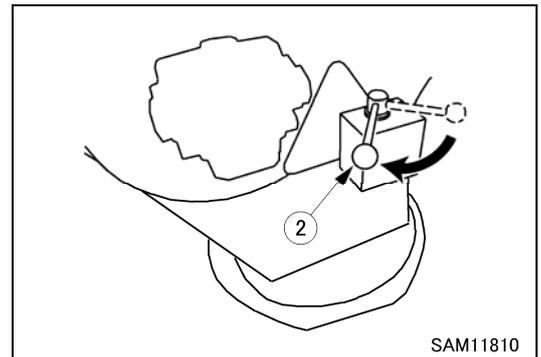
Securely hold the boom head, when pulling out position pin from boom head. When position pin is pulled out, hitch part (1) may rotate and boom head falls off, resulting in a serious accident.



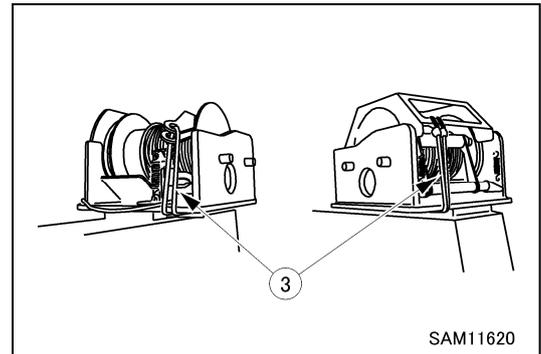
2. Shift the manual shift valve (2) from auxiliary winch side to regular side.

### **NOTES**

If valve is not shifted, auxiliary winch activates causing random winding.



3. Secure the winded wire rope with stowage rubber band (3).



## 6. MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE AND HOISTING METHOD

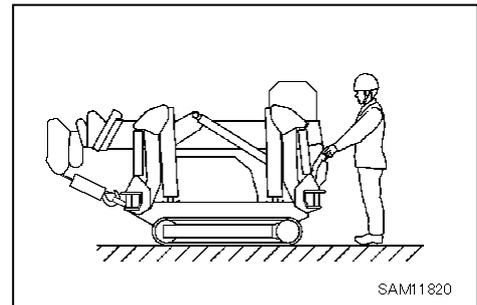
### 6.1 MACHINE TRAVELLING POSTURE (AUXILIARY WINCH)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

- When moving this machine self-propelled, take the “travelling posture” with which the boom, hook block, and outriggers are stowed.
- Travelling or travelling hoist with the boom extended is essentially prohibited. This will overturn the machine, causing serious injury and accidents.
- Do not use this machine for any other purpose except the major purpose such as using it for carrying the load on the machine.
- Follow the local laws and regulations if driving the machine on public roads.

Take the travelling posture shown on the right when moving the machine.

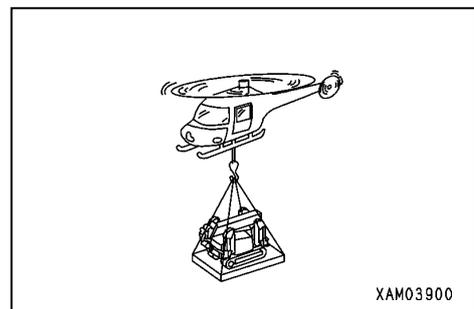
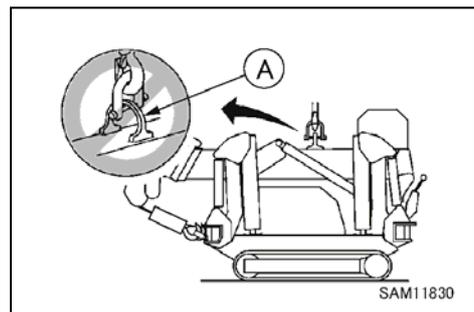
1. See “Operation 2.21 Crane Stowing Operation” to stow the crane. Stow the hook block in the specified position.
2. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.



## 6.2 HOISTING MACHINE (AUXILIARY WINCH)

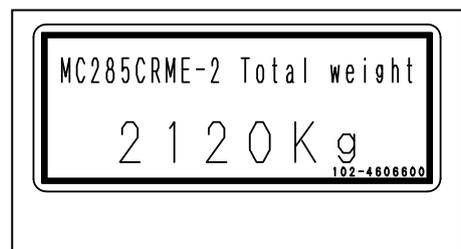
### **⚠ DANGER**

- Never use the hoisting bracket (A) to lift machine if single fall hook block is still equipped. Using the bracket (A) to lift the machine with single fall hook block equipped can cause breakage of wire rope for lack of strength, thus leading serious accident. When lifting machine, always replace to 4 falls hook block and make machine into stowage position.
- The hoisting attachments such as wire ropes and shackles used in hoisting should be sufficiently strong enough for the weight of this machine.
- Crane stowed position when it is hoisted means its "Travelling position" where 4 of outrigger position pins are securely inserted in the outrigger rotary. The centre of the balance of the machine is specified subject to the machine being in its travelling position. In addition, to set it into that position correctly, secure the hook block (4) to its stowing position, also tension the wire rope tight, this will prevent the boom derricking cylinder form extending. Refer to "8.1 Machine Travelling Position(Auxiliary Winch)" for details of travelling position.
- Hoisting the machine for a long time will cause the boom derricking cylinder to extend, shifting the centre of gravity and the machine to lose balance. Hoisting should be limited to a max of 10 minutes.
- Where it is required to hoist the machine for a longer time (exceeding 10 minutes), or when it is carried by a helicopter, use a proper carriage deck as shown in the diagram on the right, for safe transportation.



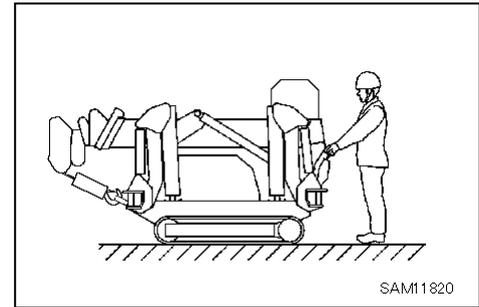
### **CAUTION**

- When the local laws and regulations are applicable, the person who uses the crane to perform hoisting operation must be qualified to do so. If not, the operator must be well trained and skilled.
- See the Dimension or the nameplate attached to the machine for the weight of the machine.
- The dimensions are for standard specifications. The hoisting method varies depending on the attachments and options mounted. In that case, contact us or our sales service agency.



Hoist the machine on solid and flat ground using the following procedure.

1. See “8.1 Machine Travelling Position(Auxiliary Winch)” and put the machine in the “Travelling position”.

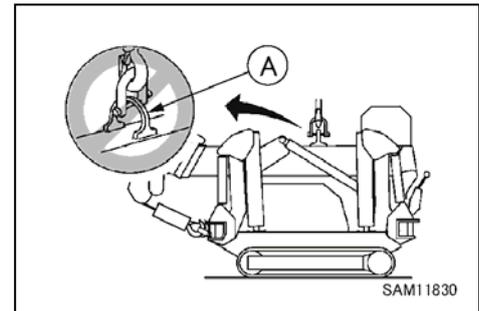


2. Change single fall hook block to 4 falls hook block.

**⚠ DANGER**

Never use the hoisting bracket (A) to lift machine if single fall hook block is still equipped. Using the bracket (A) to lift the machine with single fall hook block equipped can cause breakage of wire rope for lack of strength, thus leading serious accident.

When lifting machine, always replace to 4 falls hook block and make machine into stowage position.



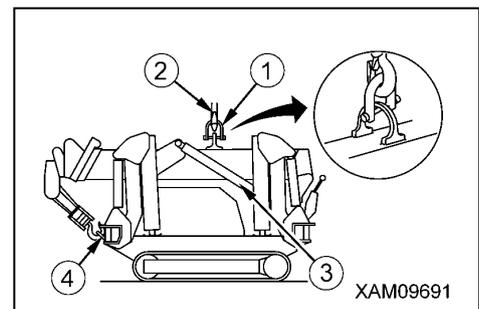
3. Hang the hook (2) directly to the bracket (A) on the top of the boom, or use a shackle (1) to hang the hook (2).

**NOTES**

With auxiliary winch wire rope equipped, machine cannot be lifted at bracket (A) because of interfering of hook (2) and auxiliary winch wire rope.

Before lifting at hoisting bracket (A), dismantle wedge socket of auxiliary winch and take up the wire rope, then place standard winch wire rope to designated position, and change to 4 falls hook block.

4. As soon as the machine leaves the ground, stop and wait until the machine is stabilized. Then slowly hoist the machine.
5. Check the changes in the position due to the leakage from the hydraulic circuit on the head side of the derricking cylinder (4) when the machine is hoisted.



## 7. INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE

### 7.1 LEGAL INSPECTION

If periodic inspection for machine safety assurance is stipulated by laws and regulations of your country, perform inspection complying with the inspection items listed below.

1. Verify that all safety devices are operating properly.
2. Check the hoist accessories, including the hook block, for problems or damage.
3. Check the structural parts of the machine, including the frame and boom, for cracks, deformation and damage.
4. Check for loose or missing mounting bolts and joints.
5. Verify that the boom operates properly by stopping, extending, retracting, raising, lowering and slewing the boom.

Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency to request inspection and repair service as needed.

### 7.2 CONSUMABLES

Wire ropes is consumables. Replace them at periodic inspection or before they reach abrasion limits. Replace consumable items regularly, which will produce economical use of this machine. Always replace with a Maeda genuine item. Check parts catalogue for correct part number for parts request.

#### [CONSUMABLES LIST]

Part	Replacement cycle
Winch wire rope IWRC 6×Ws (26) 0/0 $\phi$ 8×108mm	Every 3 years

Items include a halt period. Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency for part replacement information.

## 7.3 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE LIST

This document only covers auxiliary winch kit. For crane body, please refer to “MC285C-2 Inspection and Maintenance” and follow its precautions.

Inspection and maintenance items	Page
<b>7.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION</b>	23
[CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]	23
[1] CHECKING BOOM HEAD, FRAME AND HOOK	23
[2] INSTALLATION CHECK OF POSITION PIN AND LYNCH PIN	23
[3] INSPECTION OF WIRE ROPE	23
[4] INSPECTION OF OVER-HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE	23
[5] INSPECTION OF WINCH MOTOR	23
[6] INSPECTION OF WINCH DRUM	23
[CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]	24
[1] CHECKING OVER HOIST DETECTOR FOR OPERATION	24
[2] INSPECTION OF OVER-UNWINDING STOP DEVICE	24
[3] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (AUXILIARY WINCH MODE)	25
<b>7.4.2 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE</b>	26
[1] REPLACEMENT WINCH WIRE ROPE	26
<b>7.4.3 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS</b>	30
[1] GREASING MACHINE UNITS	30
<b>7.4.4 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS</b>	31
[1] CHECK OIL LEVEL IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE, AND ADD OIL	31
<b>7.4.5 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS</b>	32
[1] OIL REPLACEMENT IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE	32

## 7.4 MAINTENANCE PROCEDURES

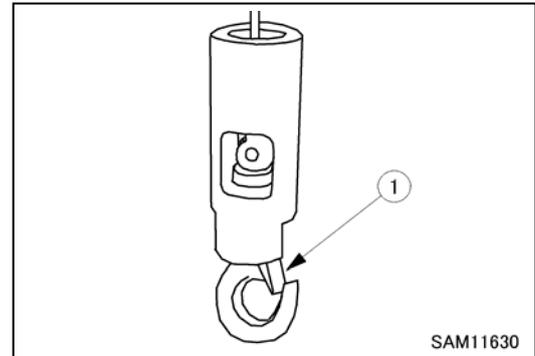
### 7.4.1 INSPECTION BEFORE OPERATION

#### [CHECKING BEFORE STARTING ENGINE]

Check the following in this section without starting the engine and before starting work every day.

#### [1] CHECKING BOOM HEAD, FRAME AND HOOK

Check each part of the boom head, frame and hook for cracks, excessive deformation and contamination etc. In addition, check bolts nuts and pins for any looseness, drop and damage etc. If you find any abnormality, repair. Check hook for deformation, abnormal noise from bearing and correct function of wire rope latch (1).



#### [2] INSTALLATION CHECK OF POSITION PIN AND LYNCH PIN

Check if position pin of boom head is surely secured with lynch pin.

#### [3] INSPECTION OF WIRE ROPE

Check for damage, deformation, wear, twists, kinks and corrosion and replace where necessary.

#### [4] INSPECTION OF OVER-HOIST PREVENTIVE DEVICE

Check the wire rope of over-hoist weight for damage etc, and replace it as necessary.

#### [5] INSPECTION OF WINCH MOTOR

Check for loose pipe connections, oil leakage or loose mounting bolts, and repair as necessary.

#### [6] INSPECTION OF WINCH DRUM

Check the drum for cracks, bending or damage and repair it as necessary. Check hoisting wire rope for disorderly winding and repair it as necessary

## [CHECKING AFTER STARTING ENGINE]

### ⚠ CAUTION

The checkups described in this section should be carried out after starting the machine. See "MC285C-2 Operation manual Operation 2.2 Starting Engine" and later to execute the engine startup, travelling operations, outrigger operations and crane operations.

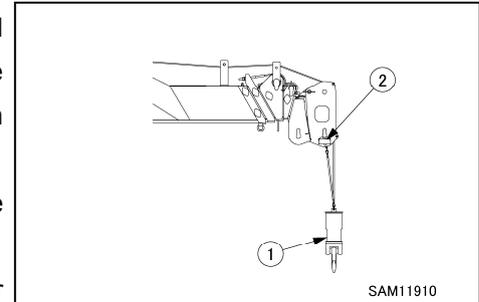
#### [1]CHECKING OVER HOIST DETECTOR FOR OPERATION

Over hoist the hook block (1), and raise the hook with winch and extend the boom, and verify that the buzzer sounds and an audible message saying "Over hoisted" is spoken, the hook raising operation and boom extending operation stop.

If these events do not happen, the over hoist detector (2) may be faulty.

If the alarm does not stop, the over hoist detector (2) may be faulty or the circuit may be open.

Ask us or our sales service agency for repair.



#### [2]INSPECTION OF OVER-UNWINDING STOP DEVICE

Before carrying out underground lifting work, with three loops of wire ropes left on winch drum (1), operate hook lowering to test if alarm buzzer sounds and hook lowering operation stops.

If these are not happening, over-unwinding stop device (3) may be broken.

If the alarm buzzer does not stop sounding, over-unwinding device (3) may have failure or may have cut wiring.

Contact Maeda or a Maeda sales service agency to request repair service.

### [3] CHECKING MOMENT LIMITER FOR OPERATION (AUXILIARY WINCH MODE)

## WARNING

If you find any abnormality with the moment limiter, immediately contact us or our sales service agency.

1. Turn the starter switch to the "ON" position.
2. Check with the working status lamp. The red lamps up for 2 seconds, then the green lamps up.
3. Check the moment limiter display unit.  
Verify that no error code is displayed at the "RATED TOTAL LOAD" display on the display panel.  
Check if moment limiter is set as auxiliary winch mode.
4. Start the engine and operate the crane as follows to verify if the moment limiter properly displays the value.

Crane Operation and Displayed Parameter	Value Displayed on Moment Limiter
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at minimum	2.5m
Displayed "boom length" with the boom length at maximum	8.6m
Displayed "working radius" with the boom length of "4.4 m" and boom angle of "29.2 °"	$3.7 \pm 0.1\text{m}$

5. Check if displayed actual load value is equal to the total weight of the load + the hoisting accessory, when the weight of the known load is hoisted. There may be slight error in accuracy depending on boom condition.
6. Operate the crane until the moment limiter display indicates the boom length is "4.4 m" and boom angle is "29.2 degrees", then measure the "boom angle" and "working radius".  
If the measured value(s) differ from the moment limiter display value, contact MAEDA or MAEDA sales agency.
7. Lift up load and check if boom extending or boom lowering operation is auto-stopped when overloaded. If the operation is not auto-stopped in overloaded condition, please contact us or our sales service agency and do not use the machine.  
This checking operation must be operated slowly, and if machine does not auto-stop by overloading, immediately stop the operation, and perform recovery operation caused by overloading.

## NOTES

When measuring actual working radius, measure from hook offset position.

## 7.4.2 IRREGULAR MAINTENANCE

### [1] REPLACEMENT OF WINCH WIRE ROPE

#### WARNING

Always wear leather work gloves when replacing the wire rope.

#### CAUTION

- The diameter of the wire rope is measured at points where the wire repeatedly runs through the sheave. A mean value needs to be determined through three-way measurement. (A measurement should be performed at several points, spacing between the points.)
- Do not use old wire rope regardless of the frequency of use.
- Always use Maeda genuine wire rope.

#### [CRITERIA FOR WINCH WIRE ROPE REPLACEMENT]

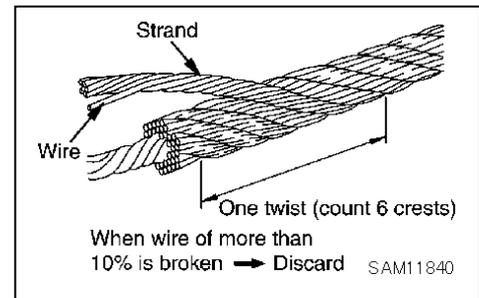
A wire rope undergoes wear and tear over time.

Prompt replacement is required if any of the following appears in the wire rope.

- 10% or more of strands (except a filler wire) in a twist of the wire rope (6 crests) are broken.

#### NOTES

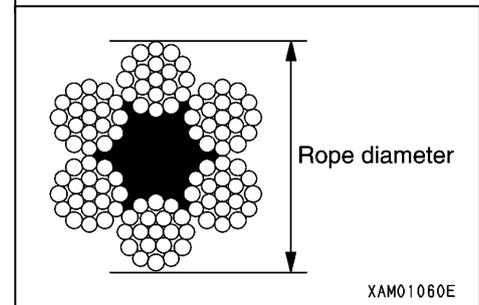
For auxiliary winch, replace when more than 13 wires are cut.



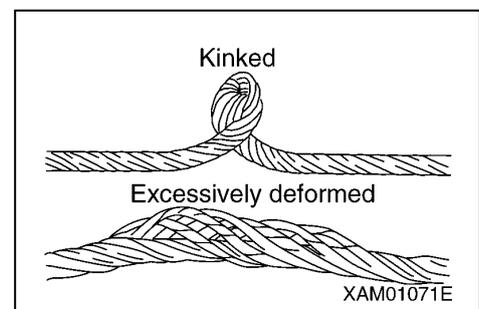
- Wear equivalent to 7% or more of a nominal diameter occurs in the wire rope diameter.

#### NOTES

• Change the 8-mm diameter wire rope when reduced to 7.5 mm.



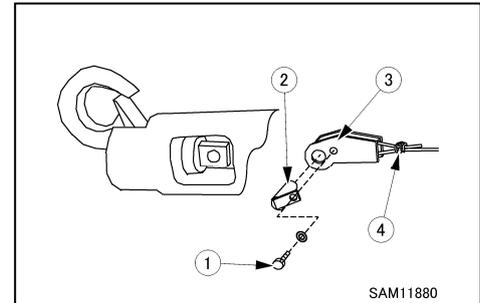
- A kink is formed.
- Considerable deformation or corrosion is developed.
- A faulty end socket is used.



## [REMOVAL OF WINCH WIRE ROPE]

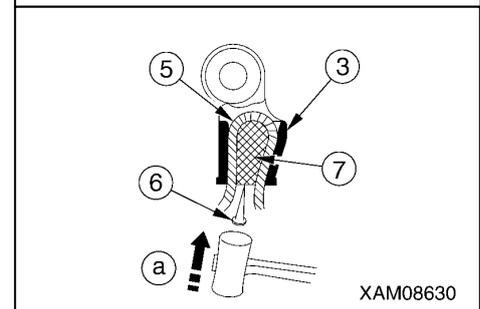
Use the following procedure to remove the wire rope.

1. Place the machine on a level and firm surface.
2. Place the boom telescoping lever in the "Extend" position (push it toward the front) to extend the boom slightly.
3. Place the winch lever in the "Down" position (push it toward the front) to lower the hook block on the ground.
4. Remove wedge socket fixing bolt (1), wedge socket pin (2), and then take off wedge socket (3).
5. Remove the wire clip (4).



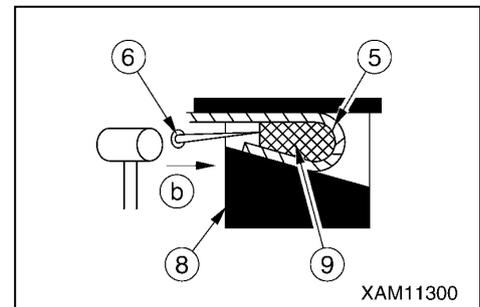
6. Pull the wire rope (5) out of the wedge socket (3), following the procedure provided below.

- (1) Bring a 4 to 6mm round bar (6) into contact with the rope wedge (7).
- (2) Remove the rope wedge (7), lightly tapping the round bar (6) with a hammer in the direction indicated by the arrow (a).



7. Place the winch lever in the "Down" position (push it toward the front) to wind up the wire rope (5) from the winch drum.
8. With the wire rope wound off from the winch drum, detach the end of the wire rope (5) from the winch drum (8) by following the procedure provided below.

- (1) Bring a 4 to 6mm round bar (6) into contact with the rope wedge (9).
- (2) Remove the rope wedge (9), lightly tapping the round bar (6) with a hammer in the direction indicated by the arrow (b).



9. Wind up the remaining wire rope (5) completely.

Removal of the winch wire rope is completed.

## [INSTALLATION OF WINCH WIRE ROPE]

### WARNING

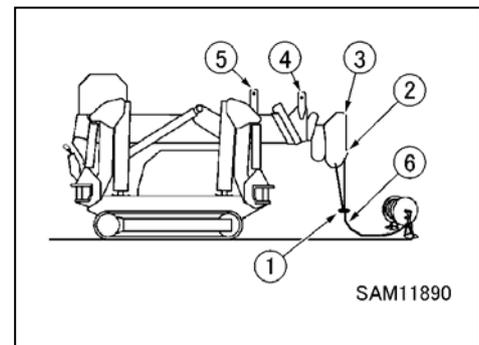
Be sure to attach the rope wedge properly to secure the wire rope. Serious accidents may occur if the wire rope is detached during crane operations.

### CAUTION

- Avoid irregular winding of the wire rope on the winch drum.
- Always hoist an object (2.9 to 4.9KN {300 to 500kg}) with the boom extended and raised fully immediately after attaching a new rope. Repeat raising and lowering the hook several times until the new rope conforms.
- The wire rope is coiled. Exercise caution not to form a kink in the rope when winding it up. Be sure to unravel by rotating the rope to pull it out of the winch drum.

Use the following procedure to attach the wire rope.

1. With the end of the wire rope held, draw the wire rope (6) through the weight of the over hoist detector (1), the load sheave (2) at the boom end, the wire guide (3) of No. 2 boom, the guide sheave (4) of No.1 boom, and also the idler sheave (5) of No.1 boom.



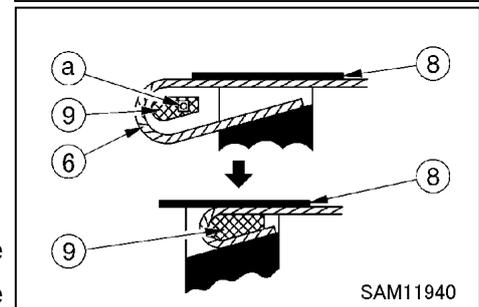
2. Draw the wire rope (6) through the attachment hole of the winch drum (8). Secure the wire rope (6) to the winch drum (8), following the procedure provided below.

(1) Draw the slackened wire rope (6) through the winch drum (8).

(2) The rope wedge (9) should be in position (a). Pass the wire rope (6) around the rope wedge and pull the rope in the direction indicated by the arrow.

Adjust the length of the wire rope (6) to keep the end of the wire rope from protruding from the narrow hole in the winch drum (8).

3. Place the winch lever in the "Up" position (pull toward you) slowly to wind up the wire rope (6) on to the winch drum (8).



4. Secure the end of the wire rope (6) to the wedge socket (3), following the procedure provided below.

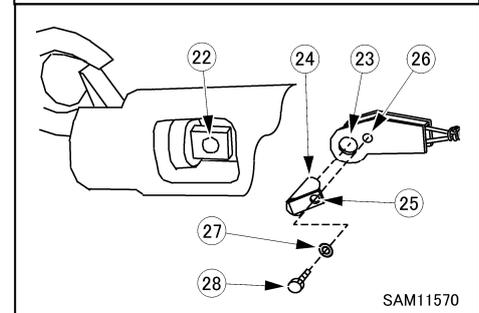
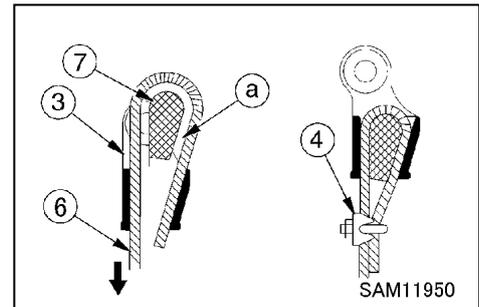
(1) Draw the wire rope (6) through the wedge socket (3) as shown in the diagram (right).

(2) With the rope wedge (7) in position (a), pull the wire rope (6) in the direction indicated by the arrow.

5. Attach the rope clip (4) to the wire rope (6).

6. Insert to hook to align holes of connection base (22) and wedge socket (23).

Insert wedge socket pin (24) to the aligned holes, and align hole of wedge socket pin (25) and hole of wedge socket (26), then secure with spring washer (27) and bolt (28).



7. Place the boom derricking lever in the “Raise” position (pull it toward you) or the boom telescoping lever in the “Extend” position (pull it toward you) to raise the hook block.

NOTES
Winch operation is allowed only after the hook block is raised.

8. Fully extend and fully raise boom, and operate hook lowering (push winch lever forward) to run out wire rope on auxiliary winch unit (15) as close as to the ground.

NOTES
Do not let hook block to touch the ground.

9. With the wire rope (6) held under tension, place the winch lever in the “Up” position (pull it toward you) to wind up the wire rope (6) to the winch drum (8).

### 7.4.3 MAINTENANCE EVERY 50 HOURS

#### [1] GREASING MACHINE UNITS

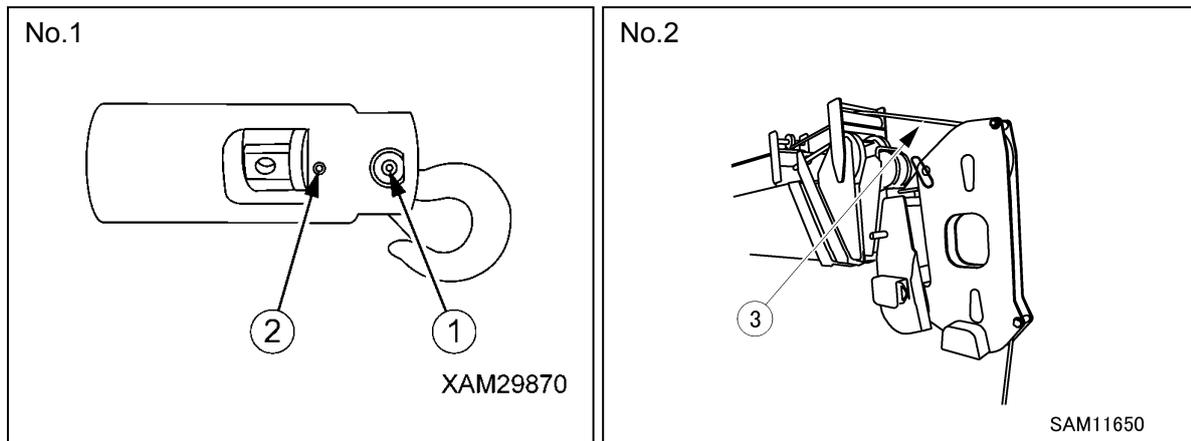
#### CAUTION

- Grease type varies with greasing points. Failure to grease properly may cause the machine to shorten its useful life. See the following table for grease types.
- Greasing a new machine is required once every 10 hours until the machine attains the first 100 hours of operation that initial fit emerges.

- Use proper grease specified below according to the greasing points.

№	Greasing point	2 places ((1),(2))	Grease type
1	Greasing of the hook block		Lithium grease
2	Greasing of the winch wire rope	1 piece ((3))	Rope grease

1. With the use of the grease gun, grease the grease plugs.
2. Wipe off old grease squeezed out after greasing.
3. Apply wire rope grease to prevent wear and rust of the wire rope.  
Before applying, remove dirt from the rope surface.



## 7.4.4 MAINTENANCE EVERY 100 HOURS

### [1] CHECK OIL LEVEL IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE, AND ADD OIL

#### **⚠ WARNING**

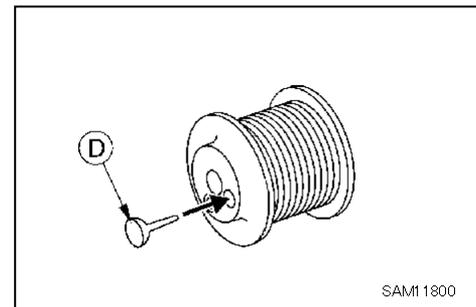
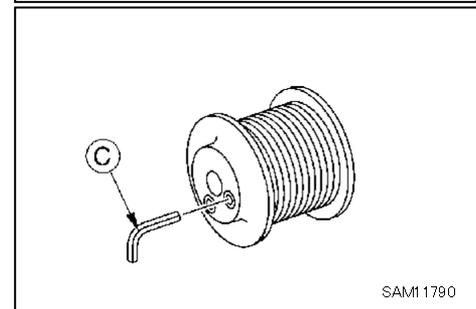
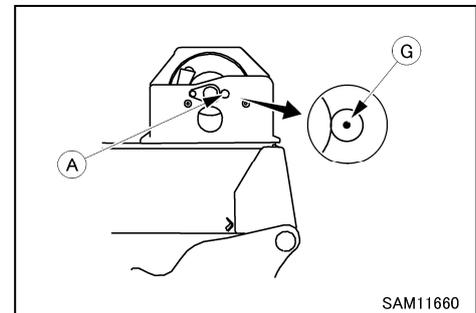
- Oil is extremely hot immediately after operation of engine. Wait until oil cools down before removing inspection port plug after operation.
- For inspection and replenishment of oil, be sure to stop engine.

#### **CAUTION**

- Be sure to use oil specified in section 5.1 “Use of Lubricating Oil according to Temperatures” in MC285C-2 Inspection and Maintenance. Failure to use proper oil may cause the engine life to shorten. Always use the specified oil for replenishment.
- After the inspection and replenishment of oil, prevent leakage from the threaded part of oil inspection plug with sealer tape and securely tighten it.

- Plug removal Allen key: 8mm

1. Place the machine on a level surface.
2. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to rotate the rotary of the “outrigger [4]” outward.
3. Rotate the winch slowly until the oil inspection plug (G) reaches a point where it can be seen through the post side inspection hole (A).
4. Use the hexagonal wrench (C) to loosen the oil inspection plug (G). Check if the gear oil exudes from the oil inspection plug (G).
5. If no exudation of the gear oil is found, rotate the oil inspection plug (G) slowly to remove it. Replenish gear oil with the use of an oil pump (D).



#### **NOTES**

Wipe off the oil completely if spilled.

6. Put in the oil inspection plug (G) and secure it upon completion of oil replenishment.
7. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the outriggers.

## 7.4.5 MAINTENANCE EVERY 1000 HOURS

### [1] OIL REPLACEMENT IN WINCH REDUCTION GEAR CASE

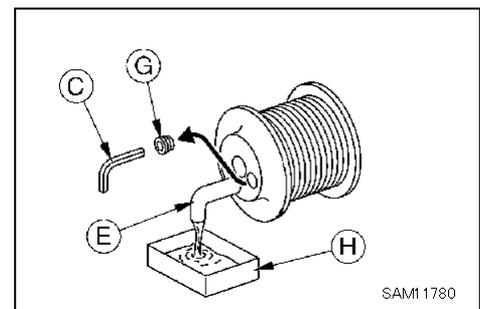
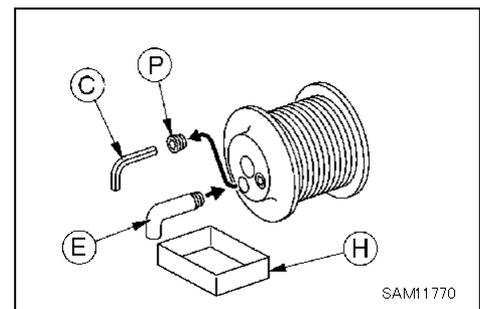
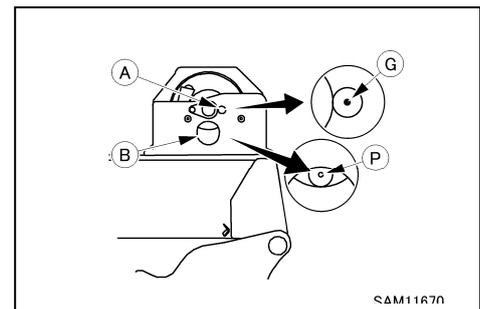
#### **⚠ WARNING**

Oil temperature will be elevated immediately after engine operation. Do not unplug the inspection port and drain port until the oil becomes cold.

#### **CAUTION**

- See “MC285C-2 Maintenance 5.1 Use of Lubricating Oil According to Temperature” for which oil to be used.
- Use seal tape, etc. at the thread of the filler plug to stop the oil leak and securely tighten the plug after refilling with the oil.

- Oil drain pan: A 1-litre container
  - Hexagonal wrench for plug removal: 8mm
  - Quantity of oil for replacement: 0.5L
  - Oil drain elbow : NPT1/16
1. Place the machine on a level surface.
  2. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.12 Outrigger Setting Operation” to rotate the rotary of the “outrigger [4]” outward.
  3. Rotate the winch slowly to a point where the oil inspection plug (G) and drain plug (P) come in sight.
    - (1) Stop the winch at a point where the oil inspection plug (G) can be seen through the post side inspection hole (A).
    - (2) Stop the winch at a point where the drain plug (P) of the winch reduction gear case can be seen above the inspection hole (B).
  4. Use the hexagonal wrench (C) to remove the drain plug (P).
  5. Install the elbow (E) to the screw hole of the drain plug (P) for draining oil.
  6. Place a drain pan (H) directly under the elbow (E) to receive drained oil.
  7. Use the hexagonal wrench (C) to remove the oil inspection plug (G). The gear oil is drained from the winch reduction gear case upon plug removal.
  8. Remove the elbow (E) after the gear oil is completely drained from the winch reduction gear case. Put in the drain plug (P) and secure it.



9. Pump the gear oil through the oil inspection plug (G) with the use of the oil pump (D).

**NOTES**

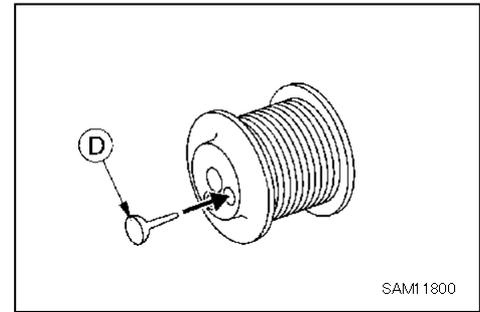
Pump the gear oil until it exudes from the oil inspection plug.

10. Put in the oil inspection plug (G) and secure it upon completion of oil replenishment.

**NOTES**

- Perform a proper break-in with no object hoisted for 5 minutes after oil replacement.
- Wipe off the oil completely if spilled.

11. See “MC285C-2 Operation 2.22 Outrigger Stowing Operation” to stow the “outrigger [4]”.



## 8. SPECIFICATIONS

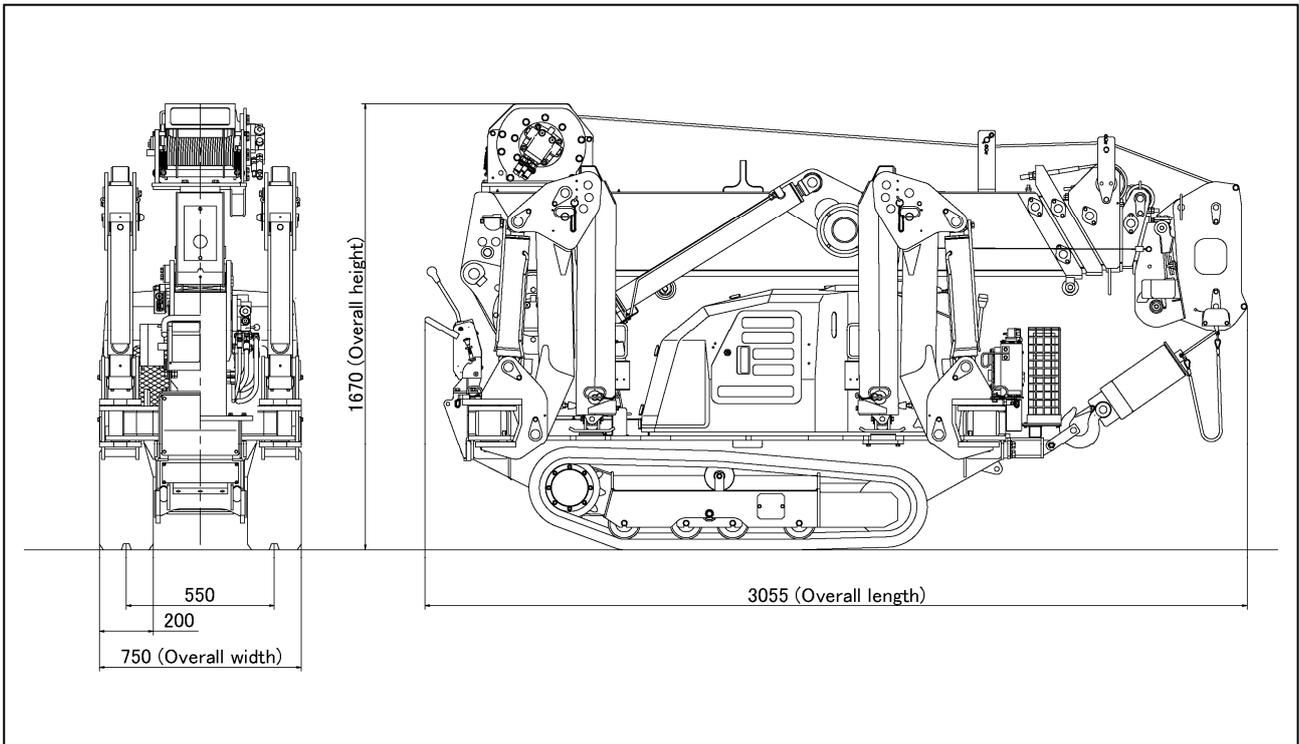
### 8.1 SPECIFICATIONS

Model		MC285CRM-2	MC285CRME-2
Weight and dimensions	Machine weight※1	2130kg	2290kg
	Overall length × width × height※1	3055mm × 750mm × 1670mm	3620mm × 750mm × 1670mm
	Distance between centre idler and sprocket	975mm	
	Track gauge	550mm	
	Width of crawler	200mm	
	Minimum ground clearance	133mm	
Performance	Crane capacity	2.82t × 1.4mm	
	Maximum working radius	8.2m	
	Maximum lifting height above ground	8.7m	
Winch system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven with brake, differential planetary gear type, with counter balance valve(within drum type)	
	Hook hoist speed	30.0mm / min(4 layers, 1 line fall)	
	Hoist wire rope	IWRC 6 × Ws (26) 0/0 φ8 × 108mm	
Telescoping system	Type	Sequential hydraulic cylinders × 2 + wire rope telescoping systems × 2	
	Type of boom	Fully automatic 5-section pentagonal telescopic (3 to 5 stage: simultaneous telescoping)	
	Boom length	2.535mm - 4.075mm - 5.575mm - 7.075mm - 8.575mm	
	Boom telescoping stroke/ time	6.04mm / 22 sec	
Boom hoist system	Type	Hydraulic double acting cylinder,direct acting type × 2	
	Derricking angle/ time	0 to 80° / 14 sec	
Slewing system	Type	Slew bearing support, hydraulic motor drive, worm and spur gears, worm self-lock	
	Slewing angle/ speed	360° (continuous) / 60 sec (1.0 RPM)	
Outrigger system	Type	1st stage with flexible stay damper, 2nd stage manual pullout, hydraulic cylinder direct acting type	
	Max extended width	(Right / left) 4580mm × (Front) 4530mm × (Rear) 3810mm	
Travel system	Type	Hydraulic motor driven, Step-less speed changer	
	Travel speed	Forward/backward: 0 – 2.2 km/h	
	Grade ability	20°	
	Ground pressure※1	53.7kPa(0.547kgf/cm <sup>2</sup> )	57.6kPa(0.587kgf/c m <sup>2</sup> )
Hydraulic system	Hydraulic pump	Variable piston pump	
	Rated pressure	20.6MPa(210kgf/c m <sup>2</sup> )	
	Hydraulic oil tank capacity	20L	
Engine	Model	Yanmar 2TNV70-NMBA	
	Type	In-line 2-cylinder, water cooled, 4-cycle diesel	

	Displacement	0.569L(569 cc)
	Rated output (continuous)	7.4kW / 2500min <sup>-1</sup> (10.1 PS / 2500rpm)
	Fuel tank capacity	Diesel 12L
Battery	Model	55B24R (DC12V x 1 piece)
Safety device	Over hoist detector, over un-winding detector, angle indicator, hydraulic safety valve, wire rope latch, level, machine body inclination alarm, EMO Switch, crane outrigger interlock device, moment limiter, outrigger setting lamp, working status lamp	
Classification	Mobile crane ISO4301/2 Group A1	

※1 Value is with auxiliary winch

## 8.2 SPECIFICATION DIMENSIONAL DRAWING



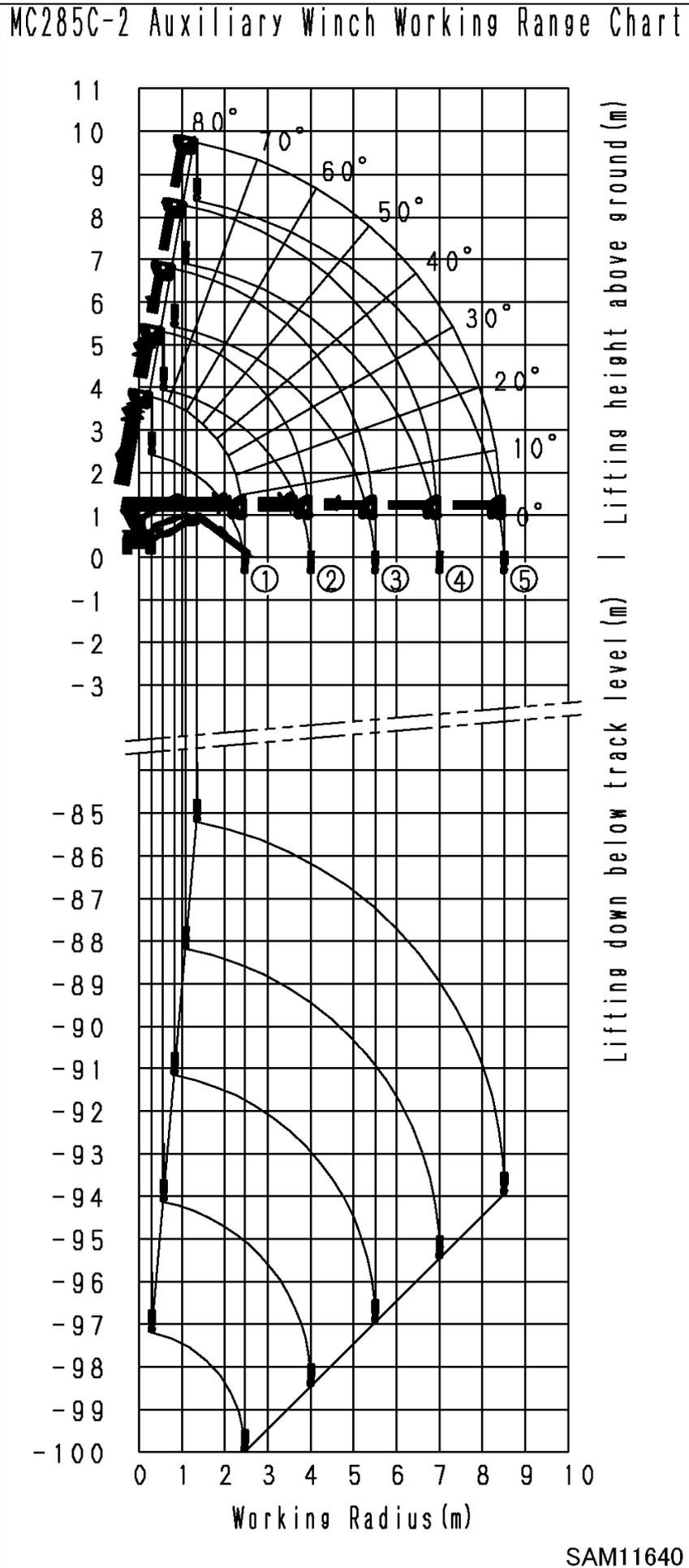
The above figure represents the travelling lever stand upright.

## 8.3 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM AND RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART

### DANGER

- The working range diagram shows the relationship between the working radius of this machine, boom angle and lifting height above the ground with no object hoisted. Deflection in the boom is not indicated.
- When using auxiliary winch, always set moment limiter to auxiliary winch mode.
- Do not use single fall hook block and crane hook block at the same time.
- Use of crane hook block is prohibited in auxiliary winch mode.

### 8.3.1 WORKING RANGE DIAGRAM FOR AUXILIARY WINCH



### 8.3.2 RATED TOTAL LOAD CHART FOR AUXILIARY WINCH

- The diagram of working radius and lifting height has been made allowing for no deflection in the boom.
- Rated total load chart is based on working radius with boom deflection and raised load taken into consideration.
- Rated total load is shown with the mass of single fall hook (30kg) included.
- If boom (3) is extended to any extent, work should be performed within the capacity for “5.575m Boom”.
- When more than one half of the first  mark is exposed from the boom (2), work should be carried out within the performance for the “7.075m Boom”.
- When more than one half of the second  mark is exposed from boom (2), work should be carried out within the performance for the “8.575m Boom”.
- Rough operation of crane is very dangerous. Always try to operate safely.
- In some working condition, moment limiter displays bigger load value than actual load.

Working Radius (m)	2.535m BOOM			4.075m BOOM			5.575m BOOM			7.075m BOOM			8.575m BOOM			Working Radius (m)
	BOOM FULLY RETRACTED			BOOM FULLY RETRACTED			BOOM FULLY RETRACTED			BOOM FULLY RETRACTED			BOOM FULLY RETRACTED			
	LOADED BOOM ANGLE	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE	OUTRIGGER POSITION		LOADED BOOM ANGLE	OUTRIGGER POSITION		
		MAX	OTHER THAN MAX													
1.4 or less	52.5	900	900	73.5	900	900										1.4 or less
1.5	50.0	900	900	72.5	900	900										1.5
2.0	33.5	900	900	67.0	900	900										2.0
2.5				50.0	850	580										2.5
3.0				40.5	850	440	56.0	850	460							3.0
3.5				27.5	800	320	49.5	800	340							3.5
3.6				24.5	800	300	48.0	780	320	58.0	770	350				3.6
3.9				8.5	800	260	44.0	740	270	55.5	710	290				3.9
4.0							42.5	730	260	54.5	690	280	61.0	500	280	4.0
4.5							34.0	580	200	49.5	530	220	57.5	350	210	4.5
5.0							24.0	480	140	44.0	430	170	53.5	290	160	5.0
5.4							7.0	480	100	39.0	390	120	50.0	250	130	5.4
5.5										37.5	380	110	49.0	250	130	5.5
6.0										30.5	330	100	44.5	220	110	6.0
6.5										21.0	300	70	39.5	180	80	6.5
6.9										6.0	280	50	35.5	150	50	6.9
7.0													34.0	150	50	7.0
7.5													27.5	130		7.5
8.0													19.0	100	PROHIBITED	8.0
8.4													5.5	100		8.4



## **MAEDA MINI-CRAWLER CRANE MC285C-2 OPERATION MANUAL**

---

Document No : 102E-OM1805-06

7th edition : May 31, 2018

Issued by Maeda Seisakusho Co., Ltd.  
1095 Onbegawa, Shinonoi  
Nagano, Nagano 388-8522,  
Japan

---

No part of this manual can be reproduced in any form without permission



**M A E D A**